ADAM'S
LATIN GRAMMAR;
SIMPLIFIED,

BY MEANS OF AN

INTRODUCTION:

DESIGNED TO FACILITATE THE STUDY OF

Latin Grammar,

BY SPREADING BEFORE THE STUDENT,

IN THE COMPASS OF A FEW PAGES, WHAT IS MOST ESSENTIALLY NECESSARY TO BE REMEMBERED:

WITH APPROPRIATE EXERCISES,

TO IMPRESS ON THE MEMORY THE DECLENSIONS AND INFLECTIONS OF THE

PARTS OF SPEECH,

AND

TO EXEMPLIFY AND ILLUSTRATE

THE

RULES OF SYNTAX.

BY ALLEN FISK.

——— irritant animos ———
——— quæ sunt oculis subjecta fidelibus, et quæ
Ipse sibi tradit spectator. HOR.

THIRD EDITION, FROM THE

SECOND EDITION, REVISED AND CORRECTED.

NEW-YORK:
PUBLISHED AND SOLD BY
WHITE, GALLAHER, & WHITE,
No. 7 Wall-Street.

STEREOTYPED BY A. CHANDLER.

1827

PREFACE.

THE Grammar of ALEXANDER ADAM, LL. D. Rector of the High School in Edinburgh, first published in 1772, is too well known, and too generally approved, to need, at the present day, either advertisement or encomium. In 1799, it was adopted by the University at Cambridge, (Mass.) and publickly recommended to be used by those intended for that Seminary, " as a book singularly calculated for the improvement of students in the Latin Language." It has passed through numerous editions, both in Europe and in this country; and is, unquestionably, the most complete Grammar of the Latin tongue, especially in its Syntax, that has ever yet been published. The great variety of notes and observations annexed to the Rules, the frequent and comprehensive lists of exceptions, and the numerous explications of anomalous and intricate constructions, discover an intimate acquaintance with the Latin classics, and give a clue to the resolution of the most difficult passages.

But, as an elementary school-book, the Grammar of Dr. Adam has one fault; a fault, however, by no means peculiar, but common, it is believed, to all the Latin Grammars hitherto published. Its arrangement is better suited to a book of reference, for the use of those who have already studied the language, than for the inexperienced tyro, who knows nothing of the subject. The student is obliged to commit his whole book to memory, or at least the principal parts, Etymology and Syntax, before he understands a word of it. This, at best, is a most odious and disgusting task. To crowd the memory with page after page of unintelligible matter, to wade through a whole volume without any apparent design or utility, and be required to repeat a multitude of rules and definitions of no obvious meaning or application, blunts the curiosity of youth, disheartens their ambition, and not unfrequently leads to fatal discouragement. Nor are the difficulties of the student at an end when he has got through his Grammar. To prove his skill and try the fidelity of his memory, he is then set to parsing in promiscuous exercises, in long and intricate sentences, to resolve which requires a knowledge of the Grammar and of the idioms of the language, to be acquired only by practical illustration and patient research. However apt, therefore, he may have been in conning by rote, when the learner comes to apply the rules and definitions promiscuously, he finds himself in a labyrinth; his judgment is bewildered; his memory, in many instances, fails him; and thus he is often compelled to begin with his Grammar anew.

To remedy these inconveniences, to relieve the student from the irksome and unprofitable task of committing to memory what he does not understand, and to furnish easy exercises adapted to the illustration of the several parts of speech and rules of syntax, in progressive detail; presenting, at one view, the example of declension, the lesson for parsing, and the appropriate rules, to the eye of the student, have been the Compiler's aim in this publication. And these facilities he has endeavoured to afford with as little innovation upon the usual arrangement of the several parts of Grammar as was deemed consistent with the design of the undertaking, and the nature of the subject; thus attempting to render the book suitable for the young beginner, without rendering it inconvenient for the more advanced scholars. In conformity with these views, Dr. Adam's Grammar has, in general, been left unaltered; and an introduction, containing examples of the various declensions and conjugations of the Parts of Speech, and the Rules of Syntax, with appropriate exercises successively adapted to those rules and examples, has been prefixed to his work. In a few instances, indeed, the order and phraseology of the rules have been altered, with a view to render them more convenient for parsing, and more conformable with the arrangement of the introduction; and that part of Dr. Adam's work, relating exclusively to English Grammar, has been entirely omitted, as being superseded by later and more popular treatises; and, (if it were not) as being generally useless to scholars, in this country at least, on account of their having studied English Grammar before they commence the study of the Latin

This work, in its present arrangement, will be found to combine the following advantages:

1. Exclusive of the Introduction, and considered merely as a book of reference, it is indusputably superior to any preceding edition of Adam's Latin Grammar, on account of its typographical neatness and accuracy. The Publishers, have spared neither pains nor expense to render the work correct, and worthy of general patronage.

2. The Exercises and Excerpta Latinè, in the Introduction, will supersede the necessity of purchasing, and putting into the hands of boys, larger and more expensive books. To the student the Exercises will serve as an introduction to the Grammar, and the Excerpta as an introduction to the classics. To render these the more valuable, examples of all the different kinds of verse have been selected from Horace, and the *scanning* marked according to the best authorities.

3. The Introduction will enable the student to commence his task with parsing, and thus lead him to understand the definitions of Etymology and the Rules of Syntax, previous to his committing them to memory. These parts of Grammar should always be studied simultaneously, because they mutually explain and illustrate each other; and parsing, which exemplifies the meaning and application of the definitions and rules, is an exercise of the utmost importance to the pupil, and should accompany, *pari passu*, his progress through Etymology and Syntax. The declensions of Adjectives, Nouns, and Pronouns, the conjugation of Verbs, the nature and use of Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections, are more easily learned and more readily understood by parsing, than by committing to memory the various rules and explications of the Parts of Speech. The best method, for instance, to make the pupil understand, and consequently remember, the declensions of Adjectives and Substantives, is to place before him an example of those declensions, and set him to parsing Adjectives and Substantives. He will then readily see the distinctive properties of these two parts of speech, and also the meaning of the rule, "Adjectives agree with their Substantives in number, case, and gender." It is *parsing*, therefore, which illustrates Etymology and Syntax, and which indelibly impresses these two parts of Grammar on the memory of the pupil; and, consequently, the sooner he begins parsing, the easier will his task be, and the more profitable his labours.

4. By means of the Introduction, not only the understanding, but the *eye* also, is rendered subservient to the memory. It is undoubtedly true, that we commit to memory with more facility, and retain, for a greater length of time, what we understand, than what we do not understand; and it is equally true, that impressions received through the eye are more vivid and permanent than any others.

——————— irritant animos ———
——— quæ sunt oculis subjecta fidelibus, et quæ
Ipse sibi teadit spectator. HORACE.

"Those things forcibly affect the mind which are submitted to the faithful eyes, and which the spectator delivers to, or teaches himself." This doctrine will hardly be questioned by any one who has ever studied geography, and observed how much brighter and more durable are the impressions of what he learned from the map, than of what he learned from the book. The comparative size, course, situation, and importance of the principal rivers, lakes, mountains, and cities, are remembered, and easily called to mind long after the description and account of those rivers, lakes, mountains, and cities are totally obliterated from the memory. To take advantage of this hint, and yet not render the size of the book unwieldy, the octavo form has been preferred, as combining the greatest utility with the least inconvenience. Page 10th presents a *map* of all the regular declensions of Substantives, and page 11th of the declension and comparison of Adjectives. The declensions of Pronouns, and the conjugations of Verbs, are exhibited in the same manner in subsequent pages. All the principal rules are placed on the margin, in a body by themselves; and, after they have been once exhibited in detached views, they are repeatedly exhibited at a single view, in order to make the impression more distinct and connected.

ADVERTISEMENT

TO THE

SECOND EDITION.

IN presenting the second edition of "Adam's Latin Grammar Simplified" to the world, the publisher would observe, that no pains have been spared to have it correct, deserving of public patronage, and a credit to himself as publisher.

Owing to the carelessness or ignorance of printers and proof-readers, in copying, in each succeeding edition, the errors of its predecessor, and adding thereto a long catalogue of new ones, when the first edition of this work was about to be put to press, there could not be found a copy of Adam's Latin Grammar sufficiently correct to print from. It became necessary, therefore, to employ a person, (Mr. Fisk being out of the city,) of sufficient leisure and ability, to undertake its correction. Mr. Joseph Osborn, of this city, a gentleman well known as combining in himself, with a cultivated education, the advantages of many years' experience in proof-reading, was therefore engaged; and to him the publick is, in a good degree, indebted for a tolerably correct copy of a Latin Grammar. The proof sheets, after being read and corrected by Mr. Osborn, were sent to the author, at Troy, to be read and revised by him, which was done in order to divest the work, if possible, of every error, even the most trifling. To secure for the succeeding editions the corrections thus obtained, by this immense labour, and at this great expense; and, in order to provide for the correction of any errors which might afterwards be discovered, without the possibility of creating new ones, it was found necessary to stereotype the work.

In addition to the pains thus taken to have the first edition comparatively correct, and in order, if possible, to have the second entirely free from errors, a copy has been carefully preserved, in which have been recorded, from time to time, such errors as have been discovered by the proof-reader, by the author, and by such teachers as have had the goodness to favour me with a list of the errors that they have discovered while using the book, (for which they have my grateful acknowledgments.)

The publisher conceives that, to say nothing of the improvements in this edition, by possessing a Latin Grammar comparatively correct, and that can easily be read, instead of one so erroneously and slovenly printed, as to be scarcely legible to the young and vigorous eye, whose every nerve must be strained to its utmost powers, to store the mind with erroneous words and sentences, the publick will be amply remunerated for the trifling difference in the cost of this and the common editions.

How far the author may have succeeded in facilitating the attainment of the highly important and ornamental branch of a refined education, designed to be taught by the use of this work, and in rendering the study pleasing and interesting to the pupil, I am not prepared to say, never having witnessed it in operation; but, judging from the effects produced by the use of "Greenleaf's [*English*] Grammar Simplified," to which, in a considerable degree, it is conformed in its arrangement, I cannot but entertain very sanguine hopes of its ultimate success in the hands of judicious and able instructers One thing, however, is certain, viz. that nothing will be lost by giving it a trial; for, should the introductory part fail of accomplishing the object contemplated by the author, the purchaser will still have by far the best copy of Adam's Latin Grammar, (com-

mencing at folio 67,) extant; one that can be read with ease, and that is tolerably correct; which cannot be said of any other edition now offered to the publick.

In addition to the satisfaction to be enjoyed by possessing a well printed and correct copy of Adam's Latin Grammar, there is another advantage to be gained by the purchase of this edition, and that is on the score of economy.. The numerous extracts from the Latin Classics will supersede the necessity of purchasing several books to be used for exercises, which will effect a very considerable saving of expense in the purchase of books.

Should the "Latin Grammar Simplified" prove successful in aiding and assisting the teacher in imparting, and the pupil in obtaining, a knowledge of the important science of which it treats, my satisfaction will not arise solely from the prospect of receiving a pecuniary compensation for my labour and expense, but it will be a source of gratification to reflect on my being, in any way, instrumental in accomplishing so desirable an object as that contemplated in the publication of this work; but, should my hopes and expectations prove abortive, by its failure of success, I shall console myself under the disappointment, and endeavour to bear my loss with a degree of cheerfulness, from the reflection, that its failure cannot be attributed to the want of exertion, on my part, to render it deserving of publick patronage, and that the discerning will know how to appreciate the well-meant services of a member of this enlightened republic, although the contemplated object should not be attained.

That this work should meet with the unqualified approbation of the whole community, especially as it is of American origin, is not at all to be expected; nor can it be supposed that open enemies will not be found. Fulton, and his apparatus for steamboat navigation, have their enemies; and the same may be said of all the plans which have ever been divulged for the moral, intellectual, or political improvement of mankind, in all ages, particularly when such improvements are calculated to interfere with the interest of the individual whose prosperity depends on the destruction of such improvements.

Encouraged by the approbation with which the first edition of this work has been received, and the rapid sale it has met, the second is confidently submitted to an enlightened publick, for patronage and support, by

THE PUBLISHERS.

New-York, 1st January, 1824.

CONTENTS.

PART. I.

Inflections of the Parts of Speech.

	Page.
Declension of Substantives	10
and Comparison of Adjectives	11
of Pronouns	12
Conjugation of the Verb Sum	13
of Regular Verbs	16—23
First Conjugation, Active Voice	16
Passive Voice	17
Second Conjugation, Active Voice	18
Passive Voice	19
Third Conjugation, Active Voice	20
Passive Voice	21
Fourth Conjugation, Active Voice	22
Passive Voice	23

Rules and Exercises.

Rule 1, and Exercises	10, 11
Rules, from 2 to 6 inclusive, and Exercises	12, 13
7 to 30 inclusive, and Exercises	14, 15
Exercises adapted to the Conjugation of Regular Verbs	16—23
Rules 31 to 54 inclusive, and Exercises	24, 25
55 to 69 inclusive, and Exercises	26, 27
Condensed Views of all the Rules	28—44

Excerpta Latinè.

De Viris Illustribus Urbis Romæ	28—44
Regulus	28
Fabius Maximus	28
Scipio Africanus	30
Scipio Nasica	32
Paulus Æmilius	32
Tiberius Gracchus and Caius Gracchus	32
Lucius Lucullus	34
Pompeius Magnus	34
De Viris Julius Cæsar	36
Cato Uticensis	36
Cicero	38
Cæsar Augustus	38—44
Sallustii Catilina	44
E. Ciceronis Orationibus	45—50
Ex Ovidii Operibus	51, 52
Virgilii Operibus	53—59
Horatii Operibus	59—65

PART II.

1. ORTHOGRAPHY.

Of Letters	67
Vowels	67
Consonants	67
Of Diphthongs	67
Syllables	68
Words	68

2. ETYMOLOGY.

Of the Parts of Speech	68
Of Nouns or Substantives	69
Declension of Nouns	69
Gender of Nouns	70
First Declension	72
Second Declension	73
Third Declension	74
Fourth Declension	84
Fifth Declension	85
Irregular Nouns	85
Variable Nouns	85
Defective Nouns	85
Redundant Nouns	88
Division of Nouns according to their signification and derivation	89
Of Adjectives	89
Declension of Adjectives	90
Numeral Adjectives	92
Comparison of Adjectives	94
Of Pronouns	95
Of Simple Pronouns	95
Compound Pronouns	96
Of Verbs	97
Conjugation of Verbs	98
Formation of Verbs	100
Signification of the different Tenses	100
First Conjugation	102
Second Conjugation	103
Third Conjugation	105
Fourth Conjugation	111
Deponent and Common Verbs	111
Irregular Verb	114
Defective Verbs	117
Impersonal Verbs	117
Redundant Verbs	118
Obsolete Conjugation	119
Derivation and Composition of Verbs	120

CONTENTS.

Page.

Of Participles 120
 Gerunds and Supines . . 121
Of Adverbs 121
 Derivation, Comparison and Composition of ditto . . . 123
Of Prepositions 124
Of Interjections 125
Of Conjunctions 125

3. SYNTAX.

Of Sentences, simple and compound 126
Of Concord or Agreement . . 127
 Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive . . . 127
 of a Verb with a Nominative 127
 of a Relative with the Antecedent . . . 128
 Construction of Relatives . 128
 same case after a Verb as before it 129
 Agreement of one Substantive with another . . . 130
Of Government . . . 130
 Government of Substantives . 130
 one Substantive governing another 130
 latter of two Substantives . 131
 Adjectives taken as Substantives 131
 Opus and *Usus* signifying *need* 131
Of the Government of Adjectives 132
 Adjectives governing the Genitive 132
 the Dative 133
 the Ablative 134
 the Genitive or Ablative 134
Of the Government of Verbs . 134
Government of the Verb, Sum 134
 Sum, signifying possession, property, &c. . . 134
 taken for Habeo . . 135
 taken for Offero . . 135
 Compounds of Sum . . 135
Of the construction of Comparatives, when *quam* is omitted . 135
 Construction of Adverbs . 136
 Government of Adverbs . 137
Of the Construction of Prepositions 137
 Prepositions governing the Accusative 137
 governing the Ablative . 138
 governing the Accusative or Ablative . . . 139
Of the Construction of Interjections 140
Of the construction of Conjunctions 140
Of two or more nouns singular connected by a Conjunction . 140
Of Conjunctions governing the subjunctive mood . . . 141
Of Verbs governing one case . 142
 the Accusative 142
 the Genitive 142
 the Dative . 143
 the Ablative 144
 the Accusative or Genitive . 144
Of a Verb compounded with a Preposition 145
Of the construction of the Infinitive 145
 Accusative before the Infinitive 145
Of the construction of Participles 146
 of Gerunds 146
 of Supines 147
 of Circumstances 148
Of Verbs governing two cases . 149
 the Accusative and Genitive . . . 149
 the Accusative and Dative 150
 two Accusatives . 150
 the Accusative and Ablative . . . 151
Of the construction of Passive Verbs 151
 of Impersonal Verbs 152
 of the Names of Places 153
Of the Ablative Case Absolute . 154

APPENDIX TO SYNTAX.

Various Signification and Construction of Verbs 156
Figures of Syntax . . . 166
Analysis and Translation . . 168
Different kinds of Style . . 169
Figures of Rhetoric . . . 170

4. PROSODY.

Of the Quantity of Syllables 175
 of first and middle Syllables . . 176
 of Final Syllables 179
 of Derivatives and Compounds . 181
Of Accent 182
Of Verse 182
 measuring Verses by Scanning 183
Of the Different kinds of Verse . 183
 Figures in Scanning . 185
 Different kinds of Poems . 186
 Combination of Verses in Poems 187
Of the different kinds of Verse in Horace and Buchanan . . 187

APPENDIX.

Punctuation, Capitals, &c. . . 189

TO INSTRUCTERS.

THE principal design of prefixing these introductory exercises to the Grammar is to relieve the student from the irksome and unprofitable task of committing to memory what he does not understand; to impress the inflections of the parts of speech and the rules of syntax clearly and forcibly on his memory, by exhibiting them in condensed views; and, by furnishing easy exercises adapted to those inflections and rules in detail, to facilitate the labour of translating and parsing.

The following plan of instruction is in conformity with this design.

Commence at page 10th, and read over the declensions of substantives and adjectives, explaining to the pupil the distinctive marks of the different declensions, and the manner in which an adjective agrees with a substantive. Then practise him a short time in translating and parsing a few of the examples under "Exercises," on page 10th, declining the adjective and substantive, first separately, and then conjointly. This will prepare him to understand, and consequently to commit to memory with facility and pleasure, the general rules relating to the declensions of substantives and adjectives, as contained in the grammar, commencing at page 69. By proceeding in this manner, illustrating each part of speech, and practising the student in parsing it, *before* he is called upon to commit to memory its Etymology and Syntax, his progress through the grammar will be rendered both pleasing and profitable. His task will be much lighter, and the impression on his memory more permanent, than if he had proceeded in the inverted order, committing what he could not understand, and deferring the exercise of parsing till he had gone through the grammar.

RULE.

1.

The adjective agrees with its substantive, in number, case, and gender.

EXERCISES.

Bona Musa. Bonus puer. Bonum donum. Unus liber. Felix dominus. Lenis sermo. Lenior puer. Tenerum caput. Pulcher currus. Pulchra res. Pulchrum cornu. Felix facies. Felix iter. Tenerum cornu. Tenera res. Bonus sermo. Bona res. Bonum sedile. Lenis dominus. Lene iter. Pulcher liber. Pulchra facies. Pulchrum caput. Lenior dominus. Lenior res. Lenius iter. Unus puer. Una rupes. Unum donum. Duo libri. Duæ Musæ. Duo cornua. Tres libri. Tres sermones. Tria capita. Tres rupes. Unus lapis. Tres lapides. Duo currus. Duæ facies. Duo sedilia. Altus currus. Durus lapis. Durior rupes. Altior currus. Altius cornu. Durius caput. Felicior puer. Felicius iter. Pulchrior lapis. Pulchrius caput. Tenerior Musa. Tenerius cornu. Facilior res. Facilius iter. Melior puer. Melius donum. Pejor dominus. Pejus donum. Major liber. Majus sedile. Minor rupes. Minus cornu. Altissima rupes. Durissimus lapis. Felicissimus puer. Optimus dominus. Optima Musa. Optimum donum. Parvus puer. Malus liber. Magnus currus. Magna rupes. Magnum caput. Parvum sedile. Minus sedile. Minimum sedile. Facilis Musa. Facilior Musa. Facillima Musa. Tener dominus. Tenerior dominus Tenerrimus dominus. Lenior itinera.

FIRST DECLENSION

Mūsă, *a song*, feminine-gender.

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
Nominative,	Mūsă,	*a song,*	*Nominative,*	Mūsæ.	*songs,*
Genitive,	Mūsæ,	*of a song,*	*Genitive,*	Mūsārŭm,	*of songs,*
Dative,	Mūsæ,	*to,* or *for a song,*	*Dative,*	Mūsīs,	*to,* or *for songs,*
Accusative,	Mūsăm,	*a song,*	*Accusative,*	Mūsās,	*songs,*
Vocative,	Mūsă,	*O song,*	*Vocative,*	Mūsæ,	*O songs,*
Ablative,	Mūsā;	*with,* &c. *a song;*	*Ablative,*	Mūsīs;	*with,* &c. *songs.*

SECOND DECLENSION.

Pŭĕr, *a boy,* masc.		Lĭbĕr, *a book,* masc.	
Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N. Pŭĕr,	*N.* Pŭĕrī,	*N.* Lĭbĕr,	*N.* Lĭbrī,
G. Pŭĕri,	*G.* Pŭĕrōrŭm,	*G.* Libri,	*G.* Librōrŭm,
D. Pŭĕrō,	*D.* Pŭĕrīs,	*D.* Librō,	*D.* Librīs,
A. Pŭĕrŭm,	*A.* Pŭĕrōs,	*A.* Librŭm,	*A.* Librōs,
V. Pŭĕr,	*V.* Pŭĕrī,	*V.* Libĕr,	*V.* Librī,
A. Pŭĕrō;	*A.* Pŭĕrīs.	*A.* Librō;	*A.* Librīs.

Dŏmĭnŭs, *a master,* masc.		Dōnŭm, *a gift,* neut.	
N. Dŏmĭnŭs,	*N.* Dŏmĭnī,	*N.* Dōnŭm,	*N.* Dōnă,
G. Dominī,	*G.* Dominōrum,	*G.* Dōni,	*G.* Dōnōrŭm,
D. Dominō,	*D.* Dominīs,	*D.* Dōnō,	*D.* Dōnīs,
A. Dominŭm,	*A.* Dominōs,	*A.* Dōnŭm,	*A.* Dōnă,
V. Dŏmĭnĕ,	*V.* Dominī,	*V.* Dōnŭm,	*V.* Dōnă,
A. Dominō;	*A.* Dominīs.	*A.* Dōnō;	*A.* Dōnīs.

THIRD DECLENSION.

Sĕrmo, *a speech,* masc.		Căpŭt, *the head,* neut.	
N. Sĕrmo,	*N.* Sĕrmōnēs,	*N.* Căpŭt,	*N.* Căpĭtă,
G. Sermōnĭs,	*G.* Sermōnŭm,	*G.* Capĭtĭs,	*G.* Capĭtŭm,
D. Sermōni,	*D.* Sermōnĭbŭs,	*D.* Capiti,	*D.* Capĭtĭbŭs,
A. Sermōnĕm,	*A.* Sermōnēs,	*A.* Capŭt,	*A.* Capĭtă,
V. Sermo,	*V.* Sermōnēs,	*V.* Capŭt,	*V.* Capĭtă,
A. Sermōnĕ;	*A.* Sermōnĭbŭs.	*A.* Capitĕ;	*A.* Capĭtĭbŭs.

Rūpēs, *a rock,* fem.		Sĕdīlĕ, *a seat,* neut.	
N. Rūpēs,	*N.* Rūpēs,	*N.* Sĕdīlĕ,	*N.* Sĕdīlĭă,
G. Rupĭs,	*G.* Rupiŭm,	*G.* Sedilĭs,	*G.* Sediliŭm,
D. Rupi,	*D.* Rupibŭs,	*D.* Sedili,	*D.* Sedīlĭbŭs,
A. Rupĕm,	*A.* Rupēs,	*A.* Sedīlĕ,	*A.* Sedīlĭă,
V. Rupēs,	*V.* Rupēs,	*V.* Sedīlĕ,	*V.* Sedīlĭă.
A. Rupĕ;	*A.* Rupibŭs.	*A.* Sedili;	*A.* Sedilĭbŭs

Lăpĭs, *a stone,* masc.		Itĕr, *a journey,* neut.	
N. Lăpĭs,	*N.* Lăpĭdēs,	*N.* Itĕr,	*N.* Itĭnĕră,
G. Lapĭdĭs,	*G.* Lapidŭm,	*G.* Itĭnĕrĭs,	*G.* Itinĕrŭm,
D. Lapidi,	*D.* Lapĭdĭbŭs,	*D.* Itĭnĕri,	*D.* Itinĕrĭbŭs,
A. Lapidĕm,	*A.* Lapidēs,	*A.* Itĕr,	*A.* Itinĕră,
V. Lapĭs,	*V.* Lapidēs,	*V.* Itĕr,	*V.* Itinĕră,
A. Lapidĕ;	*A.* Lapĭdĭbŭs.	*A.* Itĭnĕrĕ;	*A.* Itinerĭbŭs.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Cŭrrŭs, *a chariot,* masc.		Cōrnū, *a horn,* neut.	
N. Cŭrrŭs,	*N.* Currūs,	*N.* Cōrnū,	*N.* Cornŭă,
G. Currūs,	*G.* Currŭŭm,	*G.* Cornu,	*G.* Cornŭŭm,
D. Currŭī,	*D.* Currĭbŭs,	*D.* Cornu,	*D.* Cornĭbŭs,
A. Currŭm,	*A.* Currūs,	*A.* Cornu,	*A.* Cornŭă,
V. Currŭs,	*V.* Currūs,	*V.* Cornu,	*V.* Cornŭă,
A. Currū;	*A.* Currĭbŭs.	*A.* Cornu;	*A.* Cornĭbŭs.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Rēs, *a thing,* fem.		Făcĭēs, *a face,* fem.	
N. Rēs,	*N.* Rēs,	*N.* Făcĭēs,	*N.* Făciēs,
G. Rĕī,	*G.* Rērŭm,	*G.* Faciēī,	*G.* Faciērum,
D. Rĕī,	*D.* Rēbŭs,	*D.* Faciēi,	*D.* Faciēbus,
A. Rem,	*A.* Res,	*A.* Faciem,	*A.* Facies,
V. Rēs,	*V.* Rēs,	*V.* Faciēs,	*V.* Facies,
A. Rē;	*A.* Rēbŭs	*A.* Facie;	*A.* Faciēbus.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Bŏnŭs, bŏnă, bŏnŭm, *good.*

Singular.			*Plural.*		
masc.	*fem.*	*neut.*	*masc.*	*fem.*	*neut.*
N. Bŏnŭs,	bŏnă,	bŏnum,	*N.* Bŏnī,	bonæ,	bŏnă,
G. Bonī,	bonæ,	bonī,	*G.* Bonōrum,	bonārŭm,	bonōrŭm,
D. Bonō,	bonæ,	bonō,	*D.* Bonīs,	bonīs,	bonīs,
A. Bonŭm,	bonăm,	bonŭm,	*A.* Bonōs,	bonās,	bonă,
V. Bonĕ,	bonă,	bonŭm,	*V.* Bonī,	bonæ,	bonă,
A. Bonō,	bonâ,	bonō;	*A.* Bonīs,	bonīs,	bonīs.

Tĕnĕr, tĕnĕră, tĕnĕrŭm, *tender.*

N. Tĕnĕr,	tĕnĕră,	tĕnĕrŭm,	*N.* Tĕnĕrī,	tĕnĕræ,	tĕnĕră,
G. Tenerī,	teneræ,	tenerī,	*G.* Tenerōrŭm,	—ārŭm,	—ōrŭm,
D. Tenerō,	teneræ,	tenerō,	*D.* Tenerīs,	tenerīs,	tenerīs,
A. Tenerŭm,	tenerăm,	tenerŭm,	*A.* Tenerōs,	tenerās,	teneră,
V. Tenĕr,	teneră,	tenerŭm,	*V.* Tenerī,	teneræ,	teneră,
A. Tenerō,	tenerâ,	tenerō;	*A.* Tenerīs,	tenerīs,	tenerīs.

Pŭlchĕr, pŭlchră, pŭlchrŭm, *fair.*

N. Pŭlchĕr,	pŭlchră,	pŭlchrŭm,	*N.* Pŭlchrī,	pŭlchræ,	pŭlchră,
G. Pulchrī,	pulchræ,	pulchrī,	*G.* Pulchrōrŭm,	—ārŭm,	—ōrŭm,
D. Pulchrō,	pulchræ,	pulchrō,	*D.* Pulchrīs,	pulchrīs,	pulchrīs,
A. Pulchrŭm,	pulchrăm,	pulchrŭm,	*A.* Pulchrōs,	pulchrās,	pulchră,
V. Pulchĕr,	pulchră,	pulchrŭm,	*V.* Pulchrī,	pulchræ,	pulchră,
A. Pulchrō,	pulchrâ,	pulchrō;	*A.* Pulchrīs,	pulchrīs,	pulchrīs.

Unŭs, ūnă, ūnŭm, *one.*

N. Unŭs,	ūnă,	ūnŭm,	*N.* Unī,	ūnæ,	ūnă,
G. Unīŭs,	unīŭs,	unīŭs,	*G.* Unōrŭm,	unārŭm,	unōrŭm,
D. Unī,	unī,	unī,	*D.* Unīs,	unīs,	unīs,
A. Unŭm,	unăm,	unŭm,	*A.* Unōs,	unās,	ună,
V. Unĕ,	ună,	unŭm,	*V.* Unī,	unæ,	ună,
A. Unō,	unâ,	unō;	*A.* Unīs,	unīs,	unīs.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Fēlīx, fēlīx, fēlīx, *happy.*

N Fēlīx,	fēlīx,	fēlīx,	*N.* Fēlīcēs,	fēlīcēs,	fēlīcĭă,
G Fēlīcĭs,	fēlīcĭs,	fēlīcĭs,	*G.* Fēlīcĭŭm,	fēlīcĭŭm,	fēlīcĭŭm,
D Fēlīcī,	fēlīcī,	fēlīcī,	*D.* Fēlīcĭbŭs,	fēlīcĭbŭs,	fēlīcĭbŭs,
A. Fēlīcĕm,	fēlīcĕm,	fēlīx,	*A.* Fēlīcēs,	fēlīcēs,	fēlīcĭă,
V. Fēlīx,	fēlīx,	fēlīx,	*V.* Fēlīcēs,	fēlīcēs,	fēlīcĭă,
A. Fēlīcĕ, *v.*	fēlīcī, &c.		*A.* Fēlīcĭbŭs,	fēlīcĭbŭs,	fēlīcĭbŭs.

Lēnĭs, lēnĭs, lēnĕ, *mild.*

N. Lēnĭs,	lēnĭs,	lēnĕ,	*N.* Lēnēs,	lēnēs,	lēnĭă,
G. Lenĭs,	lenĭs,	lenĭs,	*G.* Lenĭŭm,	lenĭŭm,	lenĭŭm,
D. Lenī,	lenī,	lenī,	*D.* Lenĭbŭs,	lenĭbŭs,	lenĭbŭs,
A. Lenĕm,	lenĕm,	lenĕ,	*A.* Lenēs,	lenēs,	lenĭă,
V. Lenĭs,	lenĭs,	lenĕ,	*V.* Lenēs,	lenēs,	lenĭă,
A. Lenī,	lenī,	lenī;	*A* Lenĭbŭs,	lenĭbŭs,	lenĭbŭs.

Lēnĭŏr, lēnĭŏr, lēnĭŭs, *milder.*

N. Lēnĭŏr,	lēnĭŏr,	lēnĭŭs,	*N.* Lēnĭōrēs,	lēnĭōrēs,	lēnĭōră,
G. Leniōrĭs,	leniōrĭs,	leniōrĭs,	*G.* Leniōrŭm,	leniōrŭm,	leniōrŭm,
D. Leniōrī,	leniōrī,	leniōrī,	*D.* Leniōrĭbŭs,	leniōrĭbŭs,	leniōrĭbŭs,
A. Leniōrĕm,	leniōrĕm,	leniŭs,	*A.* Leniōrēs,	leniōrēs,	leniōră,
V. Leniŏr,	leniŏr,	leniŭs,	*V.* Leniōrēs,	leniōrēs,	leniōră,
A. Leniōrĕ, *v.*	leniōrī, &c.		*A.* Leniōrĭbŭs,	leniōrĭbŭs,	leniōrĭbŭs.

Duo, *two,* **& Tres,** *three,* **are thus declined.**

N. Dŭo,	dŭæ,	dŭo,	*N.* Tres,	trēs,	trĭă,
G. Duōrŭm,	duārŭm,	duōrŭm,	*G.* Trĭŭm,	trĭŭm,	trĭŭm,
D. Duōbŭs,	duābŭs,	duōbŭs,	*D.* Trĭbŭs,	trĭbŭs,	trĭbŭs,
A. Duōs, *v.* dŭo,	duās,	dŭō,	*A.* Trēs,	trēs,	trĭă,
V. Dŭō,	dŭæ,	dŭō,	*V.* Trēs,	trēs,	trĭă,
A. Duōbŭs,	duābŭs,	duōbŭs.	*A.* Trĭbŭs,	trĭbŭs,	trĭbŭs.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Pos.	*Com.*	*Sup.*	*Pos.*	*Com.*	*Sup.*
Altus, *high,*	altior,	altissimus.	Bonus, *good,*	melior,	optimus.
Durus, *hard,*	durior,	durissimus.	Malus, *bad,*	pejor,	pessimus.
Felix, *happy,*	felicior,	felicissimus.	Magnus, *great,*	major,	maximus.
Lenis, *mild,*	lenior,	lenissimus.	Parvus, *small,*	minor,	minimus.
Tener, *tender,*	tenerior,	tenerrimus.	Multus, *much,*	plus, *n.*	plurimus.
Facilis, *easy,*	facilior,	facillimus.	Dexter, *right,*	dexterior,	dextimus.

EXERCISES.

Benignus gener. Liberalis socer. Formosa filia. Fortis filius. Amabilis puella. Mitis vir. Una hora. Mitis aura. Atra cura. Magna stella. Mite pomum. Hilaris fœmina. Bonum exemplum. Difficile principium. Doctus vir. Carus socius. Magna prudentia. Pretiosa gemma. Utilis poeta. Fidus amicus. Pauper homo. Dives stultus. Perniciosa lex. Medicabilis amor. Bonus animus. Fulvus ager. Casta fœmina. Vafra vulpes. Assidua apis. Multus honor. Parvum agmen. Clamosus risus. Nigra felis. Miser bufo. Misera ovis. Ruber draco. Prospera vitis. Verus honor. Rigidus Aquilo. Pallidus timor. Falsum omen. Purum ebur. Obtusum telum. Acidum vinum. Horrida bella. Tumidum flumen. Raucus fluctus. Claudus manus. Dulce pomum. Maturus fructus. Ferox latro. Grandis aula Brevis vita. Fragile filum. Velox cervus. Subtilis ratio. Terrestris res. Pernix ala. Immanis lacus. Sagax vultus. Ignobile nomen. Terribilis lues. Turpe crimen. Triste negotium. Viridis vitis. Exsanguis manus. Inanes spes. Ingens veru. Exilis cervus. Sagax equus. Deformis lupus. Vile regnum. Sapiens homo. Amabilis mulier. Hilaris puella. Docilis puer. Canina rabies. Malum consilium. Magnum concilium. Dulcis libertas. Candidus ursus Alta domus. Longus dies. Magna salus. Divinus amor. Matutinum canticum. Publicus vicus. Suprema dies. Dulcia oscula Novi fluctus. Timidus navita. Inutile genus. Oriens Sol. Sedens luna. Julium sidus. Densa silva.

RULES.

2.

The verb agrees with its nominative case, in number and person.

3.

The relative, *qui, quæ, quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.

4.

If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative is the nominative to the verb; but when a nominative intervenes, the relative is governed by the verb, or some other word in the sentence.

5.

Any verb may have the same case *after*, as *before* it, when both words refer to the same person or thing.

6.

Substantives signifying the same person or thing, agree in case.

EXERCISES.

Ego sum. Tu es. Ille est. Nos sumus. Vos estis. Illi sunt.—Ego eram. Tu eras. Ille erat. Nos eramus. Vos eratis. Illi erant.—Ego fui. Tu fuisti. Ille fuit. Nos fuimus. Vos fuistis. Illi fuerunt.—Ego fueram. Tu fueras. Ille fuerat. Nos fueramus. Vos fueratis. Illi fuerant. Ego ero. Tu eris. Ille erit. Nos erimus. Vos eritis. Illi erunt.—Ego sim. Tu sis. Ille sit. Nos simus. Vos sitis. Illi sint.—Ego essem. Tu esses. Ille esset. Nos essemus. Vos essetis. Illi essent.—Ego fuerim. Tu fueris. Ille fuerit. Nos fuerimus. Vos fueritis. Illi fuerint.—Ego fuissem. Tu fuisses. Ille fuisset. Nos fuissemus. Vos fuissetis. Illi fuissent.—Ego fuero.

Ego, *I.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Ego, *I,*	*N.* Nōs, *we,*
G. Mei, *of me,*	*G.* Nostrûm, *v.* nostri, *of us,*
D. Mĭhi, *to me,*	*D.* Nōbis, *to us.*
A. Mē, *me,*	*A.* Nōs, *us,*
V. ———	*V.* ———
A. Mē, *with me;*	*A.* Nōbis, *with us.*

Tu, *thou.*

N. Tu, *thou,* or *you,*	*N.* Vōs, *ye,* or *you,*
G. Tŭi, *of thee,* or *you,*	*G.* Vestrûm, *v.* vestri, *of you,*
D. Tĭbi, *to thee,* or *you,*	*D.* Vōbis, *to you,*
A. Tē, *thee,* or *you,*	*A.* Vōs, *you,*
V. Tū, *O thou,* or *you,*	*V.* Vōs, *O ye,* or *you,*
A. Te, *with thee,* or *you;*	*A.* Vōbis, *with you.*

Sui, *of himself, of herself, of itself.*

N. ———	*N.* ———
G. Sŭi, *of himself,* &c.	*G.* Sŭi, *of themselves,*
D. Sĭbi, *to himself,* &c.	*D.* Sĭbi, *to themselves,*
A. Sē, *himself,* &c.	*A.* Sē, *themselves,*
V. ———	*V.* ———
A. Sē, *with himself,* &c.	*A.* Sē, *with themselves.*

Ille, illa, illud, *he, she, it,* or *that.*

N. Illĕ,	illă,	illŭd,	*N.* Illī,	illæ,	illă,
G. Illius,	illius,	illius,	*G.* Illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,
D. Illī,	illī,	illī,	*D.* Illīs,	illīs,	illis,
A. Illŭm,	illăm,	illŭd,	*A.* Illōs,	illās,	illă,
V. Illĕ,	illă,	illŭd,	*V.* Illī,	illæ,	illă,
A. Illō,	illâ,	illō;	*A.* Illis,	illīs,	illīs.

In the same manner decline iste, ista, istud, *that*

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *himself, herself, itself.*

N. Ipsĕ,	ipsă,	ipsŭm,	*N.* Ipsē,	ipsæ,	ipsă,
G. Ipsius,	ipsius,	ipsius,	*G.* Ipsorum,	ipsarum,	ipsorum,
D. Ipsi,	ipsi,	ipsi,	*D.* Ipsis,	ipsis,	ipsis,
A. Ipsum,	ipsam,	ipsum,	*A.* Ipsos,	ipsas,	ipsa,
V. Ipse,	ipsa,	ipsum,	*V.* Ipsi,	ipsæ,	ipsa,
A. Ipso,	ipsa,	ipso;	*A.* Ipsis,	ipsis,	ipsis.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *this.*

N. Hic,	hæc,	hoc,	*N.* Hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G. Hŭjŭs,	hŭjus,	hŭjus,	*G.* Hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum,
D. Huic,	huic,	huic,	*D.* His,	his,	his,
A. Hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	*A.* Hos,	has,	hæc,
V. Hic,	hæc,	hoc,	*V.* Hi,	hæ,	hæc,
A. Hoc,	hac,	hoc;	*A.* His,	his,	his.

Is, eă, ĭd, *he, she, it,* or *that.*

N. Is,	eă,	ĭd,	*N.* Ii,	eæ,	eă,
G. Ejus,	ējus,	ējus,	*G.* Eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
D. Ei,	ĕi,	ĕi,	*D.* Iīs, *v.* eīs, &c.		
A. Eŭm,	eăm,	ĭd,	*A.* Eōs,	eās,	eă,
V. ——	——	——	*V.* ——	——	——
A. Eō,	eâ,	eō;	*A.* Iīs, *v.* eīs, &c.		

Quis, quæ, quod, *v.* **quid**, *who? which? what?*

N. Quis,	quæ,	quod, *v.* quid,	*N.* Quī,	quæ,	quæ,
G. Cūjus,	cujus,	cujus,	*G.* Quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
D. Cuī,	cui,	cui,	*D.* Queīs, *v.* quĭbus, &c.		
A. Quem,	quam,	quod, *v.* quid,	*A.* Quōs,	quās,	quæ,
V. ——	——	——	*V.* ——	——	——
A. Quō,	quā,	quō;	*A.* Queīs, *v.* quĭbus, &c		

Qui, quæ, quod, *who, which, that.*

N. Quī,	quæ,	quod,	*N.* Qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. Cūjus,	cūjus,	cūjus,	*G.* Quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
D. Cuī,	cuī,	cuī,	*D.* Queīs, *v.*	quibus, &c.	
A. Quĕm,	quăm,	quŏd,	*A.* Quōs,	quās,	quæ,
V. ——	——	——	*V.* ——	——	——
A. Quō,	quā,	quō;	*A.* Queīs, *v.*	quĭbus, &c	

SUM, an irregular neuter verb, is thus CONJUGATED.

Pres. Indic.	*Perf. Indic.*	*Pres. Infin.*	*Part. Fut.*
Sum,	fui,	esse,	futurus, *To be.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *am.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. Sum, *I am,*	Sŭmus, *we are,*
2. Es, *thou art,*	Estis, *ye are,*
3. Est, *he is;*	Sunt, *they are.*

Imperfect, *was.*

1. Eram, *I was,*	Erāmus, *we were,*
2. Eras, *thou wast,*	Erātis, *ye were,*
3. Erăt, *he was;*	Erānt *they were.*

Perfect, *have been.*

1. Fuī, *I have been,*	Fuĭmŭs, *we have been,*
2. Fuisti, *thou hast been,*	Fuistis, *ye have been,*
3. Fuit, *he has been;*	Fuērunt *v.* fuēre, *they have been.*

Pluperfect, *had been.*

1. Fuĕrăm, *I had been,*	Fuĕrāmus, *we had been,*
2. Fuĕrās, *thou hadst been,*	Fuĕrātĭs, *ye had been,*
3. Fuĕrăt, *he had been;*	Fuĕrānt, *they had been.*

Future, *shall,* or *will be.*

1. Ero, *I shall be,*	Erĭmus, *we shall be,*
2. Erĭs, *thou shalt be,*	Erĭtĭs, *ye shall be,*
3. Erĭt, *he shall be;*	Erŭnt, *they shall be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *may,* or *can be.*

1. Sim, *I may be,*	Sīmus, *we may be,*
2. Sis, *thou mayest be,*	Sītis, *ye may be,*
3. Sit, *he may be;*	Sint, *they may be.*

Imperfect, *might, could, would,* or *should be.*

1. Essĕm, *I might be,*	Essēmus, *we might be,*
2. Essēs, *thou mightest be,*	Essētis, *ye might be,*
3. Essĕt, *he might be;*	Essent, *they might be.*

Perfect, *may have been.*

1. Fuĕrĭm, *I may have been,*	Fuĕrĭmus, *we may have been,*
2. Fuerĭs, *thou mayest have been,*	Fuerĭtis, *ye may have been,*
3. Fuerĭt, *he might have been;*	Fuerĭnt, *they may have been.*

Pluperfect, *might, could, would,* or *should have been.*

1. Fuĭssem, *I might have been,*	Fuissēmus, *we might have been,*
2. Fuissēs, *thou mightest have been,*	Fuissētis, *ye might have been,*
3. Fuisset, *he might have been;*	Fuissent, *they might have been.*

Future, *shall have been.*

1. Fuĕro, *I shall have been,*	Fuĕrĭmus, *we shall have been,*
2. Fuĕris, *thou shalt have been,*	Fuĕrĭtis, *ye shall have been,*
3. Fuĕrĭt, *he shall have been;*	Fuĕrĭnt, *they shall have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. Es, *v.* esto, *Be thou,*	Estĕ, *v.* estōtĕ, *Be ye,*
3. Esto, *Let him be;*	Sunto, *Let them be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.	Esse, *To be.*
Perf.	Fuisse, *To have been.*
Fut.	Esse futūrus, a, um, *To be about to be.*
	Fuisse futūrus, a, um, *To have been about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

Future. Futūrus, a, um, *About to be.*

EXERCISES.

Tu fueris. Ille fuerit. Nos fuerimus. Vos fueritis. Illi fuerint.—Es, *v.* esto tu. Esto ille. Este, *v.* estote vos. Sunto illi.—Esto illa. Illa sit. Ego sum discipulus. Tu es bonus puer. Ille est vir. Pax est jucunda. Divitiæ sunt perniciosæ. Veritas est magna. Charitas est benigna. Virtus est pretiosa gemma. Principium est difficile. Nos omnes essemus meliores. Nulla potentia est longa. Senes sunt cauti. Cives sunt candidi. Boni homines erunt beati. Improbi viri essent miseri. Pueri sint callidi. Esto perpetua. Hoc est pulchrum facinus. Puer, qui est studiosus, erit doctus. Puella quæ est amabilis, erit amata. Pueri, qui sunt studiosi erunt docti. Puellæ, quæ sunt amabiles, erunt amatæ. Illi sunt boni homines, qui sunt justi, probi, clementes, pii, benigni, sobrii. Hic est manus, qui fuit victus. Hæc est domus, quæ fuit deserta. Hoc est negotium, quod fuit per fectum. Vir, cujus opus est. Viri, quorum opus est Is est vir honestus. Ea est mulier pulcherrima. Hæ puellæ sunt formosæ; illæ sint amabiles. Hic vir est amatus. Iste vir est exosus. Homo es. Homines sumus. Vita est brevis. Mors est certa. Quis musicus est hic? Quæ mulier est ea? Quid negotium est illud? Cujus opus est id? Hoc est opus America est mea patria. Georgius est meus carus amicus. Petrus est docilis. Johannes fuit juvenis. Cicero, orator, fuit consul. Horatius, homo ingeniosus, fuit poeta. Si Washington, dux, fuisset rex Virgilius, poeta, fuit ve recundus.

RULES.

7. One substantive governs another signifying a different person or thing, in the genitive.

8. If the latter of two substantives have an adjective of praise or dispraise, joined with it, it may be put either in the genitive or ablative.

9. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive, governs the genitive.

10. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative.

11. Verbal adjectives, and such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive.

12. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural.

13. Adjectives signifying *profit* or *disprofit*, *likeness* or *unlikeness*, &c. govern the dative.

14. These adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *prœditus*, and *contentus*; also, *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, govern the ablative.

15. Adjectives, signifying *plenty*, or *want*, govern the genitive, or ablative.

16. *Sum*, when it signifies *possession*, *property*, or *duty*, governs the genitive.

17. *Sum*, taken for *habeo*, *(to have,)* governs the dative of a person.

18. *Sum*, taken for *Affero*, *(to bring,)* governs two datives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

Jesus Christus, filius Dei, est Salvator mundi. Cicero, orator, fuit consul Romæ. Numa Pompilius erat rex secundus Romanorum. Ille fuit vir magnæ prudentiæ. Ego sum publicus nuncius populi Romani; verbis meis fides sit. Ancus Marcius erat nepos Numæ Pompilii, similis avo æquitate et religione. Augustus est puer probâ indole. Petrus est vir minimi pretii. Est homo nullius stipendii. Est ager trium jugerum. Es bono animo. Capite aperto est. Cervice obvoluta est. Johannes est adolescens eximia spe, summæ virtutis. Paulus est vir præstantis ingenii—præstanti ingenio—præstans ingenio—præstans ingenii. Os humerosque deo similis sit. Esto forti animo. Vox populi est vox Dei. Hæc est domus Cæsaris. Facilis est descensus Averni. Multum pecuniæ est illi. Plus eloquentiæ est tibi. Est nobis minus sapientiæ. Est vobis nihil sinceri. Quid rei est illis? Quicquid ingenii sit mihi. Per hoc noctis. Ad hoc ætatis. Circum id loci. Libri permulti sunt mihi. Eadem mens est mihi, eadem tibi. Nobis est opus pecuniâ. Vobis est usus viribus. Dux nobis opus sit. Nobis exempla opus sunt. Est regis. Pecus est Melibœi. Hæc sunt hominis. Temeritas est florentis ætatis, prudentia senectutis. Tuum est. Meum fuisset. Suum sit. Vestrum fuerit. Nostrum erit. Est regium. Est humanum. Lex naturæ est universalis. Illi est summa prudentia juris. Quorum magna pars fui. Liber mei est novus. Liber tui est novellus. Salus populi est suprema lex. Hoc est tuum munus. Hoc est tui muneris. Liber deest mihi. Libri desunt mihi. Præfuit exercitui. Adfuit precibus. Mali nec prosunt sibi, nec aliis. Est mihi voluptati. Est tibi exemplo. Horatius fuit cupidus pacis. Cato fuit tenax propositi. Cicero fuit amans patriæ. Cæsar fuit peritus literarum. Petrus est memor beneficiorum. Petrus est avidus gloriæ. Paulus est ignarus fraudis. Memor esto brevis ævi. Catilina fuit audax ingenii. Est sapientis esse contentum sua sorte. Hic est assuetus labore in omnia. Nos sumus insueti moribus Romanis. Fœminæ sunt desuetæ bello, et triumphis. Una sororum fuit pulchra. Ille est aliquis philosophorum. Uterque nostrum fuit ibi. Quis vestrum est senior fratrum? Cicero fuit optimus consulum. Sunt lecti juvenum. O sancte deorum. Ille est vir præstantissimus nostræ civitatis. Poeta est utilis urbi. Hic puer est similis suo patri. Lex fuit perniciosa Reipublicæ. Censura est facilis cuivis. Hoc est commune mihi tecum. Mens est mihi sibi conscia recti. Regi dicto audiens erat. Superbia est aliena dignitati. Nemo est immunis vitio. Omnes sunt proni ad vitium. Hic puer est dignus laude. Sapiens est contentus sua sorte. Dux est præditus virtute. Stultus est captus mente. Homo superbus sapientiâ est stultissimus. Æneas fuit ortus Anchise. Omnia plena sunt Dei. Non inopes temporis, sed prodigi sumus. Lentulus non est verbis inops. Omnium consiliorum ejus, participes fuimus. Quando erimus vacui molestiâ? Nihil insidiis est vacuum

Ille est doctus grammaticæ. Hic est patiens algoris. Sapientia est melior gemmis. Nihil est dulcius libertate. Nihil fuit facundius Cicerone. Tu es nihilo melior alio. Amor non est medicabilis herbis. Via lethi est calcanda semel omnibus. Hic liber est mei fratris. Hæc toga erat tua. Jacobus et Johannes, qui sunt mortui, fuerunt fratres. Jupiter est omnibus idem. Peripatetici quondam iidem erant qui Academici. Est animus erga te idem ac fuit. Res est soliciti plena timoris amor. Maxima quæque domus servis est plena superbis. Amor et melle et felle est fœcundissimus. Anna est amanda omnibus. Mors est terribilis malis. Pax est optabilis omnibus. Adhibenda est nobis diligentia. Bella matribus detestata sunt. Deus est venerandus et colendus à nobis. Mors Crassi est à multis defleta. Pedibus longè melior fuit Lycus. Dum anima est, spes est. Donec eris felix, sunt tibi multi amici. Fuit olim quasi ego sum, senex. Nihil abest quin sim miserrimus. En hostis. Ecce signum. Ecce miserum hominem. Ecce duas aras tibi, Daphni. O vir bone! O vir fortis atque amicus! Heu me miserum! Heu vanitas humana! Hei mihi! Vœ vobis! Proh hominum fidem! Proh Sancte Jupiter! Et ego sum in culpa, et tu. Nihil hic nisi carmina desunt. Mens, ratio, et consilium in senibus sunt. Etsi sit liberalis, tamen non est profusus. Non bonus est somnus de prandio. Ah virgo infelix! O crudelis Alexi! Es penes te? Lentæ adversus imperia aures fuerunt. Hic illius arma, hic currus fuit. Timor Domini est initium sapientiæ. Facies rerum est mutata. Quantum nummi sit ubivis, tantum fidei est etiam ibidem. Ubi plurimum est studii, ibi est minimum strepitûs. O, Fons Blandusiæ, splendidior vitro. Nil mortalibus arduum est. Sine amore jocisque nil est jucundum. O cives, quærenda pecunia est primum, Virtus post nummos. Sapientissimus philosophorum est aliquando deceptus. Heliodorus fuit longè doctissimus Græcorum. Stertinius, octavus sapientium, erat Stoicus. Satis est verborum ubique gentium, ergo virtutis. Rex, Solomon, fuit sapientior omnibus. Pax est melior bello. Cicero fuit candidior Cæsare. Dux est major milite. Cortex Peruvianus est efficax contra febrim. Fuit Ciceroni mentis ad omnia capacitas. Sunt ebrii omnes ad unum. In vino est veritas. Tu es homo ad unguem factus. Hæ sunt herbæ ad lunam messæ. Ira est brevis, et ad tempus. Nebula erat ad multum diei. Est mihi fides apud illum. Adversus infimos justitia est servanda. Sunt clamosi ab ovo usque ad mala. Est calor à sole. Fuissent omissiores de re. Erat Caio Mario ingenuarum artium et liberalium studiorum contemptor animus. Lucius Cornelius Scylla, patricio genere natus, bello Jugurthino quaestor Marii fuit; vir ingentis animi, cupidus voluptatum, sed gloriæ cupidior; literis Græcis atque Latinis eruditus, et virorum literatorum multùm amans. Est mihi nomen Alexandro. Ducitur honori tibi. Id vertitur mihi vitio. Petrus et Johannes, qui sunt docti, fuerunt studiosi.

RULES.

19. The compounds of *Sum*, except *Possum*, govern the dative.

20. Words of the comparative degree govern the ablative when *quam* is omitted in Latin.

21. Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.

22. Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive.

23. The prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the accusative.

24. The prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the ablative.

25. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

26. The interjections *O*, *heu*, *proh*, and some others, govern the nominative, accusative, or vocative.

27. The interjections *hei* and *væ*, govern the dative.

28. The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *aut*, *neque*, and some others, connect like cases and modes.

29. Two, or more substantives singular, connected by a conjunction, may have a verb, adjective, or relative plural to agree with them.

30. The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, &c. govern the subjunctive mood.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

EXERCISES.

Accuso, *to accuse.*
Adumbro, *to shade.*
Ædifico, *to build.*
Æstimo, *to value.*
Animo, *to encourage.*
Appello, *to call.*
Apto, *to fit.*
Assevero, *to affirm.*
Bello, *to war.*
Beo, *to bless.*
Calco, *to tread.*
Castigo, *to chastise.*
Celo, *to conceal.*
Clamo, *to cry.*
Cogito, *to think.*
Comparo, *to compare.*
Considero, *to consider*
Contamino, *to pollute*
Creo, *to create.*
Curo, *to care.*
Damno, *to condemn.*
Declaro, *to declare.*
Decoro, *to adorn.*
Dedico, *to dedicate.*
Desolo, *to lay waste.*
Dono, *to present.*
Educo, *to bring up.*
Emendo, *to amend.*
Erro, *to wander.*
Exploro, *to search.*
Extrico, *to disentangle.*
Fabrico, *to frame.*
Fascino, *to bewitch.*
Fatigo, *to weary.*
Festino, *to hasten.*
Flagito, *to dun.*
Flo, *to blow.*
Frio, *to crumble.*
Fugo, *to put to flight.*
Guberno, *to govern.*
Gusto, *to taste.*
Honoro, *to honour.*
Jacto, *to boast.*
Immolo, *to sacrifice.*
Impero, *to command.*
Inchŏo, *to begin.*
Indico, *to show.*
Instigo, *to push on.*
Intro, *to enter.*
Invito, *to invite.*
Jubilo, *to shout for joy.*
Juro, *to swear.*
Laboro, *to labour.*
Lacero, *to tear.*
Latro, *to bark.*
Lego, *to send an embassy*
Libo, *to taste.*
Libero, *to free.*
Ligo, *to bind.*
Mando, *to command.*
Memoro, *to tell.*
Migro, *to remove.*
Muto, *to change.*
Narro, *to relate.*
Navigo, *to sail.*
Nego, *to deny.*
Nomino, *to name.*
Nudo, *to make bare.*
Numero, *to count.*
Obsecro, *to beseech.*
Odore, *to perfume.*
Onero, *to load.*
Opto, *to wish.*

FIRST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Perf. Indic.*	*Supine.*	*Pres. Infin.*
Amo.	ămāvi,	ămātum,	ămāre, *To love.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *love, do love,* or *am loving.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. Amo, *I love,*	Amāmus, *we love,*
2. Amas, *thou lovest,*	Amatis, *ye love,*
3. Amat, *he loves;*	Amant, *they love.*

Imperfect, *loved, did love,* or *was loving.*

1. Amābam, *I loved,*	Amabamus, *we loved,*
2. Amabas, *thou lovedst,*	Amabatis, *ye loved,*
3. Amabat, *he loves;*	Amabant, *they loved.*

Perfect, *loved, have loved,* or *did love.*

1. Amāvi, *I have loved,*	Amāvĭmus, *we have loved,*
2. Amavisti, *thou hast loved,*	Amavistis, *ye have loved,*
3. Amavit, *he has loved;*	Amavērunt, *v.*—ēre, *they have loved*

Pluperfect, *had loved.*

1. Amāvĕram, *I had loved,*	Amaveramus, *we had loved,*
2 Amaveras, *thou hadst loved,*	Amaveratis, *ye had loved,*
3. Amaverat, *he had loved;*	Amaverant, *they had loved.*

Future, *shall,* or *will love.*

1. Amābo, *I shall love,*	Amabĭmus, *we shall love,*
2. Amabis, *thou shalt love,*	Amabitis, *ye shall love,*
3. Amabit, *he shall love;*	Amabunt, *they shall love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *may,* or *can love.*

1 Amem, *I may love,*	Amēmus, *we may love,*
2. Ames, *thou mayest love,*	Ametis, *ye may love,*
3. Amet, *he may love;*	Ament, *they may love.*

Imperfect, *might, would, could,* or *should love.*

1. Amārem, *I might love,*	Amarēmus, *we might love,*
2. Amares, *thou mightest love,*	Amaretis, *ye might love,*
3. Amaret, *he might love;*	Amarent, *they might love.*

Perfect, *may have loved.*

1. Amāverim, *I may have loved,*	Amaverĭmus, *we may have loved,*
2. Amaveris, *thou mayest have loved,*	Amaveritis, *ye may have loved,*
3. Amaverit, *he may have loved;*	Amaverint, *they may have loved.*

Pluperfect, *might, would, could,* or *should have loved.*

1. Amāvissem, *I might have loved,*	Amavissemus, *we might have loved,*
2. Amavisses, *thou mightest have loved,*	Amavissetis, *ye might have loved,*
3. Amavisset, *he might have loved;*	Amavissent, *they might have loved.*

Future, *shall have loved.*

1. Amāvĕro, *I shall have loved,*	Amaverĭmus, *we shall have loved,*
2. Amaveris, *thou shalt have loved,*	Amaveritis, *ye shall have loved,*
3. Amaverit, *he shall have loved;*	Amaverint, *they shall have loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. Ama, *v.* amāto, *love thou,*	Amāte *v.* amatote, *love ye,*
3. Amāto, *let him love;*	Amanto, *let them love.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Amāre, *to love.* *Perf.* Amavisse, *to have loved.*
Fut. *Esse* amaturus, *to be about to love,* *Fuisse* amaturus, *to have been about to love.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Amans, *loving.* *Fut.* Amaturus, *about to love.*

GERUNDS.

Aman-dum-di-do-dum-do, *loving, of loving,* &c.

SUPINES.

Former. Amātum, *to love.* *Latter,* Amatu, *to love,* or *to be loved.*

QUESTIONS

ON

ADAM'S LATIN GRAMMAR;

SIMPLIFIED BY ALLEN FISK.

INTRODUCTION. (Page 67.)

What is grammar? Latin grammar?
What are the *rudiments* of grammar?
Of what does grammar treat?
Of what do sentences, words and syllables consist?
What four things make up the whole subject of grammar?

LETTERS.

What is a letter? What is orthography?
How many letters in Latin?
Which English letter is wanting in Latin?
Into what are letters divided?
How many vowels? How many consonants?
What is a vowel? What a consonant?
What is a simple sound? What is an articulate sound?
Into what are consonants divided?
Why is a *mute* so called? Which are the mutes?
And the semi-mutes? What is a semi-vowel?
Repeat them; and the *liquids*. Why so called?
How are the mutes and semi-vowels distinguished?
Which are the double consonants?
Of what is *x* made up? What is said of *z*?
What letters are found only in Greek words?
What is *h*?

DIPTHONGS.

What is a dipthong? a proper dipthong and an improper?
Repeat the proper; and the improper.
In the improper which vowel is heard?
How did the ancients write these vowels?

SYLLABLES.

What is a syllable? How many syllables in a word?
What is the exception? Why?
What is a *monosyllable?* a *dissyllable?* a *polysyllable?*
How are we directed in dividing words?
How are compound words divided?
How is a *long* syllable marked? how a short?
N. B. A circumflex accent marks a contraction.
See page 175 for the definition of *penult*, and *antepenult*; and page 182 for the accents, and learn the following

THREE RULES FOR ACCENTS.

1. All dissyllables have the accents on the first.
2. Long penultimates always have the accent on them.
3. Short penultimates throw the accent on the antepenultimate.

WORDS.

What are words? What is etymology? or analogy?
What are the divisions of words?
What is the *figure* of words? What the species?
What is a simple word?
What is a compound word?
What is a primitive word? and a derivative?
The classes of words are called what?

PARTS OF SPEECH.

How many and what are the parts of speech?
Which declined? and undeclined?
When is a word said to be declined?
What is termination? What are accidents?
To what is *declension* applied? and conjugation?
Which part of speech has the English more than the Latin?
What is said of the want of the article?

NOUN.

What is a noun? Is the adjective properly called a noun? or a different part of speech?
Why have the adjective and noun been comprehended under the same general name?

SUBSTANTIVE.

What is a substantive or noun?
The division of names? Explain each?
What is a genus or kind?
May a proper name be used for a common?
What third class of nouns may be added?
What is number? The singular? plural?
Explain the masculine, feminine, neuter and common gender.
How are relations expressed in English?
How in Latin?
How is a Latin noun declined?
How many genders? Name them?
cases? What are cases? Why so called?
numbers?
declensions? How distinguished?
What is the termination of the genitive singular in the first declension? In the second? In the third? The fourth? And the fifth?

GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION.

Repeat the first general rule.
What is the second? The third? The fourth?
What cases are alike? In neuters? In all nouns?
What is the remark on Greek nouns?
How are the cases of Latin nouns expressed in English?
What is the sign of the nominative? genitive? dative? accusative? vocative? ablative?
Of what case is *of*, the sign? to? for? with? in or by? O?

GENDER.

Explain what is meant by gender.
How do grammarians distinguish genders?
What is the first general rule for gender?
What is the second? and the third?
Repeat the list of nouns of the common gender.
Which of these change their termination?
Which nouns that are applied to both sexes are always masculine? and which neuter? and which feminine?

What is the first observation? Give examples.
What are these called?
What is the second observation?
What gender are the names of months, winds, rivers and mountains? Why? The exception?
What gender are the names of countries, towns, trees and ships? Why? The first exception? the second exception? the third? the fourth?
What is the third observation?
What is meant by doubtful gender?
What is meant by common gender?
Does common gender apply to any nouns except the names of males and females?

FIRST DECLENSION. (See page 10.)

How do nouns of this declension end?
How many terminations? What are they?
How do Latin nouns end? What are the terminations of the different cases?
Decline *musa*, without the English.
Decline *musa*, a song, with the English.
Decline *bona*, good, in the same manner.
Decline *bona musa*, a good song, with the English, singular and plural. Write it on the slate.
How do you say *a good song* in Latin? nominative and accusative?

of a good song?	*songs?*
to or for a good song?	*songs?*
O good song?	*songs?*
with a good song?	*songs?*

What case is *of a good song? to a good song? with, in*, or *by, a good song?*
Write on the slate the declension of the following words:

atra cura, black care. (See page 11.)
magna stella, a great star.
pretiosa gemma, a precious jewel.

with the English.
How do you say, *with black cares? O great stars? of precious jewels?*

EXCEPTIONS.

1. What nouns are masculine? Which neuter?
2. What are the forms of the old genitive?

The obsolete declension of these nouns was probably in this form:

	Ancient form.	*Modern form, contracted.*
Nom.	Aula,	Aula,
Gen.	Aulais,	Aulâs, Aulai, Aulæ,
Dat.	Aulai,	Aulai or Aulæ,
	Aulaem,	Aulam,
	Aula,	Aula,
	Aulae,	Aulâ,
	Plural.	
Nom.	Aulaes,	Aulae, Aulæ,
Gen.	Aulaeum, for euphony,	Aularum,
Dat.	Aulaibus,	Aulabus or Aulis,
Acc.	Aulaes, contracted	Aulas, &c.

What does a circumflex accent mark? (Line 11, page 191.)
What illustration is here found? Ans. Gen. *Aulâs*, like *familiâs*, and *aulâ*. For what is *aulâ* contracted. Ans. For *aulâe*. What other proof of this old form remains? Ans. The dative and ablative plural of the nouns mentioned in the third exception? What are those nouns? How declined? Why so declined? How many nouns are mentioned in the third exception? What others may be added? Ans. *Socia* and *Domina*. Write the declension of *filia*, daughter, in full.
Decline *formosa*, beautiful, like *musa*. Decline *formosa filia*, with the English.
How do you say in Latin, *a beautiful daughter? of a beautiful daughter? to a beautiful daughter?*
How do you say, *with* or *to beautiful daughters?*
Which terminations of the first declension are Greek? What gender? Decline *Æneas*. Has it any plural? Why not? (4th General rule.) How does the accusative vary? Decline *Ossa*. Where is *Ossa*? How is *Anchises* declined? Why does it want the plural? Decline *Penelope*. How many syllables has *Pe-nel'o-pe*? Why? (Ans. 2d question under syllables.)
How are Greek nouns in *es* and *e* changed? Give examples. How is the genitive plural contracted? What marks a contraction?

N. B. A Geographical Exercise, on the names mentioned in the Grammar may be introduced with advantage.

SECOND DECLENSION. (Page 10.)

How do nouns of this declension end?
How many terminations? Repeat them.
How many of these are Latin terminations?
How many Greek? Write an example of each.
What is the rule for gender?
What is the termination of the genitive? dat. and abl.? acc.? vocative? How many simple nouns in *ir*? and *ur*? What nouns lose *e* in the genitive? What is the example? Distinguish *lĭber*, bark, from *līber*, free, by the declension; by the quantity. How is *lĭber*, a book, pronounced? Ans. short *i*. How is *līber*, free, pronounced? Ans. long *i*. What examples in *us* and *um* are given? How are they declined? Write them. Write *bonus puer*, with the English in full.
What is the nominative case? the genitive? and the other cases?
What is the English of *bonus puer?*
What is the Latin of *a good boy?* and so on through the cases in Latin and English.
Decline and write *bonum donum, pulcher liber, benignus gener, doctus vir*, a learned man.

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

What nouns are feminine? To these what is added? Why? Other names of jewels and plants are what gender? What nouns are either masculine or feminine? What nouns are neuter? Which one masculine or neuter?

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

What is the rule for the vocative of proper names in *ius*, with *filius* and *genius*? Decline *Deus*.
What is the vocative of *Deus?* and of *meus?*
How do other nouns in *ius* make the vocative?
How do the poets make the vocative of nouns in *us?*
Does this occur in prose? Explain the contraction of nouns in the genitive singular? and plural?

GREEK NOUNS.

What terminations of the second declension are Greek, and how are they changed? What terminations are contracted?
How are nouns in *os* declined?
How do some neuters make the genitive plural?

THIRD DECLENSION.

How many final letters in the termination of nouns of this declension? How many peculiar to this declension? Name them. Which are common to other declensions? Which are Greek?
What are the terminations of the cases?
How are nouns of this declension known?
Decline the examples given on the 10th page.
What case is *sermonis?* Why? What case is *sermoni?* Can you write this declension with the English? How do you say *with speeches* in Latin? *of heads? to journeys? in seats? on rocks? with stones?* Why does *iter* make *itineris* in the genitive? Ans. Because contracted from *itiner*.
Decline *lenis sermo*, a mild speech. Write it.
Decline *felix iter*, a happy journey. Write it.

RULES FOR THE GENDER AND THE GENITIVE.

What is the first rule for the gender? for the genitive?
What is the second rule? First exception of nouns in *io?* Without a body? With a body?
Second exception of nouns in *do* and *go?* Which are feminine? Which masculine? What gender is *cupido?*
What is the third exception? Decline the irregular nouns mentioned. What are the obsolete nominatives? Write the declension of *turbo*, a whirlwind, and *Turbo*, the name of a man.
What is the fourth exception? Write the declension of *Dido*, both ways.
N. B. All nouns should be declined *backward* as well as *forward*.
What is the third rule? Write the eight exceptions.
What is said of *D?*
The fourth rule? Recite the four exceptions.
The fifth rule? How many nouns excepted?
The sixth rule? The first exception? What gender is *arbor?* What is the distinction between *tuber*, a tree and a fruit? decline both.
What is the second exception?
What is said of nouns in *ter?* Decline *Jupiter*.
What is the gender of *linter*, a boat?
What is the seventh rule? The first exception?
Recite the note. What is the second exception?
What is the eighth rule? The first exception? The second exception? The third exception?
Decline *Dares* and *Achilles*, names of men.
What is the ninth rule? The first exception?
Explain the difference between Latin and Greek nouns in *nis?*
What is the second exception?
What gender is *semis?* (See also note under rule 7.)
How many doubtfuls under the third exception?
What is the fourth exception? And the fifth?
What is the eleventh rule? The first exception? The second exception? The third exception?
Decline *glomus*, *Venus*, *vetus*, *Œdipus*, *Trupezus*, *tripus*.
What is the twelfth rule?
Thirteenth rule? Repeat all the nouns in *aes* and *aus*.
What are nouns in *aus?* How declined?
What is the fourteenth rule? and the five exceptions?
What is the fifteenth rule?
What is the sixteenth rule?
What gender are polysyllables in *ex* and *ax?*
What nouns are added? What excepted?
What is the second exception? The third?
Repeat the fourth exception, and decline and write the words.

DATIVE SINGULAR.

How did the dative singular formerly end? Examples.

ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

What nouns have *im?* What proper names of *cities?* of *rivers?* of *Gods?* How do these sometimes make the accusative?
What nouns have *em* or *im?*
How do Greek nouns form the accusative?
Repeat and write the five specifications.

ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

What nouns have *i* in the ablative? What *y* or *ye?*

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

When does the nominative plural end in *es?* in *is?* in *a?*

GENITIVE PLURAL.

When do nouns make *ium* in the genitive plural, and when *um?* Monosyllables in *as?* Polysyllables? Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increasing the genitive? Nouns ending in two consonants? which five excepted?
What is the third exception? Write the declension of *bos*, and contract it. Greek nouns? Which have the genitive in *on?*
Nouns which want the singular? Names of feasts?
How do the poets contract this case? How lengthen?

DATIVE PLURAL.

How do Greek nouns in *a* form the dative plural? from what nominative?
How do the poets form the dative plural?

ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

How do nouns which have *ium* in the genitive form the accusative plural?
If the accusative singular ends in *a*, how is the plural?
Decline and write Greek nouns through all cases.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

How do nouns of the fourth declension end?
Which are masculine? Which neuter, and which indeclinable? What are the terminations of the different cases?
How do you say *of a chariot? to a chariot? with a horn? to horns? with chariots? of a horn?*
What is the English of *cornuum? curribus? currus? currus? cornua? cornibus? cornu?*
What nouns in *us* are feminine? Which vary in gender? and which in declension?
What declension is *Capricornus?* and the compounds of *manus?*
Decline *domus*, a house, with the English.
What gender? decline *pulchra*, beautiful, with *domus*. How do you say, *a beautiful house? of a beautiful house? to a beautiful house? with beautiful houses? of beautiful houses?* What is the English of *pulchras domus? pulchris domibus?*
What is the distinction between *domus* and *domi?*
What nouns make *ubus* in the dative, and ablative plural? and what *ibus?*
How is *Jesus* declined? write it.
To which declension did the nouns of this declension anciently belong? Write the old form.
What cases are contracted? How is the genitive in some writers? and the dative? and the genitive plural?

FIFTH DECLENSION.

How do nouns of the fifth declension end? What gender? Decline *res*, a thing. And *bona*, good And *bona res*, a good thing. How do you say with *good things?*
What nouns are excepted in the gender? How do the poets make the genitive? and the dative?
How many nouns of the fifth declension?
To which declension did they formerly belong?
What cases are often wanting? How do these nouns end? How many in *es?* Which are they? How many in *ies*, not of this declension? Name them.
Write the declension of *quies* and *requies*.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

How many classes of irregular nouns?

VARIABLE NOUNS.

How do nouns vary? What are heterogeneous nouns?
Repeat those which are masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural. What are these supposed to be? What is understood?
What is the second division of the heterogeneous nouns?

What is the third? and the fourth? and the fifth? and the sixth?
Repeat the nouns under each division. What are heteroclites? Repeat them.

DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

How many ways are nouns defective?
Repeat the six ways, with examples, of nouns defective in cases.
Repeat the eight ways, with examples, of nouns defective in number. What means *castrum?* Of what noun is it the singular? and *literæ?*

REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Repeat the eight ways, with examples, of redundant nouns.

DIVISION OF NOUNS, &c.

What is a collective noun? a patronymic?
How do names of men end? and of women?
What is a patrial or gentile noun?
What are patrials to be considered?
What is an abstract noun? What are concretes?
How do abstracts end? What is said of them?
What is a diminutive? Are more than one derived from the same primitive? Examples.
How do they end? Of what gender?
What is an amplificative? How do they end?
What is a verbal noun? What is said of them?
How do they end?

ADJECTIVES.

What is an adjective? Ans. A word which qualifies or specifies a noun.
Can an adjective make full sense by itself?
How are adjectives varied?
Of what declension are they? What exception?
What are the terminations of the genders? and cases? and numbers? Decline *bonus* and *tener*.
What compounds have this form? What letter is often dropped? Give the example. What has *dexter?*
What adjectives have the genitive in *ius*, and dative in *i?* What are these adjectives, except *totus*, called? How anciently declined? How is an adjective properly declined? How do we say *a good man* in Latin? *a good woman? a good thing?*
What words are here understood?
Of how many terminations are adjectives of the third declension?
Decline an adjective of one termination? of two terminations? of three terminations?
Repeat the two rules.
Exception 1. What adjectives have *e* in the ablative?
Exception 2. What others and what parts wanting?
What is the third exception? and the fourth?
Remarks.—What is the first? second? third? fourth? fifth? sixth? seventh? eighth? ninth?

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

How many classes? What are they called?
Repeat the cardinal? Which want the singular?
When is *unus* used in the plural?
Decline *duo* and *tres*. Decline *ambo*.
Which cardinal numbers are indeclinable?
Which are declined? How is *mille* used?
When used as a substantive, how declined?
When used as an adjective how? to express more than one thousand?
What are the ordinal numbers? Repeat them.
The distributive? and the numeral adverbs?
What are the multiplicative numbers?
What are the interrogative words? Which are indeclinable?
To these numerals what may be added?

COMPARISON.

What does comparison of adjectives express.
What adjectives are compared? How many degrees of comparison? Explain each.
How is the comparative formed? The superlative? If the positive ends in *er?* Of what declension is the comparative? and the superlative?

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

Compare *bonus, malus, magnus, parvus, multus.*
For what is *major* contracted? Ans. *Ma(gn)ior.* And *maximus?* Ans. *Magnissimus.*
Repeat and compare those that have *limus.*
Compare those that have the superlative irregular.
Compare the compounds in *dicus*, &c.
Compare *nequam.*
Are all adjectives compared that are capable of having their signification increased?
Which want the positive? Which the comparative? Which the superlative?
Supply the superlative of *juvenis* or *adolescens.* Of *senex.*
What other adjectives want the superlative?
What are only comparative?
What adjectives not compared at all?
How is the defect supplied?
Is this form used for regular adjectives?

PRONOUN.

What is a pronoun?
What do they serve to point out? They serve what else? Simple pronouns how many? Substantives how many? Adjectives how many?
What part of *ego* is wanting? How is *mihi* contracted? Write it. For what are *nostrum* and *vestrum* contracted?
What is the difference in the use of *nostrum vestrum* and *nostri vestri?*
How are the English pronouns *he, she, it,* expressed in Latin? Distinguish *ille, iste,* and *hic,* and *is.*
What do *ille* and *iste* imply?
To what is *ipse* joined, and what force has it? Decline it.
What are the other pronouns? How declined?
How are *nostras, vestras,* and *cujas,* declined?
Distinguish *cujus* genitive, *cujas,* and *cujus,* nominative.
What does *meus* make in the vocative?
What has *qui* in the ablative? What is remarkable?
Explain the six classes of pronouns.

COMPOUND PRONOUNS

In how many ways are pronouns compounded?
Of what is *idem* compounded? How declined?
What pronouns are most frequently compounded?
How is *quis* placed in composition?
How is *qui?* Decline the first class. Decline *quisquis.* What part of it is wanting? What is said of *quisquam?* What is said of the compound of *quis* in which *quis* is placed last? How do they make the feminine? Which are read separately? Decline the second class.
What compounds have *quis* in the middle?
What are the compounds of *qui?* Decline them.
What have these compounds in the dative plural?
What has *quis* in comic writers? How is *quidam* declined? Distinguish *quod* and *quid.* Which are reckoned substantives, and why?

VERB.

What is a verb? Why called *the word* by way of eminence? How may a verb be distinguished?
Do we find the same word used as different parts of speech? How many classes of verbs with respect to their signification? Why?
What is an active verb? A passive? A neuter?

What is a transitive verb?
Are any verbs used in two senses?
What are substantive verbs?
What is a participle? What a gerund? supine?
How is a verb declined? How many voices? modes? tenses? numbers? persons? Define each.
When is a verb said to be conjugated?

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

How many conjugations? How numbered? How distinguished? Exception?
How are the different conjugations likewise distinguished?
Recite the terminations of each mode and tense, active and passive.
What is the observation on the imperative mode?
Which tenses in the passive voice are compounded?
Are the personal pronouns in Latin usually understood? Why?
What however, should the learner be accustomed to do?
What is the remark on the second person singular?

FORMATION OF VERBS.

How many principal parts? Name them.
Repeat the verses. Exemplify.
What other way of forming?
When is a verb commonly said to be conjugated?
What is the theme? What are the radical letters?
What terminations? Exemplify.

SIGNIFICATION OF THE TENSES.

Which tenses express continuance of action?
Which express complete action?
How is past time expressed in the passive? Examples.
How is the verb *sum* employed?
When do we chiefly use this form?
What is the first observation? the second? third? fourth? fifth? sixth?
Exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mood.
Of what is *scriptum iri* made up?
How is the future infinitive sometimes expressed?
What is the seventh observation?
What is the note?

FORMATION OF THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE.

What is the first general rule?
First exception? Second exception?
Second general rule?

SPECIAL RULES.

First Conjugation.

What is the rule for the preterite and supine?
Repeat the five exceptions?

Second Conjugation.

What is the rule?
How neuter verbs?
Which neuters regularly conjugated?
Which active want the supine?
Repeat the seven exceptions.

Third Conjugation.

What is the rule for verbs in *io*?
When do the compounds of *facio* retain the *a*?
When do they change it into *i*?
How are the former conjugated? and how the latter?
Which compounds of *facio* are of the first conjugation?
Repeat the other verbs mentioned under this termination.
How are verbs in *uo* conjugated?
Repeat the two exceptions.
Repeat the rules for verbs in *bo*, with the two exceptions.
Repeat the rule for each termination, with the exceptions.
How are verbs of the fourth conjugation conjugated?
Repeat the six exceptions.

DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

What is a deponent verb? A common verb?
What were deponent verbs of old? Why so called?
How do they form the perfect participle?
Conjugate *lætor*. Decline it with the English.
Conjugate and decline *mercor*, *amplector* and *mentior*.
Are there any exceptions in the first conjugation?
Conjugate the exceptions in the second conjugation. And in the third conjugation. And in the fourth conjugation.
What are irregular verbs?
How many? Repeat them.
Of what are *nolo* and *malo* compounds?
How do you conjugate the compounds of *sum*?
How is *prosum*, to do good, conjugated?
Repeat the whole, with the English.
Of what is *prosum* compounded?
Decline it in full with the English, *I can* and *I am able.*
Decline *eo* with the English.
How are the compounds of *eo* conjugated?
What is said of the perfect?
Conjugate *veneo*. Of what is it compounded?
What is said of *ambio*? How is *eo* often rendered?
How is it used in the passive? How otherwise used?
How are *queo* and *nequeo* conjugated?
What parts of them are wanting?
Conjugate, decline with the English, and write the following verbs: *Volo, nolo, malo, fero, feror*, and the compounds of *fero*.
How do most verbs become irregular? (1st obs.)
For what is *nolo* contracted? *malo, fers, ferris?*
Repeat the second observation.
Conjugate, decline, and write *fio*. Is it active or passive? Of what verb is it the passive? Always? What is the distinction? What do we find?
What verbs are added to irregulars?
Repeat and conjugate the neuter passive verbs with *confido, diffido, mœreo.*
To these what may be referred? Repeat the three.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

What verbs are called defective? Preteritive verbs? Conjugate them. Instead of *odi* we say what? To these we add what? Repeat the sentence *furo*, to be mad, &c.
What are the principal defective verbs? Decline them. What is the note?
Explain the contractions of *sis, sultis, sodes, capsis.*
To what is *sodes* equivalent?

IMPERSONAL VERBS,

When is a verb called impersonal?
What have they before them in English. Repeat the four, in the active and passive.
Are they used in the imperative?
What part is used instead?
Repeat the five observations.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

What verbs are called redundant?
Conjugate, decline, and write *lavo*. Of what conjugation is it?
Repeat the five which are of the second and third. Repeat those which are of the third and fourth.
What verb is of the second and fourth?
Conjugate, decline, and write *Edo*. With what do several of its parts agree?

What verbs agree in the present, but are differently conjugated?
Which have a different quantity?
Which verbs agree in the preterite?
Which verbs agree in the supine?
Repeat the seven particulars of the obsolete conjution.

DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

From what are verbs derived?
What are denominative verbs? What imitative? Give examples.
Name the three kinds of verbs derived from other verbs?
What do frequentative verbs express? Of what conjugation are they? How formed?
Have deponent verbs frequentatives?
Give the examples of frequentatives irregularly formed?
Give examples of frequentatives formed from other frequentatives.
What is the remark on frequentatives?
What are inceptive verbs? How formed from verbs? How from nouns? Of what kind are they? What conjugation? What do they want?
What are desiderative verbs? How formed? Of what conjugation? What parts are wanting?
What are diminutive verbs? What intensive?
Name the four things with which verbs are compounded? What changes are made?

PARTICIPLE.

What is a participle? Why so called?
How are participles declined?
What do participles in *dus* import?
How many participles have Latin verbs?
What participles have not the Latins?
How is this defect supplied?
How many participles have neuter verbs?
Have some neuter verbs participles of the perfect tense?
What is the remark on neuter passive verbs?
What is said of *ausus?*
How many participles have deponent and common verbs? Give examples.
What is the remark on perfect participles of deponent verbs?
What is the remark on participles compounded with *in* signifying *not?* Explain the double sense and derivation of *incensus*, *infectus*, *invisus*, and *indictus*.
When do participles become adjectives? Examples.
May participles be used as nouns? What is understood?
What is said of many words in *alus*, *itus*, *utus?*
Explain verbal adjectives in *bundus*. How formed?
What do they denote?

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

What are gerunds? How declined? What case wanting? What is the remark on the gerunds? Give examples. What change of letters?
Supines have what signification? How may they be applied? What are their terminations?
In what sense are the supines used?

ADVERBS.

What is an adverb? How many classes?
How is the first class divided? How many fold are adverbs of place? Explain each, with examples.
How many fold are adverbs of time? Explain each, with examples?
How is the second class of adverbs divided?
What do those called absolute denote?
Explain the eleven kinds with examples.
What do those adverbs which are called comparative denote?
Explain the seven kinds with examples.

DERIVATION, COMPARISON AND COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

From what are adverbs derived first?
How do they end?
From what second? What is said of these?
What is the termination of those derived from the first and second declensions? and from the third?
How is the neuter of adjectives taken? What is often understood? From what third? Examples. From what fourth? Examples. What are these last? From what fifth?
What adverbs are compared?
How does the positive end? and the comparative? and the superlative? What is the remark?
How are adverbs compounded?
Repeat the four observations.

PREPOSITION.

What is a preposition?
How many govern the accusative? How many the ablative? Repeat them, with the English. Write them in order.
How many govern either case? Why are prepositions so called? Which are put after?
How are prepositions compounded? What signification do they retain? What four exceptions?
What are the inseparable prepositions?
What do they signify? Exemplify.

INTERJECTION.

What is an interjection? What sounds?
What do they express?
Exemplify the thirteen different kinds?
What are the remarks?

CONJUNCTION.

What is a conjunction? What is its use?
How many classes? Repeat them, with the examamples given.
Are the same words ever used as both adverbs and conjunctions? Give examples.
What conjunctions stand first in a sentence? What second?
Which may be used indifferently?
What was the division?
Which are the enclitics? Why so called?
Repeat the example from Horace.
When the enclitics are placed after a short syllable, do they affect pronunciation?
Repeat the example from Ovid.

SENTENCES.

What is a sentence?
What is syntax? What is the division of syntax? Define *concord.* Define *government.*
Repeat the nine general principles of syntax.
What is the first, second? &c.
What is the division of sentences? Define each.
What is there in a simple sentence?
What is the subject? What is the attribute? Give the examples.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

Of what is a compound sentence made up?
What is it called? What is a period?
What are members and clauses?
Repeat the first observation.
Repeat the second observation.
By what means are sentences compounded? Give the example.
How many are the concords? What is the first? What is the second? The third? The fourth?
Repeat the first concord.
What is the first rule? Repeat all the examples.
To what else does this rule apply?

What is the first observation? The second? The third? The fourth?
Is the substantive ever understood? What then is the adjective? Always?
Does an adjective ever supply the place of a substantive?
Does a substantive ever supply the place of an adjective?
What substantive is usually understood after the adjectives *primus*, *medius?* &c.
Ought the adjective or substantive to be placed first in Latin?
When is the substantive elegantly put first?
What is the second concord?
Repeat the second rule, with all the examples.
Of what person are *ego* and *nos? tu* and *vos? ille*, and all other words?
When is the nominative of the first and second person omitted? When expressed?
What supplies the place of the nominative?
What is sometimes added? Why?
What does the infinitive often supply?
With what may a collective noun be joined?
When a collective noun is joined with a singular verb, what does it express? And when joined with a plural?
Of what gender will be the plural adjectives when joined to collective nouns?
What is the third concord?
Repeat the third rule *cum omnibus exemplis*.
Repeat the fourth rule.
Repeat the ten observations *cum omnibus exemplis*.
Must the relative always have an antecedent?
What then may it be considered?
When the relative is placed between two substantives of different genders?
When the relative comes after two words of different persons?
How is the antecedent implied?
Is the relative ever omitted?
Does the case of the relative ever depend on the antecedent?
What is said of the adjective pronouns?
What is said of interrogative and indefinite adjectives?
What is remarked of the translation of the relative?
How is it construed?
What is subjoined to the construction of the relative?
In what case is the answer? Examples.
What is the meaning of the contraction *sc.?* Ans. *scilicet* for *scire licet*, you may know or understand.
Repeat the fifth rule, with all the examples.
What does this imply?
What verbs most frequently have the same case after them as before them? First? Second?
What cases only are placed after these verbs?
When these verbs are placed between two nominatives, with which do they agree?
What is the remark concerning the infinitive mood and the verb *licet?*
Explain the poetic licences which are not to be used in prose.
What is the fourth concord?
What does the sixth rule regard?
Repeat the sixth rule, with the examples.
What is the seventh rule, and what does it regard?
What relation is expressed by the genitive?
How is it elegantly turned?
When may the substantive be taken in an active and a passive sense?
What is the third observation?
Is the dative ever used for the genitive?
What is the fifth observation?
How is the genitive often rendered in English?
How are substantive pronouns governed?
And how adjective pronouns?
When a passive sense is expressed what do we use?
What have the possessives *meus, tuus*, &c. after them in the genitive?
When are the reciprocals *sui* and *suus* used?
The eighth rule? The examples?
How is the ablative here governed?
Repeat the phrases in which the genitive only is used; and those in which the ablative only is used; and those in which both are used.
Which occurs more frequently in prose?
Repeat the four ways of phrasing the same sense of the words *vir præstans ingenium*.
Describe the Greek construction. What is its name? What is understood? Give examples.
What does the ninth rule regard?
Repeat the ninth rule, with the examples.
Is this manner of expression elegant?
What do adjectives which thus govern the genitive generally signify?
What are *plus* and *quid* thought to be?
What do *nihil* and the neuter pronouns govern? and what not?
What do plural adjectives of the neuter gender govern?
What is the general remark?
What is the tenth rule? Examples?
What are *opus* and *usus?*
What is understood to govern the ablative?
Do they ever govern the genitive?
Is *opus* ever used as an adjective?
How is it elegantly used?
With what is *opus* joined, and how is it often placed?

GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

What does the ninth rule regard?
What is the ninth rule? Examples.
Repeat the five classes of adjectives which govern the genitive? What other adjectives are added?
How are verbals in *ns* used?
What is the difference between *patiens algoris* and *algorem?*
Do any of these vary their construction?
How is the genitive governed? Do these adjectives contain the force of substantives?
Twelfth rule? Examples?
What is the meaning of partitives?
To these add what?
Partitives agree in gender with what?
How is the genitive here governed?
How are partitives otherwise construed?
What case in the singular do partitives govern?
When are comparitives used? When superlatives?
What words are applied to two? What to three or more?
What is the second case governed by adjectives?
What does the thirteenth rule regard?
What is the thirteenth rule? Examples.
How otherwise may this rule be expressed?
Repeat the nine classes of adjectives which belong to this rule. What is added?
What do verbals in *bilis* and *dus* govern?
Do any passive participles govern the dative?
How are verbals in *dus* often construed? How perfect participles;
Is the dative properly governed by adjectives?
Have substantives ever a dative after them?
What adjectives govern the dative or the genitive?
What adjectives govern both cases?
What do adjectives of usefulness or fitness govern?
Have any of them a double construction?
Repeat the three ways in which adjectives signifying affections of the mind are construed?
How is *audiens* construed?

How are adjectives, signifying motion or tendency to a thing, construed?
What do *proprior* and *proximus* govern?
What does *idem* govern? What in prose? What would be improper? What do we likewise say?
What is the third case governed by adjectives?
The fourteenth rule? Examples.
How is this ablative governed?
What other case do *dignus*, *indignus*, &c. govern?
What is said of *macte?*
What does the fifteenth rule regard?
What is the fifteenth rule? Examples.
Which are construed with the genitive only?
Which with the dative only?
Which with the genitive more frequently?
Which with the dative more frequently?
Which with both promiscuously?
Which with a preposition?

Government of the Verb Sum.

What is the sixteenth rule? Examples.
What words are excepted? Repeat the three observations.
The seventeenth rule? Examples.
This is more frequently used than what other construction?
The eighteenth rule. Example.
What other verbs have two datives after them?
What are the three observations?
The nineteenth rule? Examples.
The twentieth rule? Examples.
What is the sign of the ablative in English?
What does the positive with *magis* govern?
How is the ablative here governed?
How otherwise may the comparative be construed?
When is the conjunction *quam* elegantly suppressed?
How is it elegantly placed?
For what is *nihil* elegantly used?
Is the comparative ever repeated?
How is the relation of sameness or equality expressed?
In what case is the defect or excess of measure put?
What does the twenty-first rule regard?
The twenty-first rule? Examples.
What do adverbs qualify? Are they also joined to nouns?
What is remarked of the position of the adverb?
To what are two negatives equivalent?
What chiefly deserves attention in adverbs?
Which are joined to the positive? Which to the comparative?
To what is *quam* joined? To what is *facile* joined?
To what is *longe* joined? With what mood is *cum* joined? *Dum? Dum* and *donec*, for *usquedum?*
Quoad for *quamdiu*, and *quoad* until?
Postquam or *posteaquam? Antequam?*
Quasi, *ceu?* &c.
Utinam, *o si*, *ut?*
Quin for *cur non?*
What does the twenty-second rule regard?
Repeat the twenty-second rule? Examples.
Repeat the adverbs of *time* that govern the genitive.
Repeat the adverbs of *place* that govern the genitive, and of *quantity*.
What is said of *instar* and *ergo?*
Why are these adjectives thought to govern the genitive?
What is remarked of *pridie?* And what of *en* and *ecce?*
In all these examples what is understood?
What do derivative adverbs govern? Give the examples.
What does the twenty-third rule regard?
Repeat the rule, including all the prepositions which govern this case.
Repeat the examples under each preposition, with the English.
What is the English of *ad astra?*
How do you say in Latin, *to the stars?* &c. &c.
Write the examples.
Is *ad* ever used adverbially?
What is the English of *apud? ante?* &c.
What are added to prepositions governing the accusative?
What is the twenty-fourth rule?
Repeat all the prepositions, with the English; and the examples?
What is the English of *a patre?*
How do you say in Latin, *from a father?*
What is the English of *absque?* &c.
Which preposition is placed after the noun? Ans. *Tenus.* Any other? Ans. Sometimes *cum*, and then it is joined to the word which it governs?
Does *tenus* ever govern any other case?
What is added to prepositions governing the ablative?
What is the twenty-fifth rule?
Distinguish *in* governing the accusative and the ablative? Examples.
What is the English of *sub? super?*
When are prepositions reckoned adverbs? Examples.
In these cases, what is implied?
What other adverbs are construed with the accusative?
Distinguish *a* and *e*, *ab* and *ex*. Examples.
Are prepositions ever understood? Is the word *governed* ever understood? Examples of both.
When is the latter more frequently the case?
The twenty-sixth rule? Examples.
How do you say, *O good man?* &c.
The twenty-seventh rule? Examples.
How do you say *ah me?* &c.
Which interjections are joined with the vocative?
Which with the accusative?
What is the remark on interjections?
What is understood in *heu me miserum?*
The twenty-eighth rule? Examples, with the English.
What is the first observation? The second? The third?
The twenty-ninth rule? Examples.
If the substantives are of different persons? genders?
To what is this applicable?
If the substantives signify things without life?
What is the *genus?*
What is the fourth observation? and the fifth?
What is remarked after the fifth observation?
What is the figure *syllepsis?* See page 166.
The thirtieth rule? Examples with English.
What is the remark on interrogatives? And *qui?*
What is the note?
When have *etsi*, *tametsi*, &c. the indicative, and when the subjunctive mood?
What is said of correspondent conjunctions?
When is *ut* elegantly omitted?
How are *ut* and *quod* distinguished?
When is *ut* taken in a negative sense?
When is *ne* taken in a positive sense?
What does the thirty-first rule regard?
Repeat the thirty-first rule, with the examples.
When do neuter verbs govern the accusative?
And when have they an ablative?
What is the second observation? The third? and the fourth?
What does the thirty-second rule regard?
Repeat it, with examples.
What other verbs govern the genitive? Are they construed differently?
How is the genitive after verbs really governed?
Repeat the thirty-third rule, with examples.

What is the thirty-fourth rule? What the thirty-fifth?
What do most verbs compounded with *super* govern?
What is the thirty-sixth rule? Repeat the five parts.
What verbs added? What excepted?
What is the first observation? What the second? Third?
To these what may be added?
What is the fourth observation? and the fifth?
What is the thirty-seventh rule? Examples.
What is the first observation? and the second?
What is the thirty-eighth rule? Examples.
What do *egeo* and *indigeo* govern?
How is the ablative here governed?
What is the thirty-ninth rule? Examples.
What are added to these? What does *potior* govern? and sometimes what other case?
What is the fortieth rule? Examples.
Is the preposition ever repeated? Which do not repeat?
Which construed only with the preposition?
Do any admit other prepositions? Do any govern two cases?
When does this rule take place?
What is the subject of the forty-first rule? Repeat it.
In what other manner is the infinitive governed?
Is the governing word ever understood?
Is the infinitive itself ever omitted?
What was the infinitive called by the ancients? Why?
In what cases does it supply the place of a noun? Give examples.
What different construction is used?
After what English verbs may *to* be omitted?
How may it be rendered in Latin? Give examples.
Which is better English, a house to let, or to *be* let?
What is the subject of the forty-second rule? Repeat it with the example.
What is the English sign?
What does the accusative depend upon?
Repeat the third observation. The fourth, the fifth.
What is the forty-third rule? Examples.
What do passive participles often govern?
Exosus, perosus, and *pertæsus?* Verbals in *bundus?*
Which verbs form a periphrasis?
Which are elegantly construed with a participle in *dus?*
How are gerunds construed? Examples.
Repeat the forty-fourth rule with the examples.
What does this gerund import? What is often understood? What is the forty-fifth rule? How is the gerund in *di* governed?
Is it construed with the genitive plural?
Forty-sixth rule. The gerund in *do* of the dative?
Is the adjective ever understood? Examples.
Is the gerund ever governed by verbs?
Forty-seventh rule. The gerund in *dum* of the accusative?
Is this gerund governed by other prepositions?
What does it depend upon and govern?
Forty-eighth rule. The gerund in *do* of the ablative?
What does this gerund resemble?
Which gerunds may be turned into participles?
In changing gerunds, what case is used? Examples in the genitive, dative, and accusative. What gerunds not changed? What exception?
Forty-ninth rule. Supine in *um?* How elegantly used?
When joined with *iri?*
Is this supine put after any other verbs?
How else may the meaning of this *supine* be expressed?

Fiftieth rule. Supine in *u?*
What is the first observation? The second? The third?
Repeat the four circumstances.
Fifty-first rule. Price, in what case? What exceptions?
When the substantive is added?
How is the ablative governed?
Fifty-second rule. Manner and cause? How is this ablative governed?
What is the ablative of concomitancy? What is the adjunct?
When we express the matter of which a thing is made?
Fifty-third rule. Measure or distance?
After what words is the accusative or ablative put? How governed?
When we express the measure of more things than one?
When is the genitive used? The accusative? The ablative?
The excess or difference?
Fifty-fourth rule. Time? Time when? How long?
Precise time? Continuance? Circumstances how expressed?
The abverb *abhinc?*
Fifty-fifth rule. Verbs governing two cases? Examples.
Which are the verbs of accusing? What other case have they after them? What is said of *crimen* and *caput?* Many verbs of accusing are how construed?
What do they sometimes govern?
Fifty-sixth rule. Examples. Which are the verbs of valuing?
Aestimo governs? *Equi* and *boni?* How is this genitive governed?
Fifty-seventh rule. Repeat the examples.
How is this rule otherwise expressed? Examples.
How else are these verbs construed?
What is the second observation?
Verbs, signifying motion or tendency to a thing.
Is the accusative ever understood? What is said of *to* in English?
Fifty-eighth rule. Examples.
Which are the verbs of asking? of teaching? *Celo?* How otherwise are these verbs construed?
How is the accusative of the thing governed?
Fifty-ninth rule. Example.
Which are the verbs of loading? of binding? of unloading? loosing? depriving? clothing? unclothing?
How is the ablative governed? Expressed? or understood?
Do any of these verbs govern other cases?
Sixtieth rule. Examples.
Has the active ever three cases?
Passive verbs how construed?
Preposition when understood? How is *per* used?
What cases do passive verbs govern? *Videor?*
Induor, amicior? &c. Neuter verbs? Passive impersonals, how applied?
What cases do they govern?
Sixty-first rule. Examples.
What verbs are used impersonally in the passive, and what case do they govern? Examples.
When are *potest, cœpit,* &c. used impersonally?
What verbs are used both personally and impersonally?
What is said of the pronoun it, and of the Latin infinitive? Is the dative understood?
Sixty-second rule. Examples. The paragraph?
In what case do some think *mea, tua, sua,* &c. to be?
With what nominatives are *interest* and *refert* joined?
With what adverbs are they construed?

What other case do they take? Are they ever put absolutely?
How is the genitive after the verbs *interest* and *refert* governed?
Sixty-third rule. Examples? How is the genitive here governed?
What may supply the place of the genitive?
What is frequently understood?
How are *miseret*, *pœnitet*, &c. used?
With what is *miseret* joined?
What is remarked of the preterites of these verbs?
Sixty-fourth rule. Examples?
Are these verbs ever used personally?
With what case is *decet* construed?
With what is *oportet* joined?
What is the fourth observation?
What is the note?
Repeat the four circumstances of place. *At* or *in?* *To?* *From* or *by?*
Sixty-fifth rule. Examples?
What is the first observation? The second?
Sixty-sixth rule. Examples?
Repeat the first observation. What is the second observation?
Sixty-seventh rule. Examples? Remark?
Sixty-eighth rule. Examples? Repeat the six observations and the remark on *peto?*
Sixty-ninth rule. Examples?
Why is the case called *absolute?* What is the remark?
The participles of deponent and common verbs?
What is frequently understood?
What must sometimes be supplied?
What may be considered the substantive?
Does the verb supply the place of a substantive?
What is said of a substantive plural?
How is the ablative absolute governed?
Is the preposition ever expressed?
How may the ablative absolute be rendered?
How does the present participle end?
What case in English is used independently?

APPENDIX TO SYNTAX.

It is recommended to the student, to read over carefully, the phrases from the 156th to the 166th page; a few at a time, until he can give, without hesitation, the English or the Latin of any one which may be required.

FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

What is a figure? For what is it used?
To how many may the figures of syntax be reduced? Repeat them. What do they respect?
1. What is *ellipsis?* Give the examples?
What is the meaning of *scil?* Ans. *scilicet*, for *scire licet*, you may know; understand; supply.
N. B. *The ellipsis should always be supplied by the student.*
What is *Asyndeton? Enallage? Antiptosis? Hellenism? Synesis?*
When is a style said to be elliptical or concise?
2. What is *Pleonasm? Polysyndeton? Hendiadys? Periphrasis.*
3. What is *Hyperbaton?* Explain the six sorts of this figure and give the Latin phrases. What is *Anastrophe? Hysteron proteron? Hypallage? Synchesis? Tmesis? Parenthesis?*

ANALYSIS AND TRANSLATION.

From what arises the difficulty of translating?
What advantage has the Latin over the English?
Are inversions used in English? By whom chiefly? For what purpose?
What rule is given for the order of words in translating?
What is simple or natural order? Artificial or oratorial?
What is said of Latin writers?
What direction is given for rendering?
In translating, what words are to be taken first? what next? then? lastly?
What is to be supplied through the whole?
If the sentence is compound? Example?
Resolve it into its component parts.
What is analogical analysis?
Parse the sentence given in the words of the author. What is first? Ans. The Latin word. What second? Ans. The English. What third? Ans. Name the part of speech. If it is a noun, how is it parsed? Ans. Repeat the declension, gender, nom. and gen. cases, tell the case and agreement or government, and give the rule. If it is a verb, how is it parsed? Ans. What kind, the conjugation by number, repeat the principal parts; mood, tense, person, number, agreement and rule. What may be subjoined to this?
When a learner first begins to translate, what should he do? What afterwards? What will be necessary?

DIFFERENT KINDS OF STYLE.

How many different kinds of style? Repeat them.
What other characters of style?
Explain the adaptation of style, and the style of different authors.
What deserves particular attention?
What is the first virtue of style? (*virtus orationis.*) What does this require? To what is each opposed? What things are to be attended to? Repeat and explain the three?
What are the most common defects of style? (*vitia orationis.*)
N. B. *Let the learner repeat the Latin phrases as often as they occur.*
What is a *barbarism?* Examples.
Solecism? Idiotism? Tautology? Bombast? Amphibology?

FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

What are they? Their division? Tropes?

TROPES, OR FIGURES OF WORDS.

What is a trope? The origin of tropes? Their foundation? What are the three principal?
What is a *metaphor?* An *allegory?* An *enigma* or *riddle? proverbs* or *adages?*
When are metaphors improper?
Catachresis? Syllepsis? Metonymy? Explain the six kinds.
Metalepsis? Synecdoche? Explain the three kinds.
Antonomasia? Periphrasis? Irony? Sarcasm? Litotes? Antiphrasis? Euphemismus? Paraphrase? Onomatopœia?
What is difficult? needless? sufficient?
Can all tropes be literally translated? How explained?

REPETITION OF WORDS.

What are figures of words?
Explain the figures following, namely, Anaphora, Epistrophe, Symploce, Epanalepsis, Anadaplosis, Epanodos, Epizeuxis, Climax, Polyptoton, Synonyma, Expolitio, Antanaclasis, Paronomosia, Homoioptoton, Homoioteleuton.

FIGURES OF THOUGHT.

What are the principal?

Explain with examples, Hyperbole, Prosopopoeia, Apostrophe, Simile, Antithesis, Interrogation, Exclamation, Description, Emphasis, Epanarthosis, Paralepsis, Aparithmesis, Synathroismus, Climax, Transition, Suspensio, Concessio, Prolepsis, Anacoinosis, Licentia, Aposiopesis, Sententia or Maxim.

What are the parts of a regular oration?

What is the use of the introduction?

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

What is quantity? Prosody? Long and short? The time of each? Common? Long or short by nature? Penult? Antepenult? Authority?

What is the remark on Latin pronunciation?

GENERAL RULES.

What is the first rule?

What is *h* in verse?

The first exception? Example from Ovid?

The second exception? Pompei?

The third exception? What is said of Illius? Unius? Alius? Alterius? In Greek words?

Read over the catalogue of short, long and common, repeatedly until the words are familiar.

What is said of nouns in *eus?*

The subject of *prosody* being of very great importance, it is recommended to commit to memory, *all the rules and exceptions* with the *most particular care*, and also to—

Repeat the rules by numbers promiscuously—

Repeat the examples in the same manner—

Repeat the exceptions to the rules by number.

What is accent? What is its use? Emphasis?

Repeat the rules for accent on page 191.

How many are the accents?

What is the effect of the acute? The grave? The circumflex?

What does the circumflex mark? Ans. A contraction.

VERSE.

Define verse. Why so called?

Feet? What is the use of this division?

FEET.

How many kinds? Repeat them?

What foot is *omnes? Deus? Amans? Servus? Scribere?* &c. &c.

What is the quantity of *o* in *omnes?* What rule?

What is the quantity of *e* in *omnes?* What rule?

Let these questions be asked on every syllable of the examples under *feet.*

SCANNING.

What is scanning? What is a perfect verse called?

When a syllable is wanting, what is it called?

When there is a syllable too much?

What is *Depositio*, or *clausula?*

HEXAMETER.

Of what does a Hexameter consist?

What other name has it?

Describe the feet?

Repeat the example?

Write and mark it? Ans.

Lūdĕrĕ | qūæ vēl | lēm cala | mō pĕr | mīsĭt a | grēstī.

Name the feet? Ans. *Ludcre*, dactyl: *quæ vel*, spondee; *lem cala*, dactyl; *mo per*, spondee; *misit a*, dactyl: *gresti*, spondee.

Give a rule for each syllable? Ans. *Lu*, *u* is long by authority; *de*, *e* is short before *r*, Rule 25 of Wilson's Prosody, page 30 of Prof. Anthon's Prosody; *re*, *e* is short, Rule 12 of this book; *quæ*, *æ* is long, being a dipthong, Rule 4: *Vel*, *e* is long by position, Rule 2; *lem*, *e* is long by position; *cal*, *a* is short by authority; *a*, *a* is short by authority; *mo*, *o* is long, Rule 14, Exception 1; *per*, *e* is long by position, Rule 2; *mi*, *i* is long, Rules 21 and 5; *sit*, *i* is short, Rule 16; *a*, *a* is short, Rule 2, paragraph; *gres*, *e* is long by position; *ti*, *i* is long, Rule 13.

Remark 1. When a student begins any poetic author, the first exercise should be scanning, in the full form above written; always repeating the rules, at first in full, and afterwards by number. This exercise should be continued until he is perfect; which will be in a short time, provided he is industrious, and depends on his own exertions, rather than his teacher. He should write out fairly, in a book, 100 lines or more, and at every recitation produce a hexameter verse or two, in which he is to regard *quantity* only, not sense. This is commonly called *nonsense verse.* This practice will lead him to compose in verse, and *sense* will soon succeed to *nonsense.*

Remark 2. It is best always to give a rule for the syllable under consideration, without regard to its position in the line; for instance, the final *i* of the above line, is long by the rule given, rather than by the paragraph under the 19th Rule, which should be given when a syllable otherwise *short* ends the line.

Remark 3. Many syllables may and ought to be traced to the Greek for their quantity, but when a student has no knowledge of Greek, he may say *by authority*, unless his teacher should specially direct him otherwise.

Scan the second line in the same manner, and all the lines given as examples.

How many syllables has a hexameter?

What is a *spondaic* line? When is this used?

What has it in the fourth place? What in the end?

When there is a syllable in the end superfluous?

What hexameters sound best?

What is esteemed a great beauty in hexameter?

Point out the Ecthlipses in the third and fourth lines. See page 185.

What deserves particular attention?

What is Cæsura? Repeat the various names of the Cæsura. Repeat the line which includes all the different species of Cæsura. What is the most common and beautiful Cæsura? And the Cæsural phrase? When the Cæsura falls on a syllable naturally short?

On what depends the chief melody of a hexameter verse? Without this what will the line be?

What is said of the Roman method of reading verse? What in modern times? By what are we directed? How should we read?

PENTAMETER.

What is Pentameter verse? Give examples? Scan these lines. How is this verse divided? Write the examples. How does it end?

ASCLEPIADEAN.

Describe it and give the example.

Describe and scan the other kinds, to No. 10.

The student should be able to name and scan any kind of verse without hesitation; otherwise he will be unable to read Horace.

From what are the names derived?

Name the other kinds of verse.

Give a particular account of Iambic verse. Name the different kinds?

FIGURES IN SCANNING.

What are figures of scanning? Repeat them.

Define *Synalœpha.* Give an example. Is it ever neglected? In what does it seldom take place Example?

What is said of long vowels and dipthongs? *See Prof. Anthon's Prosody.*
What is *Ecthlipsis?* Example. What is the remark? Repeat the examples. What are these verses called? Why?
What is *Synæresis?* What is it likewise called? Examples. What may be referred to this figure?
Diæresis? What is its form? Give examples.
Systole? Diastole? What may be subjoined?
Define and give examples of 1. *Prosthesis, Epenthesis, Paragoge.* 2. *Aphæresis, Syncope, Apocope.* 3. *Metathesis, Antithesis.*

DIFFERENT KINDS OF POEMS.

What is a poem? Explain the different kinds of poems.
What is an Epithalamium? &c. &c.

COMBINATION OF VERSES.

What authors use Hexameters? Iambic or Trochaic?
What authors combine different verses?
When is an ode called Monocōlos, or Mónocōlon? Dicōlon? Tricōlon? Dicōlon distrŏphon?
What is elegiac verse? By whom used?
When is a poem called Dicōlon tristrŏphon? Dicōlon tetrastrŏphon? Tricōlon tristrŏphon? Tricōlon tetrastrŏphon? Carmen Horatianum? Strophe, stanza, or staff?
What are the different kinds of verse used by Horace and Buchanan?

APPENDIX.

What is punctuation? What are points? Name and write them. Explain the use of each.
What is the semi-period? Explain the other points and marks.
How are capitals used?
Explain the abbreviations mentioned.
Should we write LL. D. or L. L. D.? Ans. LL. D. without a point between the two *ells*, because it is the abridged form of the plural number uniformly made by repeating the letter, as *Ms.* sing. *Mss.* plural. *Leg.* law; *Legg.* laws. *Cos*, consul; *Coss*, consuls. *P.* page; *pp.* pages. *M.* Monsieur; *MM.* Messieurs, and many others. LL. D. Legum Doctor, formerly was Doctor of both Laws; viz. the *canon* and the *civil* Law.
Explain the Roman method of notation. What says Pliny? Explain the modern manner Which is superior?
Explain the division of the Roman months, and write out the table in full.
Are the names of the months substantives or adjectives.

END OF THE GRAMMAR.

PARSING.

What is parsing? Ans. Parsing is the analysis of the words of a language.
What? Where? Why? explained. The proper answer to these three words contains the whole subject of parsing, a practise which should commence with the first declension, and continue to the end of the classic course.
What? *A—Noun*, declension, gender, nominative and genitive.
Where? Dative singular (the case.)
Why? Governed by— (the governing word.)
What? An adjective of three terminations.
Us—a—um, where? In the dative sing. fem. agreeing with (the noun.)
Why? The adjective agrees, &c.
What? A verb active (or other) 1st. conjugation o, āre, āvi, ātum.
Where? Indicative mode, tense, person, number, agreeing with its nominative (name it.)
Why? Repeat the rule.
Example. Scribo pulchras literas.
Scribo (I write.) What? A verb active of the third conjugation, *scribo, scribere, scripsi, scriptum.*
Where? Indicative mode, present tense, first person, singular number, agreeing with its nominative *Ego* understood.
(Why?) The verb agrees with its nominative case in number and person.
Pulchras (beautiful.) What? An adjective of three terminations, *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.*
(Where?) In the accusative plural, feminine gender, agreeing with *literas.*
(Why?) The adjective agrees with its substantive in number, case, and gender.
Literas (letters.) See Grammar, page 87.
(What?) A noun, first declension, feminine gender *literæ, literarum*, in this sense, wants the singular.
(Where?) In the accusative case, plural, governed by the active verb *scribo.*
(Why?) By Rule 81. Repeat it.
The participle should be parsed as a part of the verb. Say a participle, tense, voice, from the active verb *scribo* of the third conjugation; (the same form as before) and say participles become adjectives when they have no regard to time.
A similar form may be observed throughout.
Dr. Adams' form is different, and by some may be preferred. They both, however, contain the same specifications, and it is important that pupils should be taught to adhere to a particular form. Otherwise they will never know how to parse without being asked all the minute specifications, a practice which should be avoided as much as possible.

SYNOPSIS OF THE VERB *AMO*, I LOVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD, ACTIVE.

		I love,	*thou,*	*he,*	*we,*	*ye,*	*they,*
Pres.	*do.*	Am o,	as,	at,	āmus,	ātis,	ānt.
Imp.	*did.*	Am ābam,	ābas,	ābat,	ābāmus,	ābātis,	ābānt.
Perf.	*have.*	Am āvi,	āvisti,	āvit,	āvĭmus,	āvistis,	āvērunt *vel* āvēre.
Plup	*had.*	Am āvĕram,	āvĕras,	āvĕrat,	āvĕrāmus,	āvĕrātis,	āvĕrant.
Fut.	*shall or will.*	Am ābo,	ābis,	ābit,	ābĭmus,	ābĭtis,	ābunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	*may or can.*	Am em,	es,	et,	ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
Imp.	*might, could, &c.*	Am ārem,	āres,	āret,	ārēmus,	ārētis,	ārent.
Perf.	*may have.*	Am āvĕrim,	āvĕris,	āvĕrit,	āvĕrĭmus,	āvĕrĭtis,	āvĕrint.
Plup.	*might have.*	Am āvissem,	āvisses,	āvisset,	āvissēmus,	āvissētis,	āvissent.
Fut.	*shall have.*	Am āvĕro,	āvĕris,	āvĕrit,	āvĕrimus,	āvĕritis,	āverint.

INDICATIVE MOOD, PASSIVE.

Pres.	*am, art, is, are.*	Am or,	āris *vel* āre,	ātur,	āmur,	āmini,	antur.
Imp.	*was.*	Am ābar,	ābāris *vel* ābāre,	ābātur,	ābāmur,	ābāmini,	ābantur.
Perf.	*have been.*	Am ātus sum *vel* fui,	es *vel* fuisti,	est *vel* fuit,	āti sumus *vel* fuimus,	estis *vel* fuistis,	sunt, fuerunt *vel* fuēre.
Plup.	*had been.*	Am ātus eram *vel* fueram,	eras *vel* fueras,	erat *vel* fuerat,	āti eramus *vel* fueramus,	eratis *vel* fueratis,	erant *vel* fuerant
Fut.	*shall or will be.*	Am ābor,	ābĕris *vel* ābĕre,	ābĭtur,	ābĭmur,	ābĭmini,	ābuntur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	*may or can be.*	Am er,	ēris *vel* ēre,	ētur,	ēmur,	ēmini,	entur.
Imp.	*might, &c. be.*	Am ārer,	ārēris *vel* ārēre,	ārētur,	ārēmur,	ārēmini,	ārentur.
Perf.	*may have been.*	Am atus sim *vel* fuerim,	sis *vel* fueris,	sit *vel* fuerit,	āti sīmus *vel* fuĕrimus,	sītis *vel* fuĕrĭtis,	sint *vel* fuerint.
Plup.	*might have been.*	Am ātus essem *vel* fuissem,	esses *vel* fuisses,	esset *vel* fuisset,	āti essemus *vel* fuissemus,	essetis *vel* fuissetis,	essent *vel* fuissent.
Fut.	*shall have been.*	Am ātus fuero,	fueris,	fuerit,	āti fuĕrĭmus,	fuĕrĭtis,	fuerint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD, ACTIVE.

Do thou love,	Am	ā *vel* ato,	ato,	āte *vel* ātōte,	ant

IMPERATIVE MOOD, PASSIVE

Be thou loved,	Am	āre *vel* ātor,	ator,	āmini,	antor.

INFINITIVE MOOD, ACTIVE.

Pres. *to love,* Am are, *Perf.* *to have loved,* Am avisse. *Fut.* *to be about to love, or to have been about to love,* Am atūrus esse *vel* fuisse.

INFINITIVE MOOD, PASSIVE.

Pres. *to be loved,* Am ari, *Perf.* *to have been loved,* Am atus esse *vel* fuisse. *Fut.* *to be about to be loved,* Am atum iri.

PARTICIPLES.

ACTIVE. *Pres.* *loving,* Am ans, *Fut.* *about to love,* aturus,

PASSIVE. *Perf.* *loved,* atus, *Fut.* *to be loved,* andus.

GERUNDS.

Nom. *loving,* Am andum. *Gen.* *of loving,* andi, *Dat.* *to loving,* ando. *Acc.* *loving.* andum. *Abl.* *with loving,* ando.

SUPINES.

Former, *to love,* Am atum, *Latter,* *to be loved,* ātu.

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE SYNOPSIS OF THE VERB *AMO*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

			I love,	*thou,*	*he,*	*we,*	*ye,*	*they,*
Pres.	*do.*	Am	o,	as,	at,	āmus,	ātis,	ānt.
Pres.	*am, art, is, are.*	Am	or,	āris *vel* āre,	ātur,	āmur,	āmini,	antur.
Imp.	*did.*	Am	ābam,	ābas,	ābat,	ābāmus,	ābātis,	ābānt.
Imp.	*was.*	Am	ābar,	ābāris *vel* ābāre,	ābātur,	ābāmur,	ābāmini,	ābantur.
Perf.	*have.*	Am	āvi,	āvisti,	āvit,	āvĭmus,	āvistis,	āvērunt *vel* āvēre.
Perf.	*have been.*	Am	ātus sum *vel* fui,	es *vel* fuisti,	est *vel* fuit,	āti sumus *vel* fuimus,	estis *vel* fuistis,	sunt, fuērunt *vel* fuēre.
Plup.	*had.*	Am	āvĕram,	āvĕras,	āvĕrat,	āvĕrāmus,	āvĕrātis,	āvĕrant.
Plup.	*had been.*	Am	ātus eram *vel* fueram,	eras *vel* fueras,	erat *vel* fuerat,	āti eramus *vel* fueramus,	eratis *vel* fuerātis,	erant *vel* fuĕrant.
Fut.	*shall or will.*	Am	ābo,	ābis,	ābit,	ābĭmus,	ābĭtis,	ābunt.
Fut.	*shall or will be.*	Am	ābor,	ābĕris *vel* ābĕre,	ābĭtur,	ābĭmur,	ābĭmini,	ābuntur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	*may or can.*	Am	em,	es,	et,	ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
Pres.	*may or can be.*	Am	er,	ēris *vel* ēre,	ētur,	ēmur,	ēmini,	entur.
Imp.	*might, could, &c.*	Am	ārem,	āres,	āret,	ārēmus,	ārētis,	ārent.
Imp.	*might, &c. be.*	Am	ārer,	ārēris *vel* ārēre,	ārētur,	ārēmur,	ārēmini,	ārentur.
Perf.	*may have.*	Am	āvĕrim,	āvĕris,	āvĕrit,	āvĕrĭmus,	āvĕrĭtis,	āvĕrint.
Perf.	*may have been.*	Am	atus sim *vel* fuerim,	sis *vel* fueris,	sit *vel* fuerit,	āti sĭmus *vel* fuĕrimus,	sītis *vel* fuĕrĭtis,	sint *vel* fuĕrint.
Plup.	*might have.*	Am	āvissem,	āvisses,	āvisset,	āvissēmus, ———	āvissētis,	āvissent.
Plup.	*might have been.*	Am	ātus essem *vel* fuissem,	esses *vel* fuisses,	esset *vel* fuisset,	āti essēmus *vel* fuissēmus,	essetis *vel* fuissetis,	essent *vel* fuissent.
Fut.	*shall have.*	Am	āvĕro,	āvĕris,	āvĕrit,	āvĕrĭmus,	āvĕrĭtis,	āverint.
Fut.	*shall have been.*	Am	ātus fuero,	fueris,	fuerit,	āti fuĕrĭmus,	fuĕrĭtis,	fuerint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Do thou love,	Am	ā *vel* ato,	ato,		āte *vel* ātōte,	anto.
Be thou loved,	Am	āre *vel* ātor,	ator,		āmini,	antor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. *to love,* Am are, *Perf.* *to have loved,* Am avisse. *Fut.* *to be about to love, or to have been about to love,* Am atūrus esse *vel* fuisse.

Pres. *to be loved,* Am ari, *Perf.* *to have been loved,* Am atus esse *vel* fuisse. *Fut.* *to be about to be loved,* Am atum iri.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. *loving,* Am ans, *Perf.* *loved,* atus, *Fut.* *about to love,* atūrus, *Fut.* *to be loved,* andus.

GERUNDS.

Nom. *loving,* Am andum. *Gen.* *of loving,* andi, *Dat.* *to loving,* ando. *Acc.* *loving,* andum. *Abl.* *with loving,* ando.

SUPINES.

Former, *to love,* Am atum, *Latter,* *to be loved,* ātu.

SYNOPSIS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Am	o,		as,	at,	amus,	atis,	ant.
	Doc	ĕo,		es,	et,	ēmus,	ētis,	ent,
	Leg	o,		is,	it,	ĭmus,	ĭtis,	unt.
	Aud	ĭo,		is,	it,	īmus,	ītis,	ĭunt.
Imp.	Am	ā	bam,	bas,	bat,	bamus,	batis,	bant.
	Doc	ē						
	Lĕg	ē						
	Audi	ē						
Perf.	Am	āv	i,	isti,	it,	imus,	istis,	ērunt, *vel* ēre.
	Doc	u,						
	Lēg							
	Aud	īv						
Plu.	Am	āv	ĕram,	eras,	ĕrat,	eramus,	eratis,	erant.
	Doc	u						
	Lēg							
	Aud	īv						
Fut.	Am	ā	bo,	bis,	bit,	bĭmus,	bĭtis,	bunt.
	Doc	ē						
	Lĕg		am,	es,	et,	ēmus,	etis,	ent.
	Aud	i						

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Pres.	Am		ēm,	es,	et,	emus,	etis,	ent.
	Doc	ĕ						
	Lĕg		am,	as,	at,	amus,	atis,	ant.
	Aud	ĭ						
Imp.	Am	ā	rem,	res,	ret,	remus,	retis,	rent.
	Doc	ē						
	Leg	ĕ						
	Aud	ī						
Per.	Am	āv	ĕrim,	eris,	rit,	erĭmus,	erĭtis,	erint.
	Doc	u						
	Lēg							
	Aud	īv						
Plu.	Am	āv	issem	isses,	isset,	issemus,	issetis,	issent.
	Doc	ŭ						
	Lēg							
	Aud	īv						
Fut.	Am	āv	ero,	eris,	erit,	erimus,	eritis,	erint.
	Doc	ŭ						
	Lēg							
	Aud	iv						

PASSIVE VOICE.

		I		*thou,*	*he,*	*we,*	*ye,*	*they.*
Am loved,	Am	or	ā,	ris *vel* re,	tur,	mur,	mini,	ntur.
Am taught,	Doc	eor	ē,		i	i	i	u
Am read,	Leg	or	ĕ,					
Am heard,	Aud	ior	ī,					
was,	Am	ā	bar,	baris *vel* bare,	batur,	bamur,	bamĭni,	bantur.
	Doc	ē						
	Leg	ē						
	Aud	iē						
have been,	Am	ā	tus sum *vel* fui,	es *vel* fuisti,	est *vel* fuit,	ti sumus *vel* fuimus,	ti estis *vel* fuistis,	ti sunt fuerunt *vel* fuere.
	Doc							
	Lec							
	Aud	ī						
had been,	Am	ā	tus eram *vel* fueram,	eras *vel* fueras,	erat *vel* fuerat,	ti eramus *vel* fueramus,	eratis *vel* fueratis,	erant *vel* fuerant.
	Doc							
	Lec							
	Aud	ī						

shall be,	Am ā Doc ē	bor,	bĕris, *vel* bĕre,	bĭtur,	bĭmur,	bimini,	buntur.
	Leg Aud i	ar,	ēris, *vel* ēre,	ētur,	ēmur,	emini,	entur.
may be,	Am	er,	ēris, *vel* ēre,	ētur,	ēmur,	emini,	entur,
	Doc ĕ Leg Aud ĭ	ar,	āris, *vel* āre,	ātur,	āmur,	āmini,	antur.
might be,	Am ā Doc ē Leg ĕ Aud ī	rer.	rēris, *vel* rēre,	rētur,	rēmur,	rēmini,	rentur.
may have been	Am a Doc Lec Aud ī	tus sim *vel* fuerim,	sis *vel* fueris	sit *vel* fuerit,	ti sīmus *vel* fuerĭmus,	sītis *vel* fuerĭtis	sint *vel* fuerint
might have been,	Am ā Doc Lec Aud i	tus essem *vel* fuissem,	esses *vel* fuisses,	esset *vel* fuisset,	ti essemus vel fuissemus	essetis *vel* fuissetis,	essent *vel* fuissent.
shall have been,	Am ā Doc Lec Aud ī	tus fuero,	fueris,	fuerit,	ti fuerimus,	fueritis,	fuerint.

IMPERATIVE.

			thou,	*he,*	*ye,*	*they.*
do,	*Active.*	Am ā Doc ē Leg ĕ Aud ī	*vel* to, i	to,	te *vel* tote,	nto. u u
be,	*Passive.*	Am ā Doc ē Leg ĕ Aud ī	re *vel* tor, i	tor,	mini,	ntor. u iu

INFINITIVE.

		Present.			*Perfect.*		*Future.*	
to,	*Active.*	Am ā Doc ē Leg ĕ Aud ī	re,	*to have,*	Am av Doc u Leg Aud iv	isse,	Am ā Doc Lec Aud ī	tūrus esse *vel* fuisse.
to be,	*Passive.*	Am ā Doc ē Leg Aud ī	ri, i ri	*to have been,*	Am ā Doc Lec Aud i	tus esse *vel* fuisse,	Am ā Doc Lec Aud ī	tum iri,

PARTICIPLES.

Active.

Present.	Am a Doc e Leg e Aud ie	ns, ntis,	ns, ntis,	ns, ntis, &c.
Future.	Am ā Doc Lec Aud ī	tūrus	a	um.

Passive.

Perfect.	Am ā Doc Lec Aud ī	tus	a	um.
Future.	Am a Doc e Leg e Aud ie	ndus,	a,	um.

GERUNDS.

ing.	Am a Doc e Leg e Aud ie	ndum,	di,	do.

SUPINES.

Am ā Doc Lec Aud ī	tum,	tu.

FINIS.

FIRST CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Perf. Part.*	*Pres. Infin.*
Amor,	Amātus,	Amāri, *to be loved.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *am loved.*

Singular.	*Plural*
1. Amor,	Amamur,
2. Amāris, *v.* Amāre,	Amamĭni,
3. Amatur;	Amantur.

Imperfect, *was loved.*

1. Amābar,	Amābamur,
2. Amabāris, *v.* Amābare,	Amabamĭni,
3. Amabatur;	Amabantur

Perfect, *have been loved.*

1. Amatus sum, *v.* fui,	Amati sumus, *v.* fuimus,
2. Amatus es, *v.* fuisti,	Amati estis, *v.* fuistis,
3. Amatus est, *v.* fuit;	Amati sunt, *v.* fuērunt, *v.* fuēre.

Pluperfect, *had been loved.*

1. Amatus eram, *v.* fueram,	Amati eramus, *v.* fueramus,
2. Amatus eras, *v.* fueras,	Amati eratis, *v.* fueratis,
3. Amatus erat, *v.* fuerat;	Amati erant, *v.* fuerant.

Future, *shall,* or *will be loved.*

1. Amābor,	Amābĭmur,
2. Amāberis, *v.* Amābĕre,	Amabimini,
3. Amābĭtur;	Amabuntur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *may,* or *cân be loved.*

1. Amer,	Amēmur,
2. Amēris, *v.* Amēre,	Amemini,
3. Ametur;	Amentur.

Imperfect, *might, could, would,* or *should be loved*

1. Amārer,	Amārēmur,
2. Amarēris, *v.* Amarēre,	Amaremini,
3. Amaretur;	Amarentur.

Perfect, *may have been loved.*

1. Amatus sim, *v.* fuerim,	Amati simus, *v.* fuerimus,
2. Amatus sis, *v.* fueris,	Amati sitis, *v.* fueritis,
3. Amatus sit, *v.* fuerit;	Amati sint, *v.* fuerint.

Pluperfect, *might, would, could,* or *should have been loved.*

1. Amatus essem, *v.* fuissem,	Amati essemus, *v.* fuissemus,
2. Amatus esses, *v.* fuisses,	Amati essetis, *v.* fuissetis,
3. Amatus esset, *v.* fuisset;	Amati essent, *v.* fuissent.

Future, *shall have been loved.*

1. Amatus fuĕro,	Amati fuĕrĭmus,
2. Amatus fueris,	Amati fueritis,
3. Amatus fuerit;	Amati fuerint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. Amāre, *v.* ator, *be thou loved,*	Amamĭni, *be ye loved,*
3. Amātor, *let him be loved;*	Amantor, *let them be loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Amāri, *to be loved.*
Perf. Esse, *v.* fuisse amatus-a-um, *to have been loved.*
Fut. Amātum iri, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Amatus-a-um, *loved.*
Fut. Amandus-a-um, *to be loved.*

EXERCISES.

Orno, *to deck.*
Oro, *to beg.*
Paco, *to subdue.*
Paro, *to prepare*
Pecco, *to sin.*
Pio, *to expiate*
Placo, *to appease*
Porto, *to carry.*
Privo, *to deprive.*
Probo, *to approve.*
Pugno, *to fight.*
Puto, *to think.*
Rogo, *to ask.*
Saluto, *to salute.*
Sano, *to heal.*
Sedo, *to allay.*
Sibilo, *to hiss.*
Simulo, *to pretend.*
Specto, *to behold.*
Spero, *to hope.*
Susurro, *to whisper.*
Tolero, *to bear.*
Turbo, *to disturb.*
Velo, *to cover.*
Vigilo, *to watch.*
Violo, *to violate.*
Voco, *to call.*
Vulgo, *to spread abroad.*
Vulnero, *to wound.*

EXCEPTIONS

Do, *to give.*
Sto, *to stand.*
Lavo, *to wash.*
Poto, *to drink.*
Juvo, *to help.*
Cubo, *to lie.*
Domo, *to subdue.*
Sono, *to sound.*
Tono, *to thunder.*
Veto, *to forbid.*
Crepo, *to make a noise.*
Frico, *to rub.*
Seco, *to cut.*
Neco, *to kill.*
Mico, *to glitter.*

DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS

Abominor, *to abhor.*
Adulor, *to flatter.*
Arbitror, *to think.*
Bacchor, *to revel.*
Conor, *to endeavour.*
Criminor, *to blame.*
Cunctor, *to delay.*
Dominor, *to rule.*
Epulor, *to feast.*
Frustror, *to disappoint.*
Glorior, *to boast.*
Hortor, *to encourage*
Imitor, *to imitate.*
Luctor, *to wrestle.*
Machinor, *to contrive.*
Minor, *to threaten.*
Opinor, *to think.*
Osculor, *to kiss.*
Precor, *to pray*
Recordor, *to remember.*
Suspicor, *to suspect.*
Testor, *to witness.*
Veneror, *to worship*
Venor, *to hunt.*

EXERCISES.

Censeo, *to judge.*
Misceo, *to mix.*
Sorbeo, *to sup.*
Teneo, *to hold.*
Torreo, *to roast.*

Ui *and* Itum.

Habeo, *to have.*
Adhibeo, *to admit.*
Cohibeo, *to restrain.*
Exhibeo, *to exhibit.*
Perhibeo, *to give out.*
Prohibeo, *to hinder.*
Posthabeo, *to value less.*
Redhibeo, *to return a thing.*
Debeo, *to owe.*
Mereo, *to deserve.*
Moneo, *to admonish.*
Præbeo, *to afford.*
Caleo, *to be warm.*
Careo, *to want.*
Jaceo, *to lie.*
Doleo, *to be grieved.*
Liceo, *to be lawful.*
Noceo, *to hurt.*
Pareo, *to appear.*
Placeo, *to please.*
Taceo, *to be silent.*

ui, *sup. caret.*

Albeo, *to be white.*
Calleo, *to be hard.*
Caneo, *to be hoary.*
Egeo, *to want.*
Emineo, *to be eminent.*
Floreo, *to flourish.*
Frendeo, *to gnash the teeth.*
Frondeo, *to bear leaves.*
Horreo, *to be rough.*
Humeo, *to be wet.*
Immineo, *to hang over.*
Langueo, *to languish.*
Liqueo, *to melt.*
Maceo, *to be lean.*
Niteo, *to shine.*
Palleo, *to be pale.*
Pateo, *to be open.*
Putreo, *to rot.*
Rigeo, *to be stiff.*
Rubeo, *to be red.*
Studeo, *to favour.*
Stupeo, *to be amazed.*
Splendeo, *to shine.*
Tepeo, *to be warm.*
Torpeo, *to be benumbed.*
Tumeo, *to swell.*
Arceo, *to drive away.*
Sileo, *to conceal.*
Timeo, *to fear.*

Beo *and* Ceo.

Jubeo, *to order.*
Mulceo, *to soothe.*
Luceo, *to shine.*

Deo.

Prandeo, *to dine.*
Video, *to see.*
Sedeo, *to sit.*
Strideo, *to make a noise.*
Mordeo, *to bite.*
Pendeo, *to hang.*
Spondeo, *to promise.*
Tondeo, *to clip.*
Remordeo, *to bite again.*

SECOND CONJUGATION, ACTIVE VOICE

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Perf. Indic.*	*Supine.*	*Pres. Infin.*
Dŏceo,	Dŏcui,	Dŏctŭm,	Dŏcēre, *to teach.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *teach,* or *am teaching.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. Doceo, *I teach,*	Docēmus, *we teach,*
2. Doces, *thou teachest,*	Docētis, *ye teach,*
3. Docet, *he teaches;*	Docent, *they teach.*

Imperfect, *taught.*

1. Docēbam, *I taught,*	Docēbāmus, *we taught,*
2. Docebas, *thou taughtest,*	Docebatis, *ye taught,*
3. Docebat, *he taught;*	Docebant, *they taught.*

Perfect, *have taught.*

1. Docui, *I have taught,*	Docuĭmus, *we have taught,*
2. Docuisti, *thou hast taught,*	Docuistis, *ye have taught,*
3. Docuit, *he has taught;*	Docuērunt, *v.* ēre, *they have taught.*

Pluperfect, *had taught.*

1. Docuĕram, *I had taught,*	Docuerāmus, *we had taught,*
2. Docueras, *thou hadst taught,*	Docueratis, *ye had taught,*
3. Docuerat, *he had taught;*	Docuerant, *they had taught.*

Future, *shall,* or *will teach.*

1. Docēbo, *I shall teach,*	Docebĭmus, *we shall teach,*
2. Docebis, *thou shalt teach,*	Docebitis, *ye shall teach,*
3. Docebit, *he shall teach;*	Docebunt, *they shall teach.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *may,* or *can teach.*

1. Doceam, *I may teach,*	Doceāmus, *we may teach,*
2. Doceas, *thou mayest teach,*	Doceatis, *we may teach,*
3. Doceat, *he may teach;*	Doceant, *they may teach.*

Imperfect, *might, could, would,* or *should teach.*

1. Docērem, *I might teach,*	Docerēmus, *we might teach,*
2. Doceres, *thou mightest teach,*	Doceretis, *ye might teach,*
3. Doceret, *he might teach;*	Docerent, *they might teach.*

Perfect, *may have taught.*

1. Docuĕrim, *I may have taught,*	Docuerĭmus, *we may have taught,*
2. Docueris, *thou mayest have taught,*	Docueritis, *ye may have taught,*
3. Docuerit, *he may have taught;*	Docuerint, *they may have taught.*

Pluperfect, *might, would, could,* or *should have taught.*

1. Docuissem, *I might have taught,*	Docuissēmus, *we might have taught,*
2. Docuisses, *thou mightest have taught,*	Docuissetis, *ye might have taught,*
3. Docuisset, *he might have taught;*	Docuissent, *they might have taught.*

Future, *shall have taught.*

1. Docuĕro, *I shall have taught,*	Docuerĭmus, *we shall have taught,*
2. Docueris, *thou shalt have taught,*	Docueritis, *ye shall have taught,*
3. Docuerit, *he shall have taught;*	Docuerint, *they shall have taught.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. Doce, *v.* docēto, *teach thou,*	Docēte, *v.* docetote, *teach ye,*
3. Doceto, *let him teach;*	Docento, *let them teach.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Docēre, *to teach.* *Perf.* Docuisse, *to have taught.*
Fut. Esse docturus, *to be about to teach.* Fuisse docturus, *to have been about to teach.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Docens, *teaching.* *Fut.* Doctūrus, *about to teach.*

GERUNDS.

Docendum-di-do-dum-do, *teaching, of teaching,* &c.

SUPINES.

Former Doctum, *to teach.* *Latter.* Doctu, *to teach,* or *to be taught.*

SECOND CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Perf. Part.*	*Pres. Infin.*
Dŏcĕŏr,	Dŏctŭs,	Dŏcēri, *to be taught.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *am taught.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. Doceor,	Docemur,
2. Docēris, *v.* docēre,	Docemĭni,
3. Docetur;	Docentur.

Imperfect, *was taught.*

1. Docēbar,	Docebamur,
2. Docēbāris, *v.* docebāre,	Docebamini,
3. Docebatur;	Docebantur.

Perfect, *have been taught.*

1. Doctus sum, *v.* fui,	Docti sumus, *v.* fuimus,
2. Doctus es, *v.* fuisti,	Docti estis, *v.* fuistis,
3. Doctus est, *v.* fuit;	Docti sunt, *v.* fuērunt *v.* fuēre.

Pluperfect, *had been taught.*

1. Doctus eram, *v.* fueram,	Docti eramus, *v.* fueramus,
2. Doctus eras, *v.* fueras,	Docti eratis, *v.* fueratis,
3. Doctus erat, *v.* fuerat;	Docti erant, *v.* fuerant.

Future, *shall,* or *will be taught.*

1. Docēbor,	Docebimur,
2. Doceberis, *v.* docebere,	Docebimini,
3. Docebitur;	Docebuntur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *may,* or *can be taught.*

1. Docear,	Doceamur,
2. Doceāris, *v.* doceāre,	Doceamini,
3. Doceatur;	Doceantur.

Imperfect, *might,* &c. *be taught.*

1. Docerer,	Doceremur,
2. Docerēris, *v.* docerēre,	Doceremini,
3. Doceretur;	Docerentur.

Perfect, *may have been taught.*

1. Doctus sim, *v.* fuerim,	Docti simus, *v.* fuerimus,
2. Doctus sis, *v.* fueris,	Docti sitis, *v.* fueritis,
3. Doctus sit, *v.* fuerit;	Docti sint, *v.* fuerint.

Pluperfect, *might,* &c. *have been taught.*

1. Doctus essem, *v.* fuissem,	Docti essemus, *v.* fuissemus,
2. Doctus esses, *v.* fuisses,	Docti essetis, *v.* fuissetis,
3. Doctus esset, *v.* fuisset;	Docti essent, *v.* fuissent.

Future, *shall have been taught.*

1. Doctus fuero,	Docti fuerimus,
2. Doctus fueris,	Docti fueritis,
3. Doctus fuerit;	Docti fuerint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. Docēre, *v.* ētor, *be thou taught,*	Docemini, *be ye taught,*
3. Docetor, *let him be taught;*	Docentor, *let them be taught.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Docēri, *to be taught.*
Perf. Esse, *v.* fuisse doctus-a-um, *to have been taught.*
Fut. Doctum iri, *to be about to be taught.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Doctus-a-um, *taught.*
Fut. Docendus-a-um, *to be taught.*

EXERCISES.

GEO.

Augeo, *to increase.*
Algeo, *to be cold.*
Fulgeo, *to shine.*
Frigeo, *to be cold.*
Indulgeo, *to indulge.*
Lugeo, *to mourn.*
Mulgeo, *to milk.*
Tergeo, *to wipe.*
Turgeo, *to swell.*
Urgeo, *to press.*

LEO.

Compleo, *to fill.*
Deleo, *to blot out.*
Fleo, *to weep.*
Adoleo, *to grow up.*
Aboleo, *to abolish.*
Absoleo, *to grow out of use*
Insoleo, *to grow into use*
Exoleo, *to fade.*

NEO QUEO REO.

Maneo, *to stay.*
Neo, *to spin.*
Hæreo, *to stick.*
Adhæreo, *to adhere.*
Detorqueo, *to wrest.*

VEO.

Foveo, *to cherish.*
Moveo, *to move.*
Voveo, *to vow.*
Devoveo, *to devote.*
Faveo, *to favour.*
Caveo, *to beware of.*
Ferveo, *to be hot.*
Conniveo, *to wink.*

DEPONENTS.

Mereor, *to deserve.*
Polliceor, *to promise.*
Tueor, *to defend.*
Reor, *to think.*
Misereor, *to pity.*
Fateor, *to confess.*
Profiteor, *to profess.*
Confiteor, *to confess.*

Ego doceo. Ego doceor. Docti sumus. Doceat ille. Doceremur. Tu doctus es. Illi docebantur. Nos docuimus. Docenda est. Petrus docebitur. Ille doctus fuerit. Doceamur nos. Ille docebat. Illa docebit. Docti fuerint. Docetor. Docentor. Doctus. Docebaris Tu docebare. Doce. Ego docerer. Vos doceremini Docerere. Tu amas. Tu docendus es. Docebitis Amabitis. Nos amemur Vos docemini. Amator Docemini. Illa est amanda. Amer. Ego amabor Tu ameris. Illi amati sint. Docear. Amantor. Nos amabimur.

EXERCISES.

Io.

Facio, *to do, to make.*
Jacio, *to throw.*
Allicio, *to allure.*
Elicio, *to draw out.*
Fodio, *to dig.*
Fugio, *to fly.*
Capio, *to take.*
Rapio, *to snatch.*
Cupio, *to desire.*
Pario, *to bring forth.*
Quatio, *to shake.*

Uo.

Arguo, *to argue.*
Batuo, *to beat.*
Induo, *to put on clothes.*
Exuo, *to put off clothes.*
Minuo, *to lessen.*
Spuo, *to spit.*
Statuo, *to ordain.*
Sternuo, *to sneeze.*
Suo, *to stich.*
Tribuo, *to give, to divide.*
Fluo, *to flow.*

Bo.

Bibo, *to drink.*
Scribo, *to write.*
Nubo, *to be married*
Accumbo, *to recline at table.*

Co.

Dico, *to say.*
Duco, *to lead.*
Vinco, *to conquer.*
Parco, *to spare.*
Ico, *to strike.*

Sco.

Nosco, *to know.*
Dignosco, *to distinguish.*
Ignosco, *to pardon.*
Cresco, *to grow.*
Quiesco, *to rest.*
Scisco, *to ordain.*
Suesco, *to be accustomed.*
Agnosco, *to own.*
Cognosco, *to know.*
Recognosco, *to review.*
Pasco, *to feed.*
Disco, *to learn.*

Do.

Scando, *to climb.*
Edo, *to eat.*
Ascendo, *to mount.*
Accendo, *to kindle.*
Descendo, *to go down.*
Defendo, *to defend.*
Offendo, *to strike against.*
Mando, *to chew.*
Divido, *to divide.*
Rado, *to shave.*
Claudo, *to close.*
Plaudo, *to clap hands for joy.*
Ludo, *to play.*
Trudo, *to thrust.*
Lædo, *to hurt.*
Rodo, *to gnaw.*

Go.

Rego, *to rule, to govern.*
Porrigo, *to stretch out.*
Cingo, *to bind.*
Fligo, *to dash upon.*
[illegible], *to join.*

THIRD CONJUGATION, ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Perf. Indic.*	*Supine.*	*Pres. Infin.*
Lĕgo,	Lēgi,	Lectŭm,	Lĕgĕre, *to read*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *read*, or *am reading.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. Lego, *I read,*	Legimus, *we read,*
2. Legis, *thou readest,*	Legĭtis, *ye read,*
3. Legit, *he reads;*	Legunt, *they read.*

Imperfect, *read*, or *did read.*

1. Legēbam, *I read*, or *did read,*	Legebamus, *we did read,*
2. Legebas, *thou didst read,*	Legebatis, *ye did read,*
3. Legebat, *he read*, or *did read;*	Legebant, *they did read.*

Perfect, *have read.*

1. Lēgi, *I have read,*	Legĭmus, *we have read,*
2. Legisti, *thou hast read,*	Legistis, *ye have read,*
3. Legit, *he has read;*	Legērunt, *v.* ēre, *they have read*

Pluperfect, *had read.*

1 Legĕram, *I had read,*	Legeramus, *we had read,*
2. Legeras, *thou hadst read,*	Legeratis, *ye had read,*
3. Legerat, *he had read;*	Legerant, *they had read.*

Future, *shall*, or *will read.*

1. Lĕgam, *I shall read,*	Legēmus, *we shall read,*
2. Leges, *thou shalt read,*	Legetis, *ye shall read,*
3. Leget, *he shall read;*	Legent, *they shall read.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *may*, or *can read.*

1. Legam, *I may read,*	Legamus, *we may read,*
2. Legas, *thou mayst read,*	Legatis, *ye may read,*
3. Legat, *he may read;*	Legant, *they may read*

Imperfect, *might*, &c. *read.*

1. Lĕgĕrem, *I might read,*	Legĕrēmus, *we might read,*
2. Legeres, *thou mightest read,*	Legeretis, *ye might read,*
3. Legeret, *he might read;*	Legerent, *they might read.*

Perfect, *may have read.*

1. Lēgerĭm, *I may have read,*	Legerĭmus, *we may have read,*
2. Legeris, *thou mayst have read,*	Legeritis, *ye may have read,*
3. Legerit, *he may have read;*	Legerint, *they may have read.*

Pluperfect, *might*, &c. *have read.*

1. Lēgissem, *I might have read,*	Legissemus, *we might have read,*
2. Legisses, *thou mightest have read,*	Legissetis, *ye might have read,*
3. Legisset, *he might have read;*	Legissent, *they might have read.*

Future, *shall have read.*

1. Lēgero, *I shall have read,*	Legerimus, *we shall have read*
2. Legeris, *thou shalt have read.*	Legeritis, *ye shall have read,*
3. Legerit, *he shall have read;*	Legerint, *they shall have read.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. Lege, *v.* legito, *read thou,*	Legite *v.* legitote, *read ye,*
3. Legito, *let him read;*	Legunto, *let them read.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Legere, *to read.* *Perf.* Legisse, *to have read.*
Fut. Esse lecturus, *to be about to read.* Fuisse lecturus, *to have been about to read.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Legens, *reading.* *Fut.* Lecturus, *about to read.*

GERUNDS.

Legendum–di–do–dum–do, *reading, of reading,* &c.

SUPINES.

Former. Lectum, *to read.* *Latter.* Lectu, *to read, or to be read.*

THIRD CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Perf. Part.*	*Pres. Infin.*
Lĕgor,	Lectus,	Lĕgi, *to be read.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *am read.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. Legor, *I am read,*	Legimur,
2. Legeris, *v.* legere, *thou art read,*	Legimini,
3. Legitur, *he is read;*	Leguntur.

Imperfect, *was read.*

1. Legebar,	Legebamur,
2. Legebaris, *v.* legebare,	Legebamini,
3. Legebatur;	Legebantur.

Perfect, *have been read.*

1. Lectus sum, *v.* fui,	Lecti sumus, *v.* fuimus,
2. Lectus es, *v.* fuisti,	Lecti estis, *v.* fuistis,
3. Lectus est, *v.* fuit;	Lecti sunt, *v.* fuĕrunt, *v.* fuĕre.

Pluperfect, *had been read.*

1. Lectus eram, *v.* fueram,	Lecti eramus, *v.* fueramus,
2. Lectus eras, *v.* fueras,	Lecti eratis, *v.* fueratis,
3. Lectus erat, *v.* fuerat,	Lecti erant, *v.* fuerant.

Future, *shall be read.*

1. Legar,	Legemur,
2. Legeris, *v.* legere,	Legemini,
3. Legetur;	Legentur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *may,* or *can be read.*

1. Legar,	Legamur,
2. Legaris, *v.* legare,	Legamini,
3. Legatur;	Legantur.

Imperfect, *might,* &c. *be read.*

1. Legerer,	Legeremur,
2. Legereris, *v.* legerere,	Legeremini,
3. Legeretur,	Legerentur.

Perfect, *may have been read.*

1. Lectus sim, *v.* fuerim,	Lecti simus, *v.* fuerimus,
2. Lectus sis, *v.* fueris,	Lecti sitis, *v.* fueritis,
3. Lectus sit, *v.* fuerit;	Lecti sint, *v.* fuerint.

Pluperfect, *might,* &c. *have been read.*

1. Lectus essem, *v.* fuissem,	Lecti essemus, *v.* fuissemus,
2. Lectus esses, *v.* fuisses,	Lecti essetis, *v.* fuissetis,
3. Lectus esset, *v.* fuisset;	Lecti essent, *v.* fuissent.

Future, *shall have been read.*

1. Lectus fuero,	Lecti fuerimus,
2. Lectus fueris,	Lecti fueritis,
3. Lectus fuerit;	Lecti fuerint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. Legere, *v.* itor, *be thou read,*	Legimini, *be ye read,*
3. Legitor, *let him be read;*	Leguntor, *let them be read.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Legi, *to be read.*
Perf. Esse, *v.* fuisse lectus–a–um, *to have been read.*
Fut. Lectum iri, *to be about to be read.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Lectus–a–um, *read.*
Fut. Legendus–a–um, *to be read.*

EXERCISES.

Mungo, *to wipe the nose*
Tego, *to cover.*
Ungo, *to anoint.*
Surgo, *to rise.*
Pergo, *to go forward.*
Fingo, *to feign.*
Pingo, *to paint.*
Stringo, *to bind.*
Frango, *to break.*
Ago, *to do.*
Diligo, *to love.*
Tango, *to touch.*
Pungo, *to prick,* or *sting.*
Pango, *to fix, to compose.*
Spargo, *to spread.*
Mergo, *to dip,* or *plunge.*

Ho.

Traho, *to draw.*
Veho, *to carry.*

Lo.

Colo, *to adorn, to inhabit.*
Alo, *to nourish.*
Molo, *to grind.*
Pello, *to thrust.*
Fallo, *to deceive.*
Tollo, *to take away.*

Mo.

Gemo, *to groan.*
Fremo, *to rage,* or *roar.*
Vomo, *to vomit.*
Demo, *to take away.*
Promo, *to bring out.*
Sumo, *to take.*
Como, *to deck, to dress.*
Emo, *to buy.*

No.

Pono, *to put, to place.*
Gigno, *to beget.*
Cano, *to sing.*
Sperno, *to disdain,* or *slight*
Sino, *to permit.*
Sterno, *to lay flat*

Po.

Carpo, *to pluck.*
Clepo, *to steal.*
Repo, *to creep.*
Rumpo, *to break.*

Ro.

Quæro, *to seek.*
Tero, *to wear, to bruise.*
Verro, *to sweep.*
Uro, *to burn.*
Gero, *to carry.*
Curro, *to run.*
Sero, *to sow.*

So.

Arcesso, *to call,* or *send for*
Capesso, *to take.*
Facesso, *to do, to go away*
Lacesso, *to provoke.*

To.

Flecto, *to bow.*
Plecto, *to plait,*
Necto, *to knit.*
Meto, *to reap,* or *mow.*
Peto, *to seek, pursue.*
Mitto, *to send.*

Vo.

Vivo, *to live.*
Solvo, *to loose.*
Volvo, *to roll.*

EXERCISES.

Balbutio, *to stammer.*
Custodio, *to keep.*
Dormio, *to sleep.*
Erudio, *to instruct.*
Grunnio, *to grunt.*
Hinnio, *to neigh.*
Impedio, *to hinder.*
Lippio, *to be dim sighted.*
Mugio, *to bellow.*
Munio, *to fortify.*
Nutrio, *to nourish.*
Obedio, *to obey.*
Punio, *to punish,*
Rugio, *to roar like a lion*
Sævio, *to rage.*
Nescio, *not to know.*
Servio, *to serve.*
Tussio, *to cough.*
Vestio, *to clothe.*

EXCEPTIONS.

Singultio, *to sob.*
Sepelio, *to bury.*
Venio, *to come.*
Veneo, *to be sold.*
Salio, *to leap.*

Amīcio, *to cover.*
Vincio, *to tie.*
Sancio, *to ratify.*

Cambio, *to change money.*
Sepio, *to hedge.*
Haurio, *to draw out.*
Sentio, *to perceive.*
Raucio, *to be hoarse.*
Sarcio, *to mend.*
Farcio, *to cram.*
Fulcio, *to prop.*

Cæcutio, *to be dim sighted.*
Gestio, *to leap for joy.*
Glocio, *to cluck as a hen.*
Dementio, *to be mad.*
Ineptio, *to play the fool.*
Prosilio, *to leap forth.*
Ferocio, *to be fierce.*

DEPONENTS, of the 4th. Conjugation.

Blandior, *to flatter.*
Largior, *to give liberally.*
Mentior, *to lie.*
Molior, *to attempt something difficult.*
Partior, *to divide.*
Potior, *to enjoy.*
Sortior, *to cast lots.*
Metior, *to measure.*
Ordior, *to begin.*
Experior, *to try.*
Opperior, *to wait for one.*

DEPONENTS, of the 3d. Conjugation.

Vescor, *to feed.*
Medeor, *to heal.*
Reminiscor, *to remember.*
Irascor, *to be angry.*
Ringor, *to grin.*
Divertor, *to turn aside.*
Prævertor, *to get before.*
Diffiteor, *to deny.*
Defetiscor, *to be weary.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION, ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Perf. Indic.*	*Supine.*	*Pres. Infin.*
Audio,	Audīvi,	Auditum,	Audire, *to hear.*

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense, *hear,* or *am hearing.*

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1.	Audio, *I hear,*	Audīmus *we hear,*
2.	Audis, *thou hearest,*	Auditis, *ye hear,*
3.	Audit, *he hears;*	Audiunt, *they hear.*

Imperfect, *heard,* or *was hearing.*

1	Audiēbam, *I heard,*	Audiebamus, *we heard,*
2.	Audiebas, *thou didst hear,*	Audiebatis, *ye heard,*
3.	Audiebat, *he heard;*	Audiebant, *they heard.*

Perfect, *have heard.*

1.	Audīvi, *I have heard,*	Audivīmus, *we have heard,*
2.	Audivisti, *thou hast heard,*	Audivistis, *ye have heard,*
3.	Audivit, *he has heard;*	Audivērunt, *v.* ivēre, *they have heard.*

Pluperfect, *had heard.*

1.	Audivĕram, *I had heard,*	Audiveramus, *we had heard,*
2.	Audiveras, *thou hadst heard,*	Audiveratis, *ye had heard,*
3.	Audiverat, *he had heard;*	Audiverant, *they had heard.*

Future, *shall,* or *will hear.*

1.	Audiam, *I shall hear,*	Audiemus, *we shall hear,*
2.	Audies, *thou shalt hear,*	Audietis, *ye shall hear,*
3.	Audiet, *he shall hear;*	Audient, *they shall hear.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *may,* or *can hear.*

1.	Audiam, *I may hear,*	Audiamus, *we may hear,*
2.	Audias, *thou mayest hear,*	Audiatis, *ye may hear,*
3.	Audiat, *he may hear;*	Audiant, *they may hear.*

Imperfect, *might,* &c. *hear.*

1.	Audīrem, *I might hear,*	Audirēmus, *we might hear,*
2.	Audires, *thou mightest hear,*	Audiretis, *ye might hear,*
3.	Audiret, *he might hear;*	Audirent, *they might hear.*

Perfect, *may,* or *can have heard.*

1.	Audiverim, *I may have heard,*	Audiverimus, *we may have heard,*
2,	Audiveris, *thou mayest have heard,*	Audiveritis, *ye may have heard,*
3.	Audiverit, *he may have heard;*	Audiverint, *they may have heard.*

Pluperfect, *might,* &c. *have heard.*

1.	Audivissem, *I might have heard,*	Audivissemus, *we might have heard,*
2.	Audivisses, *thou mightest have heard,*	Audivissetis, *ye might have heard,*
3.	Audivisset, *he might have heard:*	Audivissent, *they might have heard.*

Future, *shall have heard.*

1.	Audivero, *I shall have heard,*	Audiverimus, *we shall have heard,*
2.	Audiveris, *thou shalt have heard,*	Audiveritis, *ye shall have heard,*
3.	Audiverit, *he shall have heard;*	Audiverint, *they shall have heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2.	Audi, *v.* audito, *hear thou,*	Audīte, *v.* auditote, *hear ye,*
3.	Audito, *let him hear;*	Audiunto, *let them hear.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Audīre, *to hear.* *Perf.* Audivisse, *to have heard.*
Fut. Esse auditurus, *to be about to hear.* Fuisse auditurus, *to have been about to hear.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Audiens, *hearing.* *Fut.* Auditurus, *about to hear.*

GERUNDS.

Audiendum–di–do–dum–do, *hearing, of hearing,* &c.

SUPINES.

Former. Auditum *to hear.* *Latter.* Auditu, *to hear,* or *to be heard*

FOURTH CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Perf. Part.*	*Pres. Infin.*
Audior,	Auditus,	Audīri, *to be heard.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *am heard.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. Audior,	Audīmur,
2. Audīris, *v.* audīre,	Audimini,
3. Audītur;	Audiuntur.

Imperfect, *was heard.*

1. Audiēbar,	Audiēbamur,
2. Audiebaris, *v.* audiebare,	Audiebamini,
3. Audiebatur;	Audiebantur.

Perfect, *have been heard.*

1. Audītus sum, *v.* fui,	Auditi sumus, *v.* fuimus,
2. Auditus ēs, *v.* fuisti,	Auditi estis, *v.* fuistis,
3. Auditus est, *v.* fuit;	Auditi sunt, *v.* fuērunt, *v.* fuēre.

Pluperfect, *had been heard.*

1. Audītus eram, *v.* fueram,	Auditi eramus, *v.* fueramus,
2. Auditus eras, *v.* fueras,	Auditi eratis, *v.* fueratis,
3. Auditus erat, *v.* fuerat;	Auditi erant, *v.* fuerant.

Future, *shall be heard.*

1. Audiar,	Audiēmur,
2. Audieris, *v.* audiere,	Audiemini,
3 Audietur;	Audientur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *may*, or *can be heard.*

1. Audiar,	Audiāmur,
2. Audiāris, *v.* audiāre,	Audiamini,
3. Audiatur;	Audiantur.

Imperfect, *might*, &c. *be heard.*

1. Audīrer,	Audirēmur,
2. Audireris, *v.* audirere,	Audiremini,
3. Audiretur;	Audirentur.

Perfect, *may have been heard.*

1. Audītus sim, *v.* fuerim,	Auditi simus, *v.* fuerimus,
2. Auditus sis, *v.* fueris,	Auditi sitis, *v.* fueritis,
3. Auditus sit, *v.* fuerit;	Auditi sint, *v.* fuerint.

Pluperfect, *might*, &c. *have been heard.*

1. Audītus essem, *v.* fuissem,	Audīti essemus. *v.* fuissemus,
2. Auditus esses, *v.* fuisses,	Auditi essetis, *v.* fuissetis,
3. Auditus esset, *v.* fuisset;	Auditi essent, *v.* fuissent.

Future, *shall have been heard.*

1. Auditus fuero,	Auditi fuerimus,
2. Auditus fueris,	Auditi fueritis,
3. Auditus fuerit;	Auditi fuerint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

2 Audire, *v.* auditor, *be thou heard,*	Audimini, *be ye heard,*
3. Auditor, *let him be heard;*	Audiuntor, *let them be heard.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Audiri, *to be heard.*
Perf. Esse, *v.* fuisse auditus–a–um, *to have been heard.*
Fut. Auditum iri, *to be about to be herad.*

PARTICIPLES

Perf. Auditus–a–um, *heard.*
Fut. Audiendus–a–um, *to be heard*

EXERCISES.

Amplector, *to embrace.*
Fungor, *to discharge an office.*
Revertor, *to return.*

Labor, *to slide.*
Ulciscor, *to revenge.*
Utor, *to use.*
Loquor, *to speak.*
Sequor, *to follow.*
Queror, *to complain.*
Nitor, *to endeavour.*
Paciscor, *to bargain.*
Gradior, *to go.*
Proficiscor, *to go a journey.*
Nanciscor, *to get.*
Patior, *to suffer.*
Apiscor, *to get.*
Comminiscor, *to devise.*
Fruor, *to enjoy.*
Obliviscor, *to forget.*
Expergiscor, *to awake.*
Morior, *to die.*
Nascor, *to be born.*
Orior, *to rise.*

Ego lego, legebam, legi, legam, legeram. Nos legimus, legebamus, legimus, legeramus, legemus. Ego legam, legerem, legerim, legeres, legissem, legero. Nos legamus, legeremus, legerimus, legissemus, legissetis. Ego audio, audiebam, audivi, audiveram, audiam. Nos audimus, audiebamus, audivimus, audiveramus, audiemus. Ego audiam, audirem, audiverim, audivissem, audivero. Nos audiamus, audiremus, audiverimus, audivissemus, audiverimus, audi, audite, audiens, audito, audiunto, auditum. Lege, legite, lecturus. Legito, legunto, lectu. Legens, legendum, lectum. Ego legor, legebar, lectus sum, lectus eram, legar. Nos legimur, legebamur, lecti sumus, lecti eramus, legemur. Ego legar, legerer, lectus sim, lectus essem, lectus fuero. Nos legamur, legeremur, lecti simus, lecti essemus, lecti fuerimus. Legere tu. Legimini vos. Legitor. Leguntor. Ego audior, audiebar, auditus sum, auditus eram, audiar

RULES.

31. Verbs, signifying actively, govern the accusative.

32. *Misereor*, *miseresco*, and *satago*, govern the genitive.

33. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has *to*, or *for*, after it in English.

34. Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, govern the dative.

35. Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*, *super*, govern the dative.

36. Veros, signifying *to profit*, *hurt*, *favour*, *assist*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *trust*, *threaten*, and *be angry with*, govern the dative.

37. *Recordor*, *memini*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the accusative or genitive.

38. Verbs of *abounding* and *wanting*, govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive.

39. *Utor*, *abutor*, *fungor*, *fruor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and some others, govern the ablative.

40. A verb compounded with a preposition, often governs the case of that preposition.

41. The infinitive mood may be governed by a verb, participle, adjective, or noun.

42. When *quod*, *quin*, *ut*, or *ne*, is omitted in Latin, the word, which would otherwise be in the nominative, is put in the accusative, and the verb in the infinitive mood.

Ama Deum. Amo te. Amas me. Bonus amat omnes. Reverere parentes. Amor tegit crimina. Superbia comitatur honores. Pastor, Corydon, ardebat Alexin, delicias. Mars posuit illum custodem ostii. Vivunt vitam. Rufilius olet pastillos. Xerxes maria ambulavisset, terramque navigâsset. Quicquid delirant reges, plectuntur Achivi. Mens lætatur turbidum. Ebrius fere rubet faciem. Vulneratur caput. Recordor lectionem. Obliviscor injuriæ. Cujus supra memini. De quo supra meminimus. Hæc olim meminisse juvabit. Crassus abundabat divitiis. Natura tantum eget paucis. Insanus eget custodis. Alter indiget alterius. Implentur veteris Bacchi. Caret omni culpâ. Non tam artis indigent, quàm laboris. Utitur fraude. Quousque tandem abutere, Catilina, patientiâ nostrâ? Debemus uti diligentiâ Non debemus abuti tempore, nam fruimur brevi tempore. Ego fungar vice cotis. Nec me tali dignor honore. Paternum servum sui participat consilii. Potior rerum. Depascitur artus. Miserere civium tuorum. Satagit rerum suarum. Desine querelarum. Regnavit populorum. Finis venit imperio. Animus redit hostibus. Tibi seris, tibi metis. Seges crescit hominibus. Laus debetur virtuti. Liberi laborant sibi. Præcepta dantur tibi. Non nobis solùm nati sumus. Multa malè eveniunt bonis. Sol lucet etiam sceleratis. Hæret lateri lethalis arundo. Nec vox hominem sonat, O Dea! certè. Pulchrum est benefacere reipublicæ. Præfer virtutem divitiis. Fortuna favet bonis. Adeamus scholam. Exeamus scholâ. Pecunia nescit mutare naturam. Ille est cupidus scire causam. Vidi hostem tentantem fugere. Nunc tempus est abire. Tempus est equum fumantia solvere colla. Omnes invidere mihi. Mene incepto desistere victam? Horatius est dignus legi. Homines venerunt pascere oves. Gaudeo te valere. Audio præsidem venire. Credo bonos remuneratum iri. Dicit me scribere. Dixit me scribere. Multitudo stat. Pars erant cæsi. Magna pars raptæ. Tu vocaris Johannes. Illa incedit regina. Scio illum haberi sapientem. Scio vos esse discipulos. Dos est decem talenta. Omnia pontus erant. Amantium iræ, amoris integratio est. Oppidum est appellatum Possidonia. Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda. Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest. Id maxime quemque decet, quod est cujusque suum maxime. Cato interfecit se. Miles defendit suam vitam. Deum agnoscimus ex operibus ejus. Mirâ sum alacritate ad litigandum. Multum auri æstimatur. Quid rei tractatur? Aliud mercedis dabitur. Non multi cibi hospitem accipies, sed multi joci. Quis vestrum ignorat? Quis nostrum ignorat. Dices nummos mihi opus esse. Hector ivit obvius hosti. Difficultates superandæ sunt studio et labore. Est hominis errare. Est stulti dicere, non putaveram. Est præceptorum curare. Militum est suo duci parere. Arrogantis est negligere quid de se quisque sentiat. Pauperis est numerare pecus. Et facere et pati fortia Romanum est.

Nauta, tenens gubernaculum, regit navim. Exercitus, sequens hostem, pugnat sagittis. Mors est anteponenda dedecori. Pii sunt fruituri æterna vita in cælis. Occulta, et maribus non invisa solùm, sed etiam inaudita sacra. Tu es invisus mihi. Plebs consulum nomen haud secus quàm regum perosa erat. Vivendum est mihi illic. Scio vivendum esse mihi illic. Moriendum est omnibus. Scio moriendum esse omnibus. Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano. Deliberandum est diu, quod statuendum est semel. Cicero dixit optimè omnium. Poeta agit utiliter urbi. Poeta agit inutiliter sibi. Hector exivit obviàm hosti. Hic laudat mercedes plenius æquo. Nemo dicitur locutus fuisse distinctiùs Demosthene. Nullos his mallem ludos spectatâsse. Mallem granum hordei omnibus gemmis. Consuetudo disputandi est impia. Omnes sunt cupidi vivendi beatè. Tempus abeundi est. Ille est peritus cantandi. Charta est utilis scribendo. Non est solvendo. Epidicum quærendo operam dabo. Aptat habendo ensem. Tu es promptus ad audiendum. Ille est attentus inter docendum. Pœna absterret a peccando. Memoria augetur excolendo. Defessus sum ambulando. Ignavi a discendo cito deterrentur. Non ibo servitum Graiis matribus. Venientes spectatum, cupiunt spectari. Cur is te perditum? It venatum. Hoc est mirabile dictu. Nihil dictu fœdum visuque hæc limina tanget, intra quæ puer est. Difficilis est inventu verus amicus. Palleo metu. Fecit hoc suo more. Juvenes saltabant gaudio. Ille est pallidus metu. Homo capitur voluptate. Georgius scribit pennâ. Laus paranda virtute. Mons est candidus nive. Clypeus fabricatus ære. Est æger pedibus. Murus est decem pedes altus. Urbs distat triginta milibus passuum. Philadelphia ferè distat centum milliaribus a Novo Eboraco. Non discedam pedem a te. Sol est multis partibus major terrâ. Quanto diutius Simonides Dei naturam consideravit, tanto obscurior res visa est ei. Toto vertice supra est. Hoc lignum excedit illud digito. Venit horâ tertiâ. Mansit paucos dies. Sex mensibus abfuit. Convenimus secundâ horâ. Saturnus regnavit aureâ ætate. Mansisti mecum unam noctem. Emi librum tribus solidis. Demosthenes docuit talento. Perfidus vendit patriam auro. Illa juvant quæ pluris emuntur. Nulla res constat patri minoris. Vendam librum tanti quanti valet. Vendidit librum tanti quantum valebat. Librum emam tanto pretio quanto valet. Quanti constitit? Asse et pluris. Permagno constitit. Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret. Venit pridie illius diei. Deus laudatur ubique gentium. Catiina habuit satis eloquentiæ. Meus pater venit ad templum. Meus pater venit ex templo. Puer ambulat in templum. Servus ambulavit sub scalas. Turris incedit super agmina. Puer ambulat in templo. Daphnis consedit sub ilice. Ferus leo cucurrit in sylvis. Aves super arbore sidunt. Alii super alios trucidantur. Nos autem, viri fortes, satisfacere reipublicæ videmur, si istius furorem ac tela vitemus.

RULES.

43. Participles, gerunds, supines, and adverbs, govern the same case, as the words from which they are derived.

44. The gerund in *dum*, of the nominative, with the verb *est*, governs the dative.

45. The gerund in *di*, of the genitive, is governed by nouns, or adjectives.

46. The gerund in *do*, of the dative, is governed by adjectives signifying *usefulness*, or *fitness*, &c.

47. The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative, is governed by the prepositions *ad*, *ob*, *inter ante*, *propter*.

48. The gerund in *do*, of the ablative, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*; or without a preposition, as the ablative of *cause*, *means*, or *manner*.

49. The supine in *um*, is put after a verb of motion.

50. The supine in *u*, is put after an adjective.

51. Nouns, signifying the *price* of a thing, are put in the ablative.

52. Nouns, signifying the *instrument*, *cause*, *means*, or *manner*, are put in the ablative.

53. Nouns, signifying *measure*, or *distance*, are put in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

54. Nouns, signifying the time *when*, are put in the ablative; those, *how long*, in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

RULES.

55. Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *admonishing*, and *acquitting*, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing.

56. Verbs of *esteeming*, govern the accusative of the person, or thing esteemed, and the genitive of the value.

57. Verbs of *comparing*, *giving*, *declaring*, and *taking away*, govern the accusative and dative.

58. Verbs of *asking*, and *teaching*, govern two accusatives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

59. Verbs of *loading*, *binding*, *clothing*, *depriving*, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative.

60. When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case.

61. Impersonal verbs govern the dative.

62. *Interest* and *refert* require the genitive.

63. *Miseret*, *pœnitet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing.

64. *Decet*, *delectat*, *juvat*, and *oportet*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive mood.

Cicero accusavit Verrem furti. Postulavit Milonem majestatis. Damnavit illum sceleris. Absolvit vos criminis. Morbus monet nos mortis. Arguit me furti. Me ipsum inertiæ condemno. Illum homicidii absolvunt. Monet me officii. De vi condemnati sunt. Erroris te moneo. Absolvo me peccato. Punit illum capite. Æstimo te magni. Sapiens æstimat voluptatem parvi. Facio te æqui. Consulo tuum monitum boni. Æstimo te pro nihilò. Comparo Virgilium Homero. Dedit homini sublime os. Dicam tibi totam rem. Eripuit me morti. Ignosce mihi hanc culpam. Minatus est mihi mortem. Suum cuique tribuito. Narras fabulam surdo. Educa hunc puerum mihi. Recita mihi sententiam Doce puellam mihi. Emam tibi libros. Praefecit Sextum classi. Præfero vim opibus. Gloriosum est iram mutare amicitiâ. Legam lectionem tibi. Paupertas sæpe suadet mala hominibus. Interdixit Galliam Romanis. Ad prætorem hominem traxit. Pacem te poscimus omnes. Egestas docet nos temperantiam. Cela hanc rem servos. Moneo te officium. Institue hunc puerum Græcis litteris. Omnes poscimus pacem à te. Docuit me grammaticam. Celavit me hanc rem. Celavit hanc rem mihi. Onerat naves auro. Induit se calceos. Induit se calceis. Deum posce veniam. Ea me ne celet. Verres accusabatur furti. Virgilius comparatur Homero. Ego eripior morti. Deus rogatur salutem. Nos docemur temperantiam. Hæc res celatur servos. Sæpe monemur mortis. Doceor grammaticam. Navis oneratur auro. Scio homines accusatum iri furti. Habetur ludibrio iis. Tu laudaris à me. Virtus diligitur à nobis. Mare à sole collucet. Phalaris non à paucis interiit. Per me defensa est respublica. Neque cernitur ulli. Vix audior ulli. Honesta bonis viris quæruntur. Nulla tuarum audita mihi neque visa sororum. Provisum est nobis optimè à Deo. Reclamatum est ab omnibus. Contigit mihi esse illìc. Expedit reipublicæ. Licet nemini peccare. Libet mihi expatiari. Pertinet ad te tacere. Favetur mihi. Mihi non potest noceri. Negat jucundè posse vivi sine virtute. Per virtutem potest iri ad astra. Aliorum laudi et gloriæ invideri solet. Refert patris. Interest omnium. Non mea refert. Refert militum. Cuja refert. Hoc parvi refert. Illud mea magni interest. Faciam quod maximè reipublicæ interesse judicabo. Adeone est fundata leviter fides, ut ubi sim, quàm qui sim, magis referat? Plurimum enim intererit, quibus artibus, aut quibus hunc tu moribus instituas. Miseret me infelicium civium. Semper pœnitet bonos peccati. Non pudet malos superbiæ. Tædet te citò tui officii. Piget infelices duræ sortis. Miseret me tui. Pœnitet me peccati. Tædet me vitæ. Pudet me culpæ. Pœnitet me peccâsse. Miseritum est me tuarum fortunarum. Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum misereri potest. Decet te esse æquum. Delectat pueros ludere. Juvat te manere domi. Oportet te studere diligentèr.

Delectat me studere. Non decet te rixari. Parvum parva decent. Est aliquid, quod non oporteat, etiamsi liceat. Sibi quisque consulet oportet. Vixit Romæ. Mortuus est Londini. Quid Romæ faciam? Habitat Carthagine. Studuit Parisiis. Horatius vixit Tibure et Athenis. Venit Romam. Profectus est Athenas. Regulus rediit Carthaginem. Carthagini nuncios mittam. Regulus rediit Carthagine. Venit Aberdoniâ. Fecit iter Philadelphiâ. Discedit Corintho. Laodiceâ iter faciebat. Per Thebas iter fecit. Quid faciam domi? Horatius vixit rure. Regulus non rediit domum. Petrus abiit rus nuper. Non ibo domo. Manet domi. Domum revertitur. Domo arcessitus sum. Vivit ruri. Jacet humi. Ubi vir natus fuit? In Italia. Quo abivit? In Italiam. Unde redivit? Ab Italia. Quâ transivit? Per Italiam. Deo volente, omnia cedent benè. Opere peracto, ludemus. Soleoriente, fugiunt tenebræ. Dominante libidine, temperantiæ nullus est locus. Nihil amicitiâ præstabilius est, exceptâ virtute. Oppressâ libertate patriæ, nihil est quod speremus amplius. Cicero, locutus hæc, consedit. Romani, libertate adeptâ, floruerunt. Nihil autem magis cavendum est senectuti, quàm ne languori se desidiæque dedat.

Deus, quem pii colunt, cujus munere vivunt, cujus sunt cupidi, cui parent et placent, quo fruentur, est æternus. Spectatum admissi, risum teneatis, amici? Pictoribus atque poëtis quidlibet audendi semper fuit æqua potestas. Serpit humi, tutus nimium, timidusque procellæ. In vitium ducit culpæ fuga, si caret arte. Sumite materiam vestris, qui scribitis, æquam viribus. Si vis me flere, dolendum est primùm ipsi tibi. Iratum vultum plena minarum verba decent. Et sibi constet. Nec deus intersit, nisi dignus vindice nodus inciderit. Graiis ingenium, Graiis dedit ore rotundo, musa loqui, præter laudem nullius avaris. Omne tulit punctum, qui miscuit utile dulci, lectorem delectando, pariterque monendo. Nunc est bibendum, nunc pede libero pulsanda tellus. Quibus pepercit aris? Quid intactum nefasti liquimus? Serves iturum Cæsarem in ultimos orbis Britannos. Valet ima summis mutare Deus. Nec tibi somnos adimunt. Multis ille quidem flebilis occidit; nulli flebilior quàm tibi, Virgili. Integer vitæ, scelerisque purus, non eget Mauri jaculis neque arcu. O mater, pulchrâ filiâ pulchrior. Nil pictis timidus navita puppibus fidit. Nunc vino pellite curas; cras ingens iterabimus æquor. Ac neque jam stabulis gaudet pecus, aut arator igni. Recepto dulce mihi furere est amico. Foliis viduantur orni. Desine mollium tandem querelarum. Post equitem sedet atra cura. Eheu ne rudis agminum sponsus lacessat regius asperum tactu leonem. Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori. Justum et tenacem propositi virum non vultus instantis tyranni mente quatit solidâ. Hac arte Pollux et vagus Hercules innixus, arces attiget igneas. Primâ nocte domum claude, neque in vias sub cantu querulæ despice tibiæ; et te sæpè vocanti duram, difficilis mane. Donec gratus eram tibi, Persarum vigui rege beatior. Tecum vivere amem, tecum obeam libens. Instar veris enim vultus ubi tuus affulsit, populo gratior it dies, et soles melius nitent. Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori. Nunc juvat nos levare diris pectora solicitudinibus. Nil fuit unquam sic impar sibi. Namque neglectis urenda filix innascitur agris. Egressum magnâ, me accepit Aricia, Româ.

RULES.

65. The name of a town, signifying the place *where*, or *in which*, if it be of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; but if it be of the third declension, or plural number, it is put in the ablative.

66. The name of a town, signifying the place *whither*, is put in the accusative.

67. The name of a town, signifying the place *whence*, or *through what place*, is put in the ablative.

68. *Domus* and *rus*, signifying the place *where*, are construed like the names of towns.

69. A noun, or pronoun, joined with a participle expressed or understood, when its case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute.

RULES.

1. The adjective agrees with its substantive, in number, case, and gender.
2. The verb agrees with its nominative case, in number and person.
3. The relative, *qui, quæ, quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.
4. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative is the nominative to the verb; but when a nominative intervenes, the relative is governed by the verb, or some other word in the sentence.
5. Any verb may have the same case *after* as *before* it, when both words refer to the same person or thing.
6. Substantives signifying the same person or thing, agree in case.
7. One substantive governs another signifying a different person or thing, in the genitive.
8. If the latter of two substantives have an adjective of praise or dispraise, joined with it, it may be put either in the genitive or ablative.
9. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive, governs the genitive.
10. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative.
11. Verbal adjectives, and such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive.
12. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural.
13. Adjectives signifying *profit* or *disprofit*, *likeness* or *unlikeness*, &c. govern the dative.
14. These adjectives, *dignus, indignus, præditus*, and *contentus*; also, *natus, satus, ortus, editus*, and the like, govern the ablative.
15. Adjectives, signifying *plenty*, or *want*, govern the genitive, or ablative.
16. *Sum*, when it signifies *possession, property*, or *duty*, governs the genitive.

DE VIRIS ILLUSTRIBUS URBIS ROMÆ.

REGULUS.

Regulus deindè in Africam primus Romanorum ducum trajecit. Clypeam urbem et trecenta castella expugnavit: neque cum hominibus tantùm, sed etiam cum monstris dimicavit. Nam quum apud flumen Bagradam castra haberet, anguis miræ magnitudinis exercitum Romanum vexabat: multos milites ingenti ore corripuit; plures caudæ verbere elisit; nonnullos ipso pestilentis halitûs afflatu exanimavit. Neque is telorum ictu perforari poterat; quippè qui durissimâ squamarum loricâ omnia tela facilè repelleret. Confugiendum fuit ad machinas, et advectis balistis, tanquam arx quædam munita dejiciendus hostis fuit. Tandem saxorum pondere oppressus jacuit; sed cruore suo flumen et vicinam regionem infecit, Romanosque castra movere coëgit. Corium belluæ centum et viginti pedes longum Romam misit Regulus.

Lacedæmonii Xantippum virum belli peritissimum Carthaginiensibus miserunt, à quo Regulus victus est ultimâ pernicie: duo tantùm millia hominum ex omni Romano exercitu remanserunt: Regulus ipse captus, et in carcerem conjectus est. Deindè Romam de permutandis captivis dato jurejurando missus est, ut, si non impetrâsset, rediret ipse Carthaginem: qui quum Romam venisset, inductus in senatum mandata exposuit, et primùm ne sententiam diceret recusavit, causatus se, quoniam in hostium potestatem venisset, jam non esse senatorem Jussus tamen sententiam aperire, negavit esse utile captivos Pœnos reddi, quia adolescentes essent et boni duces, ipse verò jam confectus senectute: cujus quum valuisset auctoritas, captivi retenti sunt.

Regulus deindè quum retineretur à propinquis et amicis, tamen Carthaginem rediit: neque verò tunc ignorabat se ad crudelissimum hostem et ad exquisita supplicia proficisci, sed jusjurandum conservandum putavit. Reversum Carthaginienses omni cruciatu necaverunt: palpebris enim resectis aliquandiù in loco tenebricoso tenuerunt; deindè quum sol esset ardentissimus, repentè eductum intueri cœlum coëgerunt; postremò in arcam ligneam incluserunt, in quâ undiquè clavi præacuti eminebant. Ita dùm fessum corpus, quocumquè inclinaret, stimulis ferreis confoditur, vigiliis et dolore continuo extinctus est. Hic fuit Atilii Reguli exitus ipsâ quoque vitâ, licèt per maximam gloriam diù actâ, clarior et illustrior.

FABIUS MAXIMUS.

Annibal, superatis Pyrenæi et Alpium jugis, in Italiam venit. Publium Scipionem apud Ticinum amnem, Sempronium apud Trebiam, Flaminium apud Trasimenum profligavit. Adversùs hostem toties victorem missus Quintus Fabius dictator, Annibalis impetum morâ fregit; namque pristinis edoctus cladibus belli rationem mutavit. Per loca alta exercitum ducebat, neque ullo loco fortunæ se committebat: castris nisi quantùm necessitas cogeret tenebatur miles. Dux neque occasioni rei benè gerendæ deerat, si qua ab hoste daretur, neque ullam ipse hosti dabat. Frumentatum exeunti Annibali opportunus aderat, agmen carpens, palantes excipiens. Ita ex levibus præliis superior discessit, militemque cœpit minùs jam aut virtutis suæ, aut fortunæ pœnitere.

His artibus Annibalem Fabius in agro Falerno incluserat; sed ille callidus sine ullo exercitûs detrimento se expedivit.

17.
Sum, taken for *habeo*, *(to have,)* governs the dative of a person.

18.
Sum, taken for *affero*, *(to bring,)* governs two datives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

19.
The compounds of *Sum*, except *Possum*, govern the dative.

20.
Words of the comparative degree govern the ablative when *quam* is omitted in Latin.

21.
Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.

22.
Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive.

23.
The prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the accusative.

24.
The prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the ablative.

25.
The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

26.
The interjections *O*, *heu*, *proh*, and some others, govern the nominative, accusative, or vocative.

27.
The interjections *hei*, and *væ*, govern the dative.

28.
The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *aut*, *neque*, and some others, connect like cases and modes.

29.
Two, or more substantives singular, connected by a conjunction, may have a verb, adjective, or relative plural to agree with them.

30.
The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, &c. govern the subjunctive mood.

31.
Verbs, signifying actively, govern the accusative.

32.
Misereor, *miseresco*, and *satago*, govern the genitive.

33.
Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has *to*, or *for*, after it in English.

34.
Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, govern the dative.

35.
Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*, *super*, govern the dative.

36.
Verbs, signifying *to profit*, *hurt*, *favour*, *assist*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *trust*, *threaten*, and *be angry with*, govern the dative.

37.
Recordor, *memini*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the accusative or genitive.

38.
Verbs of *abounding* and *wanting*, govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive.

39.
Utor, *abutor*, *fungor*, *fruor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and some others, govern the ablative.

40.
A verb compounded with a preposition, often governs the case of that preposition.

41.
The infinitive mood may be governed by a verb, participle, adjective, or noun.

42.
When *quod*, *quin*, *ut*, or *ne*, is omitted in Latin, the word, which would otherwise be in the nominative, is put in the accusative, and the verb in the infinitive mood.

43.
Participles, gerunds, supines, and adverbs, govern the same case as the words from which they are derived.

44.
The gerund in *dum*, of the nominative, with the verb *est*, governs the dative.

45.
The gerund in *di*, of the genitive, is governed by nouns, or adjectives.

46.
The gerund in *do*, of the dative, is governed by adjectives signifying *usefulness*, or *fitness*, &c.

47.
The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative, is governed by the prepositions *ad*, *ob*, *inter*, *ante*, *propter*.

48.
The gerund in *do*, of the ablative, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*; or without a preposition, as the ablative of *cause*, *means*, or *manner*.

49.
The supine in *um*, is put after a verb of motion.

50.
The supine in *u*, is put after an adjective.

51.
Nouns, signifying the *price* of a thing, are put in the ablative.

52.
Nouns, signifying the *instrument*, *cause*, *means*, or *manner*, are put in the ablative.

53.
Nouns, signifying *measure*, or *distance*, are put in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

54.
Nouns, signifying the time *when*, are put in the ablative; those, *how long*, in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

55.
Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *admonishing*, and *acquitting*, govern the acusative of a person with the genitive of a thing.

56.
Verbs of *esteeming*, govern the accusative of the person, or thing esteemed, and the genitive, of the value.

57.
Verbs of *comparing*, *givin* , *declaring*, and *taking away*, govern the accusative and dative.

58.
Verbs of *asking*, and *teaching*, govern two accusatives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

59.
Verbs of *loading*, *binding*, *clothing*, *depriving*, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative.

60.
When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case.

61.
Impersonal verbs govern the dative.

62.
Interest and *refert* require the genitive.

63.
Miseret, *pœnitet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing.

64.
Decet, *delectat*, *juvat*, and *oportet*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive mood.

65.
The name of a town, signifying the place *where*, or *in which*, if it be of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; but if it be of the third declension, or plural number, it is put in the ablative.

66.
The name of a town, signifying the place *whither*, is put in the accusative.

67.
The name of a town, signifying the place *whence*, or *through what place*, is put in the ablative.

68.
Domus and *rus*, signifying the place *where*, are construed like the names of towns.

69.
A noun, or pronoun, joined with a participle expressed or understood, when its case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute.

RULES.

1. The adjective agrees with its substantive, in number, case, and gender.
2. The verb agrees with its nominative case, in number and person.
3. The relative, *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.
4. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative is the nominative to the verb; but when a nominative intervenes, the relative is governed by the verb, or some other word in the sentence.
5. Any verb may have the same case *after* as *before* it, when both words refer to the same person or thing.
6. Substantives signifying the same person or thing, agree in case.
7. One substantive governs another signifying a different person or thing, in the genitive.
8. If the latter of two substantives have an adjective of praise or dispraise, joined with it, it may be put either in the genitive or ablative.
9. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive, governs the genitive.
10. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative.
11. Verbal adjectives, and such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive.
12. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural.
13. Adjectives signifying *profit*, or *disprofit*, *likeness* or *unlikeness*, &c. govern the dative.
14. These adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *præditus*, and *contentus*; also, *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, govern the ablative.
15. Adjectives, signifying *plenty*, or *want*, govern the genitive, or ablative.
16. *Sum*, when it signifies *possession*, *property*, or *duty*, governs the genitive.

Nempè arida sarmenta boum cornibus alligavit, eaque principio noctis incendit: metus flammæ relucentis ex capite boves velut stimulatos furore agebat. Hi ergo accensis cornibus per montes, per silvas hùc illùc discurrebant. Romani, qui ad speculandum concurrerant, miraculo attoniti constiterunt: ipse Fabius insidias esse ratus, militem extra vallum egredi vetuit. Intereà Annibal ex angustiis evasit. Dein Annibal, ut Fabio apud suos crearet invidiam, agrum ejus, omnibus circà vastatis, intactum reliquit; at Fabius omnem ab se suspicionem propulsavit: nàm eumdem agrum vendidit, ejusque pretio captivos Romanos redemit.

Quintus Fabius jam senex filio suo consuli legatus fuit; quumque in ejus castra veniret, filius obviàm patri progressus est; duodecim lictores pro more anteibant. Equo vehebatur senex, nec appropinquante consule descendit. Jam ex lictoribus undecim verecundiâ paternæ majestatis taciti præterierant. Quod quum consul animadvertisset, proximum lictorem jussit inclamare Fabio patri ut ex equo descenderet. Pater tùm desiliens: "Non ego, fili, inquit, tuum imperium contempsi, sed experiri volui an scires consulem agere." Ad summam senectutem vixit Fabius Maximus, dignus tanto cognomine. Cautior quàm promptior habitus est, sed insita ejus ingenio prudentia bello, quod tùm gerebatur, aptissima erat. Nemini dubium est quin rem Romanam cunctando restituerit.

SCIPIO AFRICANUS.

Publius Cornelius Scipio nondùm annos pueritiæ egressus patrem singulari virtute servavit: nam quum is in pugnâ apud Ticinum contra Annibalem commissâ graviter vulneratus esset, et in hostium manus jamjam venturus esset, filius, interjecto corpore, Pœnis irruentibus se opposuit, et patrem periculo liberavit. Quæ pietas Scipioni posteà Ædilitatem petenti favorem populi conciliavit; quum obsisterent tribuni plebis negantes rationem ejus esse habendam, quòd nondùm ad petendum legitima ætas esset: "Si me, inquit Scipio, omnes quirites ædilem facere volunt, satis annorum habeo." Tanto indè favore ad suffragia itum est, ut tribuni incœpto destiterint.

Quum Romani duas clades in Hispaniâ accepissent, duoque ibi summi imperatores cecidissent, placuit exercitum augeri, eòque proconsulem mitti; nec tamen quem mitterent satis constabat. Eâ de re indicta sunt comitia. Primò populus exspectabat, ut qui se tanto dignos imperio crederent, nomina profiterentur; sed nemo audebat illud imperium suscipere. Mœsta itaque civitas erat, et propè consilii inops. Subitò Cornelius Scipio quatuor et viginti fermè annos natus, professus est se petere, et in superiore, undè conspici posset, loco constitit: in quem omnium ora conversa sunt. Deindè ad unum omnes Scipionem in Hispaniâ proconsulem esse jùsserunt. At postquàm animorum impetus resedit, populum Romanum cœpit facti pœnitere. Ætati Scipionis maximè diffidebant. Quod ubi animadvertit Scipio, advocatâ concione, ita magno elatoque animo disseruit de bello quod gerendum erat, ut homines curâ liberaverit, speque certâ impleverit.

Profectus igitur in Hispaniam Scipio Carthaginem novam, quâ die venit, expugnavit. Eò congestæ erant omnes penè Africæ et Hispaniæ opes, quibus potitus est. Inter captivos ad eum adducta est eximiæ formæ adulta virgo. Postquàm comperit eam illustri loco inter Celtiberos natam, principique ejus

17.

Sum, taken for *habeo*, (*to have*,) governs the dative of a person.

18.

Sum, taken for *affero*, (*to bring*,) governs two datives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

19.

The compounds of *Sum*, except *Possum*, govern the dative.

20.

Words of the comparative degree govern the ablative when *quam* is omitted in Latin.

21.

Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.

22.

Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive.

23.

The prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the accusative.

24.

The prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the ablative.

25.

The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

26.

The interjections *O*, *heu*, *proh*, and some others, govern the nominative, accusative, or vocative.

27.

The interjections *hei*, and *væ*, govern the dative.

28.

The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *aut*, *neque*, and some others, connect like cases and modes.

29.

Two, or more substantives singular, connected by a conjunction, may have a verb, adjective, or relative plural to agree with them.

30.

The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, &c. govern the subjunctive mood.

31.

Verbs, signifying actively, govern the accusative.

32.

Misereor, *miseresco*, and *satago*, govern the genitive.

33.

Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has *to*, or *for*, after it in English.

34.

Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, govern the dative.

35.

Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*, *super*, govern the dative.

36.

Verbs, signifying *to profit*, *hurt*, *favour*, *assist*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *trust*, *threaten*, and *be angry with*, govern the dative.

37.

Recordor, *memini*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the accusative or genitive.

38.

Verbs of *abounding* and *wanting*, govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive.

39.

Utor, *abutor*, *fungor*, *fruor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and some others, govern the ablative.

40.

A verb compounded with a preposition, often governs the case of that preposition.

41.

The infinitive mood may be governed by a verb, participle, adjective, or noun.

42.

When *quod*, *quin*, *ut*, or *ne*, is omitted in Latin, the word, which would otherwise be in the nominative, is put in the accusative, and the verb in the infinitive mood.

43.

Participles, gerunds, supines, and adverbs, govern the same case as the words from which they are derived.

44.

The gerund in *dum*, of the nominative, with the verb *est*, governs the dative.

45.

The gerund in *di*, of the genitive, is governed by nouns, or adjectives.

46.

The gerund in *do*, of the dative, is governed by adjectives signifying *usefulness*, or *fitness*, &c.

47.

The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative, is governed by the prepositions *ad*, *ob*, *inter*, *ante*, *propter*.

48.

The gerund in *do*, of the ablative, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*; or without a preposition, as the ablative of *cause*, *means*, or *manner*.

49.

The supine in *um*, is put after a verb of motion.

50.

The supine in *u*, is put after an adjective.

51.

Nouns, signifying the *price* of a thing, are put in the ablative.

52.

Nouns, signifying the *instrument*, *cause*, *means*, or *manner*, are put in the ablative.

53.

Nouns, signifying *measure*, or *distance*, are put in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

54.

Nouns, signifying the time *when*, are put in the ablative; those, *how long*, in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

55.

Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *admonishing*, and *accquitting*, govern the acusative of a person with the genitive of a thing.

56.

Verbs of *esteeming*, govern the accusative of the person, or thing esteemed, and the genitive, of the value.

57.

Verbs of *comparing*, *giving*, *declaring*, and *taking away*, govern the accusative and dative.

58.

Verbs of *asking*, and *teaching*, govern two accusatives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

59.

Verbs of *loading*, *binding*, *clothing*, *depriving*, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative.

60.

When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case.

61.

Impersonal verbs govern the dative.

62.

Interest and *refert* require the genitive.

63.

Miseret, *pœnitet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing.

64.

Decet, *delectat*, *juvat*, and *oportet*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive mood.

65.

The name of a town, signifying the place *where*, or *in which*, if it be of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; but if it be of the third declension, or plural number, it is put in the ablative.

66.

The name of a town, signifying the place *whither*, is put in the accusative.

67.

The name of a town, signifying the place *whence*, or *through what place*, is put in the ablative.

68.

Domus and *rus*, signifying the place *where*, are construed like the names of towns.

69.

A noun, or pronoun, joined with a participle expressed or understood, when its case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute.

RULES.

1. The adjective agrees with its substantive, in number, case, and gender.

2. The verb agrees with its nominative case, in number and person.

3. The relative, qui, quæ, quod, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.

4. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative is the nominative to the verb; but when a nominative intervenes, the relative is governed by the verb, or some other word in the sentence.

5. Any verb may have the same case after it as before it, when both words refer to the same person or thing.

6. Substantives signifying the same person or thing, agree in case.

[illegible]

Deinde arida sarmenta boum cornibus alligavit, eaque principio noctis incendit: metus flammæ relucentis ex capite boves velut stimulatos furore agebat. Hi ergo accensis cornibus per montes, per silvas huc illuc discurrebant. Romani, qui ad spectaculum concurrerant, miraculo attoniti constiterunt: ipse Fabius insidias esse ratus, militem extra vallum egredi vetuit. Interea Annibal ex angustiis evasit. Deinde Annibal, ut Fabio apud suos crearet invidiam, agrum ejus, omnibus circa vastatis, intactum reliquit: at Fabius omnem ab se suspicionem propulsavit: nam eumdem agrum vendidit, ejusque pretio captivos Romanos redemit.

Maximus Fabius jam senex filio suo consuli legatus fuit: cumque in ejus castra veniret, filius obviam patri progressus est: duodecim lictores pro more anteibant. Equo vehebatur senex, nec appropinquante consule descendit. Jam ex lictoribus undecim verecundia paternæ majestatis taciti præterierant. Quod cum consul animadvertisset, proximum lictorem jussit inclamare Fabio patri, ut ex equo descenderet. Pater tum desiliens, "Non ego, fili," inquit, "tuum imperium contempsi, sed experiri volui an scires consulem agere." Ad summam senectutem vixit Fabius Maximus, dignus tanto cognomine. Cautior tamen quam promptior habitus est; sed insita ejus ingenio prudentia [illegible] ad [illegible] gerendum [illegible]issima erat. Nemini dubium [illegible] quin rem Romanam cunctando restituerit.

SCIPIO AFRICANUS.

[illegible] Scipio nondum annos pueritiæ egressus patrem singulari [illegible] servavit: nam cum is in pugna apud [illegible] commissa graviter vulneratus esset, [illegible] manus [illegible] venturus esset, filius, interjecto [illegible] se opposuit, et patrem periculo liberavit. [illegible] postea ædilitatem petenti favo[illegible] obsisterent tribuni plebis ne[illegible] quod nondum ad peten[illegible] esset, "[illegible]," inquit Scipio, "omnes Qui[illegible] satis annorum habeo." Tanto inde [illegible] incepto destiterint.

[illegible] in Hispania acceperunt. Itaque [illegible] exercitum augeri, [illegible] nemo tamen [illegible] auderet, satis [illegible] Primo populus [illegible] imperio [illegible] nomina [illegible] illud imperium suscipere. [illegible] consilii inops. Subito Cornelius Scipio, [illegible] annos natus, professus est [illegible] consistit: [illegible] Deinde ut omnes Scipionem in Hispaniam [illegible] At post[illegible] Romanæ [illegible] Quod ubi animadvertit Scipio, advocata concione, ita magno elatoque animo disseruit de bello quod gerendum erat, ut homines cura liberaverit, spemque [illegible] impleverit.

Profectus igitur in Hispaniam Scipio Carthaginem novam, qua die venit, [illegible] Africæ et Hispaniæ [illegible] Inter captivos ad eum adducta est [illegible] virgo. Postquam com[illegible] illustri [illegible] Celtiberorum [illegible] principique ejus

17.
Sum, taken for *habeo*, *(to have,)* governs the dative of a person.

18.
Sum, taken for *affero*, *(to bring,)* governs two datives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

19.
The compounds of *Sum*, except *Possum*, govern the dative.

20.
Words of the comparative degree govern the ablative when *quam* is omitted in Latin.

21.
Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.

22.
Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive.

23.
The prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the accusative.

24.
The prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the ablative.

25.
The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

26.
The interjections *O*, *heu*, *proh*, and some others, govern the nominative, accusative, or vocative.

27.
The interjections *hei*, and *væ*, govern the dative.

28.
The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *aut*, *neque*, and some others, connect like cases and modes.

29.
Two, or more substantives singular, connected by a conjunction, may have a verb, adjective, or relative plural to agree with them.

30.
The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, &c. govern the subjunctive mood.

31.
Verbs, signifying actively, govern the accusative.

32.
Misereor, *miseresco*, and *satago*, govern the genitive.

33.
Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has *to*, or *for*, after it in English.

34.
Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, govern the dative.

35.
Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*, *super*, govern the dative.

36.
Verbs, signifying *to profit*, *hurt*, *favour*, *assist*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *trust*, *threaten*, and *be angry with*, govern the dative.

37.
Recordor, *memini*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the accusative or genitive.

38.
Verbs of *abounding* and *wanting*, govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive.

39.
Utor, *abutor*, *fungor*, *fruor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and some others, govern the ablative.

40.
A verb compounded with a preposition, often governs the case of that preposition.

41.
The infinitive mood may be governed by a verb, participle, adjective, or noun.

42.
When *quod*, *quin*, *ut*, or *ne*, is omitted in Latin, the word, which would otherwise be in the nominative, is put in the accusative, and the verb in the infinitive mood.

43.
Participles, gerunds, supines, and adverbs, govern the same case as the words from which they are derived.

44.
The gerund in *dum*, of the nominative, with the verb *est*, governs the dative.

45.
The gerund in *di*, of the genitive, is governed by nouns, or adjectives.

46.
The gerund in *do*, of the dative, is governed by adjectives signifying *usefulness*, or *fitness*, &c.

47.
The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative, is governed by the prepositions *ad*, *ob*, *inter*, *ante*, *propter*.

48.
The gerund in *do*, of the ablative, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*; or without a preposition, as the ablative of *cause*, *means*, or *manner*.

49.
The supine in *um*, is put after a verb of motion.

50.
The supine in *u*, is put after an adjective.

51.
Nouns, signifying the *price* of a thing, are put in the ablative.

52.
Nouns, signifying the *instrument*, *cause*, *means*, or *manner*, are put in the ablative.

53.
Nouns, signifying *measure*, or *distance*, are put in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

54.
Nouns, signifying the time *when*, are put in the ablative; those, *how long*, in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

55.
Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *admonishing*, and *accquitting*, govern the acusative of a person with the genitive of a thing.

56.
Verbs of *esteeming*, govern the accusative of the person, or thing esteemed, and the genitive, of the value.

57.
Verbs of *comparing*, *giving*, *declaring*, and *taking away*, govern the accusative and dative.

58.
Verbs of *asking*, and *teaching*, govern two accusatives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

59.
Verbs of *loading*, *binding*, *clothing*, *depriving*, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative.

60.
When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case.

61.
Impersonal verbs govern the dative.

62.
Interest and *refert* require the genitive.

63.
Miseret, *pœnitet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing.

64.
Decet, *delectat*, *juvat*, and *oportet*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive mood.

65.
The name of a town, signifying the place *where*, or *in which*, if it be of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; but if it be of the third declension, or plural number, it is put in the ablative.

66.
The name of a town, signifying the place *whither*, is put in the accusative.

67.
The name of a town, signifying the place *whence*, or *through what place*, is put in the ablative.

68.
Domus and *rus*, signifying the place *where*, are construed like the names of towns.

69.
A noun, or pronoun, joined with a participle expressed or understood, when its case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute.

RULES.

1. The adjective agrees with its substantive, in number, case, and gender.
2. The verb agrees with its nominative case, in number and person.
3. The relative, *qui, quæ, quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.
4. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative is the nominative to the verb; but when a nominative intervenes, the relative is governed by the verb, or some other word in the sentence.
5. Any verb may have the same case *after* as *before* it, when both words refer to the same person or thing.
6. Substantives signifying the same person or thing, agree in case.
7. One substantive governs another signifying a different person or thing, in the genitive.
8. If the latter of two substantives have an adjective of praise or dispraise, joined with it, it may be put either in the genitive or ablative.
9. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive, governs the genitive.
10. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative.
11. Verbal adjectives, and such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive.
12. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural.
13. Adjectives signifying *profit* or *disprofit, likeness* or *unlikeness*, &c. govern the dative.
14. These adjectives, *dignus, indignus, præditus*, and *contentus;* also, *natus, satus, ortus, editus*, and the like, govern the ablative.
15. Adjectives, signifying *plenty*, or *want*, govern the genitive, or ablative.
16. *Sum*, when it signifies *possession, property*, or *duty*, governs the genitive.

gentis adolescenti desponsam fuisse, arcessitis parentibus et sponso eam reddidit. Parentes virginis, qui ad eam redimendam satis magnum auri pondus attulerant, Scipionem orabant ut id ab se donum reciperet. Scipio aurum poni ante pedes jussit, vocatoque ad se virginis sponso: "Super dotem, inquit, quam accepturus à socero es, hæc tibi à me dotalia dona accedent;" aurumque tollere ac sibi habere jussit. Ille domum reversus, ad referendam Scipioni gratiam, Celtiberos Romanis conciliavit.

SCIPIO NASICA.

Scipio Nasica censor factus, gravem se ac severum præbuit. Quum equitum censum ageret, equitem quemdam vidit obeso et pingui corpore, equum verò ejus strigosum et macilentum. "Quidnam causæ est, inquit censor, cur sis tu, quàm equus pinguior? Quoniam, respondit eques, ego me ipse curo, equum verò servus." Minùs verecundum visum est responsum; itaque graviter objurgatus eques, et mulctâ damnatus. Idem Scipio Nasica cum Ennio poëtâ vivebat conjunctissimè. Quum ad eum venisset, eique ab ostio quærenti ancilla dixisset Ennium domi non esse, Nasica sensit illam domini jussu dixisse, et illum intùs esse. Paucis pòst diebus quum ad Nasicam venisset Ennius, et eum à januâ quæreret, exclamavit ipse Nasica se domi non esse. Tùm Ennius: "Quid. ego non cognosco, inquit, vocem tuam? Hîc Nasica: Homo es impudens: ego quum te quærerem, ancillæ tuæ credidi te domi non esse; tu non mihi credis ipsi."

PAULUS ÆMILIUS.

Confecto bello, Paulus Æmilius regiâ nave ad urbem est subvectus. Completæ erant omnes Tiberis ripæ obviàm effusâ multitudine. Fuit ejus triumphus omnium longè magnificentissimus. Populus, exstructis per forum tabulatis in modum theatrorum, spectavit in candidis togis. Aperta templa omnia et sertis coronata thure fumabant. In tres dies distributa est pompa spectaculi. Primus dies vix suffecit transvehendis signis tabulisque; sequenti die translata sunt arma, galeæ, scuta, loricæ, pharetræ, argentum aurumque. Tertio die, primo statim mane ducere agmen cœpêre tibicines, non festos solemnium pomparum modos, sed bellicum sonantes, quasi in aciem procedendum foret. Deindè agebantur pingues cornibus auratis et vittis redimiti boves centum et viginti.

Sequebantur Persei liberi, comitante educatorum et magistrorum turbâ, qui manus ad spectatores cum lacrymis miserabiliter tendebant, et pueros docebant implorandam suppliciter victoris populi misericordiam. Ponè filios incedebat cum uxore Perseus stupenti et attonito similis. Indè quadringentæ coronæ aureæ portabantur, ab omnibus ferè Græciæ civitatibus dono missæ. Postremò ipse in curru Paulus auro purpurâque fulgens eminebat, qui magnam quum dignitate aliâ corporis, tùm senectâ ipsâ majestatem præ se ferebat. Post currum inter alios illustres viros filii duo Æmilii; deindè equites turmatim, et cohortes peditum suis quæque ordinibus. Paulo à senatu et à plebe concessum est ut in ludis Circensibus veste triumphali uteretur, eique cognomen Macedonici inditum.

TIBERIUS GRACCHUS ET CAIUS GRACCHUS.

Tiberius Gracchus et Caius Gracchus Scipionis Africani ex filiâ nepotes erant. Horum adolescentia bonis artibus et magnâ

17.
Sum, taken for *habeo*, *(to have,)* governs the dative of a person.

18.
Sum, taken for *affero*, *(to bring,)* governs two datives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

19.
The compounds of *Sum*, except *Possum*, govern the dative.

20.
Words of the comparative degree govern the ablative when *quam* is omitted in Latin.

21.
Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.

22.
Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive.

23.
The prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the accusative.

24.
The prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the ablative.

25.
The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

26.
The interjections *O*, *heu*, *proh*, and some others, govern the nominative, accusative, or vocative.

27.
The interjections *hei*, and *væ*, govern the dative.

28.
The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *aut*, *neque*, and some others, connect like cases and modes.

29.
Two, or more substantives singular, connected by a conjunction, may have a verb, adjective, or relative plural to agree with them.

30.
The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, &c. govern the subjunctive mood.

31.
Verbs, signifying actively, govern the accusative.

32.
Misereor, *misceresco*, and *salago*, govern the genitive.

33.
Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has *to*, or *for*, after it in English.

34.
Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, govern the dative.

35.
Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*, *super*, govern the dative.

36.
Verbs, signifying *to profit*, *hurt*, *favour*, *assist*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *trust*, *threaten*, and *be angry with*, govern the dative.

37.
Recordor, *memini*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the accusative or genitive.

38.
Verbs of *abounding* and *wanting*, govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive.

39.
Utor, *abutor*, *fungor*, *fruor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and some others, govern the ablative.

40.
A verb compounded with a preposition, often governs the case of that preposition.

41.
The infinitive mood may be governed by a verb, participle, adjective, or noun.

42.
When *quod*, *quin*, *ut*, or *ne*, is omitted in Latin, the word, which would otherwise be in the nominative, is put in the accusative, and the verb in the infinitive mood.

43.
Participles, gerunds, supines, and adverbs, govern the same case as the words from which they are derived.

44.
The gerund in *dum*, of the nominative, with the verb *est*, governs the dative.

45.
The gerund in *di*, of the genitive, is governed by nouns, or adjectives.

46.
The gerund in *do*, of the dative, is governed by adjectives signifying *usefulness*, or *fitness*, &c.

47.
The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative, is governed by the prepositions *ad*, *ob*, *inter*, *ante*, *propter*.

48.
The gerund in *do*, of the ablative, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*; or without a preposition, as the ablative of *cause*, *means*, or *manner*.

49.
The supine in *um*, is put after a verb of motion.

50.
The supine in *u*, is put after an adjective.

51.
Nouns, signifying the *price* of a thing, are put in the ablative.

52.
Nouns, signifying the *instrument*, *cause*, *means*, or *manner*, are put in the ablative.

53.
Nouns, signifying *measure*, or *distance*, are put in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

54.
Nouns, signifying the time *when*, are put in the ablative; those, *how long*, in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

55.
Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *admonishing*, and *accquitting*, govern the acusative of a person with the genitive of a thing.

56.
Verbs of *esteeming*, govern the accusative of the person, or thing esteemed, and the genitive, of the value.

57.
Verbs of *comparing*, *giving*, *declaring*, and *taking away*, govern the accusative and dative.

58.
Verbs of *asking*, and *teaching*, govern two accusatives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

59.
Verbs of *loading*, *binding*, *clothing*, *depriving*, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative.

60.
When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case.

61.
Impersonal verbs govern the dative.

62.
Interest and *refert* require the genitive.

63.
Miseret, *pœnitet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing.

64.
Decet, *delectat*, *juvat*, and *oportet*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive mood.

65.
The name of a town, signifying the place *where*, or *in which*, if it be of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; but if it be of the third declension, or plural number, it is put in the ablative.

66.
The name of a town, signifying the place *whither*, is put in the accusative.

67.
The name of a town, signifying the place *whence*, or *through what place*, is put in the ablative.

68.
Domus and *rus*, signifying the place *where*, are construed like the names of towns.

69.
A noun, or pronoun, joined with a participle expressed or understood, when its case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute.

omnium spe floruit. Ad egregiam quippè indolem accedebat optima educatio. Exstant Corneliæ matris epistolæ, quibus apparet eos non solùm in gremio matris educatos fuisse, sed etiam ab eâ sermonis elegantiam hausisse. Maximum matronis ornamentum esse liberos benè institutos meritò putabat sapientissima illa mulier: quum Campana matrona, apud illam hospita, ornamenta sua, quæ erant illâ ætate pretiosissima, ostentaret ei muliebriter, Cornelia traxit eam sermone, quousquè à scholâ redirent liberi; quos reversos hospitæ exhibens: "En hæc, inquit, mea ornamenta." Nihil quidem istis adolescentibus neque à naturâ neque à doctrinâ defuit; sed ambo rempublicam, quam tueri potuissent, impiè perturbare maluerunt.

LUCIUS LUCULLUS.

Habebat Lucullus villam prospectu et ambulatione pulcherrimam, quò quum venisset Pompeius, id unum reprehendit quòd ea habitatio esset quidem æstate peramœna, sed hieme minùs commoda videretur; cui Lucullus: "Putasne, inquit, me minùs sapere quàm hirundines, quæ adveniente hieme sedem commutant?" Villarum magnificentiæ respondebat epularum sumptus: quum aliquandò modica ei, utpotè soli, cœna esset posita, coquum graviter objurgavit, eique excusanti ac dicenti se non debuisse lautum parare convivium, quòd nemo esset ad cœnam invitatus: "Quid ais, inquit iratus Lucullus, an nesciebas Lucullum hodiè cœnaturum esse apud Lucullum?"

POMPEIUS MAGNUS.

Cnæus Pompeius stirpis senatoriæ adolescens, in bello civili se et patrem consilio servavit. Pompeii pater suo exercitui ob avaritiam erat invisus; itaque facta est in eum conspiratio Terentius quidam, Cnæi Pompeii contubernalis, eum occidendum susceperat, dùm alii tabernaculum patris incenderent. Quæ res juveni Pompeio cœnanti nunciata est. Ipse nihil periculo motus, solito hilariùs bibit, et cum Terentio eâdem, quâ anteà, comitate usus est. Deindè cubiculum ingressus, clàm subduxit se tentorio, et firmam patri circumposuit custodiam. Terentius tùm districto ense, ad lectum Pompeii accessit, multisque ictibus stragula percussit. Ortâ mox seditione, Pompeius se in media conjecit agmina, militesque tumultuantes precibus et lacrymis placavit, ac suo duci reconciliavit.

Pompeius eodem bello civili partes Syllæ secutus, ita egit, ut ab eo maximè diligeretur. Annos tres et viginti natus, ut Syllæ auxilio veniret, paterni exercitûs reliquias collegit, statimque dux peritus exstitit. Illius magnus apud militem amor, magna apud omnes admiratio fuit; nullus ei labor tædio, nulla defatigatio molestiæ erat. Cibi vinique temperans, somni parcus, inter milites corpus exercebat. Cum alacribus saltu, cum velocibus cursu, cum validis luctâ certabat. Tùm ad Syllam iter intendit, non per loca devia, sed palàm incedens, tres hostium exercitus aut fudit, aut sibi adjunxit. Quem ubi Sylla ad se accedere audivit, egregiamque sub signis juventutem aspexit, desiliit ex equo, Pompeiumque salutavit imperatorem: deinceps ei venienti solebat assurgere de sellâ et caput aperire; quem honorem nemini nisi Pompeio tribuebat.

Transgressus indè in Africam Pompeius, Iarbam Numidiæ regem, qui Marii partibus favebat, bello persecutus est. Intra dies quadraginta hostem oppressit, et Africam subegit adolescens quatuor et viginti annorum. Tùm ei litteræ à Syllâ

RULES.

1. The adjective agrees with its substantive, in number, case, and gender.
2. The verb agrees with its nominative case, in number and person.
3. The relative, *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.
4. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative is the nominative to the verb; but when a nominative intervenes, the relative is governed by the verb, or some other word in the sentence.
5. Any verb may have the same case *after* as *before* it, when both words refer to the same person or thing.
6. Substantives signifying the same person or thing, agree in case.
7. One substantive governs another signifying a different person or thing, in the genitive.
8. If the latter of two substantives have an adjective of praise or dispraise, joined with it, it may be put either in the genitive or ablative.
9. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive, governs the genitive.
10. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative.
11. Verbal adjectives, and such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive.
12. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural.
13. Adjectives signifying *profit* or *disprofit*, *likeness* or *unlikeness*, &c. govern the dative.
14. These adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *prædi-tus*, and *contentus*; also, *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, govern the ablative.
15. Adjectives signifying *plenty* or *want*, govern the genitive or ablative.
16. *Sum*, when it signifies *possession*, *property*, or *duty*, governs the genitive.

17.
Sum, taken for *habeo*, (*to have*,) governs the dative of a person.

18.
Sum, taken for *affero*, (*to bring*,) governs two datives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

19.
The compounds of *Sum*, except *Possum*, govern the dative.

20.
Words of the comparative degree govern the ablative when *quam* is omitted in Latin.

21.
Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.

22.
Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive.

23.
The prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the accusative.

24.
The prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the ablative.

25.
The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

26.
The interjections *O*, *heu*, *proh*, aud some others, govern the nominative, accusative, or vocative.

27.
The interjections *hei*, and *væ*, govern the dative.

28.
The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *aut*, *neque*, and some others, connect like cases and modes

29.
Two, or more substantives singular, connected by a conjunction, may have a verb, adjective, or relative plural to agree with them.

30.
The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, &c. govern the subjunctive mood.

31.
Verbs, signifying actively, govern the accusative.

32.
Misereor, *miseresco*, and *satago*, govern the genitive.

33.
Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has *to*, or *for*, after it in English.

34.
Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, govern the dative.

35.
Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*, *super*, govern the dative.

36.
Verbs, signifying *to profit*, *hurt*, *favour*, *assist*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *trust*, *threaten*, and *be angry with*, govern the dative.

37.
Recordor, *memini*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the accusative or genitive.

38.
Verbs of *abounding* and *wanting*, govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive.

39.
Utor, *abutor*, *fungor*, *fruor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and some others, govern the ablative.

40.
A verb compounded with a preposition, often governs the case of that preposition.

41.
The infinitive mood may be governed by a verb, participle, adjective, or noun.

42.
When *quod*, *quin*, *ut*, or *ne*, is omitted in Latin, the word, which would otherwise be in the nominative, is put in the accusative, and the verb in the infinitive mood.

43.
Participles, gerunds, supines, and adverbs, govern the same case as the words from which they are derived.

44.
The gerund in *dum*, of the nominative, with the verb *est*, governs the dative.

45.
The gerund in *di*, of the genitive, is governed by nouns, or adjectives.

46.
The gerund in *do*, of the dative, is governed by adjectives signifying *usefulness*, or *fitness*, &c.

47.
The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative, is governed by the prepositions *ad*, *ob*, *inter*, *ante*, *propter*.

48.
The gerund in *do*, of the ablative, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*; or without a preposition, as the ablative of *cause*, *means*, or *manner*.

49.
The supine in *um*, is put after a verb of motion.

50.
The supine in *u*, is put after an adjective.

51.
Nouns, signifying the *price* of a thing, are put in the ablative.

52.
Nouns, signifying the *instrument*, *cause*, *means*, or *manner*, are put in the ablative.

53.
Nouns, signifying *measure*, or *distance*, are put in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

54.
Nouns, signifying the time *when*, are put in the ablative; those, *how long*, in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

55.
Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *admonishing*, and *accquitting*, govern the acusative of a person with the genitive of a thing.

56.
Verbs of *esteeming*, govern the accusative of the person, or thing esteemed, and the genitive, of the value.

57.
Verbs of *comparing*, *giving*, *declaring*, and *taking away*, govern the accusative and dative.

58.
Verbs of *asking*, and *teaching*, govern two accusatives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

59.
Verbs of *loading*, *binding*, *clothing*, *depriving*, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative.

60.
When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case.

61.
Impersonal verbs govern the dative.

62.
Interest and *refert* require the genitive.

63.
Miseret, *pœnitet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing.

64.
Decet, *delectat*, *juvat*, and *oportet*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive mood.

65.
The name of a town, signifying the place *where*, or *in which*, if it be of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive, but if it be of the third declension, or plural number, it is put in the ablative.

66.
The name of a town, signifying the place *whither*, is put in the accusative.

67.
The name of a town, signifying the place *whence*, or *through what place*, is put in the ablative.

68.
Domus and *rus*, signifying the place *where*, are construed like the names of towns.

69.
A noun, or pronoun, joined with a participle expressed or understood, when its case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute.

redditæ sunt, quibus jubebatur exercitum dimittere, et cum unâ tantùm legione successorem exspectare. Id ægrè tulit Pompeius: paruit tamen, et Romam reversus est. Revertenti incredibilis multitudo obviàm ivit. Sylla quoque eum lætus excepit, et Magni cognomine appellavit: nihilominùs Pompeio triumphum petenti restitit; neque eâ re à proposito deterritus est Pompeius; ausus que est dicere plures solem orientem adorare, quàm occidentem: quo dicto innuebat Syllæ potentiam minui, suam verò crescere. Eâ voce auditâ, Sylla juvenis constantiam admiratus, exclamavit: *Triumphet, triumphet.*

JULIUS CÆSAR.

Julius Cæsar quæstor factus in Hispaniam profectus est; quumque Alpes transiret, et ad conspectum pauperis cujusdam vici comites ejus per jocum inter se disputarent an illìc etiam esset ambitioni locus, seriò dixit Cæsar malle se ibi primum esse quàm Romæ secundum. Ita animus dominationis avidus à primâ ætate regnum concupiscebat, semperque in ore habebat hos Euripidis, Græci poëtæ, versus: *Nam si violandum est jus, regnandi gratiâ violandum est: aliis rebus pietatem colas.* Quum verò Gades, quod est Hispaniæ oppidum, venisset, visâ Alexandri Magni imagine, ingemuit, et lacrymas fudit: causam quærentibus amicis: "Nonne, inquit, idonea dolendi causa est, quòd nihildùm memorabile gesserim, eam ætatem adeptus quâ Alexander jam terrarum orbem subegerat?"

Cæsar quum adhuc in Galliâ detineretur, ne imperfecto bello discederet, postulavit ut sibi liceret, quamvis absenti, secundum consulatum petere; quod ei à senatu est negatum. Eâ re commotus in Italiam rediit, armis injuriam acceptam vindicaturus, plurimisque urbibus occupatis, Brundusium contendit, quò Pompeius consulesque confugerant. Tunc summæ audaciæ facinus Cæsar edidit: à Brundusio Dyrrachium inter oppositas classes gravissimâ hieme transmisit, cessantibusque copiis quas subsequi jusserat, quum ad eas arcessendas frustrà misisset, moræ impatiens, castris noctu egreditur, clàm solus naviculam conscendit obvoluto capite, ne agnosceretur. Mare adverso vento vehementer flante intumescebat; in altum tamen protinùs dirigi navigium jubet; quumque gubernator penè obrutus fluctibus adversæ tempestati cederet; "Quid times? ait: Cæsarem vehis."

Erat Cæsar excelsâ staturâ, nigris vegetisque oculis, capite calvo: quam calvitii deformitatem ægrè ferebat, quòd sæpè obtrectantium jocis esset obnoxia. Itaque ex omnibus honoribus sibi à senatu populoque decretis non aliud recepit aut usurpavit libentiùs, quàm jus laureæ perpetuò gestandæ. Eum vini parcissimum fuisse ne inimici quidem negârunt: undè Cato dicere solebat unum ex omnibus Cæsarem ad evertendam rempublicam sobrium accessisse. Armorum et equitandi peritissimus erat; laboris ultra fidem patiens: in agmine nonnunquàm equo, sæpiùs pedibus anteibat, capite detecto, sive sol, sive imber esset. Longissimas vias incredibili celeritate confecit, ita ut persæpè nuncios de se prævenerit, neque eum morabantur flumina, quæ vel nando vel innixus inflatis utribus trajiciebat.

CATO UTICENSIS.

Marcus Cato, adhuc puer, invictum animi robur ostendit. Quum in domo Drusi avunculi sui educaretur, Latini de civi-

RULES.

1. The adjective agrees with its substantive, in number, case, and gender.
2. The verb agrees with its nominative case, in number and person.
3. The relative, *qui, quæ, quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.
4. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative is the nominative to the verb; but when a nominative intervenes, the relative is governed by the verb, or some other word in the sentence.
5. Any verb may have the same case *after* as *before* it, when both words refer to the same person or thing.
6. Substantives signifying the same person or thing, agree in case.
7. One substantive governs another signifying a different person or thing, in the genitive.
8. If the latter of two substantives have an adjective of praise or dispraise, joined with it, it may be put either in the genitive or ablative.
9. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive, governs the genitive.
10. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative.
11. Verbal adjectives, and such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive.
12. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural.
13. Adjectives signifying *profit* or *disprofit, likeness* or *unlikeness*, &c. govern the dative.
14. These adjectives, *dignus, indignus, præditus*, and *contentus*; also, *natus, satus, ortus, editus*, and the like, govern the ablative.
15. Adjectives signifying *plenty* or *want*, govern the genitive or ablative.
16. *Sum*, when it signifies *possession, property*, or *duty*, governs the genitive.

17.
Sum, taken for *habeo*, *(to have,)* governs the dative of a person.

18.
Sum, taken for *affero*, *(to bring,)* governs two datives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

19.
The compounds of *Sum*, except *Possum*, govern the dative.

20.
Words of the comparative degree govern the ablative when *quam* is omitted in Latin.

21.
Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.

22.
Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive.

23.
The prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the accusative.

24.
The prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the ablative.

25.
The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

26.
The interjections *O*, *heu*, *proh*, aud some others, govern the nominative, accusative, or vocative.

27.
The interjections *hei*, and *væ*, govern the dative.

28.
The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *aut*, *neque*, and some others, connect like cases and m.des.

29.
Two, or more substantives singular, connected by a conjunction, may have a verb, adjective, or relative plural to agree with them.

30.
The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, &c. govern the subjunctive mood.

31.
Verbs, signifying actively, govern the accusative.

32.
Misereor, *miserësco*, and *satago*, govern the genitive.

33.
Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has *to*, or *for*, after it in English.

34.
Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, govern the dative.

35.
Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*, *super*, govern the dative.

36.
Verbs, signifying *to profit*, *hurt*, *favour*, *assist*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *trust*, *threaten*, and *be angry with*, govern the dative.

37.
Recordor, *memini*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the accusative or genitive.

38.
Verbs of *abounding* and *wanting*, govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive.

39.
Utor, *abutor*, *fungor*, *fruor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and some others, govern the ablative.

40.
A verb compounded with a preposition, often governs the case of that preposition.

41.
The infinitive mood may be governed by a verb, participle, adjective, or noun.

42
When *quod*, *quin*, *ut*, or *ne*, is omitted in Latin, the word, which would otherwise be in the nominative, is put in the accusative, and the verb in the infinitive mood.

43.
Participles, gerunds, supines, and adverbs, govern the same case as the words from which they are derived.

44.
The gerund in *dum*, of the nominative, with the verb *est*, governs the dative.

45.
The gerund in *di*, of the genitive, is governed by nouns, or adjectives.

46.
The gerund in *do*, of the dative, is governed by adjectives signifying *usefulness*, or *fitness*, &c.

47.
The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative, is governed by the prepositions *ad*, *ob*, *inter*, *ante*, *propter*.

48.
The gerund in *do*, of the ablative, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*; or without a preposition, as the ablative of *cause*, *means*, or *manner*.

49.
The supine in *um*, is put after a verb of motion.

50.
The supine in *u*, is put after an adjective.

51.
Nouns, signifying the *price* of a thing, are put in the ablative.

52.
Nouns, signifying the *instrument*, *cause*, *means*, or *manner*, are put in the ablative.

53.
Nouns, signifying *measure*, or *distance*, are put in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

54.
Nouns, signifying the time *when*, are put in the ablative; those, *how long*, in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

55.
Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *admonishing*, and *accquitting*, govern the acusative of a person with the genitive of a thing.

56.
Verbs of *esteeming*, govern the accusative of the person, or thing esteemed, and the genitive, of the value.

57.
Verbs of *comparing*, *giving*, *declaring*, and *taking away*, govern the accusative and dative.

58.
Verbs of *asking*, and *teaching*, govern two accusatives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

59.
Verbs of *loading*, *binding*, *clothing*, *depriving*, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative.

60
When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case.

61.
Impersonal verbs govern the dative.

62.
Interest and *refert* require the genitive.

63.
Miseret, *pœnitet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing.

64.
Decet, *delectat*, *juvat*, and *oportet*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive mood.

65.
The name of a town, signifying the place *where*, or *in which*, if it be of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; but if it be of the third declension, or plural number, it is put in the ablative.

66.
The name of a town, signifying the place *whither*, is put in the accusative.

67.
The name of a town, signifying the place *whence*, or *through what place*, is put in the ablative.

68.
Domus and *rus*, signifying the place *where*, are construed like the names of towns.

69.
A noun, or pronoun, joined with a participle expressed or understood, when its case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute.

tate impetrandâ Romam venerunt. Popedius Latinorum princeps, qui Drusi hospes erat, Catonem puerum rogavit ut Latinos apud avunculum adjuvaret. Cato vultu constanti negavit id se facturum. Iterùm deindè ac sæpiùs interpellatus in proposito persitit. Tunc Popedius puerum in excelsam ædium partem levatum tenuit, et abjecturum indè se minatus est, nisi precibus obtemperaret; neque hoc metu à sententiâ eum potuit dimovere. Tunc Popedius exclamâsse fertur: "Gratulemur nobis, Latini, hunc esse tàm parvum; si enim senator esset, ne sperare quidem jus civitatis nobis liceret."

CICERO.

Marcus Tullius Cicero equestri genere, Arpini, quod est Volscorum oppidum, natus est. Ex ejus avis unus verrucam in extremo naso sitam habuit ciceris grano similem, indè cognomen Ciceronis genti inditum. Quum id Marco Tullio à nonnullis probro verteretur; "Dabo operam, inquit, ut istud cognomen nobilissimorum nominum splendorem vincat." Quum eas artes disceret quibus ætas puerilis ad humanitatem solet informari, ingenium ejus ita eluxit, ut eum æquales è scholâ redeuntes medium, tanquam regem, circumstantes deducerent domum: imò eorum parentes pueri famâ commoti, in ludum litterarium ventitabant, ut eum viserent. Ea res tamen quibusdam rustici et inculti ingenii stomachum movebat, qui cæteros pueros graviter objurgabant quòd talem condiscipulo suo honorem tribuerent.

Cicero dicax erat, et facetiarum amans, adeò ut ab inimicis solitus sit appellari Scurra consularis. Quum Lentulum generum suum exiguæ staturæ hominem vidisset longo gladio accinctum: "Quis, inquit, generum meum ad gladium alligavit?" Matrona quædam juniorem se, quàm erat, simulans dictitabat se triginta tantùm annos habere. Cui Cicero: "Verum est, inquit, nam hoc viginti annos audio." Cæsar, altero consule mortuo die decembris ultimâ, Caninium consulem horâ septimâ in reliquam diei partem renuntiaverat: quem quum plerique irent salutatum de more: "Festinemus, inquit Cicero, priusquàm abeat magistratu." De eodem Caninio scripsit Cicero: "Fuit mirificâ vigilantiâ Caninius, qui toto suo consulatu somnum non viderit."

CÆSAR AUGUSTUS.

Tandem Octavius, hostibus victis, solusque imperio potitus, clementem se exhibuit. Omnia deinceps in eo plena mansuetudinis et humanitatis. Multis ignovit à quibus sæpè graviter læsus fuerat, quo in numero fuit Metellus unus ex Antonii præfectis. Quum is inter captivos senex squalidus sordidatusque processisset, agnovit eum filius ejus, qui Octavii partes secutus fuerat, statìmque exiliens, patrem complexus, sic Octavium allocutus est: "Pater meus hostis tibi fuit; ego miles: non magis ille pœnam, quàm ego præmium meriti sumus. Aut igitur me propter illum occidi jube, aut illum propter me vivere. Delibera, quæso, utrùm sit moribus tuis convenientius." Octavius postquàm paulùm addubitavisset, misericordiâ motus hominem sibi infensissimum propter filii merita servavit.

Octavius in Italiam rediit, Romamque triumphans ingressus est. Tùm bellis toto orbe compositis, Jani gemini portas suâ manu clausit quæ tantummodò bis anteà clausæ fuerant, primò sub Numâ rege, iterùm post primum Punicum bellum. Tunc

RULES.

1. The adjective agrees with its substantive, in number, case, and gender.
2. The verb agrees with its nominative case, in number and person.
3. The relative, *qui, quæ, quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.
4. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative is the nominative to the verb; but when a nominative intervenes, the relative is governed by the verb, or some other word in the sentence.
5. Any verb may have the same case *after* as *before* it, when both words refer to the same person or thing.
6. Substantives signifying the same person or thing, agree in case.
7. One substantive governs another signifying a different person or thing, in the genitive.
8. If the latter of two substantives have an adjective of praise or dispraise, joined with it, it may be put either in the genitive or ablative.
9. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive, governs the genitive.
10. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative.
11. Verbal adjectives, and such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive.
12. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural.
13. Adjectives signifying *profit* or *disprofit*, *likeness* or *unlikeness*, &c. govern the dative.
14. These adjectives, *dignus, indignus, prædilus*, and *contentus*; also, *natus, satus, ortus, editus*, and the like, govern the ablative.
15. Adjectives signifying *plenty* or *want*, govern the genitive or ablative.
16. *Sum*, when it signifies *possession, property*, or *duty*, governs the genitive.

17.

Sum, taken for *habeo*, (*to have*,) governs the dative of a person.

18.

Sum, taken for *affero*, (*to bring*,) governs two datives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

19.

The compounds of *Sum*, except *Possum*, govern the dative.

20.

Words of the comparative degree govern the ablative when *quam* is omitted in Latin.

21.

Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.

22.

Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive.

23.

The prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the accusative.

24.

The prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the ablative.

25.

The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

26.

The interjections *O*, *heu*, *proh*, and some others, govern the nominative, accusative, or vocative.

27.

The interjections *hei*, and *væ*, govern the dative.

28.

The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *aut*, *neque*, and some others, connect like cases and modes.

29.

Two, or more substantives singular, connected by a conjunction, may have a verb, adjective, or relative plural to agree with them.

30.

The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, &c. govern the subjunctive mood.

31.

Verbs, signifying actively, govern the accusative.

32.

Misereor, *miseresco*, and *satago*, govern the genitive.

33.

Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has *to*, or *for*, after it in English.

34.

Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, govern the dative.

35.

Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*, *super*, govern the dative.

36.

Verbs, signifying *to profit*, *hurt*, *favour*, *assist*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *trust*, *threaten*, and *be angry with*, govern the dative.

37.

Recordor, *memini*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the accusative or genitive.

38.

Verbs of *abounding* and *wanting*, govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive.

39.

Utor, *abutor*, *fungor*, *fruor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and some others, govern the ablative.

40.

A verb compounded with a preposition, often governs the case of that preposition.

41.

The infinitive mood may be governed by a verb, participle, adjective, or noun.

42

When *quod*, *quin*, *ut*, or *ne*, is omitted in Latin, the word, which would otherwise be in the nominative, is put in the accusative, and the verb in the infinitive mood.

43.

Participles, gerunds, supines, and adverbs, govern the same case as the words from which they are derived.

44.

The gerund in *dum*, of the nominative, with the verb *est*, governs the dative.

45.

The gerund in *di*, of the genitive, is governed by nouns, or adjectives.

46.

The gerund in *do*, of the dative, is governed by adjectives signifying *usefulness*, or *fitness*, &c.

47.

The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative, is governed by the prepositions *ad*, *ob*, *inter*, *ante*, *propter*.

48.

The gerund in *do*, of the ablative, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*; or without a preposition, as the ablative of *cause*, *means*, or *manner*.

49.

The supine in *um*, is put after a verb of motion.

50.

The supine in *u*, is put after an adjective.

51.

Nouns, signifying the *price* of a thing, are put in the ablative.

52.

Nouns, signifying the *instrument*, *cause*, *means*, or *manner*, are put in the ablative.

53.

Nouns, signifying *measure*, or *distance*, are put in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

54.

Nouns, signifying the time *when*, are put in the ablative; those, *how long*, in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

55.

Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *admonishing*, and *acquitting*, govern the acusative of a person with the genitive of a thing.

56.

Verbs of *esteeming*, govern the accusative of the person, or thing esteemed, and the genitive, of the value.

57.

Verbs of *comparing*, *giving*, *declaring*, and *taking away*, govern the accusative and dative.

58.

Verbs of *asking*, and *teaching*, govern two accusatives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

59.

Verbs of *loading*, *binding*, *clothing*, *depriving*, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative.

60

When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case.

61.

Impersonal verbs govern the dative.

62.

Interest and *refert* require the genitive.

63.

Miseret, *pœnitet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing.

64.

Decet, *delectat*, *juvat*, and *oportet*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive mood.

65.

The name of a town, signifying the place *where*, or *in which*, if it be of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; but if it be of the third declension, or plural number, it is put in the ablative.

66.

The name of a town, signifying the place *whither*, is put in the accusative.

67.

The name of a town, signifying the place *whence*, or *through what place*, is put in the ablative.

68.

Domus and *rus*, signifying the place *where*, are construed like the names of towns.

69.

A noun, or pronoun, joined with a participle expressed or understood, when its case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute.

RULES.

1. The adjective agrees with its substantive, in number, case, and gender.

2. The verb agrees with its nominative case, in number and person.

3. The relative, *qui, quæ, quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.

4. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative is the nominative to the verb; but when a nominative intervenes, the relative is governed by the verb, or some other word in the sentence.

5. Any verb may have the same case *after* as *before* it, when both words refer to the same person or thing.

6. Substantives signifying the same person or thing, agree in case.

7. One substantive governs another signifying a different person or thing, in the genitive.

8. If the latter of two substantives have an adjective of praise or dispraise, joined with it, it may be put either in the genitive or ablative.

9. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive, governs the genitive.

10. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative.

11. Verbal adjectives, and such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive.

12. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural.

13. Adjectives signifying *profit* or *disprofit, likeness* or *unlikeness*, &c. govern the dative.

14. These adjectives, *dignus, indignus, prædi-tus*, and *contentus;* also, *natus, satus, ortus, editus*, and the like, govern the ablative.

15. Adjectives signifying *plenty* or *want*, govern the genitive or ablative.

16. *Sum*, when it signifies *possession, property*, or *duty*, governs the genitive.

omnes præteritorum malorum oblivio cepit, populusque Romanus præsentis otii lætitiâ perfruitus est. Octavio maximi honores à senatu delati sunt. Ipse Augustus cognominatus est et in ejus honorem mensis sextilis eodem nomine est appellatus, quòd illo mense bellis civilibus finis esset impositus. Equites Romani natalem ejus biduò semper celebrârunt: senatus populusque Romanus universus cognomen Patris patriæ maximo consensu ei tribuerunt. Augustus præ gaudio lacrymans respondit his verbis: "Compos factus sum votorum meorum; neque aliud mihi optandum est, quàm ut hunc consensum vestrum ad ultimum vitæ finem videre possim."

Dictaturam, quam populus magnâ vi offerebat, Augustus genu nixus dejectâque ab humeris togâ, deprecatus est. Domini appellationem semper exhorruit, eamque sibi tribui edicto vetuit, imò de restituendâ republicâ non semel cogitavit; sed reputans et se privatum non sine periculo fore, et rempublicam plurium arbitrio commissum iri, summam retinuit potestatem, id verò studuit, ne quem novi statûs pœniteret. Benè de iis etiam, quos adversarios expertus fuerat, et sentiebat et loquebatur. Legentem aliquandò unum è nepotibus invenit; quumque puer territus volumen Ciceronis, quod manu tenebat, veste tegeret, Augustus librum cepit, eoque statìm reddito: "Hic vir, inquit, fili mi, doctus fuit et patriæ amans."

Pedibus sæpè per urbem incedebat, summâque comitate adeuntes excipiebat: undè quum quidam libellum supplicem porrigens, præ metu et reverentiâ nunc manum proferret, nunc retraheret; "Putasne, inquit jocans Augustus, assem te elephanto dare?" Eum aliquandò convenit veteranus miles, qui vocatus in jus periclitabatur, rogavitque ut sibi adesset. Statim Augustus unum è comitatu suo elegit advocatum, qui litigatorem commendaret. Tùm veteranus exclamavit: "At non ego, te periclitante bello Actiaco, vicarium quæsivi, sed ipse pro te pugnavi;" simulque detexit cicatrices. Erubuit Augustus, atque ipse venit in advocationem.

Quum post Actiacam victoriam Augustus Romam ingrederetur, occurrit ei inter gratulantes opifex quidam corvum tenens, quem instituerat hæc dicere: *Ave, Cæsar victor, imperator.* Augustus avem officiosam miratus, eam viginti millibus nummorum emit. Socius opificis, ad quem nihil ex illâ liberalitate pervenerat, affirmavit Augusto illum habere et alium corvum, quem afferri postulavit. Allatus corvus verba quæ didicerat expressit: *Ave, Antoni victor, imperator.* Nihil eâ re exasperatus Augustus jussit tantummodò corvorum doctorem dividere acceptam mercedem cum contubernali. Salutatus similiter à psittaco, emi eum jussit.

Exemplo incitatus sutor quidam, corvum instituit ad parem salutationem; sed, quum parùm proficeret, sæpè ad avem non respondentem dicebat: *Opera et impensa periit.* Tandem corvus cœpit proferre dictatam salutationem: quâ auditâ dùm transiret, Augustus respondit: "Satis domi talium salutatorum habeo." Tùm corvus illa etiam verba adjecit, quibus dominum querentem audire solebat: *Opera et impensa periit:* ad quod Augustus risit, atque avem emi jussit quanti nullam adhuc emerat.

Solebat quidam Græculus descendenti è palatio Augusto honorificum aliquod epigramma porrigere. Id quum frustrà sæpè fecisset, et tamen rursùm eundem facturum Augustus videret, suâ manu in chartâ breve exaravit græcum epigramma,

17.
Sum, taken for *habeo*, *(to have,)* governs the dative of a person.

18.
Sum, taken for *affero*, *(to bring,)* governs two datives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

19.
The compounds of *Sum*, except *Possum*, govern the dative.

20.
Words of the comparative degree govern the ablative when *quam* is omitted in Latin.

21.
Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.

22.
Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive.

23.
The prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the accusative.

24.
The prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the ablative.

25.
The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

26.
The interjections *O*, *heu*, *proh*, and some others, govern the nominative, accusative, or vocative.

27.
The interjections *hei*, and *væ*, govern the dative.

28.
The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *aut*, *neque*, and some others, connect like cases and modes

29.
Two, or more substantives singular, connected by a conjunction, may have a verb, adjective, or relative plural to agree with them.

30.
The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, &c. govern the subjunctive mood.

31.
Verbs, signifying actively, govern the accusative.

32.
Misereor, *miseresco*, and *satago*, govern the genitive.

33.
Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has *to*, or *for*, after it in English.

34.
Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, govern the dative.

35.
Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*, *super*, govern the dative.

36.
Verbs, signifying *to profit*, *hurt*, *favour*, *assist*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *trust*, *threaten*, and *be angry with*, govern the dative.

37.
Recordor, *memini*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the accusative or genitive.

38.
Verbs of *abounding* and *wanting*, govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive.

39.
Utor, *abutor*, *fungor*, *fruor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and some others, govern the ablative.

40.
A verb compounded with a preposition, often governs the case of that preposition.

41.
The infinitive mood may be governed by a verb, participle, adjective, or noun.

42.
When *quod*, *quin*, *ut*, or *ne*, is omitted in Latin, the word, which would otherwise be in the nominative, is put in the accusative, and the verb in the infinitive mood.

43.
Participles, gerunds, supines, and adverbs, govern the same case as the words from which they are derived.

44.
The gerund in *dum*, of the nominative, with the verb *est*, governs the dative.

45.
The gerund in *di*, of the genitive, is governed by nouns, or adjectives.

46.
The gerund in *do*, of the dative, is governed by adjectives signifying *usefulness*, or *fitness*, &c.

47.
The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative, is governed by the prepositions *ad*, *ob*, *inter*, *ante*, *propter*.

48.
The gerund in *do*, of the ablative, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*; or without a preposition, as the ablative of *cause*, *means*, or *manner*.

49.
The supine in *um*, is put after a verb of motion.

50.
The supine in *u*, is put after an adjective.

51.
Nouns, signifying the *price* of a thing, are put in the ablative.

52.
Nouns, signifying the *instrument*, *cause*, *means*, or *manner*, are put in the ablative.

53.
Nouns, signifying *measure*, or *distance*, are put in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

54.
Nouns, signifying the time *when*, are put in the ablative; those, *how long*, in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

55.
Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *admonishing*, and *accquitting*, govern the acusative of a person with the genitive of a thing.

56.
Verbs of *esteeming*, govern the accusative of the person, or thing esteemed, and the genitive, of the value.

57.
Verbs of *comparing*, *giving*, *declaring*, and *taking away*, govern the accusative and dative.

58.
Verbs of *asking*, and *teaching*, govern two accusatives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

59.
Verbs of *loading*, *binding*, *clothing*, *depriving*, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative.

60.
When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case.

61.
Impersonal verbs govern the dative.

62.
Interest and *refert* require the genitive.

63.
Miseret, *pœnitet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing.

64.
Decet, *delectat*, *juvat*, and *oportet*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive mood.

65.
The name of a town, signifying the place *where*, or *in which*, if it be of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive, but if it be of the third declension, or plural number, it is put in the ablative.

66.
The name of a town, signifying the place *whither*, is put in the accusative.

67.
The name of a town, signifying the place *whence*, or *through what place*, is put in the ablative.

68.
Domus and *rus*, signifying the place *where*, are construed like the names of towns.

69.
A noun, or pronoun, joined with a participle expressed or understood, when its case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute.

RULES.

1. The adjective agrees with its substantive, in number, case, and gender.
2. The verb agrees with its nominative case, in number and person.
3. The relative, *qui, quæ, quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.
4. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative is the nominative to the verb; but when a nominative intervenes, the relative is governed by the verb, or some other word in the sentence.
5. Any verb may have the same case *after* as *before* it, when both words refer to the same person or thing.
6. Substantives signifying the same person or thing, agree in case.
7. One substantive governs another signifying a different person or thing, in the genitive.
8. If the latter of two substantives have an adjective of praise or dispraise, joined with it, it may be put either in the genitive or ablative.
9. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive, governs the genitive.
10. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative.
11. Verbal adjectives, and such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive.
12. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural.
13. Adjectives signifying *profit* or *disprofit, likeness* or *unlikeness*, &c. govern the dative.
14. These adjectives, *dignus, indignus, præditus*, and *contentus;* also, *natus, satus, ortus, editus*, and the like, govern the ablative.
15. Adjectives signifying *plenty* or *want*, govern the genitive or ablative.
16. *Sum*, when it signifies *possession, property*, or *duty*, governs the genitive.

et Græculo venienti ad se obviàm misit. Ille legendo laudare cœpit, mirarique tàm voce quàm vultu, gestuque. Dein quum accessit ad sellam quâ Augustus vehebatur, demissâ in pauperem crumenam manu, paucos denarios protulit, quos principi daret; dixitque se plus daturum fuisse, si plus habuisset. Secuto omnium risu, Græculum Augustus vocavit, eique satis grandem pecuniæ summam numerari jussit.

Augustus ferè nulli se invitanti negabat. Exceptus igitur à quodam cœnâ satis parcâ et penè quotidianâ, hoc tantùm insusurravit: "Non putabam me tibi esse tàm familiarem." Quum aliquandò apud Pollionem quemdam cœnaret, fregit unus ex servis vas crystallinum: rapi illum protinùs Pollio jussit, et ne vulgari morte periret, abjici murænis, quas ingens piscina continebat. Evasit è manibus puer, et ad pedes Cæsaris confugit, non recusans mori, sed rogans ne piscium esca fieret. Motus novitate crudelitatis Augustus, servi infelicis patrocinium suscepit: quum autem veniam à viro crudeli non impetraret, crystallina vasa ad se afferri jussit; omnia manu suâ fregit; servum manumisit, piscinamque compleri præcepit.

Augustus in quâdam villâ ægrotans noctes inquietas agebat, rumpente somnum ejus crebro noctuæ cantu; quâ molestiâ quum liberari se vehementer cupere significâsset, miles quidam aucupii peritus noctuam prehendendam curavit, vivamque Augusto attulit, spe ingentis præmii; cui Augustus mille nummos dari jussit: at ille minùs dignum præmium existimans, dicere ausus est: *Malo ut vivat*, et avem dimisit. Imperatori nec ad irascendum causa deerat, nec ad ulciscendum potestas. Hanc tamen injuriam æquo animo tulit Augustus, hominemque impunitum abire passus est.

Augustus amicitias non facilè admisit, et admissas constanter retinuit: imprimis familiarem habuit Mæcenatem equitem Romanum, qui eâ, quâ apud principem valebat gratiâ, ita semper usus est, ut prodesset omnibus quibus posset, noceret nemini. Mira erat ejus ars et libertas in flectendo Augusti animo, quum eum irâ incitatum videret. Jus aliquandò dicebat Augustus, et multos morte damnaturus videbatur. Aderat tunc Mæcenas, qui circumstantium turbam perrumpere, et ad tribunal propiùs accedere conatus est; quum id frustrà tentâsset, in tabellâ scripsit hæc verba: *Surge tandem, carnifex:* eamque tabellam ad Augustum projecit, quâ lectâ, Augustus statim surrexit, et nemo est morte mulctatus.

Habitavit Augustus in ædibus modicis neque laxitate neque cultu conspicuis, ac per annos ampliùs quadraginta in eodem cubiculo hieme et æstate mansit. Supellex quoque ejus vix privatæ elegantiæ erat. Idem tamen Romam, quam pro majestate imperii non satis ornatam invenerat, adeò excoluit, ut jure sit gloriatus marmoream se relinquere, quam lateritiam accepisset. Raro veste aliâ usus est quàm confectâ ab uxore, sorore, filiâ, neptibusque. Altiuscula erant ejus calceamenta, ut procerior quàm erat videretur. Cibi minimi erat atque vulgaris. Secundarium panem et pisciculos minutos et ficus virides maxime appetebat.

Augustus non ampliùs quàm septem horas dormiebat, ac ne eas quidem continuas, sed ita ut in illo temporis spatio ter aut quater expergisceretur. Si interruptum somnum recuperare non posset, lectores arcessebat, donec resumeret. Quum audisset senatorem quemdam, licèt ære alieno oppressum, arctè et graviter dormire solitum, culcitram ejus magno pretio emit:

17.
Sum, taken for *habeo*, (*to have*,) governs the dative of a person.

18.
Sum, taken for *affero*, (*to bring*,) governs two datives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

19.
The compounds of *Sum*, except *Possum*, govern the dative.

20.
Words of the comparative degree govern the ablative when *quam* is omitted in Latin.

21.
Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.

22.
Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive.

23.
The prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the accusative.

24.
The prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the ablative.

25.
The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

26.
The interjections *O*, *heu*, *proh*, and some others, govern the nominative, accusative, or vocative.

27.
The interjections *hei*, and *væ*, govern the dative.

28.
The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *aut*, *neque*, and some others, connect like cases and modes.

29.
Two, or more substantives singular, connected by a conjunction, may have a verb, adjective, or relative plural to agree with them.

30.
The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, &c. govern the subjunctive mood.

31.
Verbs, signifying actively, govern the accusative.

32.
Misereor, *miseresco*, and *satago*, govern the genitive.

33.
Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has *to*, or *for*, after it in English.

34.
Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, govern the dative.

35.
Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*, *super*, govern the dative.

36.
Verbs, signifying *to profit*, *hurt*, *favour*, *assist*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *trust*, *threaten*, and *be angry with*, govern the dative.

37.
Recordor, *memini*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the accusative or genitive.

38.
Verbs of *abounding* and *wanting*, govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive.

39.
Utor, *abutor*, *fungor*, *fruor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and some others, govern the ablative.

40.
A verb compounded with a preposition, often governs the case of that preposition.

41.
The infinitive mood may be governed by a verb, participle, adjective, or noun.

42.
When *quod*, *quin*, *ut*, or *ne*, is omitted in Latin, the word, which would otherwise be in the nominative, is put in the accusative, and the verb in the infinitive mood.

43.
Participles, gerunds, supines, and adverbs, govern the same case as the words from which they are derived.

44.
The gerund in *dum*, of the nominative, with the verb *est*, governs the dative.

45.
The gerund in *di*, of the genitive, is governed by nouns, or adjectives.

46.
The gerund in *do*, of the dative, is governed by adjectives signifying *usefulness*, or *fitness*, &c.

47.
The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative, is governed by the prepositions *ad*, *ob*, *inter*, *ante*, *propter*.

48.
The gerund in *do*, of the ablative, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*; or without a preposition, as the ablative of *cause*, *means*, or *manner*.

49.
The supine in *um*, is put after a verb of motion.

50.
The supine in *u*, is put after an adjective.

51.
Nouns, signifying the *price* of a thing, are put in the ablative.

52.
Nouns, signifying the *instrument*, *cause*, *means*, or *manner*, are put in the ablative.

53.
Nouns, signifying *measure*, or *distance*, are put in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

54.
Nouns, signifying the time *when*, are put in the ablative; those, *how long*, in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

55.
Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *admonishing*, and *accquitting*, govern the acusative of a person with the genitive of a thing.

56.
Verbs of *esteeming*, govern the accusative of the person, or thing esteemed, and the genitive, of the value.

57.
Verbs of *comparing*, *giving*, *declaring*, and *taking away*, govern the accusative and dative.

58.
Verbs of *asking*, and *teaching*, govern two accusatives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

59.
Verbs of *loading*, *binding*, *clothing*, *depriving*, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative.

60.
When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case.

61.
Impersonal verbs govern the dative.

62.
Interest and *refert* require the genitive.

63.
Miseret, *pœnitet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing.

64.
Decet, *delectat*, *juvat*, and *oportet*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive mood.

65.
The name of a town, signifying the place *where*, or *in which*, if it be of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; but if it be of the third declension, or plural number, it is put in the ablative.

66.
The name of a town, signifying the place *whither*, is put in the accusative.

67.
The name of a town, signifying the place *whence*, or *through what place*, is put in the ablative.

68.
Domus and *rus*, signifying the place *where*, are construed like the names of towns.

69.
A noun, or pronoun, joined with a participle expressed or understood, when its case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute.

mirantibus dixit: "Habenda est ad somnum culcita in quâ homo qui tantùm debeba dormire potuit."

Exercitationes campestres equorum et armorum statìm post bella civilia omisit, et ad pilam primò folliculumque transiit: mox animi laxandi causâ, modò piscabatur hamo, modò talis nucibusque ludebat cùm pueris minutis, quos facie et garrulitate amabiles undiquè conquirebat. Aleâ multùm delectabatur; idque ei vitio datum est. Tandem afflictâ valetudine in Campaniam concessit, ubi remisso ad otium animo, nullo hilaritatis genere abstinuit. Supremo vitæ die, petito speculo, capillum sibi comi jussit, et amicos circumstantes percontatus est num vitæ mimum satis commodè egisset; adjecit et solitam clausulam: "Edite strepitum, vosque omnes cum gaudio applaudite." Obiit Nolæ sextum et septuagesimum annum agens.

SALLUSTII CATILINA.

Omnîs homines, qui sese student præstare cæteris animalibus, summâ ope niti decet vitam silentio ne transeant, veluti pecora, quæ natura prona atque ventri obedientia finxit. Sed nostra omnis vis in animo et corpore sita: animi imperio, corporis servitio, magis utimur. Alterum nobis cum dîs, alterum cum belluis, commune est. Quo mihi rectius videtur ingenii quàm virium opibus gloriam quærere, et, quoniam vita ipsa quâ fruimur brevis est, memoriam nostrî quàm maxumè longam efficere: nam divitiarum et formæ gloria fluxa atque fragilis, virtus clara æternaque habetur.

Sed diù magnum inter mortalîs certamen fuit, vine corporis, an virtute animi, res militaris magis procederet: nam et priusquàm incipias consulto, et, ubi cōnsulueris, maturè facto opus est. Ita, utrumque per se indigens, alterum alterius auxilio veget.

Igitur initio reges (nam in terris nomen imperii id primum fuit) diversi; pars ingenium, alii corpus exercebant: etiam tùm vita hominum sine cupiditate agitabatur; sua cuique satis placebant. Posteà verò, quum in Asia Cyrus, in Græcia Lacedæmonii et Athenienses, cœpêre urbes atque nationes subigere, lubidinem dominandi causam belli habere, maxumam gloriam in maxumo imperio putare; tùm demùm periculo atque negotiis compertum est in bello plurimùm ingenium posse.

Quòd si regum atque imperatorum animi virtus in pace ita uti in bello valeret, æquabiliùs atque constantiùs sese res humanæ haberent; neque aliud alio ferri, neque mutari ac misceri omnia, cerneres; nam imperium facilè his artibus retinetur quibus initio partum est. Verùm, ubi pro labore desidia, pro continentiâ et æquitate lubido atque superbia invasêre, fortuna simul cum moribus immutatur. Ita imperium semper ad optumum quemque à minùs bono transfertur. Quæ homines arant, navigant, ædificant, virtuti omnia parent.

Sed multi mortales, dediti ventri atque somno, indocti incultique, vitam sicuti peregrinantes transegêre: quibus, profectò contra naturam, corpus voluptati, anima oneri, fuit. Eorum ego vitam mortemque juxtà æstumo, quoniam de utrâque siletur. Verùm enimverò is demum mihi vivere atque frui animâ videtur, qui, alio negotio intentus, præclari facinoris aut artis bonæ famam quærit. Sed in magnâ copiâ rerum aliud alii natura iter ostendit.

Pulchrum est benè facere reipublicæ: etiam benè dicere haud absurdum est. Vel pace vel bello clarum fieri licet: et qui fecêre, et qui facta aliorum scripsêre, multi laudantur. Ac mihi quidem, tametsi haud quaquàm par gloria sequatur scriptorem et auctorem rerum, tamen imprimis arduum vidatur res gestas scribere: primùm, quòd facta dictis sunt exæquanda; dehinc, quia plerique, quæ delicta reprehenderis, malevolentiâ et invidiâ dicta putant: ubi de magnâ virtute et gloriâ bonorum memores, quæ sibi quisque facilia factu putat, æquo animo accipit; supra ea, veluti ficta, pro falsis ducit.

Sed ego adolescentulus, initio, sicuti plerique, studio ad rempublicam latus sum; ibique mihi advorsa multa fuêre. Nam pro pudore, pro abstinentiâ, pro virtute, auda cia, largitio, avaritia, vigebant. Quæ tametsi animus aspernabatur, insolens malarum artium, tamen inter tanta vitia, imbecilla ætas ambitione corrupta tenebatur: ac me, cùm ab reliquorum malis moribus dissentirem, nihilo minùs honoris cupido, eâdem, quâ cæteros, famâ atque invidiâ vexabat.

Igitur, ubi animus ex multis miseriis atque periculis requievit, et mihi reliquam æta-

tem à republicâ procul habendam decrevi, non fuit consilium secordiâ atque desidiâ bonum otium conterere; neque verò agrum colendo, aut venando, servilibus officiis intentum, ætatem agere: sed, à quo incepto studio ambitio mala detinuerat, eòdem regressus, statui res gestas populi Romani carptìm, ut quæque memoriâ digna videbantur, perscribere; eò magis quòd mihi à spe, metu, partibus reipublicæ, animus liber erat. Igitur de Catilinæ conjuratione, quàm verissumè potero, paucis absolvam: nam id facinus imprimis ego memorabile existumo, sceleris atque periculi novitate. De cujus hominis moribus pauca priùs explananda sunt, quàm initium narrandi faciam.

Lucius Catilina, nobili genere natus, fuit magnâ vi et animi et corporis, sed ingenio malo pravoque. Huic ab adolescentiâ bella intestina, cædes, rapinæ, discordia civilis, grata fuêre; ibique juventutem suam exercuit. Corpus patiens inediæ, vigiliæ, algoris, suprà quàm cuiquam credibile est. Animus audax, subdolus, varius; cujus rei libet simulator ac dissimulator; alieni adpetens, sui profusus; ardens in cupiditatibus: satis loquentiæ, sapientiæ parùm. Vastus animus immoderata, incredibilia, nimis alta, semper cupiebat.

Hunc, post dominationem Lucii Sullæ, lubido maxuma invaserat reipublicæ capiundæ: neque, id quibus modis adsequeretur, dum sibi regnum pararet, quidquam pensi habebat. Agitabatur magis magisque in dies animus ferox inopiâ rei familiaris, et conscientiâ scelerum; quæ utraque his artibus auxerat quas suprà memoravi. Incitabant prætereà corrupti civitatis mores, quos pessuma ac diversa inter se mala, luxuria atque avaritia, vexabant.

Res ipsa hortari videtur, quoniam de moribus civitatis tempus admonuit, suprà repetere; ac paucis instituta majorum, domi militiæque quomodò rempublicam habuerint, quantamque reliquerint, utque paulatìm immutata, ex pulcherrumâ et optumâ, pessuma ac flagitiosissuma facta sit, disserere.

E CICERONIS ORATIONIBUS.

IN CATILINAM.

Quousque tandem abutere, Catilina, patientiâ nostrâ? Quamdiu etiam furor iste tuus nos eludet? Quem ad finem sese effrænata jactabit audacia? Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium Palatii, nihil urbis vigiliæ, nihil timor populi, nihil consensus bonorum omnium, nihil hic munitissimus habendi senatûs locus, nihil horum ora vultúsque moverunt? Patere tua consilia non sentis? Constrictam jam omnium horum conscientiâ teneri conjurationem tuam non vides? quid proximâ, quid superiore nocte egeris, ubi fueris, quos convocaveris, quid consilii ceperis, quem nostrûm ignorare arbitraris? O tempora, ô mores! Senatus hæc intelligit, consul videt: hic tamen vivit; vivit? Imò verò etiam in senatum venit: fit publici consilii particeps: notat et designat oculis ad cædem unumquemque nostrûm. Nos autem viri fortes satisfacere reipubl. videmur, si istius furorem ac tela vitemus.' Ad mortem te, Catilina, duci jussu consulis jampridem oportebat: in te conferri pestem istam, quam tu in nos omnes jamdiu machinaris.

Nihil agis, nihil moliris, nihil cogitas, quod ego non modò audiam, sed etiam videam, planèque sentiam. Recognosce tandem mecum illam superiorem noctem: jam intelliges, multò me vigilare acriùs ad salutem, quam te ad perniciem reipub. Dico te priori nocte venisse inter falcarios (non agam obscurè) in M. Leccæ domum: convenisse eòdem complures ejusdem amentiæ scelerisque socios. Num negare audes? Quid taces? Convincam, si negas. Video enim esse hîc in senatu quosdam, qui tecum unà fuêre. O diî immortales, ubinam gentium sumus? Quam rempub. habemus? In quâ urbe vivimus? Hîc, hîc sunt in nostro numero, P. C. in hoc orbis terræ sanctissimo gravissimóque consilio, qui de meo, nostrûmque omnium interitu, qui de hujus urbis, atque adeò orbis terrarum exitio cogitent. Hosce ego video, consul, et de republicâ sententiam rogo: et quos ferro trucidari oportebat, eos nondum voce vulnuero. Fuisti igitur apud Leccam eâ nocte, Catilina: distribuisti partes Italiæ: statuisti quò quemque proficisci placeret: delegisti quos Romæ relinqueres, quos tecum educeres: descripsisti urbis partes ad incendia: confirmâsti te ipsum jam esse exiturum: dixisti paululum tibi esse etiam tum moræ, quòd ego viverem. Reperti sunt duo equites Romani, qui te istâ curâ liberarent, et sese illâ ipsâ nocte paulò ante lucem me in meo lectulo interfecturos

pollicerentur. Hæc ego omnia, vix dum etiam cœtu vestro dimisso, comperi: domum meam majoribus præsidiis munivi, atque firmavi: exclusi eos quos tu manè ad me salutatum miseras cùm illi ipsi venissent; quos ego jam multis viris ad me venturos id temporis esse prædixeram. Quæ cùm ita sint, Catilina, perge quò cœpisti: egredere aliquando ex urbe: patent portæ, proficiscere. nimiùm diu te imperatorem illa tua Manliana castra desiderant. Educ tecum etiam omnes tuos, si minùs, quàm plurimos: purga urbem: magno me metu liberabis, dummodo inter me atque te murus intersit: nobiscum versari jam diutius non potes: Non feram, non patiar, non sinam. Magna dîs immortalibus habenda est gratia, atque huic ipsi Jovi Statori, antiquissimo custodi hujus urbis, quòd hanc tam tetram, tam horribilem, támque infestam reipublicæ pestem toties jam effugimus, Non est sæpius in uno homine salus summa periclitanda reipublicæ.

Quòd si ex tanto latrocinio iste unus tolletur, videbimur fortasse ad breve quoddam tempus curâ et metu esse relevati: periculum autem residebit et erit inclusum penitùs in venis atque in visceribus reipublicæ. Ut sæpe homines ægri morbo gravi cum æstu, febrique jactantur, si aquam gelidam biberint, primò relevari videntur; deinde multò graviùs vehementiúsque afflictantur: si hic morbus, qui est in republicâ, relevatus istius pœnâ, vehementiùs, vivis reliquis, ingravescet. Quare, P. C. secedant improbi, secernant se à bonis, unum in locum congregentur; muro denique, id quod sæpe jam dixi, secernantur à nobis: desinant insidiari domi suæ consuli, circumstare tribunal prætoris urbani, obsidere cum gladiis curiam, malleolos et faces, ad incendendam urbem, comparare: sit denique inscriptum in fronte uniuscujusque civis quid de republicâ sentiat. Polliceor vobis hoc, P. C. tantam in nobis Coss. fore diligentiam, tantam in vobis auctoritatem, tantam in equitibus Roman. virtutem, tantam in omnibus bonis consensionem ut Catilinæ profectionem omnia patefacta, illustrata, oppressa, vindicata esse videatis. Hisce omnibus, Catilina, cum summâ reipubl. salute, et cum tuâ peste, ac pernicie, cumque eorum exitio, qui se tecum omni scelere parricidióque junxerunt, proficiscere ad impium bellum, ac nefarium. Tum tu, Jupiter, qui iisdem, quibus hæc urbs, auspiciis à Romulo es constitutus, quem Statorem hujus urbis atque imperii verè nominamus, hunc et hujus socios à tuis aris cæterisque templis, à tectis urbis ac mœnibus, à vitâ fortunisque civium omnium arcebis; et omnes inimicos bonorum, hostes patriæ, latrones Italiæ, scelerum fœdere inter se, ac nefariâ societate conjunctos, æternis suppliciis vivos mortuósque mactabis.

IN CATILINAM II.

Instruite nunc, Quirites, contra has tam præclaras Catilinæ copias vestra præsidia vetrósque exercitus; et primùm gladiatori illi confecto et saucio, consules, imperatorésque vestros opponite: deinde contra illam naufragorum ejectam ac debilitatam manum, florem totius Italiæ ac robur educite. Jam verò urbes coloniarum ac municipiorum respondebunt Catilinæ tumulis silvestribus. Neque verò cæteras copias, ornamenta, præsidia vestra, cum illius latronis inopiâ atque egestate debeo conferre. Sed omissis his rebus omnibus, quibus nos suppeditamur, eget ille senatu, equitibus Romaniis, populo, urbe, ærario, vectigalibus, cunctâ Italiâ, provinciis omnibus, exteris nationibus: si, inquam, his rebus omissis, ipsas causas, quæ inter se confligunt, contendere velimus: ex eo ipso, quàm valde illi jaceant, intelligere possumus. Ex hâc enim parte pudor pugnat, illinc petulantia: hinc pudicitia, illinc stuprum: hinc fides, illinc fraudatio: hinc pietas, illinc scelus: hinc constantia, illinc furor: hinc honestas, illinc turpitudo: hinc continentia, illinc libido: denique æquitas, temperantia, fortitudo, prudentia, virtutes omnes, certant cum iniquitate, cum luxuriâ, cum ignaviâ, cum temeritate, cum vitiis omnibus: postremò copia cum egestate, bona ratio cum perditâ, mens sana cum amentiâ, bona denique spes cum omnium rerum desperatione confligit. In hujuscemodi certamine ac prælio, nónne, etiamsi hominum studia deficiant, diî ipsi immortales cogent ab his præclarrissimis virtutibus tot et tanta vitia superari? Quæ cùm ita sint, Quirites, vos, quemadmodum jam antea dixi, vestra tecta custodiis vigiliisque defendite: mihi, ut urbi sine vestro motu, ac sine ullo tumultu satìs esset præsidii, consultum ac provisum est.

IN CATILINAM III.

Hîc quis potest esse, Quirites, tam aversus à vero, tam præceps, tam mente captus, qui neget, hæc omnia quæ videmus, præcipuéque hanc urbem, deorum immortalium

nutu atque potestate administrari? Etenim cùm esset ita responsum, cædes, incendia, interitúmque reipublicæ comparari et ea à perditis civibus: quæ tum propter magnitudinem scelerum nonnullis incredibilia videbantur; ea non modò cogitata à nefariis civibus, verùm etiam suscepta esse sensistis. Illud verò nónne ita præsens est, ut nutu Jovis optimi maximi factum esse videatur? ut, cùm hodierno die manè per forum meo jussu et conjurati et eorum indices in ædem Concordiæ ducerentur; eo ipso tempore signum statueretur; quo collocato, atque ad vos senatúmque converso, omnia et senatus, et vos, quæ erant contra salutem omnium cogitata illustrata, et patefacta, vidistis? Quo etiam majore sunt isti odio supplicióque digni, qui non solùm vestris domiciliis atque tectis; sed etiam deorum templis, atque delubris sunt funestos ac nefarios ignes inferre conati? quibus ego si me restitisse dicam, nimiùm mihi sumam, et non sim ferendus: ille, ille Jupiter restitit; ille Capitolium, ille hæc templa, ille hanc urbem, ille vos omnes salvos esse voluit. Diîs ego immortalibus ducibus hanc mentem, Quirites, voluntatémque suscepi, atque ad hæc tanta indicia perveni.

Quibus pro tantis rebus, Quirites, nullum ego à vobis præmium virtutis, nullum insigne honoris, nullum monumentum laudis postulo, præterquam hujus diei memoriam sempiternam. In animis ego vestris omnes triumphos meos, omnia ornamenta honoris, monumenta gloriæ, laudis insignia, condi et collocari volo. Nihil me mutum potest delectare, nihil tacitum, nihil denique hujusmodi, quod etiam minùs digni assequi possint. Memoriâ vestrâ, Quirites, nostræ res alentur, sermonibus crescent, literarum monumentis inveterascent et corroborabuntur: eandémque diem intelligo, quam spero æternam fore, et ad salutem urbis, et ad memoriam consulatûs mei propagatam: unóque tempore in hâc republ. duos cives extitisse, quorum alter fines vestri imperii, non terræ sed cœli regionibus terminaret; alter ejusdem imperii domicilium sedémque servaret. Sed quoniam earum rerum, quas ego gessi, non est eadem fortuna, atque conditio, quæ illorum, qui externa bella gesserunt; quòd mihi vivendum sit cum illis quos vici ac subegi; illi hostes aut interfectos aut oppressos reliquerunt: vestrum est, Quirites, si cæteris recta sua facta prosunt, mihi mea ne quando obsint providere. Mentes enim hominum audacissimorum sceleratæ ac nefariæ ne vobis nocere possent, ego providi; ne mihi noceant, vestrum est providere.

IN CATILINAM IV.

Video, P. C. in me omnium vestrûm ora atque oculos esse conversos: video vos non solùm de vestro, ac reipublicæ, verùm etiam, si id depulsum sit, de meo periculo esse solicitos. Est mihi jucunda in malis, grata in dolore, vestra erga me voluntas: sed eam, per deos immortales, quæso, deponite, atque obliti salutis meæ, de vobis ac de liberis vestris cogitare. Mihi quidem si hæc conditio consulatûs data est, ut omnes acerbitates, omnes dolores cruciatúsque perferrem; feram non solùm fortiter, sed etiam libenter; dummodo, meis laboribus, vobis populóque Romano, dignitas salúsque pariatur. Ego sum ille consul, P. C. cui non forum, in quo omnis æquitas continetur; non campus, consularibus auspiciis consecratus, non curia, summum auxilium omnium gentium; non domus, commune perfugium; non lectus, ad quietem datus; non denique hæc sedes honoris, sella curulis, unquam vacua mortis periculo atque insidiis fuit. Ego multa tacui, multa pertuli, multa concessi, multa meo quodam dolore in vestro timore sanavi. Nunc si hunc exitum consulatûs mei diî immortales esse voluerunt, ut vos, P. C. populúmque Romanum ex cæde miserâ, conjuges liberósque vestros, virginésque Vestales ex acerbissimâ vexatione; templa, atque delubra, hanc pulcherriman patriam omnium nostrûm ex fœdissimâ flammâ; totam Italiam ex bello et vastitate eriperem: quæcunque mihi uni proponetur fortuna, subeatur. Etenim si P. Lentulus suum nomen inductus à vatibus, fatale ad perniciem reipubl. fore putavit; cur ego non læter, meum consulatum ad salutem reipubl. prope fatalem exstitisse? Quare, P. C. consulite vobis, prospicite patriæ; conservate vos, conjuges, liberos, fortunásque vestras; populi Romani nomen, salutémque defendite; mihi parcere, ac de me cogitare desinite. Nam primùm debeo sperare, omnes deos, qui huic urbi præsident, pro eo mihi, ac mereor, relaturos gratiam esse: deinde si quid obtigerit, æquo animo paratóque moriar; neque enim turpis mors forti viro, potest *accidere; neque immatura consulari, nec misera sapienti.*

Quæ cùm ita sint, Patres conscripti, pro imperio, pro exercitu, pro provinciâ, quam

neglexi; pro triumpho, cæterisque laudis insignibus, quæ sunt à me propter urbis vestræque salutis custodiam repudiata, pro clientelis, hospitiisque provincialibus, quæ tamen urbanis opibus non minore labore tueor, quàm comparo: pro his igitur omnibus rebus, et pro meis in vos singularibus studiis, próque hâc, quam conspicitis, ad conservandam rempubl. diligentiâ, nihil aliud à vobis, nisi hujus temporis totiúsque mei consulatûs memoriam postulo; quæ dum erit vestris mentibus infixa, firmissimo me muro septum esse arbitrabor. Quòd si meam spem vis improborum fefellerit, atque superaverit; commendo vobis parvum meum filium: cui profectò satìs erit præsidii, non solùm ad salutem, verùm etiam ad dignitatem, si ejus, qui hæc omnia suo solus periculo conservaverit, illum esse filium memineritis. Quapropter de summâ salute vestrâ populique Romani, P. C. de vestris conjugibus ac liberis, de aris ac focis, de fanis ac templis, de totius urbis tectis ac sedibus, de imperio, de libertate, de salute Italiæ, déque universâ republicâ decernite diligenter, ut instituistis, ac fortiter. Habetis enim consulem, qui et parere vestris decretis non dubitet; et ea quæ statueritis, quoad vivet, defendere, et per seipsum præstare possit.

PRO LEGE MANILIA.

Quanquam mihi semper frequens conspectus vester multò jucundissimus, hic autem locus ad agendum amplissimus, ad dicendum ornatissimus est visus, Quirites: tamen hoc aditu laudis, qui semper optimo cuique maximè patuit, non mea me voluntas, sed meæ vitæ rationes ab ineunte ætate susceptæ prohibuerunt. Nam cùm antea per ætatem nondum hujus auctoritatem loci contingere auderem, statuerémque, nihil huc nisi perfectum ingenio, elaboratum industriâ afferri oportere, omne meum tempus amicorum temporibus transmittendum putavi. Ita neque hic locus vacuus unquam fuit ab iis qui vestram causam defenderent; et meus labor in privatorum periculis castè integréque versatus, ex vestro judicio fructum est amplissimum consecutus. Nam cùm propter dilationem comitiorum ter prætor primus centuriis cunctis renuntiatus sum, facilè intellexi, Quirites, et quid de me judicaretis, et quid aliis præscriberetis. Nunc cùm et auctoritatis in me tantum sit, quantum vos honoribus mandandum esse voluistis: et ad agendum facultatis tantum, quantum homini vigilanti ex forensi usu prope quotidiana dicendi exercitatio potuit afferre: certè et si quid auctoritatis in me est, eâ apud eos utar, qui eam mihi dederunt; et si quid etiam dicendo consequi possum: iis ostendam potissimùm, qui ei quoque rei fructum suo judicio tribuendum esse censuerunt. Atque illud imprimis mihi lætandum jure esse video, quòd in hâc insolitâ mihi ex hoc loco ratione dicendi, causa talis oblata est, in quâ oratio nemini deesse potest. Dicendum est enim de Cn. Pompeii singulari eximiâque virtute. Hujus autem orationis difficilius est exitum, quàm principium invenire. Itaque non mihi tam copia, quàm modus in dicendo quærendus est.

Utinam, Quirites, virorum fortium, atque innocentium, copiam tantam haberetis, ut hæc vobis deliberatio difficilis esset, quemnam potissimùm tantis rebus ac tanto bello præficiendum putaretis. Nunc verò cùm sit unus Cn. Pompeius, qui non modò eorum hominum, qui nunc sunt, gloriam, sed etiam antiquitatis memoriam virtute superârit; quæ res est, quæ cujusquam animum in hâc causâ dubium facere possit? Ego enim sic existimo, in summo imperatore quatuor has res inesse oportere, scientiam rei militaris, virtutem, auctoritatem, felicitatem. Quis igitur hoc homine scientior unquam aut fuit, aut esse debuit? qui è ludo, atque pueritiæ disciplinâ, bello maximo, atque acerrimis hostibus, ad patris exercitum, atque in militiæ disciplinam, profectus est, qui extremâ pueritiâ miles fuit summi imperatoris; ineunte adolescentiâ maximi ipse exercitûs imperator: qui sæpius cum hoste conflixit, quàm quisquam cum inimico concertavit; plura bella gessit, quàm cæteri legerunt; plures provincias confecit quàm alii concupiverunt: cujus adolscentia ad scientiam rei militaris non, alienis præceptis, sed suis imperiis; non offensionibus belli, sed victoriis; non stipendiis, sed triumphis, est traducta. Quod denique genus belli esse potest, in quo illum non exercuerit fortuna reipublicæ? Civile, Africanum, Transalpinum, Hispaniense, mistum ex civitatibus, atque ex bellicosissimis nationibus, servile, navale bellum; varia et diversa genera, et bellorum, et hostium, non solùm gesta ab hoc uno, sed etiam confecta, nullam rem esse declarant in usu militari positam, quæ hujus viri scientiam fugere possit. Jam verò virtuti Cn. Pompeii quæ potest par oratio inveniri? Quid est quod quisquam aut dignum illo, aut vobis novum, aut cuiquam inauditum possit afferre? Non enim illæ sunt solæ virtutes im-

peratoriæ quæ vulgò existimantur, labor in negotiis, fortitudo in periculis, industria in agendo, celeritas in conficiendo, consilium in providendo; quæ tanta sunt in hoc uno, quanta in omnibus reliquis imperatoribus, quos aut vidimus, aut audivimus, non fuerunt. Testis est Italia, quam ille ipse victor L. Sulla hujus virtute et consilio confessus est liberatam: testis est Sicilia, quam multis undique cinctam periculis, non terrore belli, sed celeritate consilii explicavit: testis est Africa, quæ magnis oppressa hostium copiis, eorum ipsorum sanguine redundavit: testis est Gallia, per quam legionibus nostris in Hispaniam iter Gallorum internecione patefactum est: testis est Hispania, quæ sæpissimè plurimos hostes ab hoc superatos prostratósque conspexit: testis est iterum et sæpius Italia, quæ cùm servili bello tetro periculosóque premeretur, ab hoc auxilium absente expetivit: quod bellum expectatione Pompeii attenuatum atque imminutum est; adventu sublatum ac sepultum: testes verò jam omnes oræ, atque omnes exteræ gentes ac nationes; denique maria omnia tum universa, tum in singulis oris omnes sinus, atque portus.

PRO ARCHIA POETA.

Siquid est in me ingenii, judices, quod sentio quàm sit exiguum; aut siqua exercitatio dicendi, in quâ me non inficior mediocriter esse versatum; aut si hujusce rei ratio aliqua ab optimarum artium studiis et disciplinâ profecta, à quâ ego nullum confiteor ætatis meæ tempus abhorruisse: earum rerum omnium vel imprimis hîc A. Licinius fructum à me repetere propè suo jure debet: Nam quoad longissimè potest mens mea respicere spatium præteriti temporis, et pueritiæ memoriam recordari ultimam, inde usque repetens, hunc video mihi principem et ad suscipiendam et ad ingrediendam rationem horum studiorum extitisse. Quòd si hæc vox, hujus hortatu præceptisque conformata, nonnullis aliquando saluti fuit: à quo id accepimus quo cæteris opitulari et alios servare possemus, huic profectò ipsi, quantum est situm in nobis, et opem et salutem ferre debemus. Ac ne quis à nobis hoc ita dici fortè miretur, quòd alia quædam in hoc facultas sit ingenii, neque hæc dicendi ratio aut disciplina: ne nos quidem huic cuncti studio penitùs unquam dediti fuimus. *Etenim omnes artes, quæ ad humanitatem pertinent, habent quoddam commune vinculum; et quasi cognatione quâdam inter se continentur.*

Quæres à nobis, Gracche, cur tantopere hoc homine delectemur; quia suppeditat nobis, ubi et animus ex hoc forensi strepitu reficiatur, et aures convicio defessæ conquiescant. *An tu existimas, aut suppetere nobis posse, quod quotidie dicamus in tantâ varietate rerum, nisi animos nostros doctrinâ excolamus; aut ferre animos tantam posse contentionem, nisi eos doctrinâ eâdem relaxemus?* Ego verò fateor, me his studiis esse deditum: Cæteros pudeat, si qui ita se literis abdiderunt, ut nihil possint ex his neque ad communem afferre fructum, neque in aspectum lucémque proferre. Me autem quid pudeat? qui tot annos ita vixi, judices, ut ab illis nullo me unquam tempore, aut commodum, aut otium meum abstraxerit, aut voluptas avocârit, aut denique somnus retardârit. Quare quis tandem me reprehendat, aut quis mihi jure succenseat, si quantum cæteris ad suas res obeundas, quantum ad festos dies ludorum celebrandos, quantum ad alias voluptates, et ad ipsam requiem animi et corporis conceditur temporis, quantum alii tribuunt intempestivis conviviis, quantum denique aleæ, quantum pilæ; tantum mihi egomet ad hæc studia recolenda sumpsero? Atque hoc adeò mihi concedendum est magis: quòd ex his studiis hæc quoque crescit oratio et facultas: quæ quantacunque in me est, nunquam amicorum periculis defuit. Quæ si cui levior videtur; illa quidem certè, quæ summa sunt, ex quo fonte hauriam, sentio. Nam nisi multorum præceptis multisque literis mihi ab adolescentiâ suasissem, nihil esse in vitâ magnopere expetendum, nisi laudem atque honestatem; in eâ autem prosequendâ omnes cruciatus corporis, omnia pericula mortis atque exilii, parvi esse ducenda nunquam me pro salute vestrâ in tot et tantas dimicationes, atque in hos profligatorum hominum quotidianos impetus objecissem. Sed pleni omnes sunt libri, plenæ sapientium voces, plena exemplorum vetustas; quæ jacerent in tenebris omnia, nisi literarum lumen accederat. Quàm multas nobis imagines, non solùm ad intuendum, verùm etiam ad imitandum, fortissimorum virorum expressas, scriptores, et Græci, et Latini reliquerunt? quas ego mihi semper in administrandâ repub. proponens, animum et mentem meam ipsâ cogitatione hominum excellentium conformabam. Quæret quispiam: Quid?

illi ipsi summi viri, quorum virtutes literis proditæ sunt istáne doctrinâ, quem tu laudibus effers, eruditi fuerunt? Difficile est hoc de omnibus confirmare; sed tamen est certum, quid respondeam. Ego multos homines excellenti animo ac virtute fuisse, et sine doctrinâ, naturæ ipsius habitu propè divino, per seipsos, et moderatos, et graves extitisse fateor: etiam illud adjungo, sæpius ad laudem atque virtutem, naturam sine doctrinâ, quàm sine naturâ valuisse doctrinam. Atque idem ego contendo, cùm ad naturam eximiam atque illustrem accesserit ratio quædam confirmatióque doctrinæ; tum illud nescio quid præclarum ac singulare solere existere.

Quòd si non hîc tantus fructus ostenderetur, et si ex his studiis delectatio sola peteretur: tamen ut opinor, hanc animi remissionem humanissimam ac liberalissimam judicaretis. Nam cæteræ neque temporum sunt, neque ætatum omnium, neque locorum. *Hæc studia adolescentiam alunt, senectutem oblectant, secundas res ornant, adversis perfugium ac solatium præbent; delectant domi, non impediunt foris: pernoctant nobiscum, peregrinantur, rusticantur.* Quòd si ipsi hæc neque attingere, neque sensu nostro gustare possemus; tamen ea mirari deberemus, etiam cùm in aliis videremus. Quis nostrûm tam animo agresti ac duro fuit, ut Roscii morte nupèr non commoveretur? qui cùm esset senex mortuus; tamen propter excellentem artem, ac venustatem videbatur omnino mori non debuisse. Ergo ille corporis motu tantum amorem sibi conciliârat à nobis omnibus: nos animorum incredibiles motus celeritatémque ingeniorum negligemus? Quoties ego hunc Archiam vidi, judices (utar enim vestrâ benignitate: quoniam me in hoc novo genere dicendi tam diligenter attenditis) quoties ego hunc vidi, cùm literam scripsisset nullam, magnum numerum optimorum versuum de his ipsis rebus, quæ tum agerentur, dicere ex tempore? quoties revocatum eandem rem dicere commutatis verbis atque sententiis? quæ verò accuratè cogitatéque scripsisset, ea sic vidi probari, ut ad veterum scriptorum laudem pervenirent. Hunc ego non diligam? non admirer? non omni oratione defendendum putem? Atqui sic à summis nominibus eruditissimísque accepimus, cæterarum rerum studia, et doctrinâ et præceptis, et arte constare; poëtam naturâ ipsâ valere, et mentis viribus excitari, et quasi divino quodam spiritu afflari. Quare suo jure noster ille Ennius sanctos appellat poëtas, quòd quasi deorum aliquo dono atque munere commendati nobis esse videantur. Sit igitur, judices, sanctum apud vos humanissimos homines hoc poëtæ nomen, quod nulla unquam barbaria violavit. Saxa et solitudines voce respondent, bestiæ sæpe immanes cantu flectuntur atque consistunt: nos instituti rebus optimis non poëtarum voce moveamur? Homerum Colophonii civem esse dicunt suum, Chii vindicant, Salaminii repetunt, Smyrnæi verò suum esse confirmant: itaque etiam delubrum ejus in oppido dedicaverunt: permulti alii præterea pugnant inter se, atque contendunt. Ergo illi alienum, quia poëta fuit, post mortem etiam expetunt: nos hunc vivum, qui et voluntate et legibus noster est, repudiabimus? præsertim, cùm omne olim studium, atque omne ingenium contulerit Archias ad pop. Rom. gloriam laudémque celebrandam.

Quàm multos scriptores rerum suarum magnus ille Alexander secum habuisse dicitur? Atque is tamen, cùm in Sigæo ad Achillis tumulum adstitisset, O fortunate, inquit, adolescens, qui tuæ virtutis Homerum præconem inveniris! et verè. Nam nisi Ilias extitisset illa; idem tumulus, qui corpus ejus contexerat, nomen etiam obruisset.

Neque enim est hoc dissimulandum, quod obscurari non potest, sed præ nobis ferendum: *trahimur omnes laudis studio, et optimus quisque maximè gloriâ ducitur.* Ipsi illi Philosophi, etiam in illis libellis, quos de contemnendâ gloriâ scribunt, nomen suum inscribunt, in eo ipso, in quo predicationem nobilitatémque dispiciunt, prædicari se ac nominari volunt. Decimus quidem Brutus, summus ille vir, et imperator, Attii amicissimi sui carminibus templorum ac monumentorum aditus exornavit suorum. Jam verò ille, qui cum Ætolis, Ennio comite, bellavit Fulvius, non dubitavit Martis manubias musis consecrare. Quare in quâ urbe imperatores prope armati poëtarum nomen et musarum delubra coluerunt, in eâ non debent togati judices à musarum honore et à poëtarum salute abhorrere. Atque ut id libentiùs faciatis, jam me vobis, judices, indicabo, et de meo quodam amore gloriæ, nimis acri fortasse, veruntamen honesto, vobis confitebor. Nam quas res nos in consulatu nostro vobiscum simul pro salute hujus urbis atque imperii, et pro vitâ civium, próque universâ rep. gessimus, attigit hic versibus, atque inchoavit. Quibus auditis, quòd mihi magna res et jucunda visa est, hunc ad perficiendum hortatus sum.

EX OVIDII OPERIBUS.

PYRAMUS ET THISBE

Pȳrămŭs ĕt Thīsbē, jŭvĕnūm pūlchĕrrĭmŭs āltĕr,
Altĕră, quās ŏrĭēns hăbŭīt, pǣlātă pŭēllīs,
Cōntĭgŭās tĕnŭêrĕ dŏmōs; ŭbĭ dīcĭtŭr āltām
Cōctĭlĭbŭs mūrīs cīnxīssĕ Sĕmīrămĭs ŭrbĕm.
Notitiam primosque gradus vicinia fecit;
Tempore crevit amor: tædæ quoque jure cöissent;
Sed vetuêre patres. Quod non potuêre vetare,
Ex æquo captis ardebant mentibus ambo.
Conscius omnis abest. Nutu, signisque loquuntur.
Quoque magìs tegitur, tectus magìs æstuat ignis.
Fissus erat tenui rimâ, quam duxerat olim
Cum fieret, paries domui communis utrique.
Id vitium, nulli per secula longa notatum,
(Quid non sentit amor?) primi sensistis amantes,
Et voci fecistis iter:—tutæque per illud
Murmure blanditiæ minimo transire solebant.
Sæpe ut constiterant, hinc Thisbe, Pyramus illinc;
Inque vicem fuerat captatus anhelitus oris;
Invide, dicebant, paries, quid amantibus obstas?
Quantum erat, ut sineres nos toto corpore jungi!
Aut hoc si nimium, vel ad oscula danda pateres!
Nec sumus ingrati: tibi nos debere fatemur,
Quòd datus est verbis ad amicas transitus aures.
Talia diversa nequicquam sede locuti;
Sub noctem dixêre Vale: partique dedêre
Oscula quisque suæ, non pervenientia contrà.
Postera nocturnos Aurora removerat ignes,
Solque pruinosas radiis siccaverat herbas:
Ad solitum coïere locum. Tum murmure parvo
Multa priùs questi, statuunt ut nocte silenti
Fallere custodes, forisbusque excedere tentent:
Cúmque domo exierint, urbis quoque tecta relinquant.
Neve sit errandum lato spatiantibus arvo;
Conveniant ad busta Nini: lateantque sub umbrâ
Arboris. Arbor ibi niveis uberrima pomis
Ardua morus erat, gelido contermina fonti.
Pacta placent: et lux tardè discedere visa
Præcipitatur aquis, et aquis nox surgit ab îsdem
Callida per tenebras, versato cardine, Thisbe
Egreditur, fallitque suos; adopertaque vultum
Pervenit ad tumulum; dictaque sub arbore sedi
Audacem faciebat amor. Venit ecce recenti
Cæde leæna boum spumantes oblita rictus,
Depositura sitim vicini fontis in undâ;
Quam procul ad lunæ radios Babylonia Thisbe
Vidit, et obscurum timido pede fugit in antrum
Dumque fugit, tergo velamina lapsa relinquit.
Ut lea sæva sitim multâ compescuit undâ,
Dum redit in sylvas, inventos fortè sine ipsâ
Ore cruentato tenues laniavit amictus.
Seriùs egressus vestigia vidit in alto
Pulvere certa feræ, totoque expalluit ore
Pyramus. Ut verò vestem quoque sangine tinctam
Repperit; Una duos nox, inquit, perdet amantes:
E quibus illa fuit longâ dignissima vitâ.

Nostra nocens anima est. Ego te, miseranda, peremi.
In loca plena metûs qui jussi nocte venires;
Nec prior huc veni. Nostrum divellite corpus,
Et scelerata fero consumite viscera morsu,
O quicunque sub hâc habitatis rupe, leones.
Sed timidi est optare necem. Velamina Thisbes
Tollit, et ad pactæ secum fert arboris umbram.
Utque dedit notæ lachrymas, dedit oscula vesti,
Accipe nunc, inquit, nostri quoque sanguinis haustus;
Quoque erat accinctus, demittit in ilia ferrum.
Nec mora; ferventi moriens e vulnere traxit.
Ut jacuit resupinus humi, cruor emicat altè;
Non aliter, quàm cùm vitiato fistula plumbo
Scinditur, et tenues stridente foramine longè
Ejaculatur aquas, at ictibus aëra rumpit.
Arborei fœtus aspergine cædis ne atram
Vertuntur faciem: madefactaque sangine radix
Puniceo tingit pendentia mora colore.
Ecce, metu nondum posito, ne fallat amantem,
Illa redit; juvenemque oculis, animoque requirit;
Quantaque vitârit narrare pericula gestit.
Utque locum, et versam cognovit in arbore formam;
(Sec facit incertam pomi color) hæret an hæc sit.
Dum dubitat, tremebunda videt pulsare cruentum
Membra solum; retroque pedem tulit; oraque buxo
Pallidiora gerens, exhorruit æquoris instar,
Quod fremit exiguâ cùm summum stringitur aura.
Sed postquàm remorata suos cognovit amores;
Percutit indignos claro plangore lacertos:
Et laniata comas, amplexaque corpus amatum,
Vulnera supplevit lacrymis: fletumque cruori
Miscuit; et gelidis in vultibus oscula figens,
Pyrame, clamavit, quis te mihi casus ademit?
Pyrame, responde. Tua te, carissime, Thisbe
Nominat. Exaudi; vultusque attolle jacentes.
Ad nomen Thisbes oculos jam morte gravatos
Pyramus erexit, visâque recondidit illâ.
Quæ postquam vestemque suam cognovit, et ense
Vidit ebur vacuum; tua te manus, inquit, amorque
Perdidit, infelix. Est et mihi fortis in unum
Hoc manus; est et amor; dabit hic in vulnera vires.
Persequar extinctum; lethique miserrima dicar
Caussa, comesque tui: quique a me morte revelli
Heu solâ poteras, poteris nec morte revelli.
Hoc tamen amborum verbis estote rogati,
O multùm miserique mei, illiusque parentes,
Ut, quos certus amor, quos hora novissima junxit,
Componi tumulo non invideatis eodem.
At tu quæ ramis arbor miserabile corpus
Nunc tegis unius, mox es tectura duorum;
Signa tene cædis; pullosque et luctibus aptos
Semper habe fœtus gemini monumenta cruoris.
Dixit; et aptato pectus mucrone sub imum
Incubuit ferro; quod ahuc a cæde tepebat.
Vota tamen tetigêre deos, tetigêre parentes.
Nam color in pomo est, ubi permaturuit, ater;
Quodque rogis superest, unâ requiescit in urnâ.

EX VIRGILII OPERIBUS.

GEOR. II. 450.

O fortunatos nimium, sua si bona nôrint
Agricolas, quibus ipsa, procul discordibus armis,
Fundit humo facilem victum justissima tellus!
Si non ingentem foribus domus alta superbis
Manè salutantum totis vomit ædibus undam,
Nec varios inhiant pulchrâ testudine postes,
Illusasque auro vestes, Ephyreïaque æra;
Alba neque Assyrio fucatur lana veneno,
Nec casiâ liquidi corrumpitur usus olivi:
At secura quies, et nescia fallere vita,
Dives opum variarum; at latis otia fundis,
Speluncæ, vivique lacus; at frigida Tempe,
Mugitusque boum, mollesque sub arbore somni,
Non absunt; illic saltus ac lustra ferarum,
Et patiens operum exiguoque assueta juventus,
Sacra Deûm, sanctique patres: extrema per illos
Justitia excedens terris vestigia fecit.
Me verò primùm dulces ante omnia musæ,
Quarum sacra fero ingenti percussus amore,
Accipiant; cœlique vias et sidera monstrent,
Defectus solis varios, lunæque labores;
Unde tremor terris; quâ vi maria alta tumescant
Objicibus ruptis, rursusque in seipsa residant;
Quid tantum oceano properent se tingere soles
Hiberni, vel quæ tardis mora noctibus obstet.
Sin, has ne possim naturæ accedere partes,
Frigidus obstiterit circum præcordia sanguis;
Rura mihi et rigui placeant in vallibus amnes;
Flumina amem silvasque inglorius. O ubi campi,
Spercheusque, et virginibus bacchata Lacænis
Taygeta! O qui me gelidis in vallibus Hæmi
Sistat, et ingenti ramorum protegat umbra!
Felix, qui potuit rerum cognoscere causas,
Atque metus omnes et inexorabile fatum
Subjecit pedibus, strepitumque Acherontis avari!
Fortunatus et ille deos qui novit agrestes,
Panaque, Silvanumque senem, Nymphasque sorores!
Illum non populi fasces, non purpura regum
Flexit, et infidos agitans discordia fratres,
Aut conjurato descendens Dacus ab Histro;
Non res Romanæ, perituraque regna: neque ille
Aut doluit miserans inopem, aut invidit habenti.
Quos rami fructus, quos ipsa volentia rura
Sponte tulere suâ, carpsit; nec ferrea jura,
Insanumque forum, aut populi tabularia vidit.
Solicitant alii remis freta cæca, ruuntque
In ferrum, penetrant aulas et limina regum:
Hic petit excidiis urbem miserosque penates,
Ut gemmâ bibat, et Sarrano indormiat ostro:
Condit opes alius, defossoque incubat auro:
Hic stupet attonitus rostris: hunc plausus hiantem
Per cuneos geminatus enim plebisque patrumque
Corripuit: gaudent perfusi sanguine fratrum,
Exsilioque domos et dulcia limina mutant,
Atque alio patriam quærunt sub sole jacentem.

Agricola incurvo terram dimovit aratro:
Hinc anni labor; hinc patriam parvosque nepotes
Sustinet; hinc armenta boum meritosque juvencos.
Nec requies quin aut pomis exuberat annus,
Aut fetu pecorum, aut cerealis mergite culmi,
Proventuque oneret sulcos, atque horrea vincat.
Venit hiems; teritur Sicyonia bacca trapetis;
Glande sues læti redeunt; dant arbuta silvæ;
Et varios ponit fetus autumnus, et altè
Mitis in apricis coquitur vindemia saxis.
Interea dulces pendent circum oscula nati;
Casta pudicitiam servat domus; ubera vaccæ
Lactea demittunt; pinguesque in gramine læto
Inter se adversis luctantur cornibus hædi.
Ipse dies agitat festos; fususque per herbam,
Ignis ubi in medio, et socii cratera coronant,
Te libans, Lenææ, vocat; pecorisque magistris
Velocis jaculi certamina ponit in ulmo;
Corporaque agresti nudant prædura palæstrâ.
Hanc olim veteres vitam coluere Sabini,
Hanc Remus et frater; sic fortis Etruria crevit
Scilicet, et rerum facta est pulcherrima Roma,
Septemque una sibi muro circumdedit arces.
Ante etiam sceptrum Dictæ regis, et antè
Impia quàm cæcis gens epulata juvencis,
Aureus hanc vitam in terris Saturnus agebat.
Necdum etiam audierant inflari classica, necdum
Impositos duris crepitare incudibus enses.
Sed nos immensum spatiis confecimus æquor;
Et jam tempus equûm fumantia solvere colla.

GEOR. IV. 149.

Nunc age, naturas apibus quas Jupiter ipse
Addidit expediam: pro quâ mercede, canoros
Curetum sonitus crepitantiaque æra secutæ,
Dictæo cœli regem pavêre sub antro.
Solæ communes natos, consortia tecta
Urbis habent, magnisque agitant sub legibus ævum
Et patriam solæ, et certos novêre penates:
Venturæque hiemis memores, æstate laborem
Experiuntur, et in medium quæsita reponunt.
Namque aliæ victu invigilant, et fœdere pacto
Exercentur agris: pars intra sæpta domorum
Narcissi lacrymam, et lentum de cortice gluten,
Prima favis ponunt fundamina; deinde tenaces
Suspendunt ceras; aliæ, spem gentis, adultos
Educunt fetus: aliæ purissima mella
Stipant, et liquido distendunt nectare cellas.
Sunt, quibus ad portas cecidit custodia sorti:
Inque vicem speculantur aquas et nubila cœli;
Aut onera accipiunt venientum; aut agmine facto,
Ignavum fucos pecus a præsepibus arcent.
Fervet opus, redolentque thymo fragrantia mella:
Ac veluti lentis Cyclopes fulmina massis
Quum properant, alii taurinis follibus auras
Accipiunt, redduntque, alii stridentia tingunt
Aĕra lacu; gemit impositis incudibus Ætna:
Illi inter sese magnâ vi brachia tollunt
In numerum, versantque tenaci forcipe ferrum.

Non aliter, si parva licet componere magnis,
Cecropias innatus apes amor urget habendi,
Munere quamque suo. Grandævis oppida curæ,
Et munire favos, et Dædala fingere tecta.
At fessæ multâ referunt se nocte minores,
Crura thymo plenæ : pascuntur et arbuta passim,
Et glaucas salices, casiamque, crocumque rubentem,
Et pinguem tiliam, et ferrugineos hyacinthos.
Omnibus una quies operum, labor omnibus unus.
Manè ruunt portis; nusquam mora; rursus easdem
Vesper ubi e pastu tandem decedere campis
Admonuit, tum tecta petunt, tum corpora curant;
Fit sonitus, mussantque oras et limina circum.
Post, ubi jam thalamis se composuere, siletur
In noctem, fessos sopor suus occupat artus.
Nec verò a stabulis pluviâ impendente recedunt
Longiùs, aut credunt cœlo, adventantibus Euris;
Sed circùm tutæ sub mœnibus urbis aquantur,
Excursusque breves tentant; et sæpè lapillos,
Ut cymbæ instabiles fluctu jactante saburram,
Tollunt; his sese per inania nubila librant.

ÆN. IV. 170.

Extemplo Libyæ magnas it Fama per urbes;
Fama, malum quâ non aliud velocius ullum;
Mobilitate viget, viresque acquirit eundo;
Parva metu primò, mox sese attollit in auras;
Ingrediturque solo, et caput inter nubila condit.
Illam Terra parens, irâ irritata deorum,
Extremam, ut perhibent, Coeo Enceladoque sororem
Progenuit, pedibus celerem et pernicibus alis:
Monstrum horrendum, ingens; cui, quot sunt corpore plumæ,
Tot vigiles oculi subter, mirabile dictu,
Tot linguæ, totidem ora sonant, tot subrigit aures
Nocte volat cœli medio terræque, per umbram
Stridens, nec dulci declinat lumina somno.
Luce sedet custos, aut summi culmine tecti,
Turribus aut altis, et magnas territat urbes;
Tam ficti pravique tenax quàm nuntia veri.

ÆN. VIII. 415.

Insula Sicanium juxta latus Æoliamque
Erigitur Liparen, fumantibus ardua saxis;
Quam subter specus et Cyclopum exesa caminis
Antra Ætnæa tenant, validique incudibus ictus
Auditi referunt gemitum, striduntque cavernis
Stricturæ chalybum, et fornacibus ignis anhelat:
Vulcani domus, et Vulcania nomine tellus.
Huc tunc ignipotens cœlo descendit ab alto.
Ferrum exercebant vasto Cyclopes in antro,
Brontesque, Steropesque, et nudus membra Pyracmon.
His informatum manibus, jam parte politâ,
Fulmen erat, toto genitor quæ plurima cœlo
Dejicit in terras, pars imperfecta manebat.
Tres imbris torti radios, tres nubis aquosæ
Addiderant, rutili tres ignis et alitis Austri.
Fulgores nunc terrificos, sonitumque, metumque
Miscebant operi, flammisque sequacibus iras.

Parte aliâ Marti currumque rotasque volucres
Instabant, quibus ille viros, quibus excitat urbes:
Ægidaque horriferam, turbatæ Palladis arma,
Certatim squamis serpentum auroque polibant,
Connexosque angues, ipsam in pectore divæ
Gorgona, desecto vertentem lumina collo.
Tollite cuncta, inquit, cœptosque auferte labores,
Ætnæi Cyclopes, et huc advertite mentem.
Arma acri facienda viro: nunc viribus usus,
Nunc manibus rapidis, omni nunc arte magistrâ:
Præcipitate moras. Nec plura effatus: et illi
Ociùs incubuere omnes, pariterque laborem
Sortiti: fluit æs rivis, aurique metallum;
Vulnificusque chalybs vastâ fornace liquescit.
Ingentem clypeum informant, unum omnia contra
Tela Latinorum; septenosque orbibus orbes
Impediunt: alii ventosis follibus auras
Accipiunt redduntque; alii stridentia tingunt
Æra lacu: gemit impositis incudibus antrum.
Illi inter sese multâ vi brachia tollunt
In numerum, versantque tenaci forcipe antrum.

ÆN. IX. 170.

Nisus erat portæ custos, acerrimus armis,
Hyrtacides; comitem Æneæ quem miserat Ida
Venatrix, jaculo celerem levibusque sagittis:
Et juxtà comes Euryalus, quo pulchrior alter
Non fuit Æneadum, Trojana neque induit arma;
Ora puer primâ signans intonsa juventâ.
His amor unus erat, pariterque in bella ruebant;
Tum quoque communi portam statione tenebant.
Nisus ait: Dîne hunc ardorem mentibus addunt,
Euryale? an sua cuique deus fit dira cupido?
Aut pugnam, aut aliquid jamdudum invadere magnum,
Mens agitat mihi; nec placidâ contenta quiete est.
Cernis, quæ Rutulos habeat fiducia rerum:
Lumina rara micant; somno vinoque sepulti
Procubuere; silent latè loca. Percipe porrò
Quid dubitem, et quæ nunc animo sententia surgat.
Ænean acciri omnes, populusque patresque,
Exposcunt, mittique viros qui certa reportent.
Si tibi quæ posco promittunt, nam mihi facti
Fama sat est, tumulo videor reperire sub illo
Posse viam ad muros et mœnia Pallantea.
Obstupuit, magno laudum percussus amore,
Euryalus; simul his ardentem affatur amicum:
Mene igitur socium summis adjungere rebus,
Nise, fugis? Solum te in tantâ pericula mittam?
Non ita me genitor bellis assuetus Opheltes
Argolicum terrorem inter Trojæque labores
Sublatum erudiit; nec tecum talia gessi,
Magnanimum Ænean et fata extrema secutus.
Est hîc, est animus lucis contemptor, et istum
Qui vitâ benè credat emi, quò tendis, honorem.
Nisus ad hæc: Equidem de te nil tale verebar,
Nec fas; non: ita me referat tibi magnus ovantem
Jupiter, aut quicunque oculis hæc adspicit æquis.
Sed, si quis (quæ multa vides discrimine tali,)
Si quis in adversum rapiat casusve deusve,

Te superesse velim: tua vitâ dignior ætas.
Sit qui me raptum pugnâ, pretiove redemptum,
Mandet humo solitâ; aut siqua id fortuna vetabit,
Absenti ferat inferias, decoretque sepulcro.
Neu matri miseræ tanti sim causa doloris;
Quæ te, sola, puer, multis e matribus ausa,
Persequitur, magni nec mœnia curat Acestæ.
Ille autem: Causas nequidquam nectis inanes,
Nec mea jam mutata loco sententia cedit.
Acceleremus, ait: vigiles simul excitat; illi
Succedunt, servantque vices: statione relictâ
Ipse comes Niso graditur, regemque requirunt.

* * * * * *

Egressi superant fossas, noctisque per umbram
Castra inimica petunt, multis tamen antè futuri
Exitio. Passim somno vinoque per herbam
Corpora fusa vident; arrectos littore currus,
Inter lora rotasque viros; simul arma jacere,
Vina simul. Prior Hyrtacides sic ore locutus:
Euryale, audendum dextrâ: nunc ipsa vocat res.
Hâc iter est: tu, nequa manus se attollere nobis
A tergo possit, custodi, et consule longè.
Hæc ego vasta dabo, et lato te limine ducam.
Sic memorat, vocemque premit: simul ense superbum
Rhamnetem aggreditur, qui fortè tapetibus altis
Exstructus toto proflabat pectore somnum:
Rex idem, et regi Turno gratissimus augur;
Sed non augurio potuit depellere pestem.
Tres juxtà famulos temerè inter tela jacentes,
Armigerumque Remi premit, aurigamque sub ipsis
Nactus equis, ferroque secat pendentia colla.
Nam caput ipsi aufert domino, truncumque relinquit
Sanguine singultantem: atro tepefacta cruore
Terra torique madent. Nec Lamyrumque, Lamumque,
Et juvenem Sarranum, illâ qui plurima nocte
Luserat, insignis facie, multoque jacebat
Membra deo victus: felix si protenus illum
Æquâsset nocti ludum, in lucemque tulisset!
Impastus ceu plena leo per ovilia turbans,
Suadet enim vesana fames, manditque trahitque
Molle pecus, mutumque metu; fremit ore cruento.
Nec minor Euryali cædes: incensus et ipse
Perfurit, ac multam in medio sine nomine plebem;
Fadumque, Herbesumque subit, Rhœtumque, Arabimque,
Ignaros; Rhœtum vigilantem et cuncta videntem,
Sed magnum metuens se post cratera tegebat;
Pectore in adverso totum cui comminus ensem
Condidit assurgenti, et multâ morte recepit.
Purpuream vomit ille animam, et cum sanguine mixta
Vina refert moriens: hic furto fervidus instat.
Jamque ad Messapi socios tendebat, ubi ignem
Deficere extremum, et religatos ritè videbat
Carpere gramen equos; breviter quum talia Nisus,
(Sensit enim nimiâ cæde atque cupidine ferri,)
Absistamus, ait; nam lux inimica propinquat.
Pœnarum exhaustum satis est; via facta per hostes.
Multa virûm solido argento perfecta relinquunt
Armaque, craterasque simul, pulchrosque tapetas.

Euryalus phaleras Rhamnetis et aurea bullis
Cingula; Tiburti Remulo ditissimus olim
Quæ mittit dona, hospitio quum jungeret absens,
Cædicus; ille suo moriens dat habere nepoti:
Post mortem bello Rutuli pugnâque potiti.
Hæc rapit, atque humeris nequidquam fortibus aptat.
Tum galeam Messapi habilem cristis decoram
Induit. Excedunt castris, et tuta capessunt.
Interea præmissi equites ex urbe Latinâ,
Cetera dum legio campis instructa moratur,
Ibant, et Turno regi responsa ferebant,
Tercentum, scutati omnes, Volscente magistro.
Jamque propinquabant castris, murosque subibant,
Quum procul hos lævo flectentes limite cernunt;
Et galea Euryalum sublustri noctis in umbrâ
Prodidit immemorem, radiisque adversa refulsit.
Haud temerè est visum, conclamat ab agmine Volscens:
State, viri; quæ causa viæ? quive estis in armis?
Quòve tenetis iter? Nihil illi tendere contrà;
Sed celerare fugam in silvas, et fidere nocti.
Objiciunt equites sese ad divortia nota
Hinc atque hinc, omnemque abitum custode coronant.
Silva fuit latè dumis atque ilice nigrâ
Horrida, quam densi complêrant undique sentes;
Rara per occultos lucebat semita calles.
Euryalum tenebræ ramorum onerosaque præda
Impediunt; fallitque timor regione viarum.
Nisus abit: jamque imprudens evaserat hostes,
Ad lucos qui pòst, Albæ de nomine, dicti
Albani; tum rex stabula alta Latinus habebat.
Ut stetit, et frustra absentem respexit amicum:
Euryale, infelix quâ te regione reliqui?
Quâve sequar? Rursus perplexum iter omne revolvens
Fallacis silvæ, simul et vestigia retro
Observata legit, dumisque silentibus errat.
Audit equos, audit strepitus et signa sequentum.
Nec longum in medio tempus, quum clamor ad aures
Pervenit, ac videt Euryalum, quem jam manus omnis,
Fraude loci et noctis, subito turbante tumulto,
Oppressum rapit et conantem plurima frustra.
Quid faciat? quâ vi juvenem, quibus audeat armis
Eripere? An sese medios moriturus in enses
Inferat, et pulchram properet per vulnera mortem?
Ociùs adducto torquens hastile lacerto,
Suspiciens altam lunam, sic voce precatur:
Tu, dea, tu præsens nostro succurre labori,
Astrorum decus, et nemorum Latonia custos.
Siqua tuis unquam pro me pater Hyrtacus aris
Dona tulit; siqua ipse meis venatibus auxi,
Suspendive tholo, aut sacra ad fastigia fixi;
Hunc sine me turbare globum, et rege tela per auras.
Dixerat; et toto connixus corpore ferrum
Conjicit: hasta volans noctis diverberat umbras,
Et venit aversi in tergum Sulmonis, ibique
Frangitur, ac fisso transit præcordia ligno.
Volvitur ille vomens calidum de pectore flumen
Frigidus, et longis singultibus ilia pulsat.
Diversi circumspiciunt. Hoc acrior idem

Ecce aliud summâ telum librabat ab aure :
Dum trepidant, iit hasta Tago per tempus utrumque,
Stridens, trajectoque hæsit tepefacta cerebro.
Sævit atrox Volscens, nec teli conspicit usquam
Auctorem, nec quò se ardens immittere possit :
Tu tamen interea calido mihi sanguine pœnas
Persolves amborum, inquit. Simul ense recluso
Ibat in Euryalum. Tum verò exterritus, amens,
Conclamat Nisus ; nec se celerare tenebris
Ampliùs, aut tantum potuit perferre dolorem :
Me, me ; adsum qui feci ; in me convertite ferrum,
O Rutuli ; mea fraus omnis : nihil iste nec ausus,
Nec potuit ; cœlum hoc et conscia sidera testor :
Tantùm infelicem nimium dilexit amicum.
Talia dicta dabat ; sed viribus ensis adactus
Transabiit costas, et candida pectora rumpit.
Volvitur Euryalus leto, pulchrosque per artus
It cruor, inque humeros cervix collapsa recumbit :
Purpureus veluti quum flos succisus aratro
Languescit moriens ; lassove papavera collo
Demisêre caput, pluvia quum forte gravantur.
At Nisus ruit in medios, solumque per omnes
Volscentem petit, in solo Volscente moratur.
Quem circum glomerati hostes hinc comminus atque hinc
Proturbant : instat mon seciùs, ac rotat ensem
Fulmineum ; donec Rutuli clamantis in ore
Condidit adverso, et moriens animam abstulit hosti.
Tum super exanimum sese projecit amicum
Confossus, placidâque ibi demum morte quievit.
　Fortunati ambo, si quid mea carmina possunt,
Nulla dies unquam memori vos eximet ævo,
Dum domus Æneæ Capitolî immobile saxum
Accolet, imperiumque pater Romanus habebit.

EX HORATII OPERIBUS.

AD MÆCENATEM. LIB. I, ODE I.

Mæcēnās ătăvīs ēdĭtĕ rēgĭbŭs ;
O ēt præsĭdĭum, ēt dūlcĕ dĕcūs mĕūm !
Sūnt quōs cūrrĭcŭlō pūlvĕrĕm Olȳmpĭcūm
Cōllēgīssĕ jŭvăt, mētăquĕ fērvĭdīs
Evītātă rŏtīs, pālmăquĕ nōbĭlĭs
Tērrārūm dŏmĭnōs ēvĕhĭt ād Dĕōs.
Hunc, si mobilium turba Quiritium
Certat tergeminis tollere honoribus ;
Illum, si proprio condidit horreo
Quicquid de Libycis verritur areis,
Gaudentem patrios findere sarculo
Agros, Attalicis conditionibus
Nunquam divomeas, ut trabe Cypriâ
Myrtoum pavidus nauta secet mare.
Luctantem Icariis fluctibus Africum
Mercator metuens, otium et oppidi
Ludat rura sui : mox reficit rates
Quassas, indocilis pauperiem pati.
　Est qui nec veteris pocula Massici,
Nec partem solido demere de die

Spernit, nunc viridi membra sub arbuto
Stratus, nunc ad aquæ lene caput sacræ.
   Multos castra juvant, et lituo tubæ
Permistus sonitus, bellaque matribus
Detestata. Manet sub Jove frigido
Venator, teneræ conjugis immemor;
Seu visa est catulis cerva fidelibus,
Seu rupit teretes Marsus aper plagas.
   Me doctarum hederæ præmia frontium
Dîs miscent superis: me gelidum nemus,
Nympharumque leves cum Satyris chori
Secernunt populo; si neque tibias
Euterpe cohibet, nec Polyhymnia
Lesboüm refugit tendere barbiton:
Quòd si me Lyricis vatibus inseres,
Sublimi feriam sidera vertice.

AD NAVEM QUA VEHITUR VIRGILIUS. LIB. I. ODE III.

Sīc tē dīvă pŏtēns Cȳprĭ,
   Sīc frātrēs Hĕlĕnæ, lūcĭdă sīdĕră,
Vēntōrūmqŭe rĕgāt pătĕr,
   Obstrīctīs ălĭīs, prætĕr Iāpȳgă,
Navis, quæ tibi creditum
   Debes Virgilium, finibus Atticis
Reddas incolumem, precor,
   Et serves animæ dimidium meæ.
Illi robur et æs triplex
   Circa pectus erat, qui fragilem truci
Commisit pelago ratem
   Primus; nec timuit præcipitem Africum
Decertantem Aquilonibus,
   Nec tristes Hyadas, nec rabiem Noti;
Quo non arbiter Adriæ
   Major, tollere seu ponere vult freta.
Quem mortis timuit gradum,
   Qui siccis oculis monstra natantia,
Qui vidit mare turgidum, et
   Infames scopulos Acroceraunia?
Nequicquam Deus abscidit
   Prudens Oceano dissociabili
Terras, si tamen impiæ
   Non tangenda rates transiliunt vada.
Audax omnia perpeti
   Gens humana ruit per vetitum nefas:
Audax Iapeti genus
   Ignem fraude malâ gentibus intulit.
Post ignem ætheriâ domo
   Subductum, macies, et nova febrium
Terris incubuit cohors;
   Simotique priùs tarda necessitas
Leti, corripuit gradum.
   Expertus vacuum Dædalus aëra
Pennis non homini datis.
   Perrupit Acheronta Herculeus labor.
Nil mortalibus arduum est.
   Cœlum ipsum petimus stultitiâ; neque
Per nostrum patimur scelus
   Iracunda Jovem ponere fulmina.

AD L. SEXTIUM. LIB. I. ODE IV.

Sōlvĭtŭr ācrĭs hȳĕms grātā vĭcĕ Vērĭs ĕt Făvōnī;
Trăhŭntquĕ sīccās māchĭnæ cărīnās:
Ac nĕquĕ jām stăbŭlīs gaūdĕt pĕcŭs, aūt ărātŏr īgnī
Nĕc prātă cānīs ālbĭcānt prŭīnīs.
Jām Cȳthĕrēă chŏrōs dūcĭt Vĕnŭs īmmĭnēntĕ Lūnā;
Jūnctæquĕ Nȳmphīs Grātĭæ dĕcēntēs
Altērnō tērrām quătĭūnt pĕdĕ, dūm grăvēs Cȳclōpŭm
Vŭlcānŭs ārdēns ūrĭt ōffĭcīnās.
Nunc decet aut viridi nitidum caput impedire myrto,
Aut flore, terræ quem ferunt solutæ.
Nunc et in umbrosis Fauno decet immolare lucis,
Seu poscat agnâ, sive malit hædo.
Pallida mors æquo pulsat pede pauperum tabernas,
Regumque turres. O beate Sexti,
Vitæ summa brevis spem nos vetat inchoare longam.
Jam te premet nox, fabulæque Manes,
Et domus exilis Plutonia; quò simul meâris,
Nec regna vini sortiere talis,
Nec tenerum Lycidam mirabere, quo calet juventus
Nunc omnis, et mox virgines tepebunt.

AD THALIARCHUM. LIB. I. ODE IX.

Vĭdēs, ŭt āltā stēt nĭvĕ cāndĭdŭm
Sŏrāctĕ, nēc jām sūstĭnĕānt ŏnŭs
Sīlvæ lăbōrāntēs; gĕlūquĕ
Flūmĭnă cōnstĭtĕrīnt ăcūtō?
Dīssōlvĕ frīgŭs, līgnă sŭpēr fŏcō
Lārgē rĕpōnēns, ātquĕ bĕnīgnĭŭs
Dēprōmĕ quādrīmŭm Săbīnā,
O Thălĭārchĕ, mĕrŭm dĭōtă.
Permitte Divis cætera; qui simul
Stravêre ventos æquore fervido
Deprœliantes, nec cupressi
Nec veteres agitantur orni.
Quid sit futurum cras, fuge quærere; et
Quem Fors dierum cumque dabit, lucro
Appone; nec dulces amores
Sperne, puer, neque tu choreas,
Donec virenti canities abest
Morosa. Nunc et campus et areæ,
Lenesque sub noctem susurri
Compositâ repetantur horâ.

AD LEUCONOEN. LIB. I. ODE XI.

Tū nē quæsĭĕrīs scīrĕ (nĕfās) quēm mĭhĭ, quēm tĭbĭ
Fīnēm Dî dĕdĕrīnt, Leūcŏnŏē; nēc Băbȳlōnĭōs
Tentâris numeros: est melius, quidquid erit, pati.
Seu plures hyemes, seu tribuit Jupiter ultimam,
Quæ nunc oppositis debilitat pumicibus mare
Tyrrhenum; sapias, vina liques: et spatio brevi
Spem longam reseces. Dum loquimur, fugerit invida
Ætas; carpe diem, quàm minimùm credula postero.

AD ARISTIUM. LIB. I. ODE XXII.

Intĕgĕr vītæ, scĕlĕrīsquĕ pūrŭs,
Nōn ĕgēt Māurī jăcŭlīs nĕque ārcŭ,

Nēc vĕnēnātīs grăvĭdâ săgīttīs,
Fūscĕ, phărētrâ,
Sive per Syrtes iter æstuosas,
Sive facturus per inhospitalem
Caucasum, vel quæ loca fabulosus
Lambit Hydaspes.
Namque me silvâ lupus in Sabinâ,
Dum meam canto Lalagen, et ultra
Terminum curis vagor expeditus,
Fugit inermem.
Quale portentum neque militaris
Daunia in latis alit æsculetis,
Nec Jubæ tellus generat, leonum,
Arida nutrix.
Pone me, pigris ubi nulla campis
Arbor æstivâ recreatur aurâ;
Quod latus mundi nebulæ, malusque
Jupiter urget:
Pone sub curru nimium propinqui
Solis, in terra domibus negata;
Dulcè ridentem Lalagen amabo,
Dulcè loquentem.

AD VIRGILIUM. LIB. I. ODE XXIV.

Quīs dēsīdĕrĭō sīt pŭdŏr, aūt mŏdŭs
Tām cārī căpĭtīs? Præcĭpĕ lūgŭbrēs
Cāntūs Mēlpŏmĕnē; cuī lĭquĭdām pătĕr
Vōcēm cūm cĭthărā dĕdĭt.
Ergo Quintilium perpetuus sopor
Urget? cui Pudor, et Justitiæ soror,
Incorrupta Fides, nudaque Veritas,
Quando ullum invenient parem?
Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit;
Nulli flebilior quàm tibi, Virgilī.
Tu frustrà pius, heu, non ita creditum
Poscis Quintilium Deos.
Quòd si Threïcio blandius Orpheo
Auditam moderere arboribus fidem;
Non vanæ redeat sanguis imagini,
Quam virgâ semel horridâ
Non lenis precibus fata recludere,
Nigro compulerit Mercurius gregi.
Durum: sed levius fit patientiâ,
Quidquid corrigere est nefas.

AD LICINIUM. LIB. II. ODE X.

Rēctĭūs vīvēs, Lĭcĭni, nĕque āltŭm
Sēmpĕr ŭrgēndō; nĕqūe dūm prŏcēllās
Cāutūs hōrrēscīs nĭmĭūm prĕmēndŏ
Līttŭs ĭnīquŭm.
Auream quisquis mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti
Sordibus tecti, caret invidendâ
Sobrius aulâ.
Sæpiùs ventis agitatur ingens
Pinus; et celsæ graviore casu
Decidunt turres, feriuntque summos
Fulmina montes.

Sperat infestis, metuit secundis,
Alteram sortem benè præparatum
Pectus. Informes hyemes reducit
Jupiter; idem
Submovet. Non, si malè nunc, et olim
Sic erit: quondam citharâ tacentem
Suscitat Musam; neque semper arcum
Tendit Apollo.
Rebus angustis animosus, atque
Fortis appare; sapienter idem
Contrahes vento nimiùm secundo
Turgida vela.

LIB. II. ODE XVIII.

Nōn ĕbūr, nĕque aūrĕūm
Mĕā rĕnīdĕt īn dŏmō lăcūnar;
Nōn trăbēs Hȳmēttĭæ
Prĕmūnt cŏlūmnās ūltĭmā rĕcīsas
Africa: neque Attali
Ignotus hæres regiam occupavi;
Nec Laconicas mihi
Trahunt honestæ purpuras clientæ.
At fides, et ingenî
Benigna vena est; pauperemque dives
Me petit. Nihil suprà
Deos lacesso; nec potentem amicum
Largiora flagito,
Satis beatus unicis Sabinis.
Truditur dies die,
Novæque pergunt interire Lunæ.

AD TORQUATUM LIB. IV. ODE VII.

Dīffūgērĕ nĭvēs, rĕdĕūnt jām grāmĭnă cāmpīs,
Arbŏrĭbūsquĕ cŏmæ.
Mūtăt tērră vĭcēs, ēt dĕcrēscēntĭă rīpās
Flūmĭnă prætĕrĕūnt.
Gratia cum Nymphis, geminisque sororibus audet
Ducere nuda choros.
Immortalia ne speres monet annus, et almum
Quæ rapit hora diem.
Frigora mitescunt Zephyris: ver proterit æstas
Interitura, simul
Pomifer autumnus fruges effuderit, et mox
Bruma recurrit iners.
Damna tamen celeres reparant cœlestia Lunæ:
Nos ubi decidimus,
Quò pius Æneas, quò Tullus dives, et Ancus,
Pulvis et umbra sumus.
Quis scit an adjiciant hodiernæ crastina summæ
Tempora Dî superi?
Cuncta manus avidas fugient hæredis, amico
Quæ dederis animo.
Cùm semel occideris, et de te splendida Minos
Fecerit arbitria;
Non, Torquate, genus, non te facundia, non te
Restituet pietas:
Infernis neque enim tenebris Diana pudicum
Liberat Hippolytum;

Nec Lethæa valet Theseus abrumpere caro
  Vincula Pirithoo.

VITÆ RUSTICÆ LAUDES. EPOD. II.

Bĕātŭs īllĕ, quī prŏcūl nĕgōtĭīs,
  Ut prīscă gēns mŏrtālĭūm,
Paterna rura bobus exercet suis,
  Solutus omni fœnore:
Nec excitatur classico miles truci,
  Nec horret iratum mare;
Forumque vitat, et superba civium
  Potentiorum limina.
Ergo aut adultâ vitium propagine
  Altas maritat populos,
Aut in reductâ valle mugientium
  Prospectat errantes greges,
Inutilesque falce ramos amputans,
  Feliciores inserit;
Aut pressa puris mella condit amphoris,
  Aut tondet infirmas oves.
Vel cùm decorum mitibus pomis caput
  Autumnus arvis extulit:
Ut gaudet insitiva decerpens pyra,
  Certantem et uvam purpuræ,
Quâ muneretur te, Priape, et te Pater
  Sylvane, tutor finium!
Libet jacêre modò sub antiqua ilice;
  Modò in tenaci gramine.
Labuntur altis interim ripis aquæ,
  Queruntur in silvis aves,
Fontesque lymphis obstrepunt manantibus,
  Somnos quod invitet leves.
At cum tonantis annus hybernus Jovis
  Imbres nivesque comparat;
Aut trudit acres hinc et hinc multâ cane
  Apros in obstantes plagas,
Aut amite levi rara tendit retia,
  Turdis edacibus dolos;
Pavidumve leporem, et advenam laqueo gruem,
  Jucunda captat præmia.
Quis non malarum, quas Amor curas habet,
  Hæc inter obliviscitur?
Quòd si pudica mulier in partem juvans
  Domum, atque dulces liberos,
(Sabina qualis, aut perusta solibus
  Pernicis uxor Appuli,)
Sacrum vetustis extruat lignis focum,
  Lassi sub adventum viri;
Claudensque textis cratibus lætum pecus,
  Distenta siccet ubera;
Et horna dulci vina promens dolio,
  Dapes inemptas apparet:
Non me Lucrina juverint conchylia,
  Magisve rhombus, aut scari,
Si quos Eois intonata fluctibus
  Hyems ad hoc vertat mare,
Non Afra avis descendat in ventrem meum,
  Non attagen Ionicus

Jucundior, quàm lecta de pinguissimis
  Oliva ramis arborum,
Aut herba lapathi prata amantis, et gravi
  Malvæ salubres corpori,
Vel agna festis cæsa Terminalibus,
  Vel hœdus ereptus lupo.
Has inter epulas ut juvat pastas oves
  Videre properantes domum!
Videre fessos vomerem inversum boves
  Collo trahentes languido,
Positosque vernas, ditis examen domûs,
  Circum renidentes Lares!

AD AMICOS. EPOD. XIII.

Hōrrĭdă tēmpēstās cœlūm cōntrāxĭt, ĕt īmbrēs,
  Nĭvēsquĕ dīdŭcūnt Jŏvēm.
    Nūnc mărĕ, nūnc sĭlŭæ
Thrēĭcĭo Ăquĭlōnĕ sŏnānt; răpĭāmŭs ămīcī
  Ŏccāsĭōnĕm dē dĭē;
    Dūmquĕ vĭrēnt gĕnŭa,
Et decet, obductâ solvatur fronte senectus.
  Tu vina Torquato move
    Consule pressa meo:
Cætera mitte loqui. Deus hæc fortasse benignâ
  Reducet in sedem vice:
    Nunc et Achæmeniâ
Perfundi nardo juvat, et fide Cylleneâ
  Levare duris pectora
    Sollicitudinibus:
Nobilis ut grandi cecinit Centaurus alumno:
  Invicte mortalis Deâ
    Nate puer Thetide,
Te manet Assaraci tellus, quam frigida parvi
  Findunt Scamandri flumina,
    Lubricus et Simois,
Unde tibi reditum certo subtemine Parcæ
  Rupêre; nec mater domum
    Cærula te revehet.
Illic omne malum vino cantuque levato,
  Deformis ægrimoniæ
    Dulcibus alloquiis.

THE

RUDIMENTS

OF

LATIN GRAMMAR.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly. Latin Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words; Words consist of one or more syllables; Syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences, make up the whole subject of Grammar.

LETTERS.

A letter is the mark of a sound, or of an articulation of sound.

That part of Grammar which treats of letters, is called *Orthography*.

The letters in Latin are twenty-five: A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

In English there is one letter more, namely, *W*, *w*.

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

Six are vowels; *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y*. All the rest are consonants.

A vowel makes a full sound by itself; as, *a*, *e*.

A consonant cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel; as, *b*, *d*.

A vowel is properly called a *simple sound;* and the sounds formed by the concourse of vowels and consonants, *articulate sounds*.

Consonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Semi-vowels*, and *Double Consonants*.

A mute is so called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice; as *p*, in *ap*.

The mutes are, *p*, *b*; *t*, *d*; *c*, *k*, *q*, and *g*; but *b*, *d*, and *g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes*.

A semi-vowel, or half vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice; thus, *al*.

The semi-vowels are, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *f*. The first four of these are also called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r;* because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable, as *bla*, *stra*.

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them; as, *pe*, *be*, &c. but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them; as, *el*, *em*, &c.

The double consonants are, *x*, *z*, and *j*. X is made up of *cs*, *ks*, *gz*. *Z* has the same relation to *s*, as *v* has to *f*, being sounded somewhat more softly.

In Latin *z*, and likewise *k* and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

H by some is not accounted a letter, but only a breathing.

DIPHTHONGS.

A diphthong is two vowels joined in one sound.

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong;* if not, an *Improper Diphthong*.

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three; *au*, *eu*, *ei;* as in *aurum*,

Eurus, omneis. To these, some, not improperly, add other three; namely, *ai*, as in *Maia; oi*, as in *Troia;* and *ui*, as in *Harpuia*, or in *cui*, and *huic*, when pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two; *ae*, or when the vowels are written together, *æ;* as, *aetas* or *ætas: oe*, or *œ;* as, *poena* or *pœna:* in both of which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately, thus, *aetas, poena.*

SYLLABLES.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters, pronounced by one impulse of the voice: as, *à, sed, urbs.*

In Latin there are as many syllables in a word, as there are vowels or diphthongs in it; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g, q*, or *s*, as in *lingua, qui, suadeo;* where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable, are called *Monosyllables;* of two, *Dissyllables;* and of more than two, *Polysyllables.* But all words of more than one syllable, are commonly called *Polysyllables.*

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *ăb-ūtor, in-ops, proptĕr-ea, et-ĕnim, vĕl-ut*, &c.

Observe, A long syllable is thus marked [¯]; as, *amāre;* or with a circumflex accent thus, [ˆ]; as, *amâris.* A short syllable is marked thus, [˘]; as, *omnĭbus.*

What pertains to the quantity of syllables, to accent, and verse, will be treated of afterwards.

WORDS.

Words are articulate sounds significant of thought.

That part of Grammar which treats of words, is called *Etymology*, or *Analogy.*

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound, primitive* or *derivative.*

The division of words into simple and compound, is called their *Figure;* into primitive and derivative, their *Species* or kind.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one; as, *pius*, pious; *ĕgo*, I; *dŏceo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words; or of one word and some syllable added; as, *impius*, impious; *dēdŏceo*, I unteach; *ĕgŏmet*, I myself.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other; as, *pius*, pious; *disco*, I learn; *dŏceo*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word; as, *piĕtas*, piety; *doctrīna*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words, are called *Parts of Speech.*

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight; 1. *Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle;* declined: 2. *Adverb, Preposition, Interjection*, and *Conjunction;* undeclined.

Those words or parts of speech are said to be *declined*, which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *Termination* of words.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents.*

Of old, all words which admit of different terminations were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation.*

The English language has one part of speech more than the Latin, namely, the ARTICLE.

The want of the article is a defect in the Latin tongue, and often renders the meaning of nouns undetermined: thus, *filius regis*, may signify either *a son of a king*, or *a king's son;* or *the son of the king*, or *the king's son.*

NOUN.

A noun is either substantive or adjective.

The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun:* it is only a word *added* to a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech.

But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name.

SUBSTANTIVE.

A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *boy*, *school*, *book*.

Substantives are of two sorts, *proper* and *common* names.

Proper names are the names appropriated to individuals, as the names of persons and places; such are *Cæsar*, *Rome*.

Common names stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them; as, *animal*, *man*, *beast*, *fish*, *fowl*, &c.

Every particular being should have its own proper name; but this is impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude: men have therefore been obliged to give the same common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it; as, when we say of some great conqueror, "He is *an* Alexander;" or, "*The* Alexander of his age."

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns;* as, *hardness*, *goodness*, *whiteness*, *virtue*, *justice*, *piety*, &c.

When we speak of things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number;* when two or more, of the *plural*.

Things considered according to their kinds, are either male or female, or neither of the two. Males are said to be of the *masculine gender;* females of the *feminine;* and all other things of the *neuter gender*.

Such nouns as are applied to signify either the male or the female, are said to be of the *common gender;* that is, either masculine or feminine.

Various methods are used in different languages, to express the different connexions or relations of one thing to another. In the English, and in most modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or participles placed before the substantive: in Latin, by declension, or by different cases; that is, by changing the termination of the noun; as, *rex*, a king, *or* the king; *rēgis*, of a king, *or* of the king.

A Latin noun is declined by *Genders*, *Cases*, and *Numbers*.

There are three genders, *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

The cases are six, *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, and *Ablative*.

There are two numbers, *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called the *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, and *fifth declensions*.

Cases are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to express the relation of one thing to another.

They are so called, from *cădo*, to fall; because they fall, as it were, from the nominative, which is therefore named *cāsus rectus*, the straight case; and the other cases, *cāsus oblīqui*, the oblique cases.

The different declensions may be distinguished from one another by the termination of the genitive singular. The first declension has *æ* diphthong; the second has *i;* the third has *is;* the fourth has *ûs;* and the fifth has *ëi* in the genitive.

Although Latin nouns be said to have six cases, yet none of them have that number of different terminations, both in the singular and plural.

GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accusative and Vocative like the Nominative, in both numbers; and these cases in the plural end always in *a*

2. The Dative and Ablative plural end always alike.

3. The Vocative, for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is the same with the Nominative.

Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative; as, *Thomas, Thoma; Anchises, Anchise; Păris, Pari; Panthus, Panthu; Pallas, -antis; Palla*, names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declension oftener retain the *s*; as, *ô Achilles*, rarely *-e*; *O Socrătes*, seldom *-e*; and sometimes nouns in *is* and *as*; as, *O Thais, Mysis, Pallas, -ădis*, the goddess Minerva, &c.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural:

Unless several of the same name be spoken of; as, *duŏdĕcim Cæsăres*, the twelve Cæsars.

The cases of Latin nouns are thus expressed in English:

1. With the indefinite article, *a king*.

Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.		*a king*,	Nom.		*kings*,
Gen.	*of*	*a king*,	Gen.	*of*	*kings*,
Dat.	*to* or *for*	*a king*,	Dat.	*to* or *for*	*kings*,
Acc.		*a king*,	Acc.		*kings*,
Voc.	*O*	*king*,	Voc.	*O*	*kings*,
Abl.	*with, from, in, by,*	*a king*:	Abl.	*with, from, in, by,*	*kings*.

2. With the definite article, *the king*.

Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.		*the king*,	Nom.		*the kings*,
Gen.	*of*	*the king*,	Gen.	*of*	*the kings*,
Dat.	*to* or *for*	*the king*,	Dat.	*to* or *for*	*the kings*,
Acc.		*the king*,	Acc.		*the kings*,
Voc.	*O*	*king*,	Voc.	*O*	*kings*,
Abl.	*with, from, in, by,*	*the king*:	Abl.	*with, from, in, by,*	*the kings*.

GENDER.

Nouns in Latin are said to be of different genders, not merely from the distinction of sex, but chiefly from their being joined with an adjective of one termination, and not of another. Thus, *penna*, a pen, is said to be feminine, because it is always joined with an adjective in that termination which is applied to females; as, *bŏna penna*, a good pen, and not *bŏnus penna*.

The gender of nouns which signify things without life, depends on their termination, and different declension.

To distinguish the different genders, grammarians make use of the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine; *hæc*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter.

GENERAL RULES CONCERNING GENDER.

1. Names of males are masculine; as,

Hŏmērus, Homer; *păter*, a father; *poēta*, a poet.

2. Names of females are feminine; as,

Hĕlĕna, Helen; *mŭlier*, a woman; *uxor*, a wife; *māter*, a mother; *sŏror*, a sister; *Tellus*, the goddess of the earth.

3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender; that is, either masculine or feminine; as,

Hic *bos*, an ox; hæc *bos*, a cow; hic *părens*, a father; hæc *părens*, a mother.

The following list comprehends most nouns of the common gender:—

Adŏlescens, Jŭvĕnis, } *a young man, or woman.*
Affīnis, *a relation by marriage.*
Antistes, *a prelate.*
Auctor, *an author.*
Augur, *a soothsayer.*
Cănis, *a dog* or *bitch.*
Cīvis, *a citizen.*
Cliens, *a client.*
Cŏmes, *a companion.*
Conjux, *a husband* or *wife.*
Convīva, *a guest.*
Custos, *a keeper.*
Dux, *a leader.*
Hæres, *an heir.*
Hostis, *an enemy.*
Infans, *an infant.*
Interpres, *an interpreter.*
Jūdex, *a judge.*
Martyr, *a martyr.*
Mīles, *a soldier.*
Mūnĭceps, *a burgess.*
Nēmo, *no body.*
Obses, *an hostage.*

Patruēlis, *a cousin-german, by the father's side.* Præs, *a surety.* Princeps, *a prince* or *princess.* Săcerdos, *a priest* or *priestess.* Sus, *a swine.* Testis, *a witness.* Vātes, *a prophet.* Vindex, *an avenger.**

But *antistes*, *cliens*, and *hospes*, also change their termination to express the feminine; thus, *antistĭta*, *clienta*, *hospĭta:* in the same manner with *leo*, a lion; *leæna*, a lioness; *ĕquus*, *ĕqua;* *mūlus*, *mūla;* and many others.

There are several nouns, which, though applicable to both sexes, admit only of a masculine adjective; as, *advĕna*, a stranger; *agrĭcŏla*, a husbandman; *assecla*, an attendant; *accŏla*, a neighbour; *exul*, an exile; *latro*, a robber; *fur*, a thief; *ŏpĭfex*, a mechanic; &c. There are others, which, though applied to persons, are, on account of their termination, always neuter; as, *scortum*, a courtesan; *mancĭpium*, *servĭtium*, a slave, &c.

In like manner, *ŏpĕræ*, slaves or day-labourers; *vĭgĭliæ*, *excŭbiæ*, watches; *noxæ*, guilty persons; though applied to men, are always feminine.

OBSERVATIONS.

Obs. 1. The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine; so *ăquĭla*, an eagle, is feminine, because nouns in *a*, of the first declension are feminine. These are called *Epicene*, or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked, we usually add the word *mas* or *fēmĭna;* as, *mas passer*, a male sparrow; *fēmĭna passer*, a female sparrow.

Obs. 2. A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine; because *mensis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine; as, hic *Aprīlis*, April; hic *Ăquĭlo*, the north wind; hic *Afrĭcus*, the south-west wind; hic *Tĭbĕris*, the river Tiber; hic *Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination; as, hæc *Matrŏna*, the river Marne in France; hæc *Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily; hoc *Sŏracte*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra* or *rĕgio*, *urbs*, *arbor*, and *nāvis*, are feminine; as, hæc *Egyptus*, Egypt; *Sămos*, an island of that name; *Cŏrinthus*, the city of Corinth; *pŏmus*, an apple-tree; *Centaurus*, the name of a ship. Thus also the names of poems, hæc *Ĭlias*, *-ados*, and *Odyssēa*, the two poems of Homer; hæc *Ænēis*, *-ĭdos*, a poem of Virgil's; hæc *Eunūchus*, one of Terence's Comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination; thus, hic *Pontus*, a country of that name: hic *Sulmo*, *-ōnis;* *Pessĭnus*, *-untis;* *Hydrus*, *-untis;* names of towns: hæc *Persis*, *-ĭdis*, the kingdom of Persia; *Carthāgo*, *-ĭnis*, the city Carthage; hoc *Albion*, Britain: hoc *Cære*, *Reāte*, *Præneste*, *Tibur*, *Ĭlium*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine; as, *Gelida Præneste*, Juvenal, iii. 190; *Alta Ilion*, Ovid. Met. xiv. 466.

The following names of trees are masculine, *ŏleaster*, *-tri*, a wild olive-tree; *rhamnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cӯtĭsus*, a kind of shrub; *rŭbus*, the bramble-bush; *larix*, the larch-tree; *lōtus*, the lote-tree; *cupressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two however are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum*, the bush, or box-tree; *lĭgustrum*, a privet; so likewise are *sūber*, *-ĕris*, the cork-tree; *sĭler*, *-ĕris*, the osier; *rōbur*, *-ŏris*, oak of the hardest kind; *ăcer*, *-ĕris*, the maple-tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter; as, *Arbustum*, *quercētum*,

* *Conjux*, atque *parens*, *infans*, *patruelis*, et *hæres*,
Affinis, *vindex*, *judex*, *dux*, *miles*, et *hostis*,
Augur, et *antistes*, *juvenis*, *conviva*, *sacerdos*,
Muniqueceps, *vates*, *adolescens*, *civis*, et *auctor*,
Custos, *nemo*, *comes*, *testis*, *sus*, *bosque*, *canisque*,
Interpresque, *cliens*, *princeps*, *præs*, *martyr*, et *obses*.

escŭlētum, *sălictum*, *frŭtĭcētum*, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c. grow: also the names of fruits and timber; as, *pōmum*, or *mālum*, an apple; *pĭrum*, a pear; *ĕbĕnum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

Obs. 3. Several nouns are said to be of the *doubtful gender;* that is, are sometimes found in one gender, and sometimes in another; as, *dies*, a day, masculine or feminine; *vulgus*, the rabble, masculine or neuter.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, *es*.

Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the feminine gender.

The terminations of the different cases are; Nom. and Voc. Sing. *a;* Gen. and Dat. *æ*, diphthong; Acc. *am;* Abl. *â;* Nom. and Voc. Plur. *æ;* Gen. *ārum;* Dat. and Abl. *is;* Acc. *as*. See example, *musa*, a song, page 10.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine: *Hadria*, the Hadriatic sea; *cŏmēta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and sometimes *talpa*, a mole; and *dāma*, a fallow deer. *Pascha*, the passover, is neuter.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āi;* thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulāi;* and sometimes likewise in *as;* which form the compounds of *fămĭlia* usually retain; as, *māter-fămĭlias*, the mistress of a family; gen. *matris-familias*; nom. plur. *matres-familias*, or *matres-familiarum*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have more frequently *ābus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us* of the second declension:—

Anĭma, *the soul, the life.*	Fĭlia, & Nāta, *a daughter.*
Dea, *a goddess.*	Liberta, *a freed woman.*
Equa, *a mare.*	Mūla, *a she-mule.*
Fămŭla, *a female servant.*	

Thus, *deābus*, *filiābus*, rather than *filiis*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e* of the first declension, are Greek. Nouns in *as* and *es* are masculine: nouns in *e* are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *musa;* only they have *am* or *an* in the accusative; as, *Ænēas*, Æneas, the name of a man; gen. *Æneæ;* dat. *-æ;* acc. *-am* or *-an;* voc. *-a;* abl. *â*. So *Bŏreas*, *-eæ*, the north wind; *Tiāras*, *-æ*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in poetry oftener *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the acc. in poetry; as, *Ossa*, *-am*, or *-an*, the name of a mountain.

Nouns in *es* and *e* are thus declined:—

Anchīses, *Anchises*, the name of a man.

Singular.

Nom.	Anchīses,	*Acc.*	Anchisen,
Gen.	Anchisæ	*Voc.*	Anchise,
Dat.	Anchisæ,	*Abl.*	Anchise.

Pēnĕlŏpe, *Penelope*, the name of a woman.

Singular.

Nom.	Pēnĕlŏpe,	*Acc.*	Penelopen,
Gen.	Penelopes,	*Voc.*	Penelope,
Dat.	Penelope,	*Abl.*	Penelope.

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural, unless when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *musa*.

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a;* as, *Atrīda*, for *Atrides;* *Persa*, for *Perses*, a Persian; *Geōmetra*, for *-tres*, a Geometrician; *Circa, for Circe;* *Epitŏma*, for *-me*, an abridgment; *Grammătĭca*, for *-ce*, grammar; *Rhētŏrĭca*, for *-ce*, oratory. So *Clinia*, for *Clinias*, &c. The accusative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found sometimes in *em*.

Note. We sometimes find the gen. plural contracted; as, *Cælĭcŏlŭm* for *Cælicolarum; Ænĕadŭm* for *-arum*.

Nouns of the second declension end in *er, ir, ur, us, um; os, on*.
Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns of the second declension have the gen. sing. in *i;* the dat. and abl. in *o;* the accusative in *um;* the voc. like the nom. (but nouns in *us* make the vocative in *e;*) the nom. and voc. plur. in *i*, or *a;* the gen. in *orum;* the dat. and abl. in *is;* and the acc. in *os*, or *a*. See example, *puer*, a boy, page 10.

After the same manner decline *sŏcer, -ĕri*, a father-in-law; *gĕner, -ĕrĭ*, a son-in-law: So *furcĭfer*, a villain; *Lucĭfer*, the morning star; *ădulter*, an adulterer; *armĭger*, an armour-bearer; *presbўter*, an elder; *Mulcĭber*, a name of the god Vulcan; *vesper*, the evening; and *Ῑber, -ēri*, a Spaniard, the only noun in *er* which has the gen. long, and its compound *Celtĭber, -ēri:* Also, *vir, vĭri*, a man, the only noun in *ir;* and its compounds, *lĕvir*, a brother-in-law; *semĭvir, duumvir, triumvir*, &c. And likewise *sătur, -ŭri*, full, (of old, *satŭrus*,) an adjective.

But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive. See example, *liber*, a book, page 10

In like manner decline,

Ager, *a field.*
Aper, *a wild boar.*
Arbĭter, (*and* -trai,) *a judge.*
Auster, *the south wind.*
Cancer, *a crab-fish.*
Căper, *a he goat.*
Colŭber, *and* -bra, *a serpent.*
Culter, *the coulter of a plough, a knife.*
Făber, *a workman.*
Măgister, *a master.*
Minister, *a servant.*
Onăger, *a wild ass.*
Scalper, *a lancet.*

Liber, the bark of a tree, or a book, has *libri;* but *liber*, free, an adjective, and *Liber*, a name of Bacchus, the god of wine, have *libĕri*. So, likewise, proper names, *Alexander, Evander, Periander, Mĕnander, Teucer, Mĕleăger*, &c. gen. *Alexandri, Evandri*, &c. For examples in *us* and *um*, see declension of *dominus*, a master, and of *donum*, a gift, page 10.

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

Exc. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine, *hŭmus*, the ground; *alvus*, the belly; *vannus*, a sieve: and the following derived from Greek nouns in *os:*

Ăbyssus, *a bottomless pit.*
Antĭdŏtus, *a preservative against poison.*
Arctos, *the Bear, a constellation near the north pole.*
Carbăsus, *a sail.*
Diălectus, *a dialect*, or *manner of speech.*
Diămetros, *the diameter of a circle.*
Diphthongus, *a diphthong.*
Ĕrēmus, *a desert.*
Mĕthŏdus, *a method.*
Pĕriŏdus, *a period.*
Pĕrĭmetros, *the circumference.*
Phărus, *a watch-tower.*
Sўnŏdus, *an assembly.*

To these add some names of jewels and plants, because *gemma* and *planta* are feminine; as,

Ămĕthystus, *an amethyst.*
Chrysolĭthus, *a chrysolite.*
Chrўsŏphrăsus, *a kind of topaz.*
Chrystallus, *crystal.*
Leucŏchrўsus, *a jacinth.*
Sapphīrus, *a sapphire.*
Tŏpazius, *a topaz.*
Biblus, Păpўrus, *an Egyptian reed, of which paper was made.*
Byssus, *fine flax* or *linen.*
Costus, *costmary.*
Crŏcus, *saffron.*
Hyssŏpus, *hyssop.*
Nardus, *spikenard.*

Other names of jewels are generally masculine; as, *Bĕryllus*, the beryl; *Carbuncŭlus*, a carbuncle; *Pўrōpus*, a ruby; *Smărăgdus*, an emerald: and also names of plants; as, *Aspărăgus*, asparagus, *or* sparrowgrass; *ellebŏrus*, ellebore; *raphănus*, radish, *or* colewort; *intўbus*, endive, *or* succory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow are either masculine or feminine:

Ătŏmus, *an atom.*
Balănus, *the fruit of the palm-tree, ointment.*
Barbĭtus, *a harp.*
Cămēlus, *a camel.*
Cŏlus, *a distaff.*
Grossus, *a green fig.*
Pĕnus, *a store-house.*
Phăsēlus, *a little ship.*

Exc. 3. *Vīrus*, poison; *pĕlăgus*, the sea, are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either masculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the vocative; as,

Hŏrātius, Hŏrāti; Virgĭlius, Virgĭli; Georgius, Georgi, names of men; *Lārius, Lāri; Mincius, Minci*, names of lakes. *Filius*, a son also hath *fīlī; gĕnius*, one's guardian angel, *geni;* and *deus*, a god, hath *deus*, in the voc. and in the plural more frequently *dii* and *diis*, than *dĕi* and *dĕis*. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the vocative.

Other nouns in *ius* have *e;* as, *tăbellărius, tabellarie,* a letter-carrier; *pius, pie,* &c. So these epithets *Dēlius, Dēlie; Tirynthias, Tirynthie;* and these possessives, *Laertius, Laertie; Saturnius, Saturnie,* &c. which are not considered as proper names.

The poets sometimes make the vocative of nouns in *us* like the nominative; as, *fluvius, Latinŭs,* for *fluvie, Latine.* Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely; thus, *Audi tu, pŏpŭlus,* for *pŏpŭle.* Liv. i. 24.

The poets also change nouns in *er* into *us;* as, *Evander,* or *Evandrus;* vocative, *Evander,* or *Evandre.* So *Meander, Leander, Tymber, Teucer,* &c. and so anciently *puer* in the vocative had *puĕre,* from *puĕrus*

Note. When the genitive singular ends in *ii,* the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets, for the sake of quantity: as, *tugŭrī,* for *tugurii; ingĕnī* for *ingenii,* &c. And in the genitive plural we find *deûm, libĕrûm, sacrûm, duûmvirûm,* &c. for *deorum, liberorum,* &c. and in poetry, *Teucrûm, Graiûm, Argīvûm, Dănaûm, Pĕlagûm,* &c. for *Teucrorum,* &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Os and ON are Greek terminations; as, *Alphēos,* a river in Greece; *Ilion,* the city Troy; and are often changed into *us* and *um,* by the Latins; *Alphēus, Ilium,* which are declined like *dominus* and *regnum.*

Nouns in *eos* or *ĕus* are sometimes contracted in the genitive; as, *Orphĕus,* genitive *Orphĕi, Orphei,* or *Orphi.* So *Thesĕus, Promethĕus,* &c. But nouns in *eus,* when *eu* is a diphthong, are of the third declension.

Some nouns in *os* have the genitive singular in *o;* as, *Androgeos,* genitive *Androgeos* or *-ĕi,* the name of a man; *Athos, Atho,* or *-i,* a hill in Macedonia: both of which are also found in the third declension; thus, nominative *Androgeo,* genitive *Androgeōnis.* So *Atho,* or *Athon, -onis,* &c. Anciently nouns in *os,* in imitation of the Greeks, had the genitive in *u;* as, *Menandru, Apollodōru,* for *Mĕnandri, Apollodori,* Ter.

Nouns in *os* have the accusative in *um* or *on;* as, *Delus* or *Delos,* accusative *Delum* or *Delon,* the name of an island.

Some neuters have the genitive plural in *-ôn;* as, *Georgĭca,* genitive plural *Georgĭcôn,* books which treat of husbandry, as Virgil's *Georgicks.*

THIRD DECLENSION.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters are thirteen, *a, e, i, o, y, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x.* Of these, eight are peculiar to this declension, namely, *i, o, y, c, d, l, t, x: a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r* with the second; and *s* with all the other declensions. *A, i,* and *y,* are peculiar to Greek nouns.

The terminations of the different cases are these; nom. sing. *a, e,* &c.; gen. *is;* dat. *i;* acc. *em;* voc. *the same with the nominative;* abl. *e,* or *i:* nom. acc. and voc. plur. *es, a,* or *ia;* gen. *um,* or *ium;* dat. and abl. *ibus.* See examples, *sermo,* a speech; *rupes,* a rock; *lapis,* a stone; *caput,* the head; *sedile,* a seat; and *iter,* a journey page 10.

OF THE GENDER AND GENITIVE OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

A, E, I, and Y.

1. Nouns in *a, e, i,* and *y,* are neuter.

Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *ătis;* as, *diadēma, diademătis,* a crown; *dogma, -ătis,* an opinion. So,

Ænigma, *a riddle.*
Apŏthegma, *a short pithy saying.*
Ărōma, *sweet spices.*
Axiōma, *a plain truth.*
Diplōma, *a charter.*
Ĕpigramma, *an inscription.*
Nŭmisma, *a coin.*
Phasma, *an apparition.*
Poēma, *a poem.*
Schēma, *a scheme* or *figure.*
Sŏphisma, *a deceitful argument.*
Stemma, *a pedigree.*
Stigma, *a mark* or *brand, a disgrace.*
Strătăgēma, *an artful contrivance.*
Thēma, *a theme, a subject to write or speak on.*
Tŏreuma, *a carved vessel.*

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is;* as, *rēte, retis,* a net. So,

Ancīle, *a shield.*
Aplustre, *the flag of a ship.*
Campestre, *a pair of drawers.*
Cochleāre, *a spoon.*
Conclāve, *a room.*
Crīnāle, *a pin for the hair.*
Cŭbīle, *a couch.*
Ĕquīle, *a stable for horses.*
Lăqueāre, *a ceiled roof.*
Mantīle, *a towel.*
Mŏnīle, *a necklace.*
Năvāle, *a dock* or *place for shipping.*
Ŏvīle, *a sheep-fold.*
Præsēpe, *a stall; a bee-hive.*
Sĕcāle, *rye.*
Suīle, *a sow-cote.*
Tībiāle, *a stocking.*

Nouns in *i* are generally indeclinable; as, *gummi*, gum; *zingĭbĕri*, ginger; but some Greek nouns add *ĭtis*; as, *hydrŏmĕli*, *hydromelĭtis*, water and honey sodden together, mead.

Nouns in *y* add *os*; as, *moly*, *molyos*, an herb; *mysy*, *-yos*, vitriol.

O.

2. Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the genitive in *ōnis*; as, *Sermo*, *sermōnis*, speech; *draco*, *drăcōnis*, a dragon. So,

Agāso, *a horse-keeper.*
Aquĭlo, *the north wind.*
Arhăbo, *an earnest-penny, a pledge.*
Bălatro, *a pitiful fellow.*
Bambălio, *a flatterer.*
Băro, *a blockhead*
Būbo, *an owl.*
Būfo, *a toad.*
Călo, *a soldier's slave.*
Căpo, *a capon.*
Carbo, *a coal.*
Caupo, *an innkeeper.*
Cerbo, *a cobler,* or *one who follows a mean trade.*
Cĭniflo, *a frizler of hair.*
Crabro, *a wasp* or *hornet.*
Cūrio, *the chief of a ward* or *curia.*
Ĕquīso, *a groom* or *hostler.*
Erro, *a wanderer.*
Fullo, *a fuller of cloth.*
Helluo, *a glutton.*
Histrio, *a player.*
Latro, *a robber.*
Lēno, *a pimp.*
Lūdio, and -ius, *a player.*
Lurco, *a glutton.*
Mango, *a slave merchant.*
Mirmillo, *a fencer.*
Mōrio, *a fool.*
Mucro, *the point of a weapon.*
Mulio, *a muleteer.*
Nĕbŭlo, *a knave.*
Pāvo, *a peacock.*
Pēro, *a kind of shoe.*
Præco, *a common crier*
Prædo, *a robber.*
Pulmo, *the lungs.*
Pūsio, *a little child.*
Salmo, *a salmon.*
Sannio, *a buffoon.*
Săpo, *soap.*
Sīpho, *a pipe* or *tube.*
Spădo, *an eunuch.*
Stŏlo, *a shoot* or *scion.*
Străbo, *a goggle-eyed person.*
Tēmo, *the pole* or *draught-tree.*
Tīro, *a raw soldier.*
Umbo, *the boss of a shield.*
Ŭpĭlio, *a shepherd.*
Vŏlo, *a volunteer.*

Exc. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body; as, *rătio*, *rationis*, reason. So,

Captio, *a quirk.*
Cautio, *caution, care.*
Concio, *an assembly, a speech.*
Cessio, *a yielding.*
Dictio, *a word.*
Dēdĭtio, *a surrender.*
Lectio, *a lesson.*
Lĕgio, *a legion, a body of men.*
Mentio, *mention.*
Nŏtio, *a notion* or *idea.*
Ŏpīnio, *an opinion.*
Ŏptio, *a choice.*
Ōrātio, *a speech.*
Pensio, *a payment.*
Perduellio, *treason.*
Portio, *a part.*
Pōtio, *drink.*
Prōdĭtio, *treachery.*
Proscriptio, *a proscription, ordering citizens to be slain and confiscating their effects.*
Quæstio, *an inquiry.*
Rĕbellio, *rebellion.*
Rĕgio, *a country.*
Rĕlātio, *a telling.*
Rĕlĭgio, *religion.*
Rĕmissio, *a slackening.*
Sanctio, *a confirmation.*
Sectio, *the confiscation* or *forfeiture of one's goods.*
Sēdĭtio, *a mutiny.*
Sessio, *a sitting.*
Stătio, *a station.*
Suspīcio, *mistrust.*
Tītillātio, *a tickling.*
Translātio, *a transferring.*
Ūsūcăpio, *the enjoyment of a thing by prescription.*
Văcātio, *freedom from labour, &c.*
Vīsio, *an apparition.*

But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine; as,

Curcŭlio, *the throat-pipe, the weasand.*
Pāpĭlio, *a butterfly.*
Pūgio, *a dagger.*
Pūsio, *a little child.*
Scīpio, *a staff.*
Scorpio, *a scorpion.*
Septentrio, *the north.*
Stellio, *a lizard.*
Tītio, *a firebrand.*
Unio, *a pearl.*
Vespertĭlio, *a bat.*
Ternio, *the number three.*
Quăternio, ——*four.*
Senio, ——*six.*

Exc. 2. Nouns in *do* and *go* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ĭnis*; as, *ărundo*, *arundĭnis*, a reed; *ĭmāgo*, *imagĭnis*, an image. So,

Ærūgo, *rust (of brass.)*
Cālīgo, *darkness.*
Cartĭlāgo, *a gristle.*
Crēpīdo, *a creek, a bank.*
Farrāgo, *a mixture.*
Ferrūgo, *rust (of iron.)*
Formīdo, *fear.*
Fūlīgo, *soot.*
Grando, *hail.*
Hĭrūdo, *a horse-leech.*
Hīrundo, *a swallow.*
Intercăpēdo, *a space between.*
Lānūgo, *down.*
Lentīgo, *a pimple.*
Ŏrīgo, *an origin.*
Porrīgo, *scurf* or *scales in the head; dandruff.*
Prŏpāgo, *a lineage.*
Rūbīgo, *rust, mildew.*
Sartāgo, *a frying-pan.*
Scătūrīgo, *a spring.*
Testūdo, *a tortoise.*
Torpēdo, *a numbness.*
Ūlīgo, *the natural moisture of the earth.*
Vălētūdo, *health.*
Vertīgo, *a dizziness.*
Virgo, *a virgin.*
Vŏrāgo, *a gulf.*

But the following are masculine;

Cardo, -ĭnis, *a hinge.*
Cūdo, -ōnis, *a leather cap.*
Harpăgo, -ōnis, *a drag.*
Līgo, ōnis, *a spade.*
Margo, -ĭnis, *the brink of a river;* also fem.
Ordo, -ĭnis, *order.*
Tendo, -ĭnis, *a tendon.*
Ūdo, -ōnis, *a linen* or *woollen sock.*

Cŭpīdo, desire, is often masculine with the poets; but in prose always feminine.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have *ĭnis:*

Apollo, -ĭnis, *the god Apollo.*
Hŏmo, -ĭnis, *a man* or *woman.*
Nēmo, -ĭnis, m. *or* f. *no body.*
Turbo, -ĭnis, m. *a whirlwind.*

Căro, flesh, fem. has *carnis*. *Ănio*, mas. the name of a river, *Aniēnis; Nerio, Neriĕnis*, the wife of the god Mars: from the obsolete nominatives, *Anien, Nerien*. *Turbo*, the name of a man, has *ōnis*.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *ûs* in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular; as, *Dīdo*, the name of a woman; genit. *Didûs;* dat. *Didô;* &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly; thus, *Dido, Didōnis;* so *ēcho, -ûs*, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood; *Argo, -ûs*, the name of a ship; *hălo, -onis*, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

C, D, L.

3. Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is;* as, *Ănĭmal, anĭmālis*, a living creature; *tŏral, -ālis*, a bed-cover; *hălec, halēcis*, a kind of pickle. So,

Cervīcal, *a bolster.*
Cubĭtal, *a cushion.*
Mĭnerval, *entry-money.*
Mĭnūtal, *minced meat.*
Pŭteal, *a well-cover.*
Vectīgal, *a tax.*

Except, Consul, -ŭlis, m. *a consul.*
Fel, fellis, n. *gall.*
Lac, lactis, n. *milk.*
Mel, mellis, n. *honey.*
Mūgil, -ĭlis, m. *a mullet-fish.*
Sal, -sălis, m. *or* n. *salt.*
Săles, -ium, pl. m. *witty sayings.*
Sol, -sōlis, m. *the sun.*

D is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is;* as, *Dāvid, Davīdis.*

N.

4. Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the genitive; as,

Cănon, -ŏnis, *a rule.*
Dæmon, -ŏnis, *a spirit.*
Delphin, -īnis, *a dolphin.*
Gnōmon, -ŏnis, *the cock of a dial.*
Hȳmen, -ĕnis, *the god of marriage.*
Lien, -ēnis, *the milt.*
Pæan, -ānis, *a song.*
Phȳsiognōmon, -ŏnis, *one who guesses at the dispositions of men from the face.*
Ren, rēnis, *the reins.*
Splen, -ēnis, *the spleen.*
Sȳren, -ēnis, f. *a syren.*
Tītan, -ānis, *the sun.*

Exc. 1. Nouns in *men* are neuter, and make their genitive in *ĭnis;* as, *flumen, flumĭnis*, a river. So,

Abdōmen, *the paunch.*
Acūmen, *sharpness.*
Agmen, *an army on march.*
Ălūmen, *alum.*
Bĭtūmen, *a kind of clay.*
Căcūmen, *the top.*
Carmen, *a song, a poem.*
Cognōmen, *a sir-name.*
Cŏlūmen, *a support.*
Crimen, *a crime.*
Discrīmen, *a difference.*
Exāmen, *a swarm of bees.*
Fŏrāmen, *a hole.*
Germen, *a sprout.*
Grāmen, *grass.*
Lĕgūmen, *all kinds of pulse.*
Lūmen, *light.*
Nōmen, *a name.*
Nūmen, *the Deity.*
ōmen, *a presage.*
Pŭtāmen, *a nut-shell.*
Sagmen, *vervain, an herb.*
Sēmen, *a seed.*
Spĕcĭmen, *a proof*
Stāmen, *the warp.*
Subtēmen, *the woof.*
Tegmen, *a covering.*
Vīmen, *a twig.*
Vŏlūmen, *a folding.*

The following nouns are likewise neuter:

Glūten, -ĭnis, *glue.*
Unguen, -ĭnis, *ointment.*
Inguen, -ĭnis, *the groin.*
Pollen, -ĭnis, *fine flour.*

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *ĭnis; pecten*, a comb; *tūbĭcen*, a trumpeter; *tībĭcen*, a piper; and *oscen*, v. *oscĭnis*, sc. *ăvis*, f. a bird, which foreboded by singing.

Exc. 3. The following nouns are feminine: *sindon, -ŏnis*, fine linen; *äēdon, -ŏnis*, a nightingale; *halcyon, -ŏnis*, a bird called the king's fisher; *īcon, -ŏnis*, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis;* as, *Laŏmĕdon, -ontis*, a king of Troy. So *Achĕron, Chamæleon, Phaĕthon, Chăron*, &c.

AR AND UR.

5. Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to form the genitive; as, *Calcar, calcāris*, a spur; *murmur, murmŭris*, a noise. So,

Guttur, -ŭris, *the throat.*
Jūbar, -ăris, *a sun-beam.*
Lăcūnar, -āris, *a ceiling.*
Nectar, -ăris, *drink of the gods.*
Pulvīnar, -āris, *a pillow.*
Sulphur, -ŭris, *sulphur.*

Except, Ebur, -ŏris, n. *ivory.*
Far, farris, n. *corn.*
Fĕmur, -ŏris, n. *the thigh.*
Furfur, -ŭris, m. *bran.*
Fur, fūris, m. *a thief.*
Hēpar, -ătis, *or* -ătos, n. *the liver.*
Jĕcur, -ŏris, *or* jecĭnŏris, n. *the liver*
Rōbur, -ŏris, n. *strength.*
Sălar, -ăris, m. *a trout.*
Turtur, ŭris, m. *a turtle-dove.*
Vultur, -ŭris, m. *a vulture.*

ER AND OR.

6. Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and form the genitive by adding *is;* as, *Anser, ansĕris,* a goose, *or,* gander; *agger, -ĕris,* a rampart; *āer, -ĕris,* the air; *carcer, -ĕris,* a prison; *asser, ĕris,* and *assis, -is,* a plank; *dŏlor, ōris,* pain; *cŏlor, ōris,* a colour. So,

Actor, *a doer, a pleader.*
Crēdĭtor, *he that trusts or lends.*
Cruor, *gore.*
Dēbĭtor, *a debtor.*
Fætor, *an ill smell.*
Hŏnor, *honour.*
Lector, *a reader.*
Lictor, *an officer among the Romans, who attended the magistrates.*
Līvor, *paleness, malice.*
Nīdor, *a strong smell.*
Ŏdor, *and* -os, *a smell.*
Ŏlor, *a swan.*
Pædor, *filth.*
Pastor, *a shepherd.*
Prætor, *a commander.*
Pŭdor, *shame.*
Rŭbor, *blushing.*
Rūmor, *a report.*
Săpor, *a taste.*
Sartor, *a cobler* or *tailor.*
Sător, *a sower, a father.*
Sŏpor, *sleep.*
Splendor, *brightness.*
Sponsor, *a surety.*
Squālor, *filthiness.*
Stŭpor, *dullness*
Sūtor, *a sewer.*
Tĕpor, *warmth.*
Terror, *dread.*
Tĭmor, *fear.*
Tonsor, *a barber.*
Tūtor, *a guardian.*
Văpor, *a vapour.*
Vēnātor, *a hunter.*

Rhētor, a rhetorician, has *rhetŏris; castor,* a beaver, *-ŏris.*

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter:

Ăcer, -ĕris, *a maple-tree.*
Ador, -ŏris, *fine wheat.*
Æquor, -ŏris, *a plain, the sea.*
Cădāver, -ĕris, *a dead carcass.*
Cĭcer, -ĕris, *vetches.*
Cor, cordis, *the heart.*
Iter, itinĕris, *a journey.*
Marmor, -ŏris, *marble.*
Păpāver, -ĕris, *poppy.*
Pĭper, -ĕris, *pepper.*
Spinther, -ĕris, *a clasp.*
Tūber, -ĕris, *a swelling.*
Ūber, -ĕris, *a pap,* or *fatness.*
Ver, vēris, *the spring.*

Arbor, -ŏris, a tree, is feminine. *Tuber, -ĕris,* the fruit of the tuber-tree, is masculine, but when put for the tree, is feminine.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *ber* have *bris* in the genitive; as, hic *imber, imbris,* a shower. So *Insŭber, Octōber,* &c.

Nouns in *ter* have *tris;* as, *venter, ventris,* the belly; *păter, patris,* a father; *frāter, -tris,* a brother; *accĭpĭter, -tris,* a hawk; but *crāter,* a cup, has *crātĕris; sōter, -ēris,* a saviour; *lăter,* a tile, *latĕris; Jūpĭter,* the chief of the Heathen Gods, has *Jovis; linter, -tris,* a little boat, is masc. or fem.

AS.

7. Nouns in *as* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ātis;* as, *ætas, ætātis,* an age. So,

Æstas, *the summer.*
Piĕtas, *piety.*
Pŏtestas, *power.*
Prŏbĭtas, *probity.*
Sătiĕtas, *a glut* or *disgust.*
Sĭmultas, *a feud, a grudge.*
Tempestas, *a time, a tempest.*
Ūbertas, *fertility.*
Vērĭtas, *truth.*
Vŏluntas, *will.*
Vŏluptas, *pleasure.*
Ănas, *a duck, has* ănătis.

Exc. 1. As, assis, m. *a piece of money,* or *any thing which may be divided into twelve parts.*
Mas, măris, m. *a male.*
Vas, vădis, m. *a surety.*
Vas, vāsis, m. *a vessel.*

Note. All the parts of *as* are masculine, except *uncia,* an ounce, feminine; as, *sextans,* 2 ounces; *quadrans,* 3; *triens,* 4; *quincunx,* 5; *semis,* 6; *septunx,* 7; *bes,* 8; *dodrans,* 9; *dextans,* or *dĕcunx,* 10; *deunx,* 11 ounces.

Exc. 2. Of Greek nouns in *as,* some are masculine, some feminine, some neuter. Those that are masculine have *antis* in the genit. as, *gĭgas, gigantis,* a giant; *ădămas, -antis,* an adamant; *ĕlĕphas, -antis,* an elephant. Those that are feminine have *ădis* or *ădos;* as, *lampas, lampădis,* or *lampădos,* a lamp; *drŏmas, -ădis,* f. a dromedary: likewise *Arcas,* an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Arcădis* or *-ados.* Those that are neuter have *ătis,* as, *būchĕras, -atis,* an herb; *artocreas, -ătis,* a pie.

ES.

8. Nouns in *es* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *is;* as, *rūpes, rupis,* a rock; *nūbes, nubis,* a cloud. So,

Ædes, *or* -is, *a temple;* plur. *a house.*
Cautes, *a ragged rock.*
Clādes, *an overthrow, destruction.*
Crātes, *a hurdle.*
Fămes, *a hunger.*
Fĭdes, *a fiddle.*
Lues, *a plague.*
Mōles, *a heap.*
Nătes, *the buttock.*
Pălumbes, m. *or* f. *a pigeon.*
Prōles, *an offspring.*
Pūbes, *youth.*
Sēpes, *a hedge.*
Sŏbŏles, *an offspring.*
Străges, *a slaughter.*
Strues, *a heap.*
Sŭdes, *a stake.*
Tābes, *a consumption.*
Vulpes, *a fox.*

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive:

Āles, -ĭtis, *a bird.*
Āmes, -ĭtis, *a fowler's staff.*
Ăries, -ĕtis, *a ram.*
Bes, bessis, *two thirds of a pound.*
Cespes, -ĭtis, *a turf.*
Ĕques, -ĭtis, *a horseman.*
Fŏmes, -ĭtis, *fuel.*
Gurges, -ĭtis, *a whirlpool.*
Hēres, -ēdis, *an heir.*
Indiges, -ĕtis, *a man deified.*
Interpres, -ĕtis, *an interpreter.*
Līmes, -ĭtis, *a limit* or *bound.*
Miles, -ĭtis, *a soldier.*
Obses, -ĭdis, *a hostage.*
Palmes, -ĭtis, *a vine branch.*
Păries, -ĕtis, *a wall.*
Pes, pĕdis, *the foot.*
Pĕdes, -ĭtis, *a footman.*
Poples, -ĭtis, *the ham of the leg.*
Præses, -ĭdis, *a president.*
Sătelles, -ĭtis, *a life guard.*
Stīpes, -ĭtis, *the stock of a tree.*
Termes, -ĭtis, *an olive-bough.*
Trāmes, -ĭtis, *a path.*
Vēles, -ĭtis, *a light-armed soldier.*
Vātes, vatis, *a prophet.*
Verres, verris, *a boar-pig.*

But *ales, miles, heres, interpres, obses,* and *vates,* are also used in the feminine.

Exc. 2. The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive:

Abies, -ĕtis, *a fir-tree.*
Cĕres, -ĕtis, *the goddess of corn.*
Merces, -ēdis, *a reward, hire.*
Merges, -ĭtis, *a handful of corn.*
Quies, -ētis, *rest.*
Rĕquies, -ētis, *or* requiēi, *(of the fifth declension,) rest.*
Sĕgis, -ĕtis, *growing corn.*
Tĕgis, -ĕtis, *a mat* or *coverlet.*
Tŭdes, is, *or* -ĭtis, *a hammer.*

To these add the following adjectives:

Āles, -ĭtis, *swift.*
Bĭpes, -ĕdis, *two-footed.*
Quadrŭpes, -ĕdis, *four-footed.*
Deses, -ĭdis, *slothful.*
Dives, -ĭtis, *rich.*
Hĕbes, -ĕtis, *dull.*
Perpes, -ĕtis, *perpetual.*
Præpes, -ĕtis, *swift-winged.*
Rĕses, -ĭdis, *idle.*
Sospes, -ĭtis, *safe.*
Sŭperstes, -ĭtis, *surviving*
Tĕres, -ĕtis, *round and long, smooth.*
Lŏcuples, ētis, *rich.*
Mansues, -ētis, *gentle.*

Exc. 3. Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine; as, hic *ăcīnăces, -is,* a Persian sword, a scimitar: but some are neuter; as, hoc *căcoēthes,* an evil custom; *hippŏmănes,* a kind of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal; *pănăces,* the herb all-heal; *nēpenthes,* the herb kill-grief. Dissyllables, and the monosyllables *Cres,* a Cretan, have *ētis,* in the genitive; as, hic *magnes, magnētis,* a loadstone; *tăpes, -ētis,* tapestry; *lĕbes, -ētis,* a caldron. The rest follow the general rule. Some proper nouns have either *ētis or is;* as, *Dăres, Darētis,* or *Daris;* which is also sometimes of the first declension; *Achilles,* has *Achillis;* or *Achilli,* contracted for *Achillēi* or *Achillei,* of the second declension, from *Achillēus:* So, *Ulysses, Pĕricles, Verres, Aristŏtĕles,* &c.

IS.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative; as,

auris, auris, the ear; *ăvis, avis,* a bird. So,

Apis, *a bee.*
Bilis, the *gall, anger.*
Classis, *a fleet.*
Fēlis, *a cat.*
Fŏris, *a door; oftener* plur. fores, -ium.
Messis, *a harvest* or *crop.*
Nāris, *the nostril.*
Neptis, *a niece.*
Ŏvis, *a sheep.*
Pellis, *a skin.*
Pestis, *a plague.*
Rătis, a raft.
Rŭdis, *a rod.*
Vallis, *a valley.*
Vestis, *a garment.*
Vītis, *a vine.*

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

Axis, axis, *an axle-tree.*
Aquālis, *a water-pot, a ewer.*
Callis, *a beaten road.*
Caulis, *the stalk of an herb.*
Collis, *a hill.*
Cenchris, *a kind of serpent.*
Ensis, *a sword.*
Fascis, *a bundle.*
Fēciālis, *a herald.*
Follis, *a pair of bellows.*
Fustis, *a staff.*
Mensis, *a month.*

Mŭgĭlis, *or* -il, *a mullet-fish.*
Orbis, *a circle, the world.*
Patruēlis, *a cousin-german.*
Piscis, *a fish.*
Postis, *a post.*
Sŏdālis, *a companion.*
Torris, *a fire-brand.*
Unguis, *the nail.*
Vectis, *a lever.*
Vermis, *a worm.*

To these add Latin nouns in *nis;* as, *pānis,* bread; *crīnis,* the hair; *ignis,* fire; *fūnis,* a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ĭdis;* as, *tўrannis, tўrannĭdis,* tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently:

Cĭnis, -ĕris, *ashes.*
Cŭcŭmis, -is, *or* -ĕris, *a cucumber.*
Dis, Dītis, *the god of riches,* or *rich,* an adj.
Glis, glīris, *a dormouse, a rat.*
Impūbis, *or* impūbes, -is, *or* -ĕris, *not marriageable.*
Lapis, ĭdis, *a stone.*
Pūbis, *or* pūbes, -is, *or oftener* -ĕris, *marriageable.*
Pulvis, -ĕris, *dust.*
Quiris, -ītis, *a Roman.*
Samnis, -ītis, *a Samnite.*
Sanguis, -ĭnis, *blood.*
Sēmis, -issis, *the half of any thing.*
Vōmis, *or* -er, ĕris, *a ploughshare.*

Pulvis and *cinis* are sometimes feminine. *Semis* is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. *Pubis* and *impubis,* are properly adjectives; thus, *Puberibus caulem foliis,* a stalk with downy leaves, *Virg. Æn.* xii. 413. *Impube corpus,* the body of a boy not having yet got the down (*pubes, -is,* f.) of youth, *Horat. Epod.* v. 13. *Exsanguis,* bloodless, an adjective, has *exsanguis* in the genitive.

Exc. 3. The following are either masculine or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

Amnis, *a river.*
Anguis, *a snake.*
Cănālis, *a conduit-pipe.*
Clūnis, *the buttock.*
Corbis, *a basket.*
Fīnis, *the end; fines, the boundaries of a field or territories, is always masculine.*
Scrŏbis, *or* scrobs, *a ditch.*
Torquis, *a chain.*

Exc. 4. These feminines have *ĭdis: Cassis, -ĭdis,* a helmet; *cuspis, -ĭdis,* the point of a spear; *capis, -ĭdis,* a kind of cup; *prōmulsis, -ĭdis,* a kind of drink, metheglin. *Lis,* strife, f. has *lītis.*

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously: some have *eos* or *ios;* as, *hærĕsis, -eos,* or *ios,* or *-is,* a heresy; so, *băsis,* f. the foot of a pillar; *phrasis,* a phrase; *phthīsis,* a consumption; *poēsis,* poetry; *metrŏpŏlis,* a chief city, &c. Some have *ĭdis,* or *ĭdos;* as, *Păris, ĭdis,* or *-ĭdos,* the name of a man; *aspis, -ĭdis,* f. an asp; *ĕphēmĕris, -ĭdis,* f. a day-book; *īris, -ĭdis,* f. the rainbow; *pyxis, -ĭdis,* f. a box. So, *Ægis,* the shield of Pallas; *canthăris,* a sort of fly; *pĕriscĕlis,* a garter; *proboscis,* an elephant's trunk; *pўramis,* a pyramid; and *tigris,* a tiger, *-ĭdis,* seldom *tīgris:* all fem. Part have *īdis,* as, *Psophis, -īdis,* the name of a city: others have *īnis;* as, *Eleusis, īnis,* the name of a city; and some have *entis;* as, *Sĭmois, Simoentis,* the name of a river. *Chăris,* one of the graces, has *Charĭtis.*

OS.

10. Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis;* as, *nĕpos, -ōtis,* a grandchild; *săcerdos, -ōtis,* a priest; also feminine.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine:

Arbos, *or,* -or, -ŏris, *a tree.*
Cos, cōtis, *a whetstone.*
Dos, dōtis, *a dowry.*
Eos, eōis, *the morning.*
Glos, glōris, *the husband's sister,* or *brother's wife.*

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive:

Flos, flōris, *a flower.*
Hŏnos, *or* -or, -ōris, *honour.*
Lăbos, *or* -or, -ōris, *labour.*
Lĕpos, *or* -or, -ōris, *wit.*
Mos, mōris, *a custom.*
Ros, rōris, *dew.*
Custos, -ōdis, *a keeper;* also fem.
Hēros, herōis, *a hero.*
Mīnos, ōis, *a king of Crete.*
Tros, Trōis, *a Trojan.*
Bos, bŏvis, m. or f. *an ox* or *cow.*

Exc. 3. *Os, ossis,* a bone; and *ōs, -oris,* the mouth, are neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ōis,* as, *hēros, -ōis,* a hero or great man: So *Mīnos,* a king of Crete; *Tros,* a Trojan; *thos,* a kind of wolf.

US.

11. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ŏris;* as, *pectus, pectŏris,* the breast; *tempus, tempŏris,* time. So,

Corpus, *a body.*
Dĕcus, *honour.*
Dēdĕcus, *disgrace.*
Făcĭnus, *a great action.*
Fœnus, *usury.*
Frĭgus, *cold.*
Littus, *a shore.*
Nĕmus, *a grove.*
Pĕcus, *cattle.*
Pĕnus, *provisions.*
Pignus, *a pledge.*
Stergus, *dung.*
Tergus, *a hide.*

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *ĕris:*

Ăcus, *chaff.*
Fūnus, *a funeral.*
Fœdus, *a covenant.*
Gĕnus, *a kind* or *kindred.*
Glŏmus, *a clew.*
Lătus, *the side.*
Mūnus, *a gift* or *office.*
Ŏlus, *pot-herbs.*
Ŏnus, *a burden.*
Ŏpus, a *work.*
Pondus, *a weight.*
Rūdus, *rubbish.*
Scĕlus, *a crime.*
Sīdus, *a star.*
Vellus, *a fleece of wool.*
Viscus, *an entrail.*
Ulcus, *a bile.*
Vulnus, *a wound.*

Thus *acĕris, funĕris,* &c. *Glŏmus,* a clew, is sometimes masculine, and has *glomi,* of the second declension. *Vĕnus,* the goddess of love, and *vĕtus,* old, an adjective, likewise have *ĕris.*

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously:

Incus, -ūdis, *an anvil.*
Pălus, -ūdis, *a pool* or *morass.*
Pĕcus, *(not used,)* -ŭdis, *a sheep.*
Subscus, -ūdis, *a dove-tail.*
Tellus, -ūris, *the earth,* or *goddess of the earth.*
Jŭventus, -ūtis, *youth.*
Sălus, -ūtis, *safety.*
Sĕnectus, -ūtis, *old age.*
Servĭtus, -ūtis, *slavery.*
Virtus, -ūtis, *virtue.*
Intercus, -ŭtis, *a hydropsy.*

Intercus is properly an adjective, having *aqua* understood.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *ūris* in the genitive; as,

Crus, crūris, *the leg.*
Jus, jūris, *law* or *right;* also *broth.*
Pus, pūris, *the corrupt matter of any sore.*
Rus, rūris, *the country.*
Thus, thūris, *frankincense.*
So Mus, mūris, masc. *a mouse.*

Ligus or *-ur,* a Ligurian, has *Ligŭris; lĕpus,* masc. a hare, *lĕpŏris; sus,* masc. or fem. a swine, *suis; grus,* masc. or fem. a crane, *gruis.*

Œdipus, the name of a man, has *Œdipŏdis:* sometimes it is of the second declension, and has *Œdĭpi.* The compounds of *pus* have *ŏdis;* as, *trĭpus,* masc. a tripod, *tripŏdis;* but *lăgōpus, -ŏdis,* a kind of bird, or the herb hare's foot, is fem. Names of cities have *untis;* as, *Trăpezus, Trapezuntis; Opus, Opuntis.*

YS.

12. Nouns in *ys* are all borrowed from the Greek, and are for the most part feminine. In the genitive they have sometimes *yis* or *yos;* as, hæc *chĕlys, chelyis,* or *-yos,* a harp; *Căpys, Capyis,* or *-yos,* the name of a man; sometimes they have *ўdis,* or *ўdos;* as, hæc *chlămis, chlamўdis,* or *chlamўdos,* a soldier's cloak; and sometimes *ȳnis,* or *ȳnos;* as, *Trăchys, Trachȳnis,* or *Trachȳnos,* the name of a town.

ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. The nouns ending in *æs* and *aus* are,

Æs, æris, n. *brass,* or *money.*
Fraus, fraudis, f. *fraud.*
Laus, laudis, f. *praise.*
Præs, prædis, m. *or* f. *a surety.*

Substantives ending in the syllable *eus* are all proper names, and have the genitive in *eos;* as, *Orpheus, Orpheos; Tĕreus, Tereos.* But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *eus* is divided into two syllables: thus, *Orphĕus,* gen. *Orphĕi,* or sometimes contracted *Orphei,* and that into *Orphī.*

S WITH A CONSONANT BEFORE IT.

14. Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant before it, are feminine; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis;* as,

trabs, trăbis, a beam; *scobs, scŏbis,* saw-dust; *hiems, hiĕmis,* winter; *gens, gentis,* a nation; *stips, stĭpis,* alms; *pars, partis,* a part; *sors, sortis,* a lot; *mors, -tis,* death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine:

Chălybs, -ўbis, *steel.*
Dens, -tis, *a tooth.*
Fons, -tis, *a well.*
Gryps, grўphis, *a griffin.*
Hydrops, -ŏpis, *the dropsy.*
Mĕrops, -ŏpis, *a woodpecker.*
Mons, -tis, *a mountain.*
Pons, -tis, *a bridge.*
Seps, sēpis, *a kind of serpent;* but,
Seps, sēpis, *a hedge,* is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either masculine or feminine:

Adeps, adĭpis, *fatness.*
Rŭdens, -tis, *a cable.*
Scrobs, scrŏbis, *a ditch.*
Serpens, -tis, *a serpent.*
Stirps, stirpis, *the root of a tree.*
Stirps, *an offspring,* always fem.

Ănimans, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the fem. or neuter

Exc. 3. Polysyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i*; as, hæc *forceps, forcĭpis*, a pair of tongs; *princeps, -ĭpis*, a prince or princess; *partĭceps, -cĭpis*, a partaker; so likewise *cælebs, cælĭbis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *căput* have *cipĭtis*; as, *præceps, præcipĭtis*, headlong; *anceps, ancipĭtis*, doubtful; *bĭceps, -cipĭtis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucŭpis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis*:

Frons, frondis, *the leaf of a tree.*
Glans, glandis, *an acorn.*
Juglans, -dis, *a walnut.*
Lens, lendis, *a nit.*

So *librĭpens, libripendis*, m. a weigher; *nefrens, -dis*, m. *or* f. a grice, *or* pig; and the compounds of *cor*; as, *concor, concordis*, agreeing; *discors*, disagreeing; *vēcors*, mad, &c. But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lentis*, also fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens* going, and *quiens*, being able, participles from the *verbs eo* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *euntis*: thus, *iens, euntis; quiens, queuntis; rĕdiens, redeuntis; nĕquiens, nequeuntis*; but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc. 6. *Tĭryns*, a city in Greece, the birth-place of Hercules, has *Tĭrynthis*.

T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *căput, capĭtis*, the head, neuter. In like manner, its compounds, *sincĭput, sincĭpĭtis*, the forehead; and *occĭput, -ĭtis*, the hind-head.

X.

16. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis*; as. *vox, vōcis*, the voice; *lux, lūcis*, light. So,

Appendix, -ĭcis, *an addition*; dim, -icŭla.
Arx, arcis, *a castle.*
Cēlex, -ōcis, *a pinnace.*
Cervix, -īcis, *the neck.*
Cĭcātrix, -īcis, *a scar.*
Cornix, -īcis, *a crow.*
Cōturnix, -īcis, *a quail.*
Coxendix, -ĭcis, *the hip.*
Crux, crŭcis, *a cross.*
Fæx, -cis, *dregs.*
Falx, -cis, *a scythe.*
Fax, -ăcis, *a torch.*
Filix, -ĭcis, *a fern.*
Lanx, -cis, *a plate.*
Lōdix -īcis, *a sheet.*
Mĕretrix, -īcis, *a courtezan.*
Merx, -cis, *merchandise.*
Nutrix, -īcis, *a nurse.*
Nux, nŭcis, *a nut.*
Pax, -ācis, *peace.*
Pix, pĭcis, *pitch.*
Rādix, -īcis, *a root.*
Sălix, -ĭcis, *a willow.*
Vībix, *or* -ex, -īcis, *the mark of a wound.*

Exc. 1. Polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thorax, -ācis*, a breast-plate; *Cŏrax, -ăcis*, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *ĭcis*; as, *pollex, -ĭcis*, m. the thumb. So the following nouns, also masculine:

Apex, *the tuft or tassel, on the top of a priest's cap, the cap itself*, or *the top of any thing.*
Artĭfex, *an artist.*
Carnĭfex, *an executioner.*
Caudex, *the trunk of a tree.*
Cīmex, *a bug.*
Cōdex, *a book.*
Cŭlex, *a gnat, a midge.*
Frŭtex, *a shrub.*
Index, *an informer.*
Lătex, *any liquor.*
Mūrex, *a shell-fish, purple.*
Podex, *the breech.*
Pontĭfex, *a chief priest.*
Pūlex, *a flea.*
Rāmex, *a rupture.*
Sōrex, *a rat.*
Vertex, *the crown of the head.*
Vortex, *a whirlpool.*

Vervex, a wedder sheep, has *vervēcis*; *fœnisex*, a mower of hay, *fœnisĕcis*; *rĕsex*, m. -*ĕcis*, a vine-branch cut off.

To these masculines add,

Călix, -ĭcis, *a cup.*
Călyx, -ȳcis, *the bud of a flower.*
Coccyx, -ȳgis, *vel* -ȳcis, *a cuckow.*
Fornix, -ĭcis, *a vault.*
Ŏryx, -ȳcis, *a wild goat.*
Phœnix, -īcis, *a bird so called.*
Trādux, ŭcis, *a graff* or *off-set of a vine*, also fem.

But the following polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine:

Fornax, -ācis, *a furnace.*
Pānax, -ăcis, *the herb all-heal.*
Climax, -ăcis, *a ladder.*
Forfex, -ĭcis, *a pair of scissors.*
Hālex, -ēcis, *a herring.*
Smĭlax, -ăcis, *the herb rope-weed.*
Cērex, -ĭcis, *a sedge.*
Sŭpellex, supellectilis, *household furniture.*

Exc. 2. A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine; as,

Calx, -cis, *the heel*, or *the end of any thing; the goal*; but calx, *lime*, is always fem.
Cortex, -ĭcis, *the bark of a tree.*
Hystrix, -ĭcis, *a porcupine.*
Imbrex, -ĭcis, *a gutter*, or *roof tile.*
Lynx, -cis, *an ounce, a beast of very quick sight.*
Limax, -ācis, *a snail.*
Ŏbex, -ĭcis, *a bolt* or *bar.*
Perdix, -īcis, *a partridge.*
Pūmex, -ĭcis, *a pumice-stone.*
Rŭmex, -ĭcis, *sorrel, an herb.*
Sandix, -ĭcis, *a purple colour.*
Sĭlex, -ĭcis, *a flint.*
Vārix, ĭcis, *a swoln vein*

F

OBS. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets, often contracted into *um*, as, *nocentûm* for *nocentium;* and sometimes, to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; as, *cœlituum* for *cœlitum*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncope;* and the latter by *Epenthĕsis*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *tis* instead of *tĭbus;* as, *poēma*, a poem, *poematis*, rather than *poematibus*, from the old nominative *poemătum* of the second declension.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin;* as, *Troăsi* or *Troăsin*, for *Troădibus*, from *Troas*, *Troadis*, a Trojan woman.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is;* as, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a*, the accusative plural also ends in *as;* as, *lampas*, *lampădem*, or *lampăda*, *lampădes*, or *lampădas*. So *Tros*, *Troas;* *heros*, *heroas;* *Æthiops*, *Æthiopas*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS THROUGH ALL THE CASES.

Lampas, a lamp, f. *lampădis*, or *-ădos; -ădi; ădem*, or *-ăda; -as; -ăde:* Plural, *-ades; -ădum; -ădibus; -ădes*, or *-ădas; -ădes; -adibus*.
Troas, f. *Troădis*, or *-ădos; -i; em* or *a; as; e:* Pl. *Troades*, *-um; ĭbus si* or *sin; es* or *as; es; ibus*.
Tros, m. *Trois; Troi; Troem* or *a; Tros; Troe*, &c.
Phillis, f. *Phillĭdis*, or *-dos; di; dem*, or *da; i* or *is; de*.
Păris, m. *Parĭdis*, or *-dos; di; dem*, *Parim*, or *in; i; de*.
Chlămys, f. *Chlamy̆dis*, or *-y̆dos; y̆di; y̆dem*, or *y̆da; ys; y̆de;* &c.
Căpys, m. *Capyis*, or *-yos; yi; ym* or *yn; y; ye* or *y*.
Mĕtămorphōsis, f. *-is* or *-eos; i; em* or *in; i; i*, &c.
Orpheus, m. *-eos; ëi* or *ei; ea; eu;* abl. *eo;* of the second declension.
Dīdo, f. *Didûs* or *Didōnis; Dido* or *Didoni*, &c.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*.

Nouns in *us* are masculine; nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

The terminations of the cases are: nom. sing. *us;* gen. *ûs;* dat. *ui;* acc. *um;* voc. *like the nom.* Nom. acc. voc. plur. *us* or *ua;* gen. *uum;* dat. and abl. *ibus*. See examples, *currus*, a chariot; and *cornu*, a horn, page 10.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine:

Acus, *a needle.*	Fīcus, *a fig.*	Portĭcus, *a gallery.*
Anus, *an old woman.*	Mănus, *the hand.*	Spĕcus, *a den.*
Dŏmus, *a house.*	Pĕnus, *a store-house.*	Trĭbus, *a tribe.*

Penus and *specus* are sometimes masc. *Ficus*, *penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Capricornus*, m. the sign Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the second declension, and so are the compounds of *manus; unĭmănus*, having one hand; *centĭmănus*, &c. adjectives. *Domus* is but partly of the second declension; thus,

Dŏmus, *a house, feminine.*

Sing.		*Plur.*	
Nom.	domus,	*Nom.*	domus,
Gen.	domûs, *or* -mi,	*Gen.*	domorum, *or* -uum,
Dat.	domui, *or* -mo,	*Dat.*	domibus,
Acc.	domum,	*Acc.*	domos, *or* -us,
Voc.	domus,	*Voc.*	domus,
Abl.	domo;	*Abl.*	domibus.

Note. *Domûs*, in the genitive signifies, of a house; and *domi*, at home, *or* of home; as, *memineris domi*. Terent. iv. 7. 45.

Exc. 2. The following nouns have *ŭbus*, in the dative and ablative plural:

Acus, a needle. *Lăcus*, a lake. *Spĕcus*, a den.
Arcus, a bow. *Partus*, a birth. *Trĭbus*, a tribe.
Artus, a joint. *Portus*, a harbour. *Vĕru*, a spit.
Genu, the knee.

Portus, genu, and *veru*, have likewise *ĭbus*; as, *portĭbus* or *portŭbus*.

Exc. 3. Iesus, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other cases.

Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus, gruis*, a crane; thus, *fructus, fructuis, fructui, fructuem, fructue; fructues, fructuum, fructuibus, fructues, fructues, fructuibus*. So that all the cases are contracted except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis*; as, *Ejus anuis causâ*, for *anûs*. Terent. Heut. ii. 3. 46. and in others, the dative in *u*; as, *Resistere impetu*, for *impetui*, Cic. Fam. x. 24. *Esse usu, sibi*, for *usui*, ib. xiii. 71. The genitive plural is sometimes contracted; as, *currûm* for *curruum*.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender. See examples, *res*, a thing; and *facies*, the face, page 10.

Except *dies*, a day, masculine or feminine in the singular, and always masculine in the plural; and *mĕridies*, the mid-day or noon, masculine.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative, in *e*.

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three: *fĭdes*, faith; *spes*, hope; *res*, a thing; and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four: *ăbies*, a fir tree; *ăries*, a ram; *păries*, a wall; and *quies*, rest; which are of the third declension.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable, Defective*, and *Redundant*.

I. Variable Nouns.

Nouns are variable either in gender, or declension, or in both.

I. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes:

1. *Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

Avernus, a lake in Campania, hell.
Dindȳmus, a hill in Phrygia.
Ismărus, a hill in Thrace.
Massĭcus, a hill in Campania, famous for excellent wines.
Mænălus, a hill in Arcadia.
Pangæus, a promontory in Thrace.
Tænărus, a promontory in Laconia.
Tartărus, hell.
Tāygĕtus, a hill in Laconia.

Thus, *Averna, Avernorum; Dindyma, -orum*; &c. These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular; and *jŭga* or *cacumĭna*, or the like in the plural.

2. *Masculine in the singular, and in the plural masculine and neuter.*

Jŏcus, a jest, pl. *joci* and *joca*; *lŏcus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*. When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. *Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

Carbăsus, a sail, pl. *carbăsa*; *Pergămus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergama*.

4. *Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural.*

Cœlum, pl. *cœli*, heaven; *Elȳsium*, pl. *Elysii*, the Elysian fields; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. *Neuter in the singular, in the plural masculine or neuter.*

Rastrum, a rake, pl. *rastri*, and *rastra*; *frœnum*, a bridle, pl. *frœni* and *frœna*.

6. *Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural.*

Dēlĭcium, a delight, pl. *deliciæ*; *Epŭlum*, a banquet, pl. *ĕpŭlæ*; *Balneum*, a bath, pl. *balneæ*, and *balnea*.

II. Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*; as, *vas, vāsis*, a vessel, pl. *vāsa, vasorum*; *jūgĕrum, jugĕri*, an acre, pl. *jūgĕra, jūgĕrum, jugerĭbus*, which has likewise sometimes *jugĕris* and *jugĕre*, in the singular, from the obsolete *jugus*, or *juger*.

II. Defective Nouns.

Nouns are defective, either in cases or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.

1. Some are altogether indeclinable; as, *pondo*, a pound or pounds; *fas*, right; *nĕfas*, wrong; *sinăpi*, mustard; *māne*, the morning; as, *clārum māne*, Pers. *A mane ad vesperam*, Plaut. *Multo mane*, &c. *cēpe*, an onion; *gausăpe*, a rough coat, &c. all of them neuter. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination, Pers. *Istud cras*, for *iste crastĭnus dies*, that to-morrow. Mart. *O magnum Græcorum*, the *Omĕga*, or the large O of the Greeks. Infidus *est compositum ex* in *et* fidus; *infidus* is compounded of *in* and *fidus*. To these add foreign or barbarous names; that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin; as, *Job*, *Elisabet*, *Jerusalem*, &c.

2. Some are used only in one case, and therefore called *mŏnoptōta;* as, *inquies*, want of rest, in the nominative singular; *dĭcis*, and *nauci*, in the gen. singular; thus, *dicis gratiâ*, for form's sake; *res nauci*, a thing of no value; *infĭcias*, and *incĭta* or *incĭtas*, in the acc. pl. thus, *ire inficias*, to deny; *ad incitas redactus*, reduced to a strait or nonplus; *ingrātiis*, in the abl. plur. in spite of one; and these ablatives singular, *noctu*, in the night-time; *diu*, *interdiu*, in the day-time; *promptu*, in readiness; *nātu*, by birth; *injussu*, without command or leave; *ergô*, for the sake, as, *ergo illius*, Virg. *Ambāge*, f. with a winding or a tedious story; *compĕde*, m. with a fetter; *casse*, m. with a net; *veprem*, m. a brier: Plur. *ambāges*, *-ibus*, *compedes*, *-ĭbus*, *casses*, *-ium*; *vepres*, *-ium*, &c.

3. Some are used in two cases only, and therefore called *diptōta;* as, *nĕcesse*, or *-um*, necessity; *vŏlŭpe*, or *volup'*, pleasure; *instar*, likeness, bigness; *astu*, a town; *hir*, the palm of the hand; in the nom. and acc. singular: *vesper*, m. abl. *vespĕre*, or *vespĕri*, the evening; *sirempse*, the same, all alike, abl. *sĭrempse; spontis*, f. in the genitive, and *sponte* in the ablative, of its own accord: so *impĕtis*, m. and *impĕte*, force; *verbĕris*, n. gen. and *verbĕre*, abl. a stripe: in the plural entire; *verbĕra*, *verberum*, *verberĭbus*, &c.—*rĕpĕtundarum*, abl. *repetundis*, sc. *pecuniis*, money unjustly taken in the time of one's office, extortion; *suppĕtiæ*, nom. plur. *suppĕtias*, in the acc. help; *infĕriæ*, *inferias*, sacrifices to the dead.

4. Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *triptōta;* as, *prĕci*, *precem*, *prece*, f. a prayer, from *prex*, which is not used: in the plural it is entire, *preces*, *precum*, *precibus*, &c. *Fēmĭnis*, gen. from the obsolete *femen*, the thigh; in the dat. and abl. sing.; in the nom. acc. and voc. plur. *femina*. *Dĭca*, a process, acc. sing. *dicam;* pl. *dicas*. *Tantundem*, in the nom. and acc. *tantĭdem*, in the gen. even as much. Several nouns in the plural want the genitive, dative, and ablative; as, *hiems*, *rus*, *thus*, *mĕtus*, *mel*, *far*, and most nouns of the fifth declension.

To this class of defective nouns, may be added these neuters, *mĕlos*, a song; *mĕle*, songs: *ĕpos*, an heroic poem; *căcoēthes*, an evil custom; *cēte*, whales; *Tempe*, plur. a beautiful vale in Thessaly, &c. used only in the nom. acc. and voc.—also, *grātes*, f. thanks.

5. The following nouns want the nominative, and of consequence the vocative, and therefore are called *tetraptōta:* *vĭcis*, f. of the place or stead of another; *pĕcŭdis*, f. of a beast; *sordis*, f. of filth; *dĭtiōnis*, f. of dominion, power; *ŏpis*, f. of help. Of these *pĕcŭdis* and *sordis* have the plur. entire; *dĭtiōnis* wants it altogether; *vĭcis* is not used in the genitive plural; *ŏpis* in the plural, generally signifies wealth, or power, seldom help. To these add *nex*, slaughter; *daps*, a dish of meat; and *frux*, corn; hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire.

6. Some nouns only want one case, and are called *pentaptōta;* thus, *os*, the mouth; *lux*, light; *fax*, a torch, together with some others, want the genitive plural. *Chaos*, n. a confused mass, wants the genitive singular, and the plural entirely; dative singular, *chao*. So *sătias*, i. e. *satietas*, a glut or full of any thing. *Sĭtus*, a situation, nastiness, of the fourth declension, wants the genitive, and perhaps the dative singular; also the genitive, dative, and ablative plural.

Of nouns defective in number there are various sorts.

1. Several nouns want the plural, from the nature of the things which they express. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, most abstract nouns, &c. as, *justĭtia*, justice; *ambĭtus*, ambition; *astus*, cunning; *mŭsĭca*, music; *ăpium*, parsley; *argentum*, silver; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *trĭtĭcum*, wheat; *hordeum*, barley; *ăvēna*, oats; *jŭventus*, youth, &c. But of these we find several sometimes used in the plural.

2. The following masculines are hardly ever found in the plural:

Aër, -aëris, *the air.*
Æther, -ĕris, *the sky.*
Fīmus, -i, *dung.*
Hespĕrus, -i, *the evening-star.*
Limus, -i, *slime.*
Mĕridies, -iēi, *mid-day.*
Mundus, *a woman's ornaments.*
Muscus, -i, *moss.*
Nēmo, -ĭnis, *no body.*
Pĕnus, -i, *or* -ûs, *all manner of provisions.*
Pontus, -i, *the sea.*
Pulvis, -ĕris, *dust.*
Sanguis, -inis, *blood.*
Sŏpor, -ōris, *sleep.*
Viscus, -i, *bird-lime.*

3. The following feminines are scarcely used in the plural:

Argilla, -æ, *potter's earth.*
Fāma, -æ, *fame.*
Hŭmus, -i, *the ground.*
Lues, -is, *a plague.*
Plebs, plēbis, *the common people.*
Pūbes, -is, *the youth.*
Quies, -ētis, *rest.*
Sălus, -ūtis, *safety.*
Sĭtis, -is, *thirst.*
Sŭpellex, -ectĭlis, *household furniture.*
Tābes, -is, *a consumption.*
Tellus, -ūris, *the earth.*
Vespĕra, -æ, *the evening.*

4. These neuters are seldom used in the plural:

Album, -i, *a list of names.*
Dīlūcŭlum, -i, *the dawning of day.*
Ebur, -ŏris, *ivory.*
Gĕlu, ind. *frost.*
Hilum, -i, *the black speck of a bean, a trifle.*
Justĭtium, -i, *a vacation, the time when courts do not sit.*
Lēthum, *death.*
Lŭtum, -i, *clay.*
Nihil, nihĭlum, *or* nil, *nothing.*
Pĕlăgus, -i, *the sea.*
Pĕnum, -i, *and* penus, ŏris, *all kinds of provisions.*
Sal, sălis, *salt.*
Sēnium, -ii, *old age.*
Ver, vēris, *the spring.*
Vīrus, -i, *poison.*

5. Many nouns want the singular; as, the names of feasts, books, games, and several cities; thus,

Apollĭnāres, -ium, *games in honour of Apollo.*
Bacchānālia, -ium, & -iorum, *the feasts of Bacchus.*
Būcŏlĭca, -orum, *a book of pastorals.*
Ŏlympia, -orum, *the Olympic games.*
Syracūsæ, -arum, *Syracuse.*
Hierosolyma, -orum, *Jerusalem; or* Hĭerosolyma, æ, *of the first declension.*

6. The following masculines are hardly used in the singular:

Cancelli, *lattices,* or *windows made with cross-bars like a net; a rail* or *balustrade round any place; bounds* or *limits.*
Cāni, *gray hairs.*
Casses, -ium, *a hunter's net.*
Cĕlĕres, -um, *the light-horse.*
Cōdĭcilli, *writings.*
Druĭdes, -um, *the Druids, priests of the ancient Britons and Gauls.*
Fasces, -ium, *a bundle of rods carried before the chief magistrates of Rome.*
Fasti, -orum, *or* fastus, -uum, *calendars, in which were marked festival days, the names of magistrates,* &c.
Fines, -ium, *the borders of a country,* or *a country.*
Fŏri, *the gangways of a ship, seats in the circus,* or *the cells of a bee-hive.*
Furfŭres, -um, *scales in the head.*
Infĕri, *the gods below.*
Lĕmŭres, -um, *hobgoblins,* or *spirits in the dark*
Lībĕri, *children.*
Majōres, -ium, *ancestors.*
Mĭnōres, -um, *successors.*
Nātāles, -um, *parentage.*
Postĕri, *posterity.*
Prŏcĕres, -um, *the nobles.*
Pŭgillāres, -ium, *writing-tables.*
Sentes, -ium, *thorns.*
Sŭpĕri, *the gods above.*
Vepres, -ium, *briers.*

7. The following feminines want the singular number:

Alpes, -ium, *the Alps.*
Angustiæ, *difficulties.*
Apinæ, *gewgaws.*
Argūtiæ, *quirks, witticisms.*
Bigæ, *a chariot, drawn by two horses.*
Trigæ, *—by three.*
Quadrigæ, *—by four.*
Braccæ, *breeches.*
Branchiæ, *the gills of a fish.*
Charites, -um, *the three graces.*
Cūnæ, *a cradle.*
Dĕcĭmæ, *tithes.*
Diræ, *imprecations, the furies.*
Divĭtiæ, *riches.*
Dryădes, -um, *the nymphs of the woods.*
Excŭbiæ, *watches.*
Exsĕquiæ, *funerals.*
Exŭviæ, *spoils.*
Făcētiæ, *pleasant sayings.*
Făcultates, -ium, *one's goods and chattels.*
Fēriæ, *holidays.*
Gādes, -ium, *Cadiz.*
Gerræ, *trifles.*
Hyădes, -um, *the seven stars.*
Indūciæ, *a truce.*
Indūviæ, *clothes to put on.*
Ineptiæ, *silly stories.*
Insĭdiæ, *snares.*
Kălendæ, Nōnæ, Idus, -uum, *names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.*
Lăpĭcidinæ, *stone quarries.*
Lĭtĕræ, *an epistle.*
Lactes, -ium, *the small guts.*
Mănŭbiæ, *spoils taken in war.*
Mĭnæ, *threats.*
Mĭnūtiæ, *little niceties*
Nūgæ, *trifles.*
Nundĭnæ, *a market.*
Nuptiæ, *a marriage.*
Offūciæ, *cheats.*
Ŏpĕræ, *workmen.*
Părĭĕtinæ, *ruinous walls.*
Partes, -ium, *a party.*
Phălĕræ, *trappings.*
Plăgæ, *nets.*
Pleiădes, -um, *the seven stars*
Prestĭgiæ, *enchantments.*

Prīmĭtiæ, *first fruits.*
Quisquiliæ, *sweepings.*
Rĕlĭquiæ, *a remainder.*
Sălebræ, *rugged places.*
Sălīnæ, *salt-pits.*
Scāla, *a ladder.*
Scătebræ, *a spring.*
Scōpæ, *a bosom.*
Tĕnebræ, *darkness.*
Thermæ, *hot baths.*
Thermŏpylæ, *straits of mount Oeta.*
Tricæ, *toys.*
Valvæ, *folding doors.*
Vergĭliæ, *the seven stars.*
Vindĭciæ, *a claim of liberty, a defence.*

8. The following neuter nouns want the singular:

Acta, *public acts,* or *records.*
Æstiva, sc. castra, *summer quarters.*
Arma, *arms.*
Bellāria, -orum, *sweetmeats.*
Bona, *goods.*
Brĕvia, -ium, *shelves.*
Castra, *a camp.*
Chăristia, -orum, *a peace-feast.*
Cĭbāria, *victuals.*
Cŏmitia, *an assembly of the people to make laws, elect magistrates,* or *hold trials.*
Crĕpundia, *children's baubles.*
Cūnābŭla, *a cradle, an origin.*
Dictāria, *scoffs, witticisms.*
Exta, *the entrails.*
Februa, -orum, *purifying sacrifices.*
Flabra, *blasts of wind.*
Frāga, *strawberries.*
Hȳbernă, sc. castra, *winter quarters.*
Ilia, -ium, *the entrails.*
Incūnābŭla, *a cradle.*
Insecta, *insects.*
Justa, *funeral rites.*
Lāmenta, *lamentations.*
Lautia, *provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.*
Lustra, *dens of wild beasts.*
Măgālia, -ium, *cottages.*
Mœnia, -ium, *the walls of a city.*
Mūnia, -iorum, *offices.*
Orgia, *the sacred rites of Bacchus.*
Ŏvīlia, -ium, *an enclosure where the people went to give their votes.*
Pălearia, -ium, *the dew-lap of a beast.*
Părăpherna, *all things the wife brings the husband except her dowry.*
Părentālia, -ium, *solemnities at the funeral of parents.*
Philtra, *love potions.*
Præcordia, *the bowels.*
Princĭpia, *the place in the camp where the general's tent stood.*
Pȳthia, *games in honour of Apollo.*
Rostra, *a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people.*
Scrūta, *old clothes.*
Sponsālia, -ium, *espousals.*
Stătiva, sc. castra, *a standing camp.*
Suŏvĕtaurīlia, -ium, *a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and an ox.*
Tālāria, -ium, *winged shoes.*
Tesqua, *rough places.*
Transtra, *the seats where the rowers sit in ships.*
Ŭtensĭlia, -ium, *utensils.*

Several nouns in each of the above lists are found also in the singular, but in a different sense; thus, *castrum,* a castle; *litera,* a letter of the alphabet, &c.

III. Redundant Nouns.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arbos* and *arbor,* a tree. 2. In declension only; as, *laurus,* gen. *lauri* and *laurûs,* a laurel-tree; *sĕquester, -tri,* or *-tris,* a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, hic or hoc *vulgus,* the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension; as, *mātĕria, -æ,* or *materies, -iēi,* matter; *plebs, -is,* the common people, or *plebes, -is, -ĕi,* or contracted, *plebi.* 5. In termination and gender; as, *tŏnĭtrus, -ûs,* masc. *tonitru,* neuter, thunder. 6. In declension and gender; as, *pĕnus, -i,* and *-ûs,* m. or f. or *penus, -ŏris,* neut. all kinds of provisions. 7. In termination, gender, and declension; as, *æther, -ĕris,* masc. and *æthra, -æ,* feminine, the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied; as, *tigris, -is,* or *-ĭdis,* a tiger; to which may be added nouns which have the same signification in different numbers; as, *Fidēna, -æ;* or *Fidenæ, -arum,* the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those which express the same meaning by different terminations; as, *menda, -æ;* and *mendum, -i,* a fault; *cassis, -ĭdis;* and *cassĭda, -dæ,* a helmet. So,

Acĭnus, *and* -um, *a grape-stone.*
Alvear, *and* -e, *and* -ium, *a bee-hive.*
Ămārăcus, *and* -um, *sweet marjoram.*
Ancīle, *and* -ium, *an oval shield.*
Angĭportus, -ûs, *and* -i, *and* -um, *a narrow lane.*
Aphractus, *and* -um, *an open ship.*
Aplustre, *and* -um, *the flag, colours.*
Băcŭlus, *and* -um, *a staff.*
Balteus, *and* -um, *a belt.*
Bătillus, *and* -um, *a fire-shovel.*
Căpŭlus, *and* -um, *a hilt.*
Căpus, *and* -o, *a capon.*
Cēpa, *and* -e, indec. *an onion.*
Clypeus, *and* -um, *a shield.*
Collŭvies, *and* -io, *filth, dirt.*
Compāges, *and* -go, *a joining*
Conger, *and* -grus, *a large eel.*
Crŏcus, *and* -um, *saffron*
Cŭbĭtus, *and* -um, *a cubit.*
Dilŭvium, *and* -es, *a deluge.*
Elĕphantus, *and* Elephas, -antis, *an elephant.*
Elĕgus, *and* -ēia, *an elegy.*
Essĕda, *and* -um, *a chariot.*
Eventus, *and* -um, *an event.*
Fulgetra, *and* -um, *lightning.*
Gălērus, *and* -um, *a hat.*
Gibbus, *and* -a, *and* -er, ĕris, *or* -ĕri, *a bunch, a swelling.*
Glūttĭnum, *and* -en, *glue.*
Hebdŏmas, *and* -ăda, *a week.*
Intrīta, *and* -um, *fine mortar, minced meat.*
Librārium, *and* -a, *a book-case.*
Mācĕria, *and* -es, -iēi, *a wall.*
Milliāre, *and* -ium, *a mile.*
Mŏnĭtum, *and* -us, -ûs, *an admonition*
Muria, *and* -es, iēi, *brine* or *pickle.*

Nāsus, and -um, the nose.
Obsĭdio, *and* -um, *a siege.*
Oestrus, *and* -um, *a gad-bee.*
Ostrea, *and* -um, *an oyster.*
Peplus, *and* -um, *a veil, a robe.*
Pistrina, *and* -um, *a bake-house.*
Prætextus, -ûs, *and* -um, *a pretext.*
Rāpa, *and* -um, *a turnip.*
Rūma, *and* -men, *the cud.*
Ruscus, *and* -um, *a brush.*
Seps, *and* sēpes, f. *a hedge.*
Segmen, *and* -mentum, *a piece* or *paring.*
Sībĭlus, *and* -um, *a hissing.*
Sinus, *and* -um, *a milk-pail.*
Spurcĭtia, *and* -es, *nastiness.*
Strāmen, *and* -tum, *straw.*
Suffīmen, *and* -tum, *a perfume.*
Tignus, *and* -um, *a plank.*
Tŏral, *and* -āle, *a bed-covering.*
Torcŭlar, *and* -are, *a wine-press.*
Viscus, *and* -um, *bird-lime.*
Vĕternus, *and* -um, *a lethargy.*

Note. The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant; thus, *vāsa, -orum,* properly comes from *vasum,* and not from *vas;* but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular and retained the plural; and so of others.

Division of Nouns according to their signification and derivation.

1. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *Collective* noun; as, *pŏpŭlus,* a people; *exercĭtus,* an army.

2. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *Patronymic* noun; as, *Priămĭdes,* the son of Priamus; *Æētias,* the daughter of Æētes; *Nērīne,* the daughter of Nereus. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father; but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also from the grandfather, or from some other remarkable person of the family; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people; as, *Æăcĭdes,* the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of Æăcus; *Rŏmŭlĭdæ,* the Romans, from their first king, Romulus.

Patronymic names of men end in *des;* of women in *is, as,* or *ne.* Those in *des* and *ne,* are of the first declension, and those in *is* and *as,* of the third; as, *Priamides, -dæ,* &c. pl. *dæ, -darum,* &c. *Nērīne, -es; Tyndăris, -ĭdis,* or *-ĭdos; Æētias, -ădis,* &c.

3. A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *Partial* or *Gentile* noun; as, *Tros, Trois,* a man born at Troy; *Troas, -ădis,* a woman born at Troy: *Sicŭlus, -i,* a Sicilian man; *Sĭcĕlis, -ĭdis,* a Sicilian woman: so, *Măcēdo, -ŏnis; Arpīnas, -ātis,* a man born in Macedonia, Arpinum; from *Troja, Sicilia, Macedonia, Arpinum.* But partials, for the most part, are to be considered as adjectives having a substantive understood; as, *Romānus, Athēniensis,* &c.

4. A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *Abstract;* as, *justĭtia,* justice; *bŏnĭtas,* goodness; *dulcēdo,* sweetness: from *justus,* just; *bonus,* good; *dulcis,* sweet. The adjectives from which these abstracts come, are called *Concretes;* because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs. Abstracts commonly end in *a, as,* or *do,* and are very numerous, being derived from most adjectives in the Latin tongue.

5. A substantive derived from another substantive, signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *Diminutive;* as, *lĭbellus,* a little book; *chartŭla,* a little paper; *ŏpuscŭlum,* a little work; *corcŭlum,* a little heart; *rētĭculum,* a small net; *scăbellum,* a small form; *lăpillus,* a little stone; *cultellus,* a little knife; *pāgella,* a little page; from *lĭber, charta, ŏpus, cor, rēte, scamnum, lapis, culter, pāgĭna.* Several diminutives are sometimes formed from the same primitive; as, from *puer, puerŭlus, puellus, puellŭlus;* from *cista, cistŭla, cistella, cistellŭla;* from *hŏmo, hŏmuncio, hŏmuncŭlus.* Diminutives for the most part end in *lus, la, lum,* and are generally of the same gender with their primitives. When the signification of the primitive is increased, it is called an *Amplificative,* and ends in *o;* as, *Căpĭto, -ōnis,* having a large head; so, *nāso, lăbeo, bucco,* having a large nose, lips, cheeks.

6. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *Verbal* noun; as, *ămor,* love; *doctrīna,* learning; from *ămo,* and *dŏceo.* Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io, or, us,* and *ura;* as, *lectio,* a lesson; *ămātor,* a lover; *luctus,* grief; *creātūra,* a creature.

ADJECTIVE.

An adjective is a word added to a substantive, to express its quality; as, *hard, soft.*

We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective therefore always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and case, to agree with substantives in all these accidents.

An adjective properly hath neither genders, numbers, nor cases; but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case of the substantive with which it is joined.

Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension.

All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension:

Ăcer, *sharp*.
Ălăcer, *cheerful*.
Campester, *belonging to a plain*.
Cĕlĕber, *famous*.
Cĕler, *swift*.
Equester, *belonging to a horse*.
Păluster, *marshy*.
Pĕdester, *on foot*.
Sălūber, *wholesome*.
Sylvester, *woody*.
Vŏlŭcer, *swift*.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the first and second declension have their masculine in *us* or *er*, their feminine always in *a*, and their neuter always in *um*; as, *bŏnus*, for the masculine; *bona*, for the feminine; *bonum*, for the neuter, good. See declension of *bonus*, page 11.

Tĕner, tenĕra, tenĕrum, *tender*. See declension of *tener*, page 11.

Like *tener*, decline,

Asper, *rough*.
Cæter, (hardly used,) *the rest*.
Gibber, *crook-backed*.
Lăcer, *torn*.
Liber, *free*.
Mĭser, *wretched*.
Prosper, *prosperous*.

Also the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as, *lānĭger*, bearing wool; *ŏpĭfer*, bringing help, &c. Likewise *sătur, satŭra, satŭrum*, full. But most adjectives in *er* drop the *e*; as, *ăter, atra, atrum*, black; genitive *atri, atræ, atri*; dative *atro, atræ, atro*, &c.

See declension of *pulcher*, page 11. So,

Æger, *sick*.
Crĕber, *frequent*.
Glăber, *smooth*.
Intĕger, *entire*.
Lūdĭcer, *ludicrous*.
Măcer, *lean*.
Nĭger, *black*.
Pĭger, *slow*.
Rŭber, *red*.
Săcer, *sacred*.
Scăber, *rough*.
Tēter, *ugly*.
Văfer, *crafty*.

Dexter, *right*, has -tra, -trum, *or* -tĕra, -tĕrum.

Obs. 1. The following adjectives have their genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, through all their genders: in the other cases like *bonus* and *tener*.

Ūnus, -a, -um, *genitive* unius, *dative* uni, *one*.
Ălius, -ius, *one of many, another*.
Nullus, nullius, *none*.
Sōlus, -ius, *alone*.
Tōtus, -ius, *whole*.
Ullus, -ius, *any*.
Alter, altĕrius, *one of two, the other*.
Neuter, -trius, *neither*.
Ŭter, utrius, *whether of the two*.
Ŭterque, utriusque, *both*.
Ŭterlĭbet, -triuslĭbet, } *which of the two you please*.
Ŭtervis, -triusvis, }

Alterŭter, *the one or the other*, alterutrius, alterutri, *and sometimes* alterius utrius, alteri utri, &c.

These adjectives, except *totus*, are called *Partitives*; and seem to resemble, in their signification as well as declension, what are called pronominal adjectives. In ancient writers we find them declined like *bonus*, page 11.

Obs. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it should always be joined with a substantive in the different genders; as, *bonus liber*, a good book; *bona penna*, a good pen; *bonum sedile*, a good seat. But as the adjective in Latin is often found without its substantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus*, for instance, commonly say *bonus*, a good man, understanding *vir* or *homo*; *bona*, a good woman, understanding *fœmina*; and *bonum*, a good thing, understanding *negotium*.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Adjectives of one termination; as, *fēlix*, for the masculine, *felix* for the feminine, *felix* for the neuter, happy.

See declension of *felix*, page 11.

In like manner decline,

Amens, -tis, *mad*.
Atrox, -ōcis, *cruel*.
Audax, -ācis, *and* -ens, -tis, *bold*.
Bĭlix, -icis, *woven with a double thread*.
Căpax, *capacious*.
Cĭcur, -ŭris, *tame*.
Clēmens, -tis, *merciful*.
Contŭmax, *stubborn*.
Dēmens, *mad*.
Edax, *gluttonous*.
Effĭcax, *effectual*.
Elĕgans, *handsome*.
Fallax, *deceitful*.
Fĕrax, *fertile*.
Fĕrox, *fierce*.
Frequens, *frequent*.
Ingens, *huge*.
Iners, -tis, *sluggish*.
Insons, *guiltless*.
Mendax, *lying*.
Mordax, *biting, satyrical*.
Pernix, -icis, *swift*.
Pervĭcax, *wilful*.

Pĕtŭlans, *forward, saucy*
Prægnans, *with child.*
Prūdens, *prudent.*
Rĕcens, *fresh.*
Rĕpens, *sudden.*
Săgax, -ācis, *sagacious.*
Sălax, -acis, *lustful.*
Săpiens, *wise.*
Sōlers, *shrewd.*
Sons, *guilty.*
Tĕnax, *tenacious.*
Trux, -ŭcis, *cruel.*
Ūber, -ĕris, *fertile.*
Vehemens, *vehement.*
Vēlox, -ōcis, *swift.*
Vŏrax, *devouring.*

2. Adjectives of two terminations; as, *lenis*, for the masculine and feminine; *lene*, for the neuter, *mild;* so, *lenior, lenior, lenius*, milder. See declension of *lenis*, page 11

In like manner decline,

Ăgĭlis, *active.*
Amābĭlis, *lovely.*
Biennis, *of two years.*
Brĕvis, *short.*
Cīvīlis, *courteous.*
Cœlestis, *heavenly.*
Cōmis, *mild, affable.*
Crūdēlis, *cruel.*
Debĭlis, *weak.*
Dēformis, *ugly.*
Dŏcĭlis, *teachable.*
Dulcis, *sweet in taste.*
Exīlis, *slender.*
Exsanguis, *bloodless.*
Fortis, *brave.*
Frăgĭlis, *brittle.*
Grandis, *great.*
Grăvis, *heavy.*
Hĭlăris, *cheerful.*
Ignōbĭlis, *of mean parentage.*
Immānis, *huge, cruel.*
Inānis, *empty.*
Incŏlŭmis, *safe.*
Infāmis, *infamous.*
Insignis, *remarkable.*
Jūgis, *perpetual.*
Lævis, *smooth.*
Lĕvis, *light.*
Mĕdiocris, *middling.*
Mīrābilis, *wonderful.*
Mitis, *meek.*
Mollis, *soft.*
Omnis, *all.*
Putris, *rotten.*
Pinguis, *fat.*
Quālis, *of what kind.*
Rŭdis, *raw.*
Segnis, *slow.*
Sōlennis, *annual, solemn.*
Stĕrĭlis, *barren.*
Suāvis, *sweet.*
Sublīmis, *lofty.*
Subtīlis, *subtle, fine.*
Tālis, *such.*
Tĕnuis, *small.*
Terrestris, *earthly.*
Terrĭbĭlis, *dreadful.*
Tristis, *sad.*
Turpis, *base.*
Ūtĭlis, *useful.*
Vilis, *worthless.*
Vĭrĭdis, *green.*
Vĭtĭlis, *pliant.*

See declension of *lenior*, page 11. In like manner all comparatives are declined.

3. Adjectives of three terminations; as, *ācer* or *acris*, for the masculine; *acris*, for the feminine; *acre*, for the neuter, sharp; thus,

Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. ā-cer *or* ācris,	acris,	acre,	*N.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
G. a-cris,	-cris,	-cris,	*G.* a-crium,	-crium,	-crium,
D. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri,	*D.* a-crĭbus,	-cribus,	-cribus,
A. a-crem,	-crem,	-cre,	*A.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
V. a-cer *or* acris,	-cris,	-cre,	*V.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
A. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri;	*A.* a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus,

In like manner *ălăcer* or *alacris*, *cĕler* or *celĕris*, *cĕlĕber* or *celebris*, *sălūber* or *salūbris*, *volŭcer* or *volucris*, &c.

RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular; but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative in *ia:* except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. *Dives, hospes, sospes, sŭperstes, jŭvĕnis, sĕnex*, and *pauper*, have *e* only in the ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. The following have also *e* in the ablative singular, and *um*, not *ium*, in the gen. plural: *Compos, -ŏtis*, master of, that hath obtained his desire; *impos, -otis*, unable; *inops, ŏpis*, poor; *supplex, -ĭcis*, suppliant, humble; *uber, -ĕris*, fertile; *consors, -tis*, sharing, a partner; *degĕnĕr, -ĕris*, degenerate, or degenerating; *vĭgil*, watchful; *pūber, -ĕris*, of age, marriageable; and *celer*. Also compounds in *ceps, sex, pes*, and *corpor;* as, *partĭceps*, partaking of; *artĭfex, -ĭcis*, cunning, an artist; *bĭpes, -pĕdis*, two-footed; *bicorpor, -ŏris*, two-bodied, &c. All these have seldom the neuter singular, and almost never the neuter plural in the nominative and accusative. To which add *mĕmor*, mindful, which has *memŏri, memŏrum:* also, *dĕses, rĕses, hĕbes, perpes, præpes, tĕres, concŏlor, versĭcŏlor*, which likewise for the most part want the genitive plural.

Exc. 3. *Par*, equal, has only *pări:* but its compounds have either *e* or *i;* as, *compăre*, or *-ri*. *Vetus*, old, has *vetĕra*, and *vetĕrum*: *plus*, more, which is only used in the neuter singular, has *plure:* and in the plural, *plūres, plura* or *pluria, plurium*.

Exc. 4. *Exspes*, hopeless; and *pŏtis, -e*, able, are only used in the nominative. *Potis* has also sometimes *potis* in the neuter.

REMARKS.

1. Comparatives and adjectives in *us*, have *e* more frequently than *i;* and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e;* as, *Tiberio regnante*, not *regnanti*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*; as, *victrici ferro*, not *victrice*.

3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders; as, *victor*, *victoriosus*, for the masculine; *victrix*, for the feminine. *Victrix*, in the plural, has likewise the neuter gender; thus, *victrices*, *victricia*; so *ultor*, and *ultrix*, revengeful. *Victrix* is also neuter in the singular.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frenum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jŭgum*, *limus*, *somnus*, and *animus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the first and second declension, or of the third; as, *declīvis*, *-is*, *-e*; and *declīvus*, *-a*, *-um*, steep; *imbĕcillis*, and *imbĕcillus*, weak; *semisomnis*, and *semisomnus*, half asleep; *exanĭmis*, and *exanĭmus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation; thus we say, *magnănĭmus*, *flexanimus*, *effrēnus*, *lecisomnus*; not *magnanimis*, &c. On the contrary, we say, *pusillanimis*, *injŭgis*, *illīmis*, *insomnis*, *exsomnis*; not *pusillanimus*, &c. So *semianimis*, *inermis*, *sublimis*, *acclivis*, *declīvis*, *proclivis*; rarely *semianimus*, &c.

5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*; as, *cordātus*, *mōrātus*, *cælestis*, *adamantĭnus*, *corpŏrĕus*, *agrestis*, *æstīvus*, &c. from *cor*, *mos*, *cælum*, *adamas*, &c. Those which diminish the signification of their primitives, are called *Diminutives*; as, *mĭsellus*, *parvŭlus*, *dūriuscŭlus*, &c. Those which signify a great deal of a thing, are called *Amplificatives*, and end in *osus*, or *entus*; as, *vīnōsus*, *vīnŏlentus*, given to much wine; *ŏpĕrōsus*, laborious; *plumbōsus*, full of lead; *nōdōsus*, knotty, full of knots; *corpŭlentus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *aurītus*, having long or large ears; *nasūtus*, having a large nose; *literatus*, learned, &c.

6. An adjective derived from a substantive, or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *Possessive Adjective*; as, *Scotĭcus*, *paternus*, *herīlis*, *aliēnus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a master, another; from *Scotia*, *pater*, *herus*, and *alius*.

7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbals*; as, *amabĭlis*, amiable; *capax*, capable; *docilis*, teachable: from *amo*, *capio*, *doceo*.

8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *Participials*; as, *sapiens*, wise; *acutus*, sharp; *disertus*, eloquent. Of these many also become substantives; as, *adolescens*, *animans*, *rudens*, *serpens*, *advocatus*, *sponsus*, *natus*, *legatus*; *sponsa*, *nata*, *serta*, sc. *corona*, a garland; *prætexta*, sc. *vestis*; *debitum*, *decretum*, *præceptum*, *salum*, *tectum*, *votum*, &c.

9. Adjectives derived from adverbs, are called *Adverbials*; as, *hodiernus*, from *hodie*; *crastinus*, from *cras*; *binus*, from *bis*; &c. There are also adjectives derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, from *contra*; *antīcus*, from *ante*; *postīcus*, from *post*.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multiplicative*.

1. The *Cardinal* or *Principal* numbers are:

Ūnus,	*one.*	Trīginta,	*thirty.*
Duo,	*two.*	Quadrāginta,	*forty.*
Tres,	*three.*	Quinquāginta,	*fifty.*
Quātuor,	*four.*	Sexāginta,	*sixty.*
Quinque,	*five.*	Septuāginta,	*seventy.*
Sex,	*six.*	Octōginta,	*eighty.*
Septem,	*seven.*	Nōnāginta,	*ninety.*
Octo,	*eight.*	Centum,	*a hundred.*
Nŏvem,	*nine.*	Dŭcenti,	*two hundred.*
Dĕcem,	*ten.*	Trĕcenti,	*three hundred.*
Undĕcim,	*eleven.*	Quadringenti,	*four hundred.*
Duŏdĕcim,	*twelve.*	Quingenti,	*five hundred.*
Trĕdĕcim,	*thirteen.*	Sexcenti,	*six hundred.*
Quatuordecim,	*fourteen.*	Septingenti,	*seven hundred.*
Quindecim,	*fifteen.*	Octingenti,	*eight hundred.*
Sexdecim,	*sixteen.*	Nongenti,	*nine hundred.*
Septendecim,	*seventeen.*	Mille,	*a thousand.*
Octŏdĕcim,	*eighteen.*	Duo millia, *or* bis mille.	*two thousand.*
Nŏvemdecim,	*nineteen.*		
Viginti,	*twenty.*	Decem millia, *or* dĕcies mille,	*ten thousand.*
Viginti unus, *or* Unus et viginti,	*twenty-one.*	Viginti millia, *or* vīcies mille,	*twenty thousand.*
Viginti duo, *or* Duo et viginti,	*twenty-two.*		

The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

Unus is not used in the plural, unless when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, *in unis ædibus*, in one house, *Terent. Eun.* ii. 3. 75. *Unæ nuptiæ*, Id. *And.* iv. 1. 51. *In una mœnia convenēre*, Sallust. Cat. 6: or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes, *Cic. Flacc.* 29.

Duo and *tres* are declined, page 11.

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*; thus, *ducenti*, *-tæ*, *-ta*; *ducentorum*, *-tarum*, *-torum*, &c.

Mille is used either as a substantive or adjective; when taken substantively, it is indeclinable in the singular number; and in the plural has *millia, millium, millibus,* &c.

Mille, an adjective, is commonly indeclinable, and to express more than one thousand, has the numeral adverbs joined with it; thus, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *mille hominum*, of a thousand men, &c. *Bis mille homines*, two thousand men; *ter mille homines*, &c. But with *mille*, a substantive, we say, *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum, tria millia, quatuor millia, centum*, or *centēna millia hominum*; *decies centēna millia*, a million; *vicies centēna millia*, two millions, &c.

2. The *Ordinal* numbers are, *prīmus*, first; *sĕcundus*, second, &c. declined like bonus.

3. The *Distributive* numbers are, *singŭli*, one by one; *bīni*, two by two, &c. declined like the plural of *bonus*.

The following Table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

Ordinal.	*Distributive.*	*Numeral Adverbs.*
1 Prīmus, a, um.	Singŭli, æ, a.	Semel, *once.*
2 sĕcundus.	bīni.	bis, *twice.*
3 tertius.	terni.	ter, *thrice.*
4 quartus.	quaterni.	quăter, *four times*
5 quintus.	quini.	quinquies, *&c.*
6 sextus.	sēni.	sexies.
7 septĭmus.	septēni.	septies.
8 octāvus.	octōni.	octies.
9 nōnus.	nŏvēni.	nŏvies.
10 dĕcĭmus.	dēni.	dĕcies.
11 undĕcimus.	undēni.	undecies.
12 duodecimus.	duodēni.	duodecies.
13 decimus tertius.	trĕdēni, terni deni.	tredecies.
14 decimus quartus.	quaterni deni.	quatuordecies.
15 decimus quintus.	quindeni.	quindecies.
16 decimus sextus.	seni deni.	sexdecies.
17 decimus septimus.	septeni deni.	decies ac septies.
18 decimus octavus.	octoni deni.	decies ac octies.
19 decimus nonus.	noveni deni.	decies et novies.
20 vigesimus, vicesimus.	vicēni.	vicies.
21 vigessimus primus.	vicēni singuli	vicies semel.
30 trigesimus, tricesimus.	triceni.	tricies.
40 quadragesimus.	quadrāgēni.	quadrāgies.
50 quinquagessimus.	quinquăgeni.	quinquagies.
60 sexagesimus.	sexāgeni.	sexagies.
70 septuagesimus.	septuāgeni.	septuagies.
80 octogesimus.	octogeni.	octōgies.
90 nonagesimus.	nonageni.	nonagies.
100 centesimus.	centeni.	centies.
200 dŭcentesimus.	dŭcēni.	dŭcenties.
300 trĕcentesimus.	trĕcenteni.	trĕcenties.
400 quadringentēsĭmus.	quăter centeni.	quadringenties.
500 quingentesimus.	quinquies centeni.	quingenties.
600 sexcentesimus.	sexies centeni.	sexcenties.
700 septingentesimus.	septies centeni.	septingenties.
800 octingentēsĭmus.	octies centeni.	octingenties.
900 nongentesimus.	novies centeni.	nōningenties.
1000 millesimus.	millēni.	millies.
2000 bis millesimus.	bis milleni.	bis millies.

4. The *Multiplicative* numbers are *simplex*, simple; *duplex*, double, *or* two-fold; *triplex*, triple, *or* three-fold; *quadruplex*, four-fold, &c. all of them declined like *felix;* thus, *simplex, -ĭcis*, &c.

The interrogative words to which the above numerals answer, are *quot, quŏtus, quŏtēni, quŏties*, and *quŏtŭplex*.

Quot, how many? is indeclinable: So *tot*, so many; *tŏtĭdem*, just so many; *quotquot, quotcunque*, how many soever; *alĭquot*, some.

To these numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c. as, *bĭpartītus, tripartītus*, &c. *duplus, triplus*, &c. *bīmus, trīmus*, &c. *biennis, triennis*, &c. *bīmestris, trimestis*, &c. *bilibris, trilibris*, &c. *bīnārius, ternarius*, &c. which last are applied to the number of any kind of things whatever; as, *versus sēnārius*, a verse of six feet; *dēnārius nummus*, a coin of ten asses; *octogenarius senex*, an old man eighty years old; *grex centenarius*, a flock of a hundred, &c.

The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees; as, *hard, harder, hardest.*

Those adjectives only are compared, whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less.*

The degrees of comparison are three, the *Positive, Comparative,* and *Superlative.*

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality; as, *durus,* hard: and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality; as, *he is as tall as I.*

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, and has always a reference to a less degree of the same; as, *stronger, wiser.*

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greatest degree; as, *strongest, wisest.*

The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive in *i,* by adding the syllable *or,* for the masculine and feminine; and *us* for the neuter. The superlative is formed from the same case, by adding *ssĭmus;* as, *altus,* high, gen. *alti:* comparative, *altior,* for the masc. *altior* for the fem. *altius* for the neuter, higher; superlative, *altissĭmus, -a, -um,* highest. So *mītis,* meek; dative, *miti; mitior, -or, -us,* meeker; *mitissĭmus, -a, -um,* meekest.

If the positive end in *er,* the superlative is formed by adding *rĭmus;* as, *pauper,* poor; *pauperrĭmus,* poorest.

The comparative is always of the third declension, the superlative of the first and second; as, *altus, altior, altissimus; alta, altior, altissima; altum, altius, altissimum;* genitive, *alti, altiōris, altissimi,* &c.

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

1. Bonus,	mĕlior,	optĭmus,	*good,*	*better,*	*best.*
Mălus,	pejor,	pessĭmus,	*bad,*	*worse,*	*worst.*
Magnus,	major,	maxĭmus,	*great,*	*greater,*	*greatest.*
Parvus,	mĭnor,	mĭnĭmus,	*small,*	*less,*	*least.*
Multus,	——	plūrĭmus,	*much,*	*more,*	*most.*

Feminine, Multa, plurima; *neuter,* multum, plus, plurimum; *plural,* multi, plures, plurimi; multæ, plures, plurimæ, &c.

In several of these, both in English and Latin, the comparative and superlative seem to be formed from some other adjective, which in the positive has fallen into disuse; in others, the regular form is contracted; as, *maximus,* for *magnissimus; most,* for *morest; least,* for *lessest; worst,* for *worsest.*

2. These five have their superlative in *lĭmus:*

Făcĭlis, facilior, facillĭmus, *easy.*
Grăcĭlis, gracilior, gracillimus, *lean.*
Hŭmĭlis, humilior, humillimus, *low.*
Imbĕcillis, imbecillior, imbecillĭmus, *weak.*
Sĭmĭlis, similior, simillĭmus, *like.*

3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the superlative differently;

Cĭter, citerior, citimus, *near.*
Dexter, dexterior, dextimus, *right.*
Sĭnister, sinisterior, sinistĭmus, *left.*
Exter, -erior, extimus, *or* extrēmus, *outward.*
Infĕrus, -ior, infĭmus, *or* imus, *below.*
Intĕrus, intĕrior, intĭmus, *inward.*
Mātūrus, -ior, maturrĭmus, *or* maturissimus, *ripe.*
Postĕrus, posterior, postremus, *behind.*
Sŭpĕrus, -rior, suprēmus, *or* summus, *high.*
Vĕtus, vĕtĕrior, vĕterrĭmus, *old.*

4. Compounds in *dĭcus, lŏquus, ficus,* and *volus,* have *entior,* and *entissĭmus;* as, *mălĕdĭcus,* railing, *mălĕdicentior, maledicentissimus:* So *magnĭlŏquus,* one that boasteth; *bĕnĕficus,* beneficent; *mălĕvŏlus,* malevolent, *mīrĭficus,* wonderful; *-entior, -entissimus,* or *mirĭficissimus.* *Nēquam,* indeclinable, worthless, vicious, has *nēquior, nequissimus.*

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased; yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive:

Dētĕrior, *worse,* deterrimus.
Ocior, *swifter,* ocissĭmus.
Prior, *former,* prīmus.
Prŏpior, *nearer,* proxĭmus, *nearest* or *next.*
Ultĕrior, *farther,* ultĭmus.

2. The following want the comparative:

Inclŷtus, inclytissimus, *renowned.*
Mĕrĭtus, meritissimus, *deserving.*
Nŏvus, novissĭmus, *new.*
Nŭpĕrus, nuperrĭmus, *late.*
Pār, părissimus, *equal.*
Săcer, sacerrimus, *sacred*

3. The following want the superlative:

Adŏlescens, adolescentior, *young*.
Diŭturnus, diuturnior, *lasting*.
Ingens, ingentior, *huge*.
Jŭvĕnis, junior, *young*.
ŏpīmus, opimior, *rich*.
Prōnus, pronior, *inclined downwards*.
Sătur, satŭrior, *full*.
Sĕnex, senior, *old*.

To supply the superlative of *jŭvĕnis*, or *ădŏlescens*, we say, *minimus natu*, the youngest; and of *senex*, *maximus natu*, the oldest.

Adjectives in *ilis*, *alis*, and *bilis*, also want the superlative; as, *cīvīlis*, *civilior*, civil; *rēgālis*, *regalior*, regal; *flēbilis*, *-ior*, lamentable. So, *juvenilis*, youthful; *exilis*, small; &c.

To these add several others of different terminations: Thus, *arcānus*, *-ior*, secret; *declīvis*, *-ior* bending downwards; *longinquus*, *-ior*, far off; *prŏpinquus*, *-ior*, near.

Antĕrior, former; *sĕquior*, worse; *sătior*, better; are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all; such are those compounded with nouns or verbs, as, *versĭcŏlor*, of divers colours; *pestĭfer*, poisonous: also adjectives in *us* pure, in *ivus*, *inus*, *orus*, or *imus*, and diminutives; as, *dŭbius*, doubtful; *văcuus*, empty; *fŭgĭtīvus*, that flieth away; *mātūtīnus*, early; *cănōrus*, shrill; *lēgĭtĭmus*, lawful; *tĕnellus*, somewhat tender; *majusculus*, &c. together with a great many others of various terminations; as, *almus*, gracious; *præcox*, *-ŏcis*, soon *or* early ripe; *mīrus*, *ĕgēnus*, *lăcer*, *mĕmor*, *sospes*, &c.

This defect or comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree; and *valdè* or *maximè* for the superlative; thus, *egēnus*, needy; *magis egenus*, more needy; *valdè* or *maximè egenus*, very *or* most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared.

PRONOUN.

A Pronoun is a word which stands *instead of a Noun*.

Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks; *thou* for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country*, we say, When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, *he* turned *his* arms against *his* country.

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen; *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is* *quis*, *qui*; *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*; *nostras*, *vestras*, and *cujas*.

Three of them are substantives, *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; the other fifteen are adjectives.

Obs. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person; thus, we cannot say, *O ego*, O I; *O nos*, O we.

Obs. 2. *Mihi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mī*.

Obs. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrorum* and *nostrarum*; of *tu*, *vestrorum* and *vestrarum*, which were afterwards contracted into *nostrûm* and *vestrûm*.

We commonly use *nostrûm* and *vestrûm* after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives; and *nostri* and *vestri* after other words.

The English substantive pronouns, *he*, *she*, *it*, are expressed in Latin by these pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic* or *is*. *Ille*, *iste*, *hic*, and *is*, express *he*, &c. with this difference: *hic* is nearest to the speaker; *iste*, next; and *ille*, farthest off. *Is* generally denotes a person absent.

Ille usually implies respect, and *iste* contempt or aversion; as, Alexander ille magnus, *Alexander the great*. Tarquinius iste Superbus, *Tarquin the Proud*.

Ipse is often joined to *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; and has in Latin the same force with *self* in English, when joined with a possessive pronoun; as, *ego ipse*, I myself.

Ego, *tu*, *sui*, *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*, are declined in page 12.

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*. *Meus*, my *or* mine; *tuus*, thy *or* thine; *suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *bonus*, *-a*, *-um*: and *noster*, our; *vester*, your; like *pulcher*, *-chra*, *-chrum*, of the first and second declension.

Nostras, of our country; *vestras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what *or* which country, are declined like *felix*, of the third declension: gen. *nostrātis*, dat. *nostrāti*, &c.

Pronouns as well as nouns, that signify things which cannot be addressed or called upon, want the vocative.

Meus hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the vocative singular, masculine.

The relative *qui* has frequently *quī* in the ablative; and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

Qui is sometimes used for *quis*: and instead of *cujus*, the genitive of *quis*, we find an adjective pronoun, *cujus*, *-a*, *-um*.

Simple pronouns, with respect to their signification, are divided into the following classes:

1. *Demonstratives*, which point out any person or thing present, or as if present: *ego*, *tu*, *hic*, *iste*, and sometimes *ille*, *is*, *ipse*.

2. *Relatives*, which refer to something going before: *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, qui*
3. *Possessives*, which signify possession: *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*.
4. *Patrials* or *Gentiles*, which signify one's country: *nostras, vestras, cujas*.
5. *Interrogatives*, by which we ask a question: *quis? cujus?* When they do not ask a question, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the same nature.
6. *Reciprocals*, which again call back or represent the same object to the mind: *sui* and *suus*.

COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are compounded variously:

1. With other pronouns; as, *isthic, isthæc, isthoc, isthuc*, or *istuc*. Acc. *Isthunc, isthanc, isthoc*, or *isthuc*. Abl. *Isthoc, isthac, isthoc*. Nom. and accusative plural, neuter, *isthæc*, of *iste* and *hic*. So *illic*, of *ille* and *hic*.

2. With some other parts of speech; as, *hujusmŏdi, cujusmŏdi*, &c. *mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quocum* or *quīcum*, and *quibuscum: eccum, eccam; eccos, eccas*, and sometimes *ecca*, in the nominative singular, of *ecce* and *is*. So *ellum*, of *ecce* and *ille*.

3. With some syllable added; as, *tute*, of *tu*, and *te*, used only in the nom. *egŏmet, tūtĕmet, suimet*, through all the cases, thus, *meimet, tuimet*, &c. of *ego, tu, sui*, and *met*. Instead of *tumet*, in the nom. we say, *tutĕmet: hiccine, hæccine*, &c. in all the cases that end in *c*; of *hic* and *cine*: *Meapte, tuapte, suapte, nostrapte, vestrapte*, in the abl. fem. and sometimes *meopte, tuopte*, &c. of *meus*, &c. and *pte: hicce, hæcce, hocce; hujusce; hice, hisce, hosce*; of *hic*, and *ce*: whence *hujuscĕmŏdi, ejuscemŏdi, cujuscemŏdi*. So *IDEM*, the same, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined:

	Sing.			*Plur.*	
N. idem,	eădem,	īdem,	*N.* iīdem,	eædem,	eădem,
G. ejusdem,	ejusdem,	ejusdem,	*G.* eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem,
D. eīdem,	eīdem,	eīdem,	*D.* eisdem, *or*	iisdem, &c.	
A. eundem,	eandem,	idem,	*A.* eosdem,	easdem,	eădem,
V. idem,	eadem,	īdem,	*V.* iidem,	eædem,	eădem.
A. eōdem,	eâdem,	eōdem;	*A.* eisdem, *or*	iisdem, &c.	

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui*.

Quis in composition is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded: but *qui* is always the first.

1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are, *quisnam*, who? *quispiam, quisquam*, any one; *quisque*, every one; *quisquis*, whosoever; which are thus declined:

		Nom.			*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Quisnam,	quænam,	quodnam	*or*	quidnam;	cujusnam,	cuinam.
Quispiam,	quæpiam,	quodpiam	*or*	quidpiam;	cujuspiam,	cuipiam.
Quisquam,	quæquam,	quodquam,	*or*	quidquam;	cujusquam,	cuiquam.
Quisque,	quæque,	quodque,	*or*	quidque;	cujusque,	cuique.
Quisquis,	———	quidquid	*or*	quicquid;	cujuscujus,	cuicui.

And so in the other cases, according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* has not the feminine at all; and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Accusative *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nom. sing. fem. and in the nominative and accusative plural, neuter; as, *alĭquis* some; *ecquis*, who? of *et* and *quis*; also *nequis, siquis, numquis*, which for the most part are read separately thus, *ne quis, si quis, num quis*. They are thus declined:

	Nom.			*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Alĭquis, aliqua,	aliquod	*or*	aliquid;	alicujus,	alicui.
Ecquis, ecqua *or* ecquæ,	ecquod	*or*	ecquid;	eccujus,	eccui.
Si quis, si qua,	si quod	*or*	si quid;	si cujus,	si cui.
Ne quis, ne qua,	ne quod	*or*	ne quid;	ne cujus,	ne cui.
Num quis, num qua,	num quod	*or*	num quid;	num cujus,	num cui.

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are *ecquisnam*, who? *unusquisque*, gen. *uniuscujusque*, every one. The former is used only in the nom. sing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, whosoever; *quīdam*, some; *quīlibet, quīvis*, any one whom you please, which are thus declined:

		Nom.			*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Quīcunque,	quæcunque,	quodcunque;			cujuscunque,	cuicunque.
Quīdam,	quædam,	quaddam	*or*	quiddam;	cujusdam,	cuidam.
Quīlĭbet,	quælibet,	quodlibet	*or*	quidlibet;	cujuslibet,	cuilibet.
Quīvis,	quævis,	quodvis	*or*	quidvis;	cujusvis,	cuivis.

Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their dative and ablative plural; thus, *aliquĭbus*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Quis* and its compounds, in comic writers have sometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* has *quendam, quandam, quoddam* or *quiddam*, in the accusative singular; and *quorundam, quarundam, quorundam*, in the genitive plural, *n* being put instead of *m*, for the better sound.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquod, quodvis, quoddam*, &c. are used when they agree with a substantive in the same case; *quid*, with its compounds, *aliquid, quidvis*, &c. for the most part, have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason, they are by some reckoned substantives.

A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as, the boy *reads*. The sun *shines*. The man *loves*.

Or, *A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.*

It is called *Verb* or *Word*, by way of eminence; because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all; thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care.*

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech: Whatever word expresses an affirmation or assertion, is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall, I walk, walk thou.* Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, because they contain an affirmation; but when we say, *a long walk, a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor, -ōris*, love, a substantive; and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active, Passive*, and *Neuter;* because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon: or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but simply existing, or existing in a certain state or condition, as in a state of motion or rest, &c.

1. An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon; as, *amāre*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent by which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me.

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit.

The verb *Active* is also called *Transitive*, when the action *passeth over* to the object, or hath an effect on some other thing; as, *scribo litĕras*, I write letters; but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passeth not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive;* as, *ambŭlo*, I walk; *curro*, I run; which are likewise called *Neuter* verbs. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as, *sistĕre*, to stop; *incipĕre*, to begin; *durāre*, to endure, or to harden, &c.

Verbs which simply signify *being*, are likewise called *Substantive* verbs; as, *esse*, or *existere*, to be *or* to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into, *I am loving*.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle;* as, *amans*, loving; *amatus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund* or a *Supine;* as, *amandum*, loving; *amatum*, to love; *amatu*, to love, *or* to be loved.

A verb is varied or declined by *Voices, Modes, Tenses, Numbers*, and *Persons.*

There are two voices; the *Active* and *Passive.*

The modes are four; *Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative*, and *Infinitive.*

The tenses are five; the *Present*, the *Preter-imperfect*, the *Preter-perfect*, the *Preter-pluperfect*, and the *Future.*

The numbers are two; *Singular* and *Plural.*

The persons are three; *First, Second, Third.*

1. *Voice* expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object; whether as acting, or being acted upon. The *Active voice* signifies action; as, *ămo*, I love; the *Passive*, suffering, or being the object of an action; as, *amor*, I am loved.

2. *Modes* or *Moods* are the various *manners* of expressing the signification of the verb.

The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively; as, *amo*, I love; *amābo*, I shall love: or asks a question; as, *an tu amas?* dost thou love?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verbs, and cannot make a full meaning by itself as, *si me* obsĕcret *redibo*, if *he entreat me*, I will return. *Ter.*

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or entreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb, without limiting it to any person or number; as, *amāre*, to love.

3. *Tenses* or *Times* express the time when any thing is supposed to be, to act, or to suffer. Time in general is divided into three parts, the present, past, and future.

Pas time is expressed three different ways. When we speak of a thing, which was doing, but not finished at some former time, we use the *Preter-imperfect*, or past time not completed; as, *scribēbam*, I was writing.

When we speak of a thing now finished, we use the *Preter-perfect*, or past time completed; as, *scripsi*, I wrote, or have written.

When we speak of a thing finished at or before some past time, we use the *Preter-pluperfect*, or past time more than completed; as, *scripsĕram*, I had written.

Future time is expressed two different ways. A thing may be considered either as simply about to be done, or as actually finished, at some future time; as, *scribam*, I shall write, or, I shall [*then*] be writing; *scripsĕro*, I shall have written.

4. *Number* marks *how many* we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer.

5. *Person* shows to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, to the person addressed, or to some other person or thing.

Verbs have two numbers and three persons, to agree with substantive nouns and pronouns, in these respects: for a verb properly hath neither numbers nor persons, but certain terminations answering to the person and number of its nominative.

A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly classed, or as it were, yoked together, according to Voice, Mode, Tense, Number, and Person.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

The Latins have four different ways of varying verbs, called the *First*, the *Second*, the *Third*, and the *Fourth Conjugation*.

The Conjugations are thus distinguished:

The First has *a* long before *re* of the Infinitive; the Second has *e* long, the Third has *e* short, and the Fourth has *i* long, before *re* of the Infinitive.

Except *dăre*, to give, which has *ă* short, and also its compounds; thus, *Circundăre*, to surround; *circundămus*, *-dătis*, *-dăbam*, *-dăbo*, &c.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Conjugations	Singular. Persons. 1.	2.	3.	Plural. Persons. 1.	2.	3.
1.	-o,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
2.	-eo,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
3.	-o,	-is,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-ĭtis,	-unt.
4.	-io,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.

IMPERFECT.

1.	-ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
2.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
3.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
4.	-iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant

FUTURE.

1.	-ābo,	-ābis,	-ābit;	-ābĭmus,	-ābĭtis,	-ābunt.
2.	-ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit;	-ēbĭmus,	-ēbĭtis,	-ēbunt.
3.	-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
4.	-iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iēmus,	-iētis	-ient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

1.	-em,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
2.	-eām,	-eas,	-eat;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
3.	-am,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
4.	-iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iāmus	-iātis,	-iant.

IMPERFECT.

1.	-ārem,	-āres,	-āret;	-ārēmus,	-ārētis,	-ārent.
2.	-ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
3.	-ĕrem,	-ĕres,	-ĕret;	-ĕrēmus,	-ĕrētis,	-ĕrent.
4.	-īrem,	-īres,	-īret;	-īrēmus,	-īrētis,	-īrent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-a *or* -āto,	-āto;	-āte *or* -ātōte,	-anto.
2.	-e *or* -ēto,	-ēto;	-ēte *or* -ētōte,	-ento
3.	-e *or* -ĭto,	-ĭto;	-ĭte *or* -ĭtōte,	-unto.
4.	-i *or* -īto,	-īto;	-īte *or* -ītōte,	-iunto.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

1. -or,	-āris *or* -āre	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āmĭni,	-antur.
2. -eor,	-ēris *or* -ēre	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni,	-entur.
3. -or,	-ĕris *or* -ĕre	-ĭtur;	-ĭmur,	-ĭmĭni,	-untur.
4. -ior,	-īris *or* -īre	-ītur;	-īmur,	-īmĭni,	-iuntur.

IMPERFECT.

1. -ābar,	-ābāris *or* -ābāre,	-ābātur;	-ābāmur,	-ābāmĭni,	-ābantur.
2. -ēbar,	-ēbāris *or* -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmĭni,	-ēbantur.
3. -ēbar,	-ēbāris *or* -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmĭni,	-ēbantur.
4. -iēbar,	-iēbāris *or* -iēbāre,	-iēbātur;	-iēbāmur,	-iēbāmĭni,	-iēbantur.

FUTURE.

1. -ăbor,	-ăbĕris *or* -ăbĕre,	-ābĭtur;	-ābĭmur,	-ābĭmĭni,	-ābuntur
2. -ēbor,	-ēbĕris *or* -ēbĕre,	-ēbĭtur;	-ēbĭmur,	-ēbĭmĭni,	-ābuntur
3. -ar,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni,	-entur.
4. -iar,	-iēris *or* -iēre,	-iētur;	-iēmur,	-iēmĭni,	-ientur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

1. -er,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni,	-entur.
2. -ear,	-eāris *or* -eāre,	-eātur;	-eāmur,	-eāmĭni,	-eantur
3 -ar,	-āris *or* -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āmĭni,	-antur.
4. -iar,	-iāris *or* -iāre,	-iātur;	-iāmur,	-iāmĭni,	-iantur

IMPERFECT.

1. -ārer,	-ārēris *or* -ārēre,	-ārētur;	-ārēmur,	-ārēmĭni,	-ārentur.
2. -ērer,	-ērēris *or* -ērēre,	-ērētur;	-ērēmur,	-ērēmĭni,	-ērentur.
3. -ĕre,	-ĕrēris *or* -ĕrēre,	-ĕrētur;	-ĕrēmur,	-ĕrēmĭni;	-ĕrentur.
4. -īrer,	-īrēris *or* -īrēre,	-īrētur;	-īrēmur,	-īrēmĭni,	-īrentur.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

	2.	3.	2	3.
1.	-āre *or* -ātor,	-ātor;	-āmĭni,	-antor.
2.	-ēre *or* -ētor,	-ētor;	-ēmĭni,	-entor.
3.	-ĕre *or* -ĭtor,	-ĭtor;	-ĭmĭni,	-untor,
4.	-īre *or* -ītor,	-ītor;	-īmĭni,	-iuntor

Observe, Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third person plural of the present indic. active, and *iuntur* in the passive; and so in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative, they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *iēbam* and *iam; iēbar* and *iar*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the Conjugations. Thus,

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MODE.

	Sing. 1.	2.	3.	*Plur.* 1.	2.	3.
Perf.	-i,	-isti,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt *or* ēre.
Plu.	-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-ĕrāmus,	-ĕrātis,	-ĕrant.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Perf.	-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-ĕrĭmus,	-ĕrĭtis,	-ĕrint.
Plu.	-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.
Fut.	-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-ĕrĭmus,	-ĕrĭtis,	-ĕrint.

These Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the Infinitive Active. See conjugation of the verb *sum*, in page 9.

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood; because the several persons are sufficiently distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner, however, at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb; thus, *ego sum*, I am; *tu es*, thou art, *or* you are; *ille est*, he is; *nos sumus*, we are, &c. So, *ego ămo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest, *or* you love; *ille amat*, he loveth *or* loves; *nos amamus*, we love, &c.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, thou art, *or much oftener*, you are; *tu eras*, thou wast, *or* you were; *tu sis*, thou mayest be, *or* you may be, &c. So, *tu amas*, thou lovest, *or* you love; *tu amabas*, thou lovedst, *or* you loved, &c.

For examples of the variation of regular verbs in the different conjugations, see pages 13, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, & 98—113.

FORMATION OF VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *o* of the present, *i* of the perfect, *um* of the supine, and *re* of the infinitive; according to the following rhyme:

1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.
2. From *i*; *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *sse*, and *ssem*.
3. *U*, *us*, and *rus*, are form'd from *um*.
4. All other parts from *re* do come; as, *bam*, *bo*, *rem*; *a*, *e*, and *i*; *ns* and *dus*; *dum*, *do*, and *di*; as,

Am-o, -em; Am-avi, -eram, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse; Amat-um, -u, -urus, -us; Am-are, -abam, -abo, -arem, -a, -ans, andum, di, do, -andus.

Doc-eo, -eam; Doc-ui, -ueram, &c. Doct-um, -u, -urus, -us; Doc-ere, -ebam, -ebo, -erem, -e, -ens, -endum, di, do, -endus.

Leg-o, -am; Leg-i, -eram, &c. Lect-um, -u, -urus, -us; Leg-ĕre, -ebam, erem, -e, -ens, -endum, &c.

Aud-io, -iam; Aud-ivi, -iveram, &c. Audit-um, -u, -urus, -us; Aud-ire, iebam, -irem, -i, -iens, -iendum, di, do, -iendus.—So verbs of the third conjugation in *io*; as, Cap-io, -iam; Cep-i, -eram, &c. Capt-um, -u, &c. Cap-ĕre, -iebam, -ĕrem, -e, -iens, -iendum, di, do, -iendus.

The passive voice is formed from the active, by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

But it is much more easy and natural to form all the parts of a verb from the present and perfect of the indicative, and from the supine; thus,

Am-o, -ābam, -ābo, -em, -ārem, -a *or* -āto, -āre, -ans, -andum, di, do, &c. -andus:
Amav-i, -ĕram, -ĕrim, -issem, -ĕro, -isse: Amāt-um, -us, -ūrus.

So Doc-eo, -ēbam, -ēbo, -eam, -ērem, -e *or* -eto, -ēre, -ens, -endum, di, &c. -endus; Docu-i, -ĕram, ĕrim, -issem, -ĕro, -isse: Doct-um, -us, -ūrus.

Lĕg-o, -ēbam, -am, -es, -et, &c. -am, -as, -at, &c. ĕrem, -e *or* -ĭto, -ĕre, -ens, -endum, &c. endus: Lēg-i, -ĕram, &c. Lect-um, -us, -urus:

Căp-io, -iēbam, -iam, -ies, -iet, &c. -iam, -ias, &c. ĕrem, -e *or* ĭto, -ĕre, -iens, -iendum, -iendus: Cēp-i, -ĕram, &c. Capt-um, -us, -ūrus.

Aud-io, iēbam, &c. Audiv-i, -ĕram, &c.

A verb is commonly said to be conjugated, when only its principal parts are mentioned, because from them all the rest are derived.

The first person of the Present of the indicative is called the *Theme* or the *Root* of the verb, because from it the other three principal parts are formed.

The letters of a verb which always remain the same, are called *Radical* letters; as, *am* in *am-o*. The rest are called the *Termination*; as, *abamus* in *am-abamus*.

All the letters which come before *-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ĕre*, or *-īre*, of the infinitive, are radical letters. By putting these before the terminations, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

SIGNIFICATION OF THE TENSES IN THE VARIOUS MODES.

The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time: the other tenses express an action or passion completed; but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion; thus, *Amo*, I love, do love, *or* am loving; *amabam*, I loved, did love, *or* was loving, &c.

Amavi, I loved, did love, *or* have loved, *that is*, have done with loving, &c.

In like manner in the passive voice; *Amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, *or* in being loved, &c.

Past time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum*, and the participle perfect; thus,

Indicative Mode.

Perfect.	*Amatus sum*, I am, *or* have been loved, *or oftener*, I was loved.
	Amatus fui, I have been loved, *or* I was loved.
Plu-perfect.	*Amatus eram*, I was, *or* had been loved.
	Amatus fueram, I had been loved.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus sim*, I may be, *or* may have been loved.
Amatus fuerim, I may have been loved.
Plu-perfect. *Amatus essem*, I might, could, would, *or* should be, *or* have been loved.
Amatus fuissem, I might, could, would, *or* should have been loved, *or* had been loved.
Future. *Amatus fuero*, I shall have been loved.

The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mode, both active and passive; thus,

Amaturus sum, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, or I will love.

We chiefly use this form when some purpose or intention is signified.

Amatus ero, I shall be loved.

Obs. 1. The participles *amatus* and *amaturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

Obs. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied; thus, *amatus est*, he is *or* was loved, when applied to a man; *amata est*, she was loved, when applied to a woman; *amatum est*, it was loved, when applied to a thing; *amati sunt*, they were loved, when applied to men, &c. The connecting of syntax, so far as is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

Obs. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amabam*, is taken in a sense different from what it has when put for *amavi;* so *amor*, and *amatus sum*, I am loved; *amabar* and *amatus eram*, I was loved; *amer* and *amatus sim*, &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

Obs. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mode may be variously rendered, according to their connexion with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English as the same tenses of the indicative, and sometimes one tense apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quasi intelligant, qualis sit*, As if they understood, what kind of person he is, Cic. *In facinus jurâsses putes*, You would think, &c. Ov. *Eloquar an sileam?* Shall I speak out, or be silent? *Nec vos arguerim, Teucri*, for *arguam*, Virg. *Si quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, for *peribo*, Ter. *Hunc ego si potui tantum sperare dolorem; Et preferre, soror, potero:* for *potuissem* and *possem*, Virg. *Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every thing? Id. *Prædiceres mihi*, You should have told me before hand, Ter. *At tu dictis, Albane, maneres*, Ought to have stood to your word, Virg. *Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe, Juv. *Hauserit ensis*, The sword would have destroyed, Virg. *Fuerint irati*, Grant or suppose they were angry. *Si id fecisset*, If he did or should do that, Cic. The same promiscuous use of the tenses seems also to take place sometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the subjunctive; as, *Animus meminisse horret, luctuque refûgit*, for *refûgit*, Virg. *Fuerat melius*, for *fuisset*, Id. *Invidiæ dilapsa erat*, for *fuisset*, Sall. *Quamdiu in portum venis?* for *venisti*, Plaut. *Quàm mox navigo Ephesum*, for *navigabo*, Id. *Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias*, Ter. for *esses* and *sentires*. *Cato affirmat, se vivo, illum non triumphare*, for *triumphaturum esse*, Cic. *Persuadet Castico, ut occuparet*, for *occupet*, Cæs.

Obs. 5. The future of the subjunctive, and also of the indicative, is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciet*, or *fecerit*, unless he do this, Ter.

Obs. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive; as, *valeas*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither, &c. And also the future both of the indicative and subjunctive; as, *non occides*, do not kill; *ne fecĕris*, do not do it; *valebis, meque amabis*, farewell, and love me, Cic.

The present time and the preter-imperfect of the infinitive are both expressed under the same form. All the varieties of past and future time are expressed by the other two tenses. But in order properly to exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mode, we must put an accusative, and some other verb, before each of them; thus,

Dicit me scribĕre; he says *that* I write, do write, *or* am writing.
Dixit me scribĕre; he said *that* I wrote, did write, *or* was writing.
Dicit me scripsisse; he says *that* I wrote, did write, *or* have written.
Dixit me scripsisse; he said *that* I had written.
Dicit me scripturum esse; he says *that* I will write.
Dixit nos scripturos esse; he said *that* we would write.
Dicit nos scripturos fuisse; he says *that* we would have written.
Dicit literas scribi; he says *that* letters are written, writing, a writing, *or* in writing.
Dixit literas scribi; he said *that* letters were writing, *or* written.
Dicit literas scriptas esse; he says *that* letters are, *or* were written.
Dicit literas scriptas fuisse; he says *that* letters have been written.
Dixit literas, scriptas fuisse; he said *that* letters had been written.
Dicit literas scriptum iri; he says *that* letters will be written.
Dixit literas scriptum iri; he said *that* letters would be written.

The future, *scriptum iri*, is made up of the former supine, and the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is sometimes expressed by a *periphrăsis* or circumlocution; thus, *scio fore* vel *futurum esse ut scribant,—ut literæ scribantur;* I know that they will write,—that letters will be written. *Scivi fore* vel *futurum esse ut scriberent,—ut literæ scriberentur;* I knew that they

would write, &c. *Scivi futurum fuisse, ut literæ scriberentur;* I knew that letters would have been written. This form is necessary in verbs which want the supine.

Obs. 7. The different tenses, when joined with any expediency or necessity, are thus expressed

Scribendum est mihi, puero, nobis, &c. *literas;* I, the boy, we, &c. must write letters.

Scribendum fuit mihi, puero, nobis, &c. I must have written, &c.

Scribendum erit mihi; I shall be obliged to write.

Scio scribendum esse mihi literas; I know that I must write letters.

—— *scribendum fuisse mihi;*——that I must have written.

Dixit scribendum fore mihi; He said that I should be obliged to write.

Or with the participle in *dus.*

Literæ sunt scribendæ mihi, puero, hominibus, &c. or *a me, puero,* &c.; Letters are to be, *or* must be written by me, by the boy, by men, &c. So *literæ scribendæ erunt, fuerunt, erunt,* &c. *Si literæ scribendæ sint, essent, forent,* &c. *Scio literas scribendas esse;* I know *that* letters are to be, *or* must be written. *Scivi literas scribendas fuisse;* I knew *that* letters ought to have been, *or* must have been written.

Note. Most of the simple tenses of a verb in Latin may be expressed, as in English by the participle and the auxiliary verb *sum;* as, *Sum amans,* for *amo,* I am loving; *eram amans,* for *amābam,* &c. *Fui te carens,* for *carui,* Plaut. *Ut sis sciens,* for *ut scias,* Ter. Only the tenses in the active which come from the preterite, and those in the passive which come from the present, cannot be properly expressed in this manner: because the Latins have no participle perfect active, nor participle present passive. This manner of expression, however, does not often occur.

FORMATION OF THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound and simple verbs form the preterite and supine in the same manner; as, *Vŏco, vŏcāvi, vŏcātum,* to call: so, *rĕvŏco, revŏcāvi, revŏcātum,* to recall.

Exc. 1. When the simple verb in the preterite doubles the first syllable of the present, the compounds lose the former syllable; as, *pello, pĕpŭli,* to beat; *rĕpello, rĕpŭli,* never *repĕpŭli,* to beat back. But the compounds of *do, sto, disco,* and *posco,* follow the general rule; thus, *ēdisco, ēdĭdĭci,* to get by heart; *dĕposco, dĕpŏposci,* to demand: so, *præcurro, præcŭcurri; rĕpungo, rĕpŭpŭgi.*

Exc. 2. Compounds which change *a* of the simple verb into *i,* have *e* in the supine; as, *facio, fēci, factum,* to make; *perficio, perfeci, perfectum,* to perfect. But compound verbs ending in *do* and *go;* also the compounds of *hăbeo, plăceo, săpio, sălio,* and *stătuo,* observe the general rule.

2. Verbs which want the preterite, want likewise the supine.

SPECIAL RULES.

First Conjugation.

Verbs of the first conjugation have *āvi* in the preterite, and *ātum* in the supine; as, *Creo, creāvi, creātum,* to create; *păro, părāvi, părātum,* to prepare.

Exc. 1. *Do, dĕdi, dătum, dăre,* to give: so, *venundo,* to sell; *circundo,* to surround; *pessundo,* to overthrow; *satisdo,* to give surety; *venundĕdi, venundătum, venundăre,* &c. The other compounds of *do* are of the third conjugation.

Sto, stĕti, statum, to stand. Its compounds have *stĭti, stĭtum,* and oftener *stātum;* as, *præsto, præstĭti, præstĭtum,* or *præstātum,* to excel, to perform. So *ad-, ante-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-sto.*

Exc. 2. *Lăvo, lāvi, lōtum, lautum, lăvātum,* to wash.

Pōto, pōtavi, pōtum, or *pōtātum,* to drink.

Jŭvo, jūvi, jūtum, to help; fut. part. *juvaturus.* So *adjŭvo.*

Exc. 3. *Cŭbo, cŭbui, cŭbĭtum,* to lie. So, *ac-, ex-, oc-, rĕ-cŭbo.* The other compounds insert an *m,* and are of the third conjugation.

Dŏmo, dŏmui, dŏmĭtum, to subdue. So *ē-, per-dŏmo.*

Sŏno, sŏnui, sŏnĭtum, to sound. So *as-, circum-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-sŏno.*

Tŏno, tŏnui, tŏnĭtum, to thunder. So *at-, circum-, in-, superin-, rĕ-tŏno.* Horace has *intŏnatus.*

Vĕto, vĕtui, vĕtĭtum, to forbid.

Crĕpo, crĕpui, crĕpĭtum, to make a noise. So *con-, in-, per-, rĕ-crĕpo: discrĕpo* has rather *discrĕpāvi.*

Exc 4. *Frĭco, frĭcui, frictum,* to rub. So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, ef-, in-, per-, re-frĭco.* But some of these have also *atum.*

Sĕco, sĕcui, sectum, to cut. So *circum-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, præ-, rĕ-, sub-sĕco*.

Nĕco, nĕcui, or *nĕcavi, nĕcātum*, to kill. So *inter-, ē-nĕco:* but these have oftener *ectum; enectum, internectum*.

Mĭco, mĭcui, —— to glitter, to shine. So *inter-, prō-mĭco*. *Emĭco*, has *ēmĭcui, ēmĭcātum; dĭmĭco, dĭmĭcāvi, dimĭcātum*, rarely *dimĭcui*, to fight.

Exc. 5. These three want both preterite and supine; *labo*, to fall or faint; *nexo*, to bind; and *plĭco*, to fold.

Plĭco, compounded with a noun, or with the prepositions, *re-, sub-*, has *āvi, ātum;* as, *duplĭco, duplĭcavi, duplĭcatum*, to double. So *multi-, sup-, re-plĭco*.

The other compounds of *plico* have either *āvi* and *ātum*, or *ui* and *ĭtum;* as, *applĭco, applĭcui, applĭcitum*, or *-āvi, ātum*, to apply. So *im-, com-plĭco*. *Explĭco*, to unfold, has commonly *explicui, explĭcitum;* but when it signifies to explain or interpret, *explĭcāvi, explĭcātum*.

Second Conjugation.

Verbs of the second conjugation have *ui* and *ĭtum;* as, *hăbeo, habui, habitum*, to have. So,

Ădhĭbeo, *to admit, to use.*
Cohibeo, ĭnhibeo, *to restrain.*
Exhibeo, *to show, to give.*
Pĕrhibeo, *to say, to give out.*
Prohibeo, *to hinder.*
Posthabeo, *to value less.*
Præbeo, *to afford.*
Rĕdhĭbeo, *to return*, or *take back a thing that was sold for some fault.*
Dĕbeo, *to owe.*
Mĕreo, *to deserve:* Com-, de-, e-, per-, pro-mĕreo, *or* mereor.
Mŏneo, *to admonish:* Ad-, com-, præ-mŏneo.
Terreo, *to terrify:* Abs-, con-, de-, ex-, per-terreo.
Dĭribeo, *to count over, to distribute.*

Neuter verbs which have *ui* want the supine; as, *āreo, ārui*, to be dry. So,

Āceo, *and* -sco, *to be sour.*
Albeo, *to be white.*
Candeo, *to be white.*
Calleo, *to be hard.*
Căneo, *to be hoary.*
Clāreo, *to be bright.*
Ĕgeo, indĭgeo, *to want.*
Ēmĭneo, *to stand above others.*
Flacceo, *to wither.*
Flōreo, *to flourish.*
Fœteo, *to stink.*
Frendeo, *to gnash the teeth.*
Frondeo, *to bear leaves.*
Horreo, *to be rough.*
Hūmeo, *to be wet.*
Immĭneo, *to hang over.*
Langueo, *to languish.*
Lĭqueo, licui, *to melt to be clear.*
Măceo, *to be lean.*
Mădeo, *to be wet.*
Marceo, *to wither.*
Mūceo, *to be mouldy.*
Nĭteo, *to shine.*
Palleo, *to be pale.*
Păteo, *to be open.*
Pūteo, *to stink.*
Putreo, *to rot.*
Ranceo, *to be mouldy.*
Rĭgeo, *to be stiff.*
Rŭbeo, *to be red.*
Squāleo, *to be foul.*
Sordeo, *to be nasty.*
Stŭdeo, *to favour.*
Stŭpeo, *to be amazed.*
Splendeo, *to shine.*
Tĕpeo, *to be warm.*
Torpeo, *to be benumbed.*
Tŭmeo, *to swell.*
Vĭgeo, *to be strong.*
Vireo, *to be green.*

But the neuter verbs which follow, together with their compounds, have the supine, and are regularly conjugated: *Văleo*, to be in health; and *æqui-, con-, e-, in-, præ-valeo: Plăceo*, to please; and *com-, per-placeo: Displĭceo*, to displease: *Căreo*, to want: *Păreo*, to appear, to obey; and *ap-, com-păreo: Jăceo*, to lie; and *ad-, circum-, inter-, ob-, præ-, sub-, super-jăceo: Caleo*, to be warm; and *con-, in-, ob-, per-, re-căleo: Nŏceo*, to hurt; *Dŏleo*, to be grieved; and *con-, de-, in-, per-doleo: Cŏăleo*, to grow together; *Lĭceo*, which in the active signifies, to be lawful, to be valued; and what is singular, in the passive, to bid a price: *Lăteo*, to lurk, the compounds of which want the supine, *delĭteo, inter-, sub-lateo*, as likewise do those of *Tăceo, -cui, -cĭtum*, to be silent, *con-, ob-, rĕ-tĭceo*.

These three active verbs likewise want the supine: *Timeo, -ui*, to fear; *Sĭleo, -ui*, to conceal; *Arceo, -cui*, to drive away: But the compounds of *arceo* have the supine; as, *exerceo, exercui, exercĭtum*, to exercise. So *coerceo*, to restrain.

Exc. 1. The following verbs in *BEO* and *CEO:*

Jŭbeo, jussi, jussum, to order. So *fidĕ-jŭbeo*, to bail, or be surety for.

Sorbeo, sorbui, sorptum, to sup. So *ab-sorbeo*, to suck in; *ex-, rĕ-sorbeo*. We also find *absorpsi, exsorpsi; Exsorptum, rĕsorptum*, are not in use.

Dŏceo, dŏcui, doctum, to teach. So, *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, sub-dŏceo*.

Misceo, miscui, mistum, or *mixtum*, to mix. So *ad-, com-, im-, inter-, per-, rĕ-misceo*.

Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, to stroke, to soothe. So *ad-, circum-, com-, de-, per-, rĕ-mulceo*.

Lūceo, luxi, —— to shine. So *al-, circum-, col-, di-, ē-, il-, inter- per,* or *pel-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, trans-lūceo.*

Exc. 2. The following verbs in *DEO:*

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, to dine.

Vĭdeo, vīdi, vīsum, to see. So *in-, per-, præ-, pro-, rĕ-video.*

Sĕdeo, sēdi, sessum, to sit. So *as-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, ob-, per-, pos-, præ-, re-, sub-sĭdeo: Circumsĭdeo,* or *circumsĕdeo, supersĕdeo.* But *dē-, dis-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-sideo,* seem to want the supine.

Strīdeo, strīdi, —— to make a noise.

Pendeo, pĕpendi, pensum, to hang. So *de-, im-, pro-, super-pendeo.*

Mordeo, mŏmordi, morsum, to bite. So *ad-, com-, de-, ob-, præ-, re-mordeo.*

Spondeo, spŏpondi, sponsum, to promise. So *de-, re-spondeo.*

Tondeo, tŏtondi, tonsum, to clip. So *at-, circum-, de-tondeo.*

But the compounds of these verbs do not double the first syllable; thus, *dependi, remordi, respondi, attondi,* &c.

Rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum, to laugh. So *ar-, de-, ir-, sub-rīdeo.*

Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum, to advise. So *dis-, per-suādeo.*

Ardeo, arsi, arsum, to burn. So *ex-, in-, ob-ardeo.*

Exc. 3. The following verbs in *GEO:*

Augeo, auxi, auctum, to increase. So *ad-, ex-augeo.*

Lūgeo, luxi, —— to mourn. So *e-, pro-, sub-lugeo.*

Frīgeo, frixi, —— to be cold. So *per-, re-frīgeo.*

Tergeo, tersi, tersum, to wipe. So *abs-, circum-, de-, ex-, per-tergeo.*

Mulgeo, mulsi, mulsum, or *mulctum,* to milk. So *e-, im-mulgeo.*

Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, to grant, to indulge.

Urgeo, ursi, —— to press. So *ad-, ex-, in-, per-, sub-, super-urgeo.*

Fulgeo, fulsi, —— to shine. So *af-, circum-, con-, ef-, inter-, præ-, re-, super-fulgeo.*

Turgeo, tursi, to swell. *Algeo, alsi,* to be cold.

Exc. 4. The following verbs in *IEO* and *LEO:*

Vieo, viēvi, viētum, to bind with twigs, to hoop a vessel.

Cieo, (cīvi) cĭtum, to stir up, to rouse. So *ac-, con-, ex-, in-, per-cieo. Cīvi* comes from *cio* of the fourth conjugation.

Fleo, flēvi, flētum, to weep. So *af-, de-fleo.*

Compleo, complevi, complētum, to fill. So the other compounds of *pleo; de-, ex-, im-, adim-, op-, re-, sup-pleo.*

Dēleo, dēlēvi, dēlētum, to destroy, to blot out.

Ŏleo, to smell, has *ŏlui, ŏlĭtum.* So likewise its compounds, which have a similar signification; *ob-, per-, red-, sub-ŏleo.* But such of the compounds as have a different signification make *ēvi* and *ētum;* thus, *exŏlēo, exŏlēvi, exŏlētum,* to fade. So *insŏleo, -ēvi, -ētum,* or *-ĭtum,* to grow into use; *obsŏleo, -ēvi, -ētum,* to grow out of use. *Ăbŏleo,* to abolish, has *ăbŏlēvi, abŏlĭtum;* and *ădŏleo,* to grow up, to burn, *adŏlēvi, adultum.*

Exc. 5. Several verbs in *NEO, QUEO, REO,* and *SEO.*

Maneo, mansi, mansum, to stay. So *per-, rĕ-măneo.*

Neo, nēvi, nētum, to spin. So *per-neo.*

Tĕneo, tĕnui, tentum, to hold. So *con-, de-, dis-, ob-, re-, sus-tĭneo.* But *attĭneo, pertĭneo,* are not used in the supine; and seldom *abstĭneo.*

Torqueo, torsi, tortum, to throw, to whirl, to twist. Thus, *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, re-torqueo.*

Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum, to stick. Thus, *ad-, con-, in-, ob-, sub-hæreo.*

Torreo, torrui, tostum, to roast. So *extorreo.*

Censeo, censui, censum, to judge. So *ac-, per-, re-censeo,* to review; *succenseo,* to be angry.

Exc. 6. Verbs in *VEO* have *vi, tum;* as, *mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum,* to move; *Fŏveo, fovi, fōtum,* to cherish. So *con-, rĕ-foveo.* So *vŏveo,* to vow or wish, and *dēvŏveo.*

Faveo, to favour; has *fāvi, fautum;* and *căveo,* to beware of; *cāvi, cautum.* So *præ-căveo.*

Neuter verbs in *veo* want the supine; as, *păveo, pāvi,* to be afraid.

Ferveo, to boil, to be hot, makes *ferbui.* So *de-, ef-, in-, per-, rĕ-ferveo.*

Connīveo, to wink, has *connivi* and *connixi*.

Exc. 7. The following verbs want both preterite and supine: *Lacteo*, to suck milk; *liveo*, to be black and blue; *scăteo*, to abound; *renĭdeo*, to shine; *mœreo*, to be sorrowful; *ăveo*, to desire; *polleo*, to be able; *flăveo*, to be yellow; *denseo*, to grow thick; *glabreo*, to be smooth or bare. To these add *calveo*, to be bald; *cĕveo*, to wag the tail, as dogs do when they fawn on one; *hĕbeo*, to be dull; *ūveo*, to be moist; and some others.

Third Conjugation.

Verbs of the third conjugation form their preterite and supine variously, according to the termination of the present.

IO.

1. *Făcio*, *fēci*, *factum*, to do, to make. So the compounds which retain *a*: *lucrĭ-*, *magni-*, *ărĕ-*, *călĕ-*, *mădĕ-*, *tĕpĕ-*, *bĕnĕ-*, *mălĕ-*, *sătis-făcio*, &c. But those which change *a* into *i* have *ectum*; as, *afficio*, *affēci*, *affectum*. So *con-*, *de-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *of-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *suf-ficio*. *Note;* Facio, compounded with a noun, verb, or adverb, retains *a*; but when compounded with a preposition, it changes *a* into *i*.

Some compounds of *facio* are of the first conjugation; as, *Amplĭfico*, *sacrifico*, *terrĭfico*, *magnĭfico*; *gratĭficor*, to gratify, or do a good turn, to give up; *lūdĭficor*, to mock.

Jăcio, *jēci*, *jactum*, to throw. So *ab-*, *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-*, *superin-*, *tra-jĭcio*; in the supine, *-ectum*.

The compounds of *spĕcio* and *lăcio*, which themselves are not used, have *exi*, and *ectum*; as, *aspĭcio*, *aspexi*, *aspectum*, to behold. So *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *in-*, *intro-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *retro-*, *su-spĭcio*.

Allĭcio, *allexi*, *allectum*, to allure. So *il-*, *pel-lĭcio*; but *ēlĭcio*, to draw out, has *elĭcui*, *elĭcĭtum*.

2. *Fŏdio*, *fōdi*, *fossum*, to dig, to delve. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *suf-*, *trans-fŏdio*.

Fŭgio, *fūgi*, *fŭgĭtum*, to fly. So *au-*, (for *ab-*,) *con-*, *de-*, *dif-*, *ef-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *suf-*, *subter-*, *trans-fŭgio*.

3. *Căpio*, *cēpi*, *captum*, to take. So *ac-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *oc-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sus-cipio*, (in the supine *-ceptum*;) and *ante-căpio*.

Răpio, *răpui*, *raptum*, to pull or snatch. So *ab-*, *ar-*, *cor-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *sur-rĭpio*, *-rĭpui*, *-reptum*.

Săpio, *săpui*, —— to favour, to be wise. So *consĭpio*, to be well in one's wits; *desĭpio*, to be foolish; *resĭpio*, to come to one's wits.

Cŭpio, *cupīvi*, *cupītum*, to desire. So *con-*, *dis-*, *per-cŭpio*.

4. *Părio*, *pĕpĕri*, *parĭtum*, or *partum*, to bring forth a child, to get. Its compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

Quătio, *quassi*, *quassum*, to shake; but *quassi* is hardly used. Its compounds have *cussi*, *cussum*; as, *concŭtio*, *concussi*, *concussum*. So *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-*, *reper-*, *suc-cŭtio*.

UO has *ui*, *ūtum*; as,

Arguo, *argui*, *argūtum*, to show, to prove, or argue, to reprove. So *co-*, *red-arguo*, to confute. So,

Acuo, Exăcuo, *to sharpen.*
Batuo, *vel* battuo, *to beat, to fight, to fence with foils.*
Induo, *to put on clothes.*
Exuo, *to put off clothes.*
Imbuo, *to wet* or *imbue, to season* or *instruct.*
Minuo, *to lessen:* Com-, de-, di-, im-minuo.
Spuo, *to spit:* Con-, de-, ex-, in-spuo.
Stătuo, *to set* or *place, to ordain.* Con-, de-, in-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-stĭtuo.
Sternuo, *to sneeze.*
Suo, *to sew* or *stitch, to tack together:* As-, circum-, con-, dis-, præ-, rĕ-, suo.
Trĭbuo, *to give, to divide:* At-, con-, dis-, retribuo.

Exc. 1. *Fluo*, *fluxi*, *fluxum*, to flow. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dif-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præter-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *subter-*, *super-*, *trans-fluo*.

Struo, *struxi*, *structum*, to put in order, to build. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *sub-*, *super-struo*.

Exc. 2. *Luo*, *lui*, *luĭtum*, to pay, to wash away, to suffer punishment. Its com-

pounds have *ŭtum;* as, *abluo, -ui, -ūtum,* to wash away, to purify. So *al-, circum-, col-, de-, di-, e-, inter-, per-, pol-, pro-, sub-luo.*

Ruo, rui, ruĭtum, to rush, to fall. Its compounds have *ŭtum;* as, *dīruo, dirui, dirŭtum,* to overthrow. So *ē,- ob-, prō-, sub-ruo. Corruo* and *irruo,* want the supine; as likewise do *mĕtuo,* to fear; *pluo,* to rain; *ingruo,* to assail; *congruo,* to agree; *respuo,* to reject, to slight; *annuo,* to assent; and the other compounds of the obsolete verb *nuo; abnuo,* to refuse; *innuo,* to nod, or beckon with the hand; *rĕnuo,* to deny; all of which have *ui* in the preterite.

BO has *bi, bĭtum;* as,

Bĭbo, bĭbi, bibĭtum, to drink. So *ad-, com-, e-, im-, per-, præ-bĭbo.*

Exc. 1. *Scrībo, scripsi, scriptum,* to write. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, post-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, supra-, trans-scrībo.*

Nūbo, nupsi, nuptum, to veil, to be married. So *de-, e-, in-, ob-nūbo.* Instead of *nupsi,* we often find *nupta sum.*

Exc. 2. The compounds of *cŭbo* in this conjugation insert an *m* before the last syllable; as, *accumbo, accŭbui, accŭbĭtum,* to recline at table. So *con-, de-, dis-, in-, oc-, pro-, re-, suc-, superin-cumbo, -cŭbui, -cubĭtum.*

These two verbs want the supine; *scābo, scābi,* to scratch; *lambo, lambi,* to lick. So *ad-, circum-, dē-, præ-lambo.*

Glūbo and *deglūbo,* to strip, to flay, want both preterite and supine

CO.

1. *Dīco, dixi, dictum,* to say. So *ab-, ad-, con-, contra-, e-, in-, inter-, præ-, pro-dīco.*

Dūco, duxi, ductum, to lead. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, se-, sub-, tra-,* or *trans-dūco.*

2. *Vinco, vīci, victum,* to overcome. So *con-, de-, e-, per-, rĕ-vinco.*

Parco, pĕperci, parsum, seldom *parsi, parsĭtum,* to spare. So *comparco,* or *compereo,* which is seldom used.

Ico, īci, ictum, to strike.

SCO has *vi, tum;* as,

Nosco, nōvi, nōtum, to know; future participle, *noscĭturus.* So,

Dignosco, *to distinguish:* ignosco, *to pardon; also* inter-, per-, præ-nosco.

Cresco, -ēvi, -ētum, *to grow:* Con-, de-, ex-, re-, *and without the supine,* ac-, in-, per-, pro-, suc-, super-cresco.

Quiesco, -ēvi, -ētum, *to rest:* Ac-, con-, inter-, rē-quiesco.

Scisco, -īvi, ītum, *to ordain;* ad-, *or* ascisco, *to take, to associate;* concisco, *to vote, to commit; also* præ-, re-scisco; descisco, *to revolt.*

Suesco, *to be accustomed;* as-, con-, de-, in-suesco, -ēvi, -ētum.

Exc. 1. *Agnosco, agnōvi, agnĭtum,* to own; *cognosco, cognovi, cognĭtum,* to know So *rĕcognosco,* to review.

Pasco, pāvi, pastum, to feed. So *com-, dē-pasco.*

Exc. 2. The following verbs want the supine:

Disco, dĭdĭci, to learn. So *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, præ-disco, -dĭdĭci.*

Posco, pŏposci, to demand. So *ap-, dē-, ex-, rĕ-posco.*

Compesco, compescui, to stop, to restrain. So *dispesco, dispescui,* to separate.

Exc. 3. *Glisco,* to grow; *fatisco,* to be weary; and likewise inceptive verbs want both preterite and supine: as, *arēsco,* to become dry. But these verbs borrow the preterite and supine from their primitives; as, *ardesco,* to grow hot, *arsi, arsum,* from *ardeo.*

DO has *di, sum;* as,

Scando, scandi, scansum, to climb; *ĕdo, ēdi, ēsum,* to eat. So,

Ascendo, *to mount.*

Descendo, *to go down.*

Con-, e-, ex-, in-, tran-scendo.

Accendo, *to kindle:* In-, succendo.

Cudo, *to forge, to stamp,* or *coin:* Ex-, in-, per-, pro-, re-cūdo.

Defendo, *to defend.*

Offendo, *to strike against, to offend, to find.*

Mando, *to chew:* Præ-, remando.

Prehendo, *to take hold of:* Ap-, com-, de-prehendo.

Exc. 1. *Dīvĭdo, dīvisi, divisum*, to divide.

Rādo, rāsi, rāsum, to shave. So *ab-, circum-, cor-, de-, e-, inter-, præ-, sub-rādo.*

Claudo, clausi, clausum, to close. So *circum-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, re-, se-clūdo.*

Plaudo, plausi, plausum, to clap hands for joy. So *ap-, circum-plaudo*: also *com-, dis-, ex-, sup-plōdo, -plosi, -plosum.*

Lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, to play. So *ab-, al-, col-, de-, e-, il-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-, re-lūdo.*

Trūdo, trūsi, trūsum, to thrust. So *abs-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, pro-, re-trūdo.*

Lædo, læsi, læsum, to hurt. So *al-, col-, e-, il-līdo-, -līsi, -līsum.*

Rōdo, rōsi, rōsum, to gnaw. So *ab-, ar-, circum-, cor-, de-, e-, ob-, per-, præ-rodo.*

Vādo, to go, wants both preterite and supine; but its compounds have *si, sum*; as, *invādo, invāsi, invāsum*, to invade, or fall upon. So *circum-, ē-, super-vādo.*

Cēdo, cessi, cessum, to yield. So *abs-, ac-, antĕ-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, pro-, rĕ-, retro-, se-, suc-cēdo.*

Exc. 2. *Pando, pandi, passum*, and sometimes *pansum*, to open, to spread. So *dis-, ex-, op-, præ-, rĕ-pando.*

Cŏmĕdo, comēdi, comēsum or *comestum*, to eat. But *ĕdo* itself, and the rest of its compounds, have always *ēsum*; as, *ad-, amb-, ex-, per-, sub-, super-ĕdo, -ēdi, -ēsum.*

Fundo, fūdi, fūsum, to pour forth. So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, super-, superin-, trans-fundo.*

Scindo, scĭdi, scissum, to cut. So *as-, circum-, con-, ex-, inter-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, tran-scindo.*

Findo, fĭdi, fissum, to cleave. So *con-, dif-, in-findo.*

Exc. 3. *Tundo, tŭtŭdi, tunsum*, and sometimes *tūsum*, to beat. The compounds have *tŭdi, tūsum*; as, *contundo, contŭdi, contūsum*, to bruise. So *ex-, ob-, per-, re-tundo.*

Cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, to fall. The compounds want the supine; as, *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, inter-, pro-, suc-cĭdo, -cĭdi*: —— except, *incĭdo, incĭdi, incāsum*, to fall in; *recĭdo, recĭdi, recāsum*, to fall back; and *occĭdo, occĭdi, occāsum*, to fall down.

Cædo, cĕcīdi, cæsum, to cut, to kill. The compounds change *æ* into *i* long; as, *accīdo, accīdi, accīsum*, to cut about. So *abs-, con-, circum-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, rĕ-, suc-cīdo.*

Tendo, tĕtendi, tensum or *tentum*, to stretch out. So *at-, con-, de-, dis, ex-, ob-, præ-, prō-tendo-, -tendi, -tensum*, or *tentum*. But the compounds have rather *tentum*, except *ostendo*, to show; which has commonly *ostensum*.

Pēdo, pĕpēdi, pedĭtum, to break wind backward. So *op-pēdo.*

Pendo, pĕpendi, pensum, to weigh. So *ap-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, per-, re-, sus-pendo, -pendi, -pensum.*

Exc. 4. The compounds of *do* have *dĭdi*, and *dĭtum*; as, *abdo, abdĭdi, abdĭtum*, to hide. So *ad-, con-, dē-, dī-, ē-, ob-, per-, pro-, red-, sub-, tra-do*: also, *decon-, re-condo*: and *coad-, superad-do*; and *deper-, disper-do*. To these add *crēdo*, *crēdĭdi, crēdĭtum*, to believe; *vendo, vendĭdi, vendĭtum*, to sell. *Abscondo*, to hide, has *abscondi, abscondĭtum*, rarely *abscondĭdi.*

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *strīdo, strīdi*, to creak; *rūdo, rūdi*, to bray like an ass; and *sīdo, sīdi*, to sink down. The compounds of *sīdo* borrow the preterite and supine from *sĕdeo*; as, *consīdo, consēdi, consessum*, to sit down. So *as-, circum-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, rĕ-, sub-sīdo.*

Note. Several compounds of verbs in *do* and *deo*, in some respects resemble one another, and therefore should be carefully distinguished; as, *concĭdo, concēdo, concīdo; consīdo* and *consĭdeo; conscindo, conscendo*, &c.

GO, GUO, has *xi, ctum*; as,

Rĕgo, rexi, rectum, to rule, to govern; *dirĭgo, -exi, -ectum*, to direct; *arigo* and *ērigo, -exi, -ectum*, to raise up; *corrĭgo*, to correct; *porrĭgo*, to stretch out; *subrĭgo*, to raise up. So,

Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, *to gird, to surround:* Ac-, dis-, circum-, in-, præ-, re-, suc-cingo.
Fligo, *to dash,* or *beat upon:* Af-, con-, in-fligo; *also* pro-fligo, *to rout,* of the first conjugation.
Jungo, *to join:* abjungo, *to separate:* Ad-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, inter-, se-, sub-jungo.
Lingo, *to lick:* de-, ē-lingo; *and* pollingo, *to anoint a dead body.*
Mungo, *to wipe,* or *clean the nose.*
Emungo, *to wipe, to cheat.*
Plango, *to beat, to lament.*
Stingo, *or* Stinguo, *to dash out, to extinguish.* Di-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, re-stinguo.
Tĕgo, *to cover:* Circum-, con-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-tĕgo.
Tingo, *or* Tinguo, *to dip,* or *dye:* Con-, in-tingo.
Ungo, *or* Unguo, *to anoint:* Ex-, in-, per-, super-ungo.

Exc. 1. *Surgo,* to rise, has *surrexi, surrectum.* So *as-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, re-surgo.*

Pergo, porrexi, perrectum, to go forward.

Stringo, strinxi, strictum, to bind, to strain, to lop. So *ad-, con-, de-, dis-, ob-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-stringo.*

Fingo, finxi, fictum, to feign. So *af-, con-, ef-, re-fingo.*

Pingo, pinxi, pictum, to paint. So *ap-, de-pingo.*

Exc. 2. *Frango, frēgi, fractum,* to break. So *con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-fringo, -frēgi, -fractum.*

Ăgo, ēgi, actum, to do, to drive. So *ab-, ad-, ex-, red-, sub-, trans-, transad-igo,* and *circum-, per-ăgo: cōgo,* for *coăgo, coēgi, coactum,* to bring together, to force.

These three compounds of *ăgo* want the supine: *sătăgo, satēgi,* to be busy about a thing; *prōdĭgo, prodēgi,* to lavish, or spend riotously; *dēgo,* for *deăgo; dēgi,* to live or dwell. *Ambĭgo,* to doubt, to dispute, also wants the preterite.

Lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, to gather, to read. So *al-, per-, præ, re-, sub-lĕgo:* also, *col-, de-, e-, recol-, se-lĭgo,* which change *ĭ* into *ē.*

Dilĭgo, to love, has *dilexi, dilectum.* So *neglĭgo,* to neglect; and *intellĭgo,* to understand; but *negligo* has sometimes *neglēgi,* Sall. Jug. 40.

Exc. 3. *Tango, tĕtĭgi, tactum,* to touch. So *at-, con-, ob-, per-tingo;* thus *attingo, attĭgi, attactum,* &c.

Pungo, pŭpŭgi, punctum, to prick, or sting. The compounds have *punxi;* as, *compungo, compunxi, compunctum.* So *dis-, ex-, inter-pungo;* but *repungo* has *repunxi,* or *repŭpŭgi.*

Pango, panxi, pactum, to fix, to drive in, to compose: or *pĕgĭgi,* which comes from the obsolete verb *pago,* to bargain, for which we use *paciscor.* The compounds of *pango* have *pēgi;* as, *compingo, compēgi, compactum,* to put together. So *im-, ob-, sup-pingo.*

Exc. 4. *Spargo, sparsi, sparsum,* to spread. So *ad-, circum-, con-, di-, in-, inter-, per-, pro-, re-spergo.*

Mergo, mersi, mersum, to dip, or plunge. So *de-, e-, im-, sub-mergo.*

Tergo, tersi, tersum, to wipe, or clean. So *abs-, de-, ex-, per-tergo.*

Figo, fixi, fixum, to fix, or fasten. So *af-, con-, de-, in-, of-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-, trans-figo.*

Frigo, frixi, frixum or *frictum,* to fry.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *clango, clanxi,* to sound a trumpet; *ningo,* or *ninguo, ninxi,* to snow; *ango, anxi,* to vex. *Vergo,* to incline, or lie outwards, wants both preterite and supine. So *e-, de-, in-vergo.*

HO, JO.

1. *Trăho, traxi, tractum,* to draw. So *abs-, at-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-trăho.*

Veho, vexi, vectum, to carry. So *a-, ad-, circum-, con-, di-, e-, in-, per-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, trans-vĕho.*

2. *Mejo,* or *mingo, minxi, mictum,* to make water. So *immejo.*

LO.

1. *Cŏlo, cŏlui, cultum,* to adorn, to inhabit, to honour, to till. So *ac-, circum-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-cŏlo:* and likewise *occŭlo, occului, occultum,* to hide.

Consŭlo, consului, consultum, to advise or consult.

Ălo, ălui, alitum, or contracted, *altum,* to nourish.

Mŏlo, molui, molĭtum, to grind. So *com-, e-, per-mŏlo*. The compounds of *cello*, which itself is not in use, want the supine; as, *ante-, ex-, præ-cello, -cellui*, to excel. *Percello*, to strike, to astonish, has *percŭli, perculsum*.

Pello, pĕpŭli, pulsum, to thrust. So *ap-, as-, com-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, per-, pro-, re-pello; appŭli, appulsum*, &c.

Fallo, fĕfelli, falsum, to deceive. But *rĕfello, refelli*, to confute, wants the supine.

3. *Vello, velli* or *vulsi, vulsum*, to pull, or pinch. So *a-, con-, e-, inter-, præ-, re-vello*. But *de-, di-, per-vello*, have rather *velli*.

Sallo, salli, salsum, to salt. *Psallo, psalli*, ——, to play on a musical instrument, wants the supine.

Tollo, to lift up, to take away, in a manner peculiar to itself, makes *sustŭli*, and *sublātum; extollo, extŭli, elātum;* but *attollo*, to take up, has neither preterite nor supine.

MO has *ui, ĭtum;* as,

Gĕmo, gĕmui, gemĭtum, to groan. So *ad-*, or *ag-, circum-, con-, in-, re-gĕmo*.

Frĕmo, fremui, fremitum, to rage or roar, to make a great noise. So *af-, circum-, con-, in-, per-frĕmo*.

Vŏmo, ēvŏmo, -ui, -itum, to vomit or spew, to cast up.

Exc. 1. *Dēmo, dempsi, demptum*, to take away.

Promo, prompsi, promptum, to bring out. So *de-, ex-promo*.

Sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, to take. So *ab-, as-, con-, de-, in-, præ-, re-, tran-sūmo*.

Cōmo, compsi, comptum, to deck or dress.

These verbs are also used without the *p;* as, *demsi, demtum; sumsi, sumtum*, &c.

Exc. 2. *Emo, ēmi, emptum* or *emtum*, to buy. So *ad-, dir-, ex-, inter-, per-, red-imo* and *co-ĕmo, -emi, -emptum* or *emtum*.

Prĕmo, pressi, pressum, to press. So *ap-, com-, de-, ex-, im-, op-, per-, re-, sup-primo*.

Trĕmo, trĕmui, to tremble, to quake for fear, wants the supine. So *at-, circum-, con-, in-trĕmo*.

NO.

1. *Pōno, posŭi, pŏsĭtum*, to put, or place. So *ap-, ante-, circum-, com-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, inter-, ob-, post-, præ-, pro-, re-, se-, sup-, super-, superim-, trans-pōno*.

Gigno, gĕnui, gĕnitum, to beget. So *con-, e-, in-, per-, pro-, re-gigno*.

Căno, cĕcĭni, cantum, to sing. But the compounds have *cinui* and *centum;* as, *accĭno, accĭnui, accentum*, to sing in concert. So *con-, in-, præ-, suc-cĭno; oc-cĭno*, and *oc-căno; re-cĭno*, and *re-căno*. But *occanui, recanui*, are not in use.

Temno, to despise, wants both preterite and supine; but its compound *contemno*, to despise, to scorn, has *contempsi, contemptum;* or without the *p, contemsi, contemtum*.

2. *Sperno, sprēvi, sprētum*, to disdain or slight. So *desperno*.

Sterno, strāvi, strātum, to lay flat, to strow. So *ad-, con-, in-, præ-, pro-, sub-sterno*.

Sĭno, sīvi or *sii, sĭtum*, to permit. So *desĭno, desīvi*, ofteener *desii, desĭtum*, to leave off.

Lĭno, līvi, or *lēvi, lĭtum*, to anoint or daub. So *al-, circum-, col-, de-, il-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, superil-lĭno*.

Cerno, crēvi, seldom *crētum*, to see, to decree, to enter upon an inheritance. So *de-, dis-, ex-, in-, se-cerno*.

PO, QUO.

Verbs in *po* have *psi* and *ptum;* as, *Carpo, carpsi, carptum*, to pluck or pull, to crop, to blame. So *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, præ-cerpo, -cerpsi, cerptum*.

Clĕpo, -psi, -ptum, *to steal.*
Rĕpo, *to creep:* Ad-, *v.* ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, ir-, intro-, ob-, per-, pro-, sub-rēpo, -psi, -ptum.
Scalpo, *to scratch* or *engrave:* So circum-, ex-scalpo.
Sculpo, *to grave* or *carve.* So ex-, in-sculpo.
Serpo, *to creep as a serpent.*

Exc. 1. *Strĕpo, strĕpui, strĕpĭtum*, to make a noise. So *ad-, circum-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-strepo*.

Exc. 2. *Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum,* to break. So *ab-, cor-, di-, e-, inter-, intro-, ir-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-rumpo.*

There are only two simple verbs ending in *QUO*, viz.

Cŏquo, coxi, coctum, to boil. So *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-cŏquo.*

Linquo, liqui, ——, to leave. The compounds have *lictum;* as, *rĕlinquo, reliqui, relictum,* to forsake. So *de-,* and *dērĕ-linquo.*

RO.

1. *Quæro,* makes *quæsīvi, quæsītum,* to seek. So *ac-, an-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-quīro, -quisīvi, -quisītum.*

Tĕro, trīvi, trītum, to wear, to bruise. So *at-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, sub-tĕro.*

Verro, verri, versum, to sweep, brush, or make clean. So *ā-, con-, dē-, ē-, præ-, rĕ-verro.*

Ūro, ussi, ustum, to burn. So *ăd-, amb-, comb-, de-, ex-, ĭn-, pĕr-, sub-ūro.*

Gĕro, gessi, gestum, to carry. So *ag-, con-, dī-, in-, prō-, rĕ-, sug-gĕro.*

2. *Curro, cŭcurri, cursum,* to run. So *ac-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, oc-, per-, præ-, prō-curro,* which sometimes doubles the first syllable, and sometimes not; as, *accurri,* or *accŭcurri,* &c. *Circum-, rĕ-, suc-, trans-curro,* hardly ever redouble the first syllable.

3. *Sĕro, sēvi, sătum,* to sow. The compounds which signify *planting* or *sowing,* have *sēvi, sĭtum;* as, *consĕro, consēvi, consĭtum,* to plant together. So *as-, circum-, dē-, dis-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, rĕ-, sub-, tran-sĕro.*

Sĕro, ——, to knit, had anciently *sĕrui, sertum,* which its compounds still retain; as, *assĕro, asserui, assertum,* to claim. So *con-, circum-, dē-, dis-, ēdis-, ex-, in-, inter-sĕro.*

4. *Fŭro,* to be mad, wants both preterite and supine.

SO has *sīvi, sītum;* as,

Arcesso, arcessīvi, arcessītum, to call, or send for. So *căpesso,* to take; *făcesso,* to do, to go away; *lăcesso,* to provoke.

Exc. 1. *Viso, vīsi,* ——, to go to see, to visit. So *in-, rĕ-vīso.* *Incesso, incessi,* ——, to attack, to seize.

Exc. 2. *Depso, depsui, depstum,* to knead. So *con-, per-depso.*

Pinso, pinsui or *pinsi, pinsum, pistum* or *pinsĭtum,* to bake.

TO.

1. *Flecto,* has *flexi, flectum,* to bow. So *circum-, de-, in-, re-, retro-flecto.*

Plecto, plexi and *plexui, plexum,* to plait. So *implecto.*

Necto, nexi and *nexui, nexum,* to tie, or knit. So *ad-,* vel *an-, con-, circum-, in-, sub-necto.*

Pecto, pexi and *pexui, pexum,* to dress, or comb. So *de-, ex-, re-pecto.*

2. *Mĕto, messui, messum,* to reap, mow, or cut down. So *de-, e-, præ-mĕto.*

3. *Pĕto, pĕtivi, pĕtītum,* to seek, to pursue. So *ap-, com-, ex-, im-, op-, re-, sup-pĕto.*

Mitto, mīsi, missum, to send. So *a-, ad-, com-, circum-, dē-, dī-, ē-, im-, inter-, intro-, ō-, per-, præ, præter, prō-, rĕ-, sub-, super-, trans-mitto.*

Verto, verti, versum, to turn. So *a-, ad-, animad-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, en-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, præter-, re-, sub-, trans-verto.*

Sterto, stertui, ——, to snore. So *de-sterto.*

4. *Sisto,* an active verb, to stop, has *stĭti, stătum;* but *sisto,* a neuter verb, to stand still, has *stĕti, stătum,* like *sto.* The compounds have *stĭti,* and *stĭtum;* as, *assisto, astĭti, astĭtum,* to stand by. So *ab-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, re-, sub-sisto.* But the compounds are seldom used in the supine.

VO, XO.

There are three verbs in *vo,* which are thus conjugated:

1. *Vīvo, vixi, victum,* to live. So *ad-, con-, per-, pro-, re-, super-vīvo.*

Solvo, solvi, sŏlūtum, to loose. So *absolvo,* to acquit, *dis-, ex-, per-, re-solvo.*
Volvo, volvi, vŏlūtum, to roll. So *ad-, circum-, con-, dē-, ē-, in-, ob-, per-, prō-, rĕ-, sub-volvo.*
2. *Texo,* to weave, (the only verb of this conjugation ending in *xo,*) has *texui, textum.* So *at-, circum-, con-, de-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-texo.*

Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation make the preterite in *īvi,* and the supine in *ītum;* as, *Mūnio, mūnīvi, mūnītum,* to fortify.
Exc. 1. *Singultio, singultīvi, singultum,* to sob.
Sĕpĕlio, sepĕlivi, sepultum, to bury.
Vĕnio, vēni, ventum, to come. So *ad-, ante-, circum-, con-, contra-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, intro-, ob-, per-, post-, præ-, sub-, super-vĕnio.*
Vēneo, vĕnii, ——, to be sold.
Salio, sălui, and *sălii, saltum,* to leap. The compounds have commonly *sĭlui,* sometimes *silii,* or *sĭlīvi* and *sultum;* as, *transĭlio, transĭlui, transĭlii* and *transĭlivi, transultum,* to leap over. So *ab-, as-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, re-, sub-, super-sĭlio.*
Exc. 2. *Amĭcio,* has *amĭcui, amictum,* seldom *amixi,* to cover or clothe.
Vincio, vinxi, vinctum, to tie. So *circum-, de-, e-, re-vincio.*
Sancio, sanxi, sanctum; and *sancivi, sancītum,* to establish or ratify.
Exc. 3. *Cambio, campsi, campsum,* to change money.
Sēpio, sepsi, septum, to hedge or enclose. So *circum-, dis-, inter-, ob-, præ-sēpio.*
Haurio, hausi, haustum, rarely *hausum,* to draw out, to empty, to drink. So *de-, ex-haurio.*
Sentio, sensi, sensum, to feel, to perceive, to think. So *as-, con-, dis-, per-, præ-, sub-sentio.*
Raucio, rausi, rausum, to be hoarse.
Exc. 4. *Sarcio, sarsi, sartum,* to mend or repair. So *ex-, re-sarcio.*
Farcio, farsi, fartum, to cram. So *con-fercio; ef-fercio,* or *ef-farcio; in-fercio,* or *in-farcio; re-fercio.*
Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, to prop or uphold. So *con-, ef-, in-, per-, suf-fulcio.*
Exc. 5. The compounds of *părio* have *pĕrui, pertum;* as, *ăpĕrio, apĕrui, ăpertum,* to open. So *ŏpĕrio,* to shut, to cover. But *compĕrio* has *compĕri, compertum,* to know a thing for certain. *Rĕpĕrio, repĕri, repertum,* to find.
Exc. 6. The following verbs want the supine. *Cæcūtio, cæcutīvi,* to be dim-sighted. *Gestio, gestivi,* to show one's joy by the gesture of his body. *Glŏcio, glŏcivi,* to cluck or cackle as a hen. *Dementio, dementivi,* to be mad. *Ineptio, ineptivi,* to play the fool. *Prōsĭlio, prosĭlui,* to leap forth. *Fĕrōcio, ferōcivi,* to be fierce.
Ferio, to strike, wants both preterite and supine. So *rĕfĕrio,* to strike again.

DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

A deponent verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or neuter signification; as, *Lŏquor,* I speak; *mŏrior,* I die.
A common verb, under a passive form, has either an active or passive signification; as, *Crīmĭnor,* I accuse, *or* I am accused.
Most deponent verbs of old, were the same with common verbs. They are called *Deponent,* because they have laid aside the passive sense.
Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect in the same manner as if they had the active voice; thus, *Lætor, lætātus, lætāri,* to rejoice; *vĕreor, verĭtus, vĕrēri,* to fear; *fungor, functus, fungi,* to discharge an office; *pŏtior, pŏtītus, potīri,* to enjoy, to be master of.

The learner should be taught to go through all the parts of deponent and common verbs, by proper examples in the several conjugations; thus, *lætor,* of the first conjugation, like *amor*

Indicative Mode.

Present. *Lætor,* I rejoice; *lætāris,* vel *-āre,* thou rejoicest, &c.
Imperfect. *Lætabar,* I rejoiced, or did rejoice; *lætabaris,* &c.

Perfect. *Lætatus sum* vel *fui*,* I have rejoiced, &c.
Plu-perf. *Lætatus eram* vel *fueram*, I had rejoiced, &c.
Future. *Lætabor*, I shall or will rejoice; *lætabĕris*, or *-abĕre*, &c.
Lætaturus sum, I am about to rejoice, *or* I am to rejoice, &c

Subjunctive Mode.

Present. *Læter*, I may rejoice; *lætēris*, or *-ēre*, &c.
Imperfect. *Lætarer*, I might rejoice; *lætārēris*, or *-rēre*, &c.
Perfect. *Lætatus sim* vel *fuerim*, I may have rejoiced, &c.
Plu-perf. *Lætatus essem* vel *fuissem*, I might have rejoiced, &c.
Future. *Lætatus fuero*, I shall have rejoiced, &c.

Imperative.

Present. *Lætare* vel *-ātor*, rejoice thou: *lætator*, let him rejoice, &c.

Infinitive.

Present. *Lætari*, to rejoice.
Perfect. *Lætatus esse* vel *fuisse*, to have rejoiced.
Future. *Lætaturus esse*, to be about to rejoice.
Lætaturus fuisse, to have been about to rejoice.

Participles.

Present. *Lætans*, rejoicing.
Perfect. *Lætatus*, having rejoiced.
Future. *Lætaturus*, about to rejoice.
Lætandus, to be rejoiced at.

In like manner conjugate in the First Conjugation,

Abōmĭnor, *to abhor.*
Adūlor, *to flatter.*
Æmŭlor, *to vie with, to envy.*
Altercor, *to dispute, to make a repartee.*
Apricor, *to bask in the sun.*
Arbritror, *to think.*
Aspernor, *to despise.*
Aversor, *to dislike.*
Auctiōnor, *to sell by auction.*
Aucŭpor, *and -o, to hunt after.*
Augŭror, *and -o, to forebode*, or *presage by augury.*
Auspĭcor, *to take an omen, to begin.*
Auxilior, *to assist.*
Bacchor, *to rage, to revel, to riot.*
Calumnior, *to accuse falsely.*
Căvillor, *to scoff.*
Caupōnor, *to huckster, to retail.*
Causor, *to plead in excuse, to blame.*
Circŭlor, *to meet in companies, to stroll, to talk.*
Cōmessor, *to revel.*
Cŏmĭtor, *to accompany.*
Commentor, *to meditate on*, or *write what one is to say.*
Conciōnor, *to harangue.*
Conflictor, *to struggle.*
Cōnor, *to endeavour.*
Conspĭcor, *to spy, to see.*
Contemplor, *to view.*
Convivor, *to feast.*
Cornicor, *to chatter like a crow.*
Crimĭnor, *to blame.*
Cunctor, *to delay.*
Dētestor, *to abhor.*
Dŏmĭnor, *to rule.*
Epŭlor, *to feast.*
Exsecror, *to curse.*
Fămŭlor, *to serve.*
Fērior, *to keep holy-day.*
Frustror, *to disappoint.*
Fūror, *to steal.*
Glōrior, *to boast.*
Grātŭlor, *to rejoice, to wish one joy.*
Grăvor, *to grudge.*
Hăriŏlor, *to conjecture.*
Helluor, *to guttle* or *gormandise, to waste.*
Hortor, *to encourage.*
Hallūcinor, *to speak at random, to err.*
Imāgĭnor, *to conceive.*
Imĭtor, *to imitate.*
Indignor, *to disdain.*
Infĭcior, *to deny.*
Insector, *to pursue, to inveigh against.*
Insidior, *to lie in wait.*
Interprĕtor, *to explain.*
Jăcŭlor, *to dart.*
Jŏcor, *to jest.*
Lāmentor, *to bewail.*
Lucror, *to gain.*
Luctor, *to wrestle.*
Māchĭnor, *to contrive.*
Mĕdĭcor, *to cure.*
Mĕdĭtor, *to muse*, or *ponder*
Mercor, *to purchase.*
Mētor, *to measure.*
Minor, *to threaten.*
Miror, *to wonder.*
Misĕror, *to pity.*
Mŏdĕror, *to rule.*
Mŏdŭlor, *to play a tune.*
Mōrigĕror, *to humour.*
Mŏror, *to delay.*
Mūnĕror, *to present.*
Mūtuor, *to borrow.*
Nūgor, *to trifle.*
Obtestor, *to beseech.*
Ŏdōror, *to smell.*
Ŏpĕror, *to work.*
Ŏpīnor, *to think.*
Ŏpĭtŭlor, *to help.*
Oscŭlor, *to kiss.*
Ōtior, *to be at leisure.*
Pālor, *to stroll* or *straggle.*
Palpor, *or -o, to stroke* or *soothe.*
Pātrōcĭnor, *to patronise.*
Percontor, *to inquire.*
Pĕregrĭnor, *to go abroad.*
Pĕrĭclĭtor, *to be in danger.*
Pignĕror, *to pledge.*
Piscor, *to fish.*
Pŏpŭlor, *and -o, to lay waste.*
Prædor, *to plunder.*
Prælior, *to fight.*
Præstōlor, *to wait for.*
Prævārĭcor, *to go crooked, to shuffle* or *prevaricate.*
Prĕcor, *to pray.*
Deprĕcor, *to entreat, to pray against.*
Prŏcor, *to ask, to woo.*
Rĕcordor, *to remember.*
Refrāgor, *to be against.*
Rimor, *to search.*
Rixor, *to scold* or *brawl.*
Rustĭcor, *to dwell in the country.*
Scrūtor, *to search.*
Sōlor, *to comfort.*
Spătior, *to walk abroad.*
Spĕcŭlor, *to view, to spy.*
Stĭpŭlor, *to stipulate* or *agree.*
Stŏmăchor, *to be angry.*
Suāvior, *to kiss.*
Suffrāgor, *to vote for one, to favour.*
Suspĭcor, *to suspect.*
Tergiversor, *to boggle, to put off.*
Testor, *to witness.*
Tūtor, *to defend.*
Vădor, *to give bail, to force to give bail.*
Vagor, *to wander.*
Vātĭcĭnor, *to prophesy.*
Vēlĭtor, *to skirmish.*
Vĕnĕror, *to worship.*
Vēnor, *to hunt.*
Versor, *to be employed.*
Vōcĭfĕror, *to brawl.*

* *Fui, fueram*, &c. are seldom joined to the participles of deponent verbs; and not so often to those of passive verbs as, *sum, eram*, &c.

In the Second Conjugation,

Mĕreor, mĕrĭtus, *to deserve.*
Tueor, tuĭtus, *or* tutus, *to defend.*
Pollĭcĕor, pollĭcĭtus, *to promise.*
Lĭceor, lĭcĭtus, *to bid at an auction.*

In the Third Conjugation,

Amplector, amplexus; *and* complector, complexus, *to embrace.*
Revertor, reversus, *to return.*

In the Fourth Conjugation,

Blandior, *to soothe, to flatter.*
Mentior, *to lie.*
Mōlior, *to attempt something difficult.*
Partior, *to divide.*
Sortior, *to draw* or *cast lots.*
Largior, *to give liberally.*

Participle Perfect, *Blandītus, mentītus, molītus, partītus, sortītus, largītus.*

There are no exceptions in the *First Conjugation.*

EXCEPTIONS IN THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Reor, rătus, to think.

Mĭsĕreor, misertus, or not contracted, *miserĭtus,* to pity.

Făteor, fassus, to confess. The compounds of *făteor* have *fessus;* as, *prŏfiteor, professus,* to profess. So *confiteor,* to confess, to own or acknowledge.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Lābor, lapsus, to slide. So *al-, col-, de-, di-, e-, il-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, trans-lābor.*

Ulciscor, ultus, to revenge.

Ūtor, ūsus, to use. So *ab-, de-ūtor.*

Lŏquor, lŏquūtus, or *locūtus,* to speak. So *al-, col-, circum-, e-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-lŏquor.*

Sĕquor, sĕquutus, or *sĕcutus,* to follow. So *as-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-sĕquor.*

Quĕror, questus, to complain. So *con-, inter-, præ-quĕror.*

Nītor, nisus, or *nixus,* to endeavour, to lean upon. So *ad-,* vel *an-, con-, e-, in-, ob-, re-, sub-nītor:* but the compounds have oftener *nixus.*

Păciscor, pactus, to bargain. So *de-peciscor.*

Grădior, gressus, to go. So *ag-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, præ-, prætĕr-, pro-, re-, retro-, sug-, super-, trans-grĕdior.*

Prŏficiscor, profectus, to go a journey.

Nanciscor, nactus, to get.

Patior, passus, to suffer. So *per-pĕtior.*

Apiscor, aptus, to get. So *adĭpiscor, adeptus;* and *indĭpiscor, indeptus.*

Commĭniscor, commentus, to devise or invent.

Fruor, fruĭtus or *fructus,* to enjoy. So *per fruor.*

Oblīviscor, oblītus, to forget.

Expergiscor, experrectus, to awake.

Morior, mortuus, to die. So *com-, de-, e-, im-, inter-, præ-mŏrior.*

Nascor, nātus, to be born. So *ad-, circum-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, re-, sub-nascor.*

Ŏrior, ortus, orīri, to rise. So *ab-, ad-, co-, ex-, ob-, sub-ŏrior.*

The three last form the future participle in *ĭtūrus;* thus, *mŏrĭtūrus, nascĭtūrus, ŏrĭtūrus.*

EXCEPTIONS IN THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Mētior, mensus, to measure. So *ad-, com-, di-, e-, præ-, re-mētior.*

Ordior, orsus, to begin. So *ex-, red-ordior.*

Expĕrior, expertus, to try.

Oppĕrior, oppertus, to wait or tarry for one.

The following verbs want the participle perfect:

Vescor, vesci, *to feed.*
Liquor, liqui, *to melt* or *be dissolved.*
Mĕdeor, mederi, *to heal.*
Rĕmĭniscor, reminisci, *to remember.*
Irascor, irasci, *to be angry.*
Ringor, ringi, *to grin like a dog.*
Prævertor, præverti, *to get before, to outrun.*
Diffĭteor, Diffĭteri, *to deny.*
Divertor, diverti, *to turn aside, to take lodging.*
Dēfĕtiscor, defĕtisci, *to be weary* or *faint.*

The verbs which do not fall under any of the foregoing rules are called *Irregular.*

H

The irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight: *sum, eo, queo, vŏlo, nŏlo, mālo, fĕro,* and *fio,* with their compounds.

But properly there are only six: *nolo* and *malo* being compounds of *volo.*

SUM has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds, *ad-, ab-, de-, inter-, præ-, ob-, sub-, super-sum,* and *in-sum,* which wants the preterite; thus, *adsum, adfui, adesse,* &c.

PROSUM, to do good, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e;* as,

Ind. *Pr.*	Prō-sum,	prod-es,	prod-est;	pro-sŭmus, &c.
Im.	Prŏd-ĕram,	prod-eras,	prod-erat;	prod-eramus, &c.
Sub. *Im.*	Prod-essem,	prod-esses,	prod-esset;	prod-esse-mus, &c.
Imperat.	Prod-esto,	prod-este.	Infinit. *Pres.* Prod-esse.	

In the other parts it is like *sum: Pro-sim, -sis,* &c. *Pro-fui, -fueram,* &c.

POSSUM is compounded of *pŏtis,* able, and *sum;* and is thus conjugated:

Possum, pŏtui, posse, *To be able.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Possum,	pŏtes,	pŏtest;	possŭmus,	potestis,	possunt.
Im.	Pot-ĕram,	-eras,	-erat;	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.
Per.	Pot-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uistis,	-uerunt. -uere.
Plu.	Pot-uĕram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut.	Pot-ĕro,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Pos-sim,	-sis,	-sit;	-sīmus,	-sitis,	-sint.
Im.	Pos-sem,	-ses,	-set;	-sēmus,	-sētis,	-sent.
Per.	Pot-uĕrim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Plu.	Pot-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissemus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
Fut.	Pot-uĕro,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Infinitive.

Pres. Posse. *Per.* Potuisse. *The rest wanting.*

EO, ivi, itum, ire, *To go.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Eo,	is,	it;	īmus,	ītis,	eunt.
Im.	Ibam,	ibas,	ibat;	ibamus,	ibatis,	ibant.
Per.	Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit;	ivimus,	ivistis,	iverunt, ivere
Plu.	Iveram,	iveras,	iverat,	iveramus,	iveratis,	iverant.
Fut.	Ibo,	ibis,	ibit;	ibimus,	ibitis,	ibunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Eam,	eas,	eat;	eamus,	eatis,	eant.
Im.	Irem,	ires,	iret;	iremus,	iretis,	irent.
Per.	Iverim,	iveris,	iverit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.
Plu.	Ivissem,	ivisses,	ivisset,	ivissemus,	ivissetis,	ivissent.
Fut.	Ivero,	iveris,	iverit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.

Imperative.

Pres. { I, Ito, } ito; { ite, itote, } eunto.

Infinitive.

Pres. Ire.
Perf. Ivisse,
Fut. Esse iturus, -a, -um.
Fuisse iturus.

Participles.
Pr. Iens, *Gen.* euntis.
Fut. Iturus, -a, -um.

Gerunds.
Eundum.
Eundi.
Eundo, &c.

Supines.
1. Itum.
2. Itu.

The compounds of *Eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ăd-, ăb-, ex-, ŏb-, rĕd-, sŭb-, pĕr-, cŏ-, ĭn-, præ-, ante-, prōd-eo:* only in the perfect, and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted; thus, *adeo, adii,* seldom *adivi, adĭtum, adire,* to go to; perfect, *adii, adiisti,* or *adisti,* &c. *adiĕram, adiĕrim,* &c. So likewise *veneo, venii;* ——, to be sold, (compounded of *venum* and *eo.*) But *ambio, -īvi, -ītum, -īre,* to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

Eo, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form; thus, *it,* he is going; *ĭvit,* he is gone; *ivĕrat,* he was gone; *iverit,* he may be gone, or shall be gone. So *vĕnit,* he is coming; *vēnit,* he is come; *vēnĕrat,* he was come, &c. In the passive voice these verbs, for the most part, are only used impersonally; as, *itur ab illo,* he is going; *ventum est ab illis,* they are come. We find some of the compounds of *eo,* however, used personally; as, *pericula adeuntur,* are undergone, Cic. *Libri Sibyllini inaditi sunt,* were looked into, Liv. *Flumen pedibus transiri potest,* Cæs. *Inimicitiæ subeantur,* Cic.

***QUEO*, I can, and *NEQUEO*, I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are seldom used.**

VOLO, vŏlui, velle, *To will*, or *to be willing*.

Indicative Mode

Pr.	Vŏl-o,	vis,	vult;	volŭmus,	vultis,	volunt.
Im.	Vol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Per.	Vol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uistis,	-uerunt, uere.
Plu	Vol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut	Vol-am,	-es,	-et;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Velim,	velis,	velit;	velīmus,	velitis,	velint.
Im.	Vellem,	velles,	vellet;	vellēmus,	velletis,	vellent.
Per.	Vol-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Plu.	Vol-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissemus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
Fut.	Vol-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Infinitive. — *Pres.* Velle. *Perf.* Voluisse.

Participle. — *Pres.* Volens.

The rest not used.

NOLO nolui, nolle, *To be unwilling*.

Indicative Modè.

Pr.	Nōlo,	non-vis,	non-vult	nolŭmus,	non-vultis,	nolunt.
Im.	Nol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Per.	Nol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uistis,	-uerunt. -uere.
Plu.	Nol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut.	Nolam,	noles,	nolet;	-nolemus,	noletis,	nolent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Nolim,	nolis,	nolit;	nolīmus,	nolītis,	nolint.
Im.	Nollem,	nolles,	nollet;	nollemus,	nolletis,	nollent.
Per.	Nol-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Plu.	Nol-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissemus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
Fut.	Nol-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Imperative.

	2. *Sing.*	2. *Plur.*
Pr.	Noli, *vel* Nolīto;	nolite, *vel* nolitote.

Infinitive. — *Pr.* Nolle. *Per.* Noluisse.

Participle. — *Pr.* Nolens. *The rest wanting.*

MALO, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Māl-o,	mavis,	mavult;	malŭmus,	mavultis,	malunt.
Im.	Mal-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Per.	Mal-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uistis,	-uerunt. -uere.
Plu.	Mal-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut.	Mal-am,	-es,	-et; &c. *this is scarcely in use.*			

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Malim,	malis,	malit;	malīmus,	malitis,	malint.
Im.	Mallem,	malles,	mallet;	mallemus,	malletis,	mallent.
Per.	Mal-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Plu.	Mal-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissemus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
Fu.	Mal-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Infinitive Mode.

Pres. Malle. *Per.* Maluisse. *The rest not used.*

FERO, tŭli, lātum, ferre, *To carry, to bring* or *suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Fĕro,	fers,	fert;	ferīmus,	fertis,	ferunt.
Im.	Fer-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Per.	Tuli,	tulisti,	tulit;	tulimus,	tulistis,	tulerunt, -ere.
Plu.	Tul-eram,	-eras,	-erat;	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.
Fut.	Feram,	feres,	feret;	feremus,	feretis,	ferent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Feram,	feras,	ferat;	feramus,	feratis,	ferant.
Im.	Ferrem,	ferres,	ferret;	ferremus,	ferretis,	ferrent.
Per.	Tul-erim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.
Plu.	Tulissem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issemus,	-issetis,	-issent.
Fut.	Tul-ero	eris	-erit	-erimus	-eritis,	-erint.

Imperative.

Pr. Fer, Ferto, ferto; ferte, fertote, ferunto.

Infinitive.

Pr. Ferre.
Per. Tulisse.
Fut. Esse laturus, a, um. Fuisse laturus, a, um.

Participles.

Pres. Ferens,
Fut. Laturus, -a, -um.

Gerunds.

Ferendum.
Ferendi.
Ferendo, &c.

Supines.

1. Lātum.
2. Latu.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fĕror, lātus, ferri, *To be brought.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Fĕror,	ferris, *vel* ferre,	fertur; ferĭmur, ferĭmini, fĕruntur.
Im.	Fer-ebar,	-ebaris, *vel* -ebare,	-ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur
Per.	Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.		
Plu.	Latus eram, &c. latus fueram, &c.		
Fut.	Ferar,	ferēris, *vel* ferēre,	feretur; feremur, feremini, ferentur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Ferar,	feraris, *vel* ferare,	feratur; feramur, feramini, ferantur
Im.	Ferrer,	ferreris, *vel* ferrere,	ferretur; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.
Per.	Latus sim, &c. latus fuerim, &c.		
Plu.	Latus essem, &c. latus fuissem, &c.		
Fut.	Latus fuero, &c.		

Imperative Mode.

Pr. Ferre *vel* fertor, fertor; ferimini, feruntor.

Infinitive.

Pr. Ferri.
Per. Esse *vel* fuisse, latus, -a, -um.
Fut. Latum iri.

Participles.

Per. Latus, -a, -um.
Fut. Ferendus, -a, -um.

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fĕro*; as, *affĕro, attŭli, allatum; aufĕro, abstuli, ablatum; diffĕro, distuli, dilatum; confĕro, contuli, collatum; infĕro, intuli, illatum; offĕro, obtuli, oblatum; effĕro, extuli, elatum.* So *circum-, per-, trans-, de-, pro-, ante-, præ-fĕro.* In some writers we find, *adfero, adtŭli, adlatum; conlatum, inlatum; obfero,* &c. for *affero,* &c.

Obs. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nolo* is contracted for *non volo; malo* for *magis volo; fero, fers, fert,* &c. for *feris, ferit,* &c. *Feror, ferris,* v. *ferre fertur,* for *ferĕris,* &c.

Obs. 2. The imperatives of *dīco, dūco,* and *făcio,* are contracted in the same manner with *fer.* thus we say, *dic, duc, fac,* instead of *dice, dūce, făce.* But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

FIO, factus, fĭĕri, *To be made* or *done, to become.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Fio,	fis,	fit;	fimus,	fitis,	fiunt.
Im.	Fiebam,	fiebas,	fiebat;	fiebatis,	fiebatis,	fiebant.
Per.	Factus sum, &c. factus fui, &c.					
Plu.	Factus eram, &c factus fueram, &c.					
Fut.	Fiam,	fies,	fiet;	fiemus,	fietis,	fient.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Fiam,	fias,	fiat;	fiamus,	fiatis,	fiant.
Im.	Fiĕrem,	fieres,	fieret;	fieremus,	fieretis,	fierent
Per.	Factus sim, &c. factus fuerim, &c.					
Plu.	Factus essem, &c. factus fuissem, &c.					
Fut	Factus fuero, &c.					

Imperative.

Pr. Fi, Fito, fito; fite, fitote, fiunto.

Infinitive.

Pr. Fieri.
Per. Esse *vel* fuisse factus, -a, -um
Fut. Factum iri.

Participles.

Per. Factus, -a, -um.
Fut. Faciendus, -a, -um.

Supine.

Factu.

The compounds of *făcio* which retain *a,* have also *fio* in the passive, and *fac* in the imperative active; as, *calefacio,* to warm, *calefio, calefac:* but those which change *a* into *i,* form the passive regularly, and have *fīce* in the imperative; as, *conficio, confīce; conficior, confectus, confĭci.* We find, however, *confit,* it is done, and *confĭeri; defit,* it is wanting; *infit,* he begins.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called *Neuter Passive Verbs,* which like *fio,* form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *sŏleo, solĭtus, solēre,* to use; *audeo, ausus, audēre,* to dare; *gaudeo, gavīsus, gaudēre,* to rejoice; *fīdo, fīsus, fidĕre,* to trust: So *confīdo,* to trust; and *diffīdo,* to distrust; which also have

confidi and *diffidi*. Some add *mœreo*, *mœstus*, *mœrere*, to be sad; but *mœstus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say *jūratus sum* and *cœnatus sum*, for *juravi* and *cœnavi*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs, wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification; as, *vāpŭlo*, *-avi*, *-atum*, to be beaten *or* whipped; *vēneo*, to be sold; *exŭlo*, to be banished, &c.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not used in certain tenses, and numbers and persons.

These three, *ōdi*, *cœpi*, and *mĕmĭni*, are only used in the preterite tenses; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs;* though they have sometimes likewise a present signification; thus,

Odi, I hate, *or* have hated, *oderam*, *oderim*, *odissem*, *odero*, *odisse*. Participles, *osus*, *osurus ; exosus*, *perosus*.

Cœpi, I begin, *or* have begun, *cœperam*, *-erim*, *-issem*, *-ero*, *-isse*. Supine, *cœptu*. Participles, *cœptus*, *cœpturus*.

Mĕmĭni, I remember, *or* have remembered, *memineram*, *-erim*, *-issem*, *-ero*, *-isse*. Imperative, *memento*, *mementote*.

Instead of *odi*, we sometimes say, *osus sum ;* and always *exosus*, *perosus sum*, and not *exodi*, *perodi*. We say, *opus cœpit fieri*, or *cœptum est*.

To these some add *nōvi*, because it frequently has the signification of the present, *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, though it comes from *nosco*, which is complete.

Fŭro, to be mad, *dor*, to be given, and *for*, to speak, as also *der*, and *fer*, are not used in the first person singular; thus, we say, *daris*, *datur;* but never *dor*.

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following most frequently occur: *Aio*, I say; *inquam*, I say; *fŏrem*, I should be; *ausim*, contracted for *ausus sim*, I dare; *faxim*, I'll see to it, *or* I will do it; *ave*, and *salve*, save you, hail, good-morrow; *cedo*, tell thou, *or* give me; *quæso*, I pray.

Ind. Pr.	Aio,	ais,	ait:	——	——	aiunt.
Im.	Aiebam,	-ebas,	-ebat:	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Per.	——	aisti,	——	——	——	——
Sub. Pr.	——	aias,	aiat:	——	aiatis,	aiant.
Imperat.	Ai.				*Particip. Pres.*	Aiens.
Ind. Pr.	Inquam,	-quis,	-quit:	-quĭmus,	-quĭtis,	-quiunt.
Im.	——	——	inquiebat:	——	——	inquiebant.
Per.	——	inquisti,	——	——	——	——
Fut.	——	inquies,	inquiet:	——	——	——
Imperat.	Inque, inquĭto.				*Particip. Pres.*	Inquiens.
Sub. Im. } *Plu.* }	Fŏrem,	fores,	foret	foremus,	foretis,	forent.

Inf. Fore, *to be hereafter*, or *to be about to be*, the same with *esse futurus*.

Sub. Pr.	Ausim,	ausis,	ausit:	——	——	——
Per.	Faxim,	faxis,	faxit:	——	——	faxint.
Fut.	Faxo,	faxis,	faxit:	——	faxĭtis,	faxint.

Note. *Faxim* and *faxo* are used instead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

Imper. Avē *vel* avēto ; *plur.* avete *vel* avetote. *Inf.* avere,
—— Salve *v.* salvēto ; — salvēte *v.* salvetote. — salvere.
Indic. Fut. ——— Salvebis.
Imperat. second person sing. Cedo, *plur.* cedite.
Indic. pres. first person sing. Quæso, *plur.* quæsūmus.

Most of the other Defective verbs are but single words, and rarely to be found but among the poets; as, *infit*, he begins; *defit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a verb and the conjunction *si;* as, *sis* for *si vis*, if thou wilt: *sultis* for *si vultis ; sodes* for *si audes:* equivalent to *quæso*, I pray; *capsis* for *cap si vis*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any *person* or nominative before it.

Impersonal verbs in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person; thus, *dēlectat*, it delights; *dĕcet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *ēvĕnit*, it happens:

		1st Conj.	*2d Conj.*	*3d Conj.*	*4th Conj.*
Ind.	*Pr.*	Delectat,	Dĕcet,	Contingit,	Evĕnit,
	Im.	Delectabat,	Decebat,	Contingebat,	Eveniebat
	Per.	Delectavit,	Decuit,	Contĭgit,	Evēnit,
	Plu.	Delectaverat,	Decuerat,	Contigerat,	Evenerat,
	Fut.	Delectabit.	Decebit.	Continget.	Eveniet.

Sub.	*Pr.*	Dĕlectet,	Deceat,	Contingat,	Eveniat.
	Im.	Delectaret,	Decēret,	Contingĕret,	Eveniret.
	Per.	Delectaverit,	Decuerit,	Contigerit,	Evenerit,
	Plu.	Delectavisset,	Decuisset,	Contigisset,	Evenisset,
	Fut.	Delectaverit.	Decuerit.	Contigerit.	Evenerit.
Inf.	*Pr.*	Delectāre,	Decēre,	Contingĕre,	Evenīre,
	Per.	Delectavisse.	Decuisse.	Contĭgisse.	Evenisse.

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnātur, făvētur, curritur, vĕnītur;* from *pugno,* to fight; *faveo,* to favour; *curro,* to run; *venio,* to come:

Ind.	*Pr.*	Pugnātur,	Făvētur,	Currĭtur,	Vĕnītur,
	Im.	Pugnabatur,	Favebatur,	Currebatur,	Veniebatur,
	Per.	Pugnatum est,	Fautum est,	Cursum est,	Ventum est,
	Plu.	Pugnatum erat,	Fautum erat,	Cursum erat,	Ventum erat,
	Fut.	Pugnabitur.	Favebitur.	Curretur.	Venietur.
Sub.	*Pr.*	Pugnetur,	Faveatur,	Curratur,	Veniatur,
	Im.	Pugnaretur,	Faveretur,	Curretur,	Veniretur,
	Per.	Pugnatum sit,	Fautum sit,	Cursum sit,	Ventum sit,
	Plu.	Pugnatum esset,	Fautum esset,	Cursum esset,	Ventum esset,
	Fut.	Pugnatum fuerit.	Fautum fuerit.	Cursum fuerit.	Ventum fuĕrit.
Inf.	*Pr.*	Pugnarī,	Faveri,	Curri,	Venīri,
	Per.	Pugnatum esse,	Fautum esse,	Cursum esse,	Ventum esse,
	Fut.	Pugnatum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

Obs. 1. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative, but instead of it we take the subjunctive; as, *delectet,* let it delight, &c. nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds, except a few; as, *pœnitens, -dum, -dus,* &c. *Induci ad pudendum et pigendum,* Cic. In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Obs. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation: *dĕcet,* it becomes; *pœnĭtet,* it repents; *oportet,* it behoves; *misĕret,* it pities; *pĭget,* it irketh; *pŭdet,* it shameth; *lĭcet,* it is lawful; *lĭbet* or *lŭbet,* it pleaseth; *tædet,* it wearieth; *lĭquet,* it appears. Of which the following have a double preterite; *miseret, miseruit,* or *misertum est; piget, piguit,* or *pigitum est; pudet, puduit,* or *puditum est; licet, licuit,* or *licitum est; libet, libuit,* or *libitum est; tædet, tæduit, tæsum est,* oftener *pertæsum est.* But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations.

In the first, *Jŭvat, spectat, văcat, stat, constat, præstat, restat,* &c.

In the second, *Appāret, attĭnet, pertĭnet, dēbet, dŏlet, nŏcet, lătet, liquet, pătet, plăcet, displĭcet, sĕdet, sŏlet,* &c.

In the third, *Accĭdit, incĭpit, desĭnit, sufficit,* &c.

In the fourth, *Convĕnit, expĕdit,* &c.

Also irregular verbs, *Est, obest, prōdest, pŏtest, intĕrest, supĕrest; sit, prætĕrit, nequit* and *nequītur, subit, confert, rĕfert,* &c.

Obs. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *Fulgŭrat, fulmĭnat, tŏnat, grandĭnat, gĕlat, pluit, ningit, lucescit, advesperascit,* &c.

Obs. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the cases which they govern; as, *placet mihi, tibi, illi,* it pleases me, thee, him; *or* I please, thou pleasest, &c. *pugnatur a me, a te, ab illo,* I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c. So *Curritur, venitur, a me, a te,* &c. I run, thou runnest, &c. *Favetur tibi a me,* Thou art favoured by me, or I favour thee, &c.

Obs. 5. Verbs are used personally or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they express, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: thus, we can say, *ego placeo tibi,* I please you; but we cannot say, *si places audire,* if you please to hear, but *si placet tibi audire.* So we can say, *multa homini contingunt,* many things happen to a man: but instead of *ego contĭgi esse domi,* we must either say, *me contigit esse domi,* or *mihi contigit esse domi,* I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of Impersonal verbs can only be acquired by practice.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

Those are called *Redundant Verbs* which have different forms to express the same sense: thus, *assentio* and *assentior,* to agree; *fabrĭco* and *fabrĭcor,* to frame; *mereo* and *mereor,* to deserve, &c. These verbs, however, under the passive form have likewise a passive signification.

Several verbs are used in different conjugations.

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and rarely of the third; as, *lavo, lavas, lavāre;* and *lavo, lavis, lavĕre,* to wash.

2. Some are usually of the second, and rarely of the third; as,

Ferveo, ferves, *and* fervo, fervis, *to boil.*

Fulgeo, fulges, *and* fulgo, fulgis, *to shine.*

Strīdeo, strides, *and* strīdo, stridis, *to make a hissing noise, to creak*

Tueor, tuēris, *and* tuor, tuĕris, *to defend.*

To these add *tergeo, terges;* and *tergo, tergis,* to wipe, which are equally common.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and rarely of the fourth; as,

Fodio, fodis, fodĕre, *and* fodio, fodis, fodīre, *to dig.*
Sallo, sallis, sallĕre, *and* sallio, sallis, sallīre, *to salt.*
Arcesso, -is, arcessere, *and* arcessio, arcessīre, *to send for.*
Morior, morĕris, mori, *and* morior, morīris, morīri, *to die.*
So Orior, orĕris, *and* orior, orīris, orīri, *to rise.*
Potior, potĕris, *and* potior, potīris, potīri, *to enjoy.*

There is likewise a verb, which is usually of the second conjugation, and more rarely of the fourth, namely, *cio, cies, ciēre;* and *cio, cis, cīre,* to rouse; whence, *accīre,* and *accītus.*

To these we may add the verb *EDO,* to eat, which though regularly formed, also agrees in several of its parts with *sum;* thus,

Ind. Pres. *Edo, edis* or *es, edit* or *est;* —— *editis* or *estis* ——
Sub. Imperf. *Ederem* or *essem, ederes* or *esses,* &c.
Imp. *Ede* or *es, edito* or *esto; edite* or *este, editote* or *estote.*
Inf. Pres. *Edere* or *esse.*
Passive Ind. Pres. *Editur* or *estur.*

It may not be improper here to subjoin a list of those verbs which resemble one another in some of their parts, though they differ in signification. Of these some agree in the present, some in the preterite, and the others in the supine.

1. The following agree in the present, but are differently conjugated:

Aggĕro, -as, *to heap up.*	Aggĕro, -is, *to bring together.*
Appello, -as, *to call.*	Appello, -is, *to drive, to arrive.*
Compello, -as, *to address.*	Compello, -is, *to drive together.*
Colligo, -as, *to bind.*	Collīgo, -is, *to gather together.*
Consterno, -as, *to astonish.*	Consterno, -is, *to strew.*
Effĕro, -as, *to enrage.*	Effero, -fers, *to bring out.*
Fundo, -as, *to found.*	Fundo, -is, *to pour out.*
Mando, -as, *to command.*	Mando, -is, *to chew.*
Obsĕro, -as, *to lock.*	Obsĕro, -is, *to beset.*
Vŏlo, -as, *to fly.*	Vŏlo, vis, *to will.*

Of this class some have a different quantity; as,

Cōlo, -as, *to strain.*	Cŏlo, -is, *to till.*
Dīco, -as, *to dedicate.*	Dico, -is, *to say.*
Edŭco, -as, *to train up.*	Edūco, -is, *to lead forth.*
Lēgo, -as, *to send on an embassy.*	Lĕgo, -is, *to read.*
Vădo, -as, *to wade.*	Vādo, -is, *to go.*

2. The following Verbs agree in the Preterite:

Aceo, acui, *to be sour.*	Acuo, acui, *to sharpen.*
Cresco, crēvi, *to grow.*	Cerno, crēvi, *to see.*
Frigeo, frixi, *to be cold.*	Frīgo, frixi, *to fry.*
Fulgeo, fulsi, *to shine.*	Fulcio, fulsi, *to prop.*
Lūceo, luxi, *to shine.*	Lūgeo, luxi, *to mourn.*
Păveo, pāvi, *to be afraid.*	Pasco, pāvi, *to feed.*
Pendeo, pĕpendi, *to hang.*	Pendo, pĕpendi, *to weigh.*

3. The following agree in the Supine:

Cresco, crētum, *to grow.*	Cerno, cretum, *to behold.*
Măneo, mansum, *to stay.*	Mando, mansum, *to chew.*
Sto, statum, *to stand.*	Sisto, statum, *to stop.*
Succenseo, -censum, *to be angry.*	Succendo, -censum, *to kindle.*
Tĕneo, tentum, *to hold.*	Tendo, tentum, *to stretch out*
Verro, versum, *to sweep.*	Verto, versum, *to turn.*
Vinco, victum, *to overcome.*	Vīvo, victum, *to live*

THE OBSOLETE CONJUGATION.

This chiefly occurs in old writers, and only in particular conjugations and tenses.

1. The ancient Latins made the imperfect of the indicative active of the fourth conjugation in *IBAM,* without the *e;* as, *audībam, scibam,* for *audiēbam, sciēbam.*

2. In the future of the indicative of the fourth conjugation, they used *IBO* in the active, and *ibor* in the passive voice; as, *dormibo, dormībor,* for *dormiam, dormiar.*

3. The present of the subjunctive anciently ended in *IM;* as, *edim* for *edam, duim* for *dem.*

4. The perfect of the subjunctive active sometimes occurs in *SSIM,* and the future in *SSO;* as, *levassim, levasso,* for *levaverim, levavero; capsim, capso,* for *caperim, capero.* Hence the future of the infinitive was formed in *ASSERE;* as, *levassere,* for *levaturus esse.*

5. In the second person of the present of the imperative passive, we find *MINO* in the singular, and *mĭnor* in the plural; as, *famĭno,* for *fare;* and *progrĕdimĭnor,* for *progrĕdimini.*

6. The syllable *ER* was frequently added to the present of the infinitive passive; as, *farier* for *fari dicier,* for *dici.*

7. The participles of the future time active, and perfect passive, when joined with the verb *esse,* were sometimes used as indeclinable; thus, *credo inimicos dicturum esse,* for *dicturos,* Cic *Cohortes ad me missum facias,* for *missas,* Cic. ad Attic. viii. 12.

DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominative;* as, *Cœno*, to sup; *laudo*, to praise; *fraudo*, to defraud; *lapĭdo*, to throw stones; *opĕror*, to work; *frumentor*, to forage; *lignor*, to gather fuel, &c. from *cœna*, *laus*, *fraus*, &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance, they are called *Imitative;* as, *Patrisso*, *Græcor*, *būbŭlo*, *cornīcor*, &c. I imitate or resemble my father, a Grecian, an owl, a crow, &c. from *pater*, *Græcus*, *bubo*, *cornix*.

Of those derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Desideratives*.

1. *FREQUENTATIVES* express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *ātu* into *ĭto*, in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *u* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo*, to cry, *clamĭto*, to cry frequently; *terreo*, *terrĭto;* *verto*, *verso;* *dormio*, *dormīto*.

In like manner, Deponent verbs form Frequentatives in *or;* as, *minor*, to threaten; *minĭtor*, to threaten frequently.

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato* from *no;* *noscito* from *nosco;* *scitor*, or rather *sciscĭtor* from *scio;* *pavĭto* from *paveo;* *sector* from *sequor;* *loquĭtor* from *loquor*. So *quærĭto*, *fundĭto*, *agĭto*, *fluito*, &c.

From Frequentative verbs are also formed other Frequentatives; as, *curro*, *curso*, *cursito;* *pello*, *pulso*, *pulsĭto*, or by contraction, *pulto;* *capio*, *capto*, *capĭto;* *cano*, *canto*, *cantito;* *defendo*, *defensi*, *defensĭto;* *dico*, *dicto*, *dictito;* *gero*, *gesto*, *gestito;* *jacio*, *jacto*, *jactito;* *venio*, *ventĭto;* *mutio*, *musso*, (for *mutito*) *mussĭto*, &c.

Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning more strongly.

2. *INCEPTIVE Verbs* mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person singular of the present of the indicative, by adding *co;* as, *caleo*, to be hot, *cales*, *calesco*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *lăbasco* from *labo;* *tremisco* from *tremo*, *obdormisco* from *obdormio*. *Hisco* from *hio* is contracted for *hiasco*. Inceptives are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerasco* from *puer;* *dulcesco* from *dulcis;* *juvenesco* from *juvenis*.

All Inceptives are Neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. *DESIDERATIVE Verbs* signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine, by adding *rio*, and shortening the *u;* as, *cœnătŭrio*, I desire to sup, from *cœnatu*. They are all of the fourth conjugation; and want both preterite and supine, except these three, *ēsŭrio*, *-ivi*, *-itum*, to desire to eat; *partŭrio*, *-ivi*, —, to be in travail: *nuptŭrio*, *ivi*, —, to desire to be married.

There are a few verbs in LLO, which are called *Diminutive;* as, *cantillo*, *sorbillo*, *-are*, I sing, I sup a little. To these some add *albĭco*, and *candĭco*, *-are*, to be or to grow whitish; also, *nigrico*, *fodico*, and *vellico*. Some verbs in SSO are called *Intensive;* as, *Capesso*, *facesso*, *petesso* or *petisso*, I take, I do, I seek earnestly.

Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepositions. Many of these simple verbs are not in use; as, *Fŭto*, *fendo*, *specio*, *gruo*, &c. The component parts usually remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added; as, *prodeo*, for *pro-eo:* or taken away; as, *asporto*, *omitto*, *trado*, *pejĕro*, *pergo*, *debeo*, *præbeo*, &c. for *absporto*, *obmitto*, *transdo*, *perjuro*, *perrego*, *dehibeo*, *præhibeo*, &c. So *demo*, *premo*, *sumo*, of *de*, *pro*, *sub*, and *emo*, which anciently signified *to take*, or *to take away*. Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition, is changed; as, *damno*, *condemno;* *calco*, *conculco;* *lædo*, *collīdo;* *audio*, *obedio*, &c. *Affĕro*, *aufĕro*, *collaudo*, *implĭco*, &c. for *adfero*, *abfero*, *conlaudo*, *inplico*, &c.

PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time.

It is so called, because it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb, having gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both.

Participles are declined like adjectives; and their signification is various, according to the nature of the verbs from which they come; only participles in *dus*, are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

Latin verbs have four Participles, the present and future active; as, *Amans*, loving; *ămātūrus*, about to love: and the perfect and future passive; as, *amātus*, loved, *amandus*, to be loved.

The Latins have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice; which defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in English, we use a conjunction, and the plu-perfect of the subjunctive in Latin, or some other tense, according to its connexion with the other words of a sentence; as, he having loved, *quum amavisset*, &c.

Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles; as, *Sĕdens*, *sessurus;* *stans*, *statūrus*.

From some neuter verbs, are formed Participles of the perfect tense; as, *Erratus, festinatus, juratus, laboratus, vigilatus, cessatus, sudatus, triumphatus, regnatus, decursus, desitus, emeritus, emersus, obitus, placitus, successus, occasus,* &c. and also of the future in *dus*; as, *Jurandus, vigilandus, regnandus, carendus, dormiendus, erubescendus,* &c. Neuter passive verbs are equally various *Veneo* has no participle; *Fido*, only *fidens* and *fisus*; *soleo, solens,* and *solitus*; *vapulo, vapulans,* and *vapulaturus*; *Gaudeo, gaudens, gavisus,* and *gavisurus*; *Audeo, audens, ausus, ausurus, audendus. Ausus* is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *Ausi omnes immane nefas, ausoque potiti.* Virg. *Æn.* vi. 624.

Deponent and Common verbs have commonly four Participles; as,

Loquens, speaking; *locuturus*, about to speak; *locutus*, having spoken; *loquendus*, to be spoken. *Dignans*, vouchsafing; *dignaturus*, about to vouchsafe; *dignatus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, *or* having been vouchsafed; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed. Many participles of the perfect tense from Deponent verbs have both an active and passive sense; as, *Abominatus, conatus confessus, adortus, amplexus, blanditus, largitus, mentitus, oblitus, testatus, veneratus,* &c.

There are several Participles compounded with *in* signifying *not*, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition: as, *Insciens, insperans, indicens* for *nondicens, inopinans,* and *neco pinans, immerens; Illæsus, impransus, inconsultus, incustoditus, immetatus, impunitus, imparatus, incomitatus, incomptus, indemnatus, indotatus, incorruptus, interritus,* and *imperterritus, intestatus, inausus, inopinatus, inultus, incensus* for *non census*, not registered; *infectus* for *non factus, invisus* for *non visus, indictus* for *non dictus,* &c. There is a different *incensus* from *incendo; infectus* from *inficio; invisus* from *invideo; indictus* from *indico,* &c.

If from the signification of a Participle we take away *time*, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison; as,

Amans, loving, *amantior, amantissimus; doctus*, learned, *doctior, doctissimus*: or a substantive; as, *Præfectus*, a commander or governor; *consonans*, f. sc. *litera*, a consonant; *continens*, f. sc. *terra*, a continent; *confluens*, m. a place where two rivers run together; *oriens*, m. sc. *sol*, the east; *occidens*, m. the west; *dictum*, a saying; *scriptum*, &c.

There are many words in *ATUS, ITUS,* and *UTUS*, which, although resembling participles, are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns, and not from verbs; as, *alatus, barbatus, cordatus, caudatus, cristatus, auritus, pellitus, turritus; astutus, cornutus, nasutus,* &c. winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *auratus, æratus, argentatus, ferratus, plumbatus, gypsatus, calceatus, clypeatus, galeatus, tunicatus, larvatus, palliatus, lymphatus, purpuratus, prætextatus,* &c. covered with gold, brass, silver, &c. are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *calamistratus*, frizzled, crisped, or curled; *crinitus*, having long hair; *peritus*, skilled, &c.

There is a kind of Verbal adjectives in *BUNDUS*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much resemble Participles in their signification, but generally express the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of the action; as, *vitabundus*, the same with *valdè vitans*, avoiding much. *Sal. Jug.* 60, and 101. *Liv.* xxv. 13. So *errabundus, ludibundus, populabundus, moribundus,* &c.

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

GERUNDS are participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed; and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension through all the cases of the singular number, except the vocative.

There are both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used however in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the Gerund, *Delector legendo Ciceronem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectione Ciceronis*, I am delighted with the reading of *Cicero*.

The Gerund and Future Participle of verbs in *io*, and some others, often take *u*, instead of *e*; as, *faciundum, di, do, dus; experiundum, potiundum, gerundum, potundum, ducundum,* &c. for *faciendum,* &c.

SUPINES have much the same signification with Gerunds, and may be indifferently applied to any person or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases.

The former Supine is commonly used in an active, and the latter in a passive sense, but sometimes the contrary; as, *coctum non vapulatum, dudum conductus fui*, i. e. *ut vapularem*, v. *verberarer*, to be beaten. *Plaut.*

ADVERB.

An adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, *added to a verb*, adjective, or other adverb, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

All adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote *Circumstance*; and those which denote *Quality, Manner,* &c.

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE are chiefly those of *Place, Time,* and *Order*.

1. Adverbs of *Place*, are five-fold, namely, such as signify,

1. *Motion or rest in a place.*

Ubi?	*Where?*
Hic,	*Here.*
Illic, Isthic, Ibi,	*There.*
Intus,	*Within.*
Fŏris,	*Without.*
Ŭbique,	*Every where.*
Nusquam,	*No where.*
Ălĭcubi,	*Somewhere.*
Alĭbi,	*Elsewhere.*
Ŭbivis,	*Any where.*
Ibidem,	*In the same place.*

2. *Motion to a place.*

Quo?	*Whither?*
Huc,	*Hither.*
Illuc, Isthuc,	*Thither.*
Intrò,	*In.*
Fŏras,	*Out.*
Eò,	*To that place.*
Aliò,	*To another place.*
Aliquo,	*To some place.*
Eōdem,	*To the same place.*

3. *Motion towards a place.*

Quorsum?	*Whitherward?*
Versus,	*Towards.*
Horsum,	*Hitherward.*
Illorsum,	*Thitherward.*
Sursum,	*Upward.*
Deorsum,	*Downward.*
Antrorsum,	*Forward.*
Retrorsum,	*Backward.*
Dextrorsum,	*Towards the right.*
Sinistrorsum,	*Towards the left.*

4. *Motion from a place.*

Unde?	*Whence?*
Hinc,	*Hence.*
Illinc, Isthinc, Inde,	*Thence.*
Indĭdem,	*From the same place.*
Aliunde,	*From elsewhere.*
Alĭcunde,	*From some place.*
Sĭcunde,	*If from any place.*
Utrinquè,	*On both sides.*
Sŭperne,	*From above.*
Inferne,	*From below.*
Cælĭtus,	*From heaven.*
Fundĭtus,	*From the ground*

5. *Motion through or by a plac*

Quà?	*Which way?*
Hàc,	*This way.*
Illàc, Isthàc,	*That way.*
Ăliâ,	*Another way.*

2. Adverbs of *Time* are three-fold, namely, such as signify,

1. *Some particular time, either present, past, future, or indefinite.*

Nunc,	*Now.*
Hŏdie,	*To-day.*
Tunc, Tum,	*Then.*
Hĕri,	*Yesterday.*
Dŭdum, Prĭdem,	*Heretofore.*
Prĭdie,	*The day before.*
Nŭdiustertius,	*Three days ago.*
Nŭper,	*Lately.*
Jamjam,	*Presently.*
Mox,	*Immediately.*
Stătim,	*By and by.*
Prŏtĭnus,	*Instantly.*
Illĭco,	*Straightway.*
Cras,	*To-morrow.*
Postridie,	*The day after.*
Pĕrendie,	*Two days hence.*
Nondum,	*Not yet.*
Quando?	*When?*
Aliquando, Nonnunquam, Interdum,	*Sometimes.*
Semper,	*Ever, always.*
Nunquam,	*Never.*
Intĕrim,	*In the mean time.*
Quŏtĭdie,	*Daily.*

2. *Continuance of time*

Diu,	*Long.*
Quamdiu?	*How long*
Tamdiu,	*So long.*
Jamdiu, Jamdŭdum, Jampridem,	*Long ago.*

3. *Vicissitude or repetition of time.*

Quŏties?	*How often?*
Sæpe,	*Often.*
Rārò,	*Seldom.*
Tŏties,	*So often.*
Alĭquŏties,	*For several times.*
Vĭcissim, Alternātim,	*By turns.*
Rursus, Itĕrum,	*Again.*
Sŭbinde, Identĭdem,	*Ever and anon, now and then.*
Sĕmel,	*Once.*
Bis,	*Twice.*
Ter,	*Thrice.*
Quăter,	*Four times, &c.*

3. Adverbs of *Order*.

Inde,	*Then.*
Deinde,	*After that.*
Dehinc,	*Henceforth.*
Porro,	*Moreover.*
Deinceps,	*So forth.*
Dĕnuo,	*Of new.*
Dĕnique,	*Finally.*
Postremò,	*Lastly.*
Primò, -ùm,	*First.*
Sĕcundò, -ùm,	*Secondly.*
Tertiò, -ùm,	*Thirdly.*
Quartò, -ùm,	*Fourthly, &c.*

II. Adverbs denoting QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*. Those called *Absolute* denote,

1. QUALITY, simply; as, *benè*, well; *malè*, ill; *fortiter*, bravely; and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.
2. CERTAINTY; as, *profectò*, *certè*, *sanè*, *planè*, *næ*, *utique*, *ita*, *etiam*, truly, verily, yes; *quidni*, why not? *omnino*, certainly.
3. CONTINGENCE; as, *fortè*, *forsan*, *fortassis*, *fors*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.
4. NEGATION; as, *non*, *haud*, not; *nequaquam*, not at all; *neutiquam*, by no means; *minime*, nothing less.
5. PROHIBITION; as, *ne*, not.
6. SWEARING; as, *hercle*, *pol*, *edepol*, *mecastor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.
7. EXPLAINING; as, *utpote*, *videlicet*, *scilicet*, *nimirum*, *nempe*, to wit, namely.
8. SEPARATION; as, *seorsum*, apart; *separatim*, separately; *sigillatim*, one by one; *viritim*, man by man; *oppidatim*, town by town, &c.
9. JOINING TOGETHER; as, *simul*, *unà*, *pariter*, together; *generaliter*, generally; *universaliter*, universally; *plerumque*, for the most part.
10. INDICATION *or* POINTING OUT; as, *en*, *ecce*, lo, behold.
11. INTERROGATION; as, *cur*, *quare*, *quamobrem*, why, wherefore? *num*, *an*, whether? *quomodo*, *quì*, how? To which add, *Ubi*, *quò*, *quorsum*, *unde*, *quà*, *quando*, *quamdiu*, *quoties*.

Those Adverbs which are called *Comparative*, denote,

1. EXCESS; as, *Valdè*, *maximè*, *magnopere*, *maximopere*, *summopere*, *admodum*, *oppidò*, *perquam*, *longè*, greatly, very much, exceedingly; *nimis*, *nimium*, too much; *prorsus*, *penitus*, *omnino*, altogether, wholly: *magis*, more; *melius*, better; *pejus*, worse; *fortius*, more bravely; and *optimè*, best; *pessimè*, worst; *fortissimè*, most bravely; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.
2. DEFECT; as, *Ferme*, *ferè*, *propemodum*, *penè*, almost; *parum*, little; *paulo*, *paululum*, very little.
3. PREFERENCE; as, *potius*, *satius*, rather; *potissimum*, *præcipuè*, *præsertim*, chiefly, especially; *imò*, yes, nay, nay rather, yea rather.
4. LIKENESS *or* EQUALITY; as, *ita*, *sic*, *adeò*, so; *ut*, *uti*, *sicut*, *sicuti*, *velut*, *veluti*, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *quasi*, as, as if; *quemadmodum*, even as; *satis*, enough; *ibidem*, in like manner; *juxta*, alike, equally.
5. UNLIKENESS *or* INEQUALITY; as, *aliter*, *secus*, otherwise, *alioqui* or *alioquin*, else; *nedum*, much more *or* much less.
6. ABATEMENT; as, *sensim*, *paulatim*, *pedetentim*, by degrees, piece-meal; *vix*, scarcely; *ægrè*, hardly, with difficulty.
7. EXCLUSION; as, *tantum*, *solum*, *modò*, *tantummodo*, *duntaxat*, *demum*, only.

DERIVATION, COMPARISON, AND COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived,

1. From substantives, and end commonly in TIM *or* TUS; as, *Partim*, partly, by parts; *nominatim*, by name; *generatim*, by kinds generally; *speciatim*, *vicatim*, *gregatim*; *radicitus*, from the root, &c.
2. From adjectives, and these are by far the most numerous. Such as come from adjectives of the first and second declension, usually end in E; as, *liberè*, freely; *plenè*, fully: some in O, UM, and TER; as, *falsò*, *tantùm*, *graviter*: a few in A, ITUS, and IM; as, *rectà*, *antiquitus*, *privatim*. Some are used two or three ways, as, *primùm*, v. *-ò*; *purè*, *-iter*; *certè*, *-ò*; *cautè*, *-tim*; *humanè*, *-iter*, *-itus*, *publicè*, *publicitus*, &c. Adverbs from adjectives of the third declension commonly end in TER, seldom in E; as, *turpiter*, *feliciter*, *acriter*, *pariter*; *facilè*, *repente*; one in O, *omnino*. The neuter of adjectives is sometimes taken adverbially; as, *recens natus*, for *recenter*; *perfidum ridens*, for *perfidè*, Hor. *multa reluctans*, for *multum* or *valde*, Virg. So in English we say, *to speak loud*, *high*, &c. for *loudly*, *highly*, &c. In many cases a substantive is understood; as, *primò*, sc. *loco*, *optatò advenis*, sc. *tempore*; *hàc*, sc. *viâ*, &c.
3. From each of the pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, &c. are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place; as, from *ille*, *illic*, *illuc*, *illorsum*, *illinc*, and *illac*. So from *quis*, *ubi*, *quo*, *quorsum*, *unde*, and *quà*. Also of time; thus, *quando*, *quandiu*, &c.
4. From verbs and participles; as, *cæsim*, with the edge; *punctim*, with the point; *strictim*, closely; from *cædo*, *pungo*, *stringo*; *amanter*, *properanter*, *dubitanter*; *distinctè*, *emandatè*; *meritò*, *inopinato*, &c. But these last are thought to be in the ablative, having *ex* understood.
5. From prepositions; as, *intus*, *intro*, from *in*; *clanculum*, from *clam*; *subtus*, from *sub*, &c.

Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e*, or *ter*; as, *durè*, *facilè*, *acriter*; the *comparative*, in *ius*; as, *durius*, *facilius*, *acrius*; the *superlative*, in *ime*; as, *durissimè*, *facillimè*, *acerrimè*.

If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, the comparison of the adverb is so too; as, *benè*, *melius*, *optimè*; *malè*, *pejus*, *pessimè*; *parum*, *minus*, *minimè*, and *-um*; *multum*, *plus*, *plurimum*; *prope*, *propius*, *proximè*; *ocyus*, *ocyssime*; *prius*, *primò*, *-um*; *nuper*, *nuperrimè*; *novè* and *noviter*, *novissimè*; *meritò*, *meritissimò*, &c. Those adverbs also are compared whose primitives are obsolete; as, *sæpè*, *sæpius*, *sæpissimè*; *penitus*, *penitius*, *penitissime*; *satis*, *satius*: *secus*, *secius*, &c. *Magis*, *maxime*; and *potius*, *potissimum*, want the positive.

Adverbs are variously compounded with all the different parts of speech; thus, *postridie, magnopĕre, maximopere, summopere, tantopere, multimŏdis, omnimŏdis, quomŏdo, quare;* of *postero die, magno opere,* &c. *Illĭcet, scilĭcet, videlĭcet,* of *ire, scire, videre, licet; illĭco,* of *in loco; quorsum,* of *quo versum? commĭnus,* hand to hand, of *cum* or *con* and *manus; emĭnus,* at a distance, of *e* and *manus; quorsum,* of *quo versum; denuo,* anew, of *de novo; quin,* why not, but, of *qui ne; cur,* of *cui rei; pedetentim,* step by step, as it were, *pedem tendendo; perendie* for *perempto die; nimirum,* of *ne,* i. e. *non,* and *mirum; antea, postea, præterea,* &c. of *ante,* and *ea,* &c. *Ubivis, quovis, undelĭcet, quousque, sicut, sicŭti, velut, velŭti, desŭper, insuper, quamobrem,* &c. of *ubi,* and *vis,* &c. *nudiustertius,* of *nunc dies tertius; identĭdem,* of *idem et idem; impræsentiārum,* i. e. *in tempore rerum præsentium,* &c.

Obs. 1. The adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express shortly, in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more; as, *sapienter,* wisely, for *cum sapientia; hic,* for *in hoc loco; semper,* for *in omni tempore; semel,* for *unâ vice; bis,* for *duabus vicibus; Mehercule,* for *Hercules, me juvet,* &c.

Obs. 2. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently used the one for the other; as, *ubi,* where or when; *inde,* from that place, from that time, after that, next; *hactĕnus,* hitherto, thus far, with respect to place, time, or order, &c.

Obs. 3. Some adverbs of time are either *past, present,* or *future;* as, *jam,* already, now, by and by; *olim,* long ago, some time, hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various; thus, *esse peregrè,* to be abroad; *ire peregrè,* to go abroad; *redire peregrè,* to return from abroad.

Obs. 4. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or compounded with *cunque,* answer to the English adjection, *so ever;* as, *ubiubi,* or *ubicunque,* wheresoever; *quoquò, quòcunque,* whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in interrogative words; as, *quotquot,* or *quotcunque,* how many soever; *quantusquantus,* or *quantuscunque,* how great soever; *utut,* or *utcunque,* however or howsoever, &c.

PREPOSITION.

A Preposition is an indeclinable word, which shows the relation of one thing to another.

There are twenty-eight prepositions, which govern the accusative; that is, have an accusative after them.

Ad,	*To.*	Infra,	*Beneath*
Apud,	*At.*	Juxta,	*Nigh to.*
Ante,	*Before.*	Ob,	*For.*
Adversus, Adversum,	*Against, towards.*	Propter,	*For, hard by.*
		Per,	*By, through.*
Contra,	*Against.*	Præter,	*Besides, except.*
Cis, Citra,	*On this side.*	Pĕnes,	*In the power of.*
		Post,	*After.*
Circa, Circum,	*About.*	Pōne,	*Behind.*
		Sĕcus,	*By, along.*
Erga,	*Towards.*	Sĕcundum,	*According to.*
Extra,	*Without.*	Supra,	*Above.*
Inter,	*Between, among.*	Trans,	*On the farther side.*
Intra,	*Within.*	Ultra,	*Beyond.*

The Prepositions which govern the ablative are fifteen; namely,

A, Ab, Abs,	*From or by.*	De,	*Of, concerning.*
		E, Ex,	*Of, out of.*
Absque,	*Without.*	Pro,	*For.*
Cum,	*With.*	Præ,	*Before.*
Clam,	*Without the knowledge of.*	Pălam,	*With the knowledge of.*
		Sine,	*Without.*
Coram,	*Before, in the presence of.*	Tĕnus,	*Up to, as far as.*

These four govern sometimes the accusative, and sometimes the ablative.

In, *In, into.* Sub, *Under.* Sŭper, *Above.* Subter, *Beneath.*

Obs. 1. Prepositions, are so called, because they are generally *placed before* the word with which they are joined. Some however, are put after; as, *cum,* when joined with *me, te, se,* and sometimes with *quo, qui,* and *quibus;* thus, *mecum, tecum,* &c. *Tenus* is always placed after; as, *mento tenus,* up to the chin. So likewise are *versus* and *usque.*

Obs. 2. Prepositions are often compounded with other parts of speech, particularly with verbs; as, *subire,* to undergo.

Prepositions are also sometimes compounded together; as, *Ex adversus eum locum,* Cic. *Ex adversum Athenas,* C. Nep. *In ante diem quartum Kalendarum Decembris distulit,* i. e. *usque in eum diem,* Cic. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum idus Octob.* i. e. *ab eo die,* Liv. *Ex ante pridie Idus Septembris,* Plin. But prepositions compounded together commonly become adverbs or conjunctions; as, *propălam, protĭnus, insuper,* &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions in composition usually retain their primitive signification; as, *adeo,* to go to; *præpono,* to place before. But from this there are several exceptions; 1. IN joined with adjec

tives generally denotes privation; as, *infidus*, unfaithful: but when joined with verbs, increases their signification; as, *indūro*, to harden greatly. In some words *in* has two contrary senses; as, *invŏcātus*, called upon, or not called upon. So *infrēnātus*, *immutātus*, *insuetus*, *impensus*, *inhumatus*, *intentatus*, &c. 2. PER commonly increases the signification; as, *Percārus*, *percĕler*, *percōmis*, *percuriōsus*, *perdifficilis*, *perelegans*, *pergrātus*, *pergrāvis*, *perhospitālis*, *perillustris*, *perlætus*, &c. very dear, very swift, &c. 3. PRÆ sometimes increases; as, *Præclārus*, *prædives*, *prædulcis*, *prædūrus*, *prepinguis*, *prævalidus*; *prævăleo*, *præpolleo*: and also EX; as, *Exclāmo*, *exaggĕro*, *exaugeo*, *excalefacio*, *extenuo*, *exhilăro*; but EX sometimes denotes privation; as, *Exsanguis*, bloodless, pale; *excors*, *exanimis*, *-mo*, &c. 4. SUB often diminishes; as, *Subalbidus*, *subabsurdus*, *subamārus*, *subdulcis*, *subgrandis*, *subgrāvis*, *subniger*, &c. a little white or whitish, &c. DE often signifies downward; as, *Decido*, *decurro*, *degrăvo*, *despicio*, *delābor*: sometimes increases; as, *deămor*, *demiror*: and sometimes expresses privation; as, *Demens*, *decŏlor*, *deformis*, &c.

OBS. 4. There are five or six syllables, namely, *am*, *di* or *dis*, *re*, *se*, *con*, which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in compound words: however, they generally add something to the signification of the words with which they are compounded; thus,

Am,	*round about;*	as,	Ambio,	*to surround.*
Di,	*asunder;*		Dīvello,	*to pull asunder.*
Dis,			Distrăho,	*to draw asunder.*
Re,	*again;*		Rĕlĕgo,	*to read again.*
Se,	*aside*, or *apart;*		Sēpōno,	*to lay aside.*
Con,	*together;*		Concresco,	*to grow together*

INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind.

Some Interjections are natural sounds, and common to all languages; as, *Oh! Ah!*

Interjections express in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quickness of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to express them; thus,

1. JOY; as, *evax!* hey, brave, lo!
2. GRIEF; as, *ah*, *hei*, *heu*, *ehu!* ah, alas, wo is me!
3. WONDER; as, *papæ!* O strange! *vah!* hah!
4. PRAISE; as, *euge!* well done!
5. AVERSION; as, *apăge!* away, begone, avaunt, off, fy, tush!
6. EXCLAIMING; as, *Oh*, *proh*, O!
7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as, *atat!* ha, aha!
8. IMPRECATION; as, *væ!* wo, pox on't!
9. LAUGHTER; as, *ha*, *ha*, *he!*
10. SILENCING; as, *au*, *'st*, *pax!* silence, hush, 'st!
11. CALLING; as, *eho*, *ehŏdum*, *io*, *ho!* soho, ho, O!
12. DERISION; as, *hui!* away with!
13. ATTENTION; as, *hem!* ha!

Some interjections denote several different passions; thus, *Vah* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections; as, *Malum!* with a mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! fy, fy! *Misĕrum!* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the villany!

CONJUNCTION.

A conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together.

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE; as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *que*, and; *ĕtiam*, *quŏque*, *item*, also; *cum*, *tum*, both, and Also their contraries, *nec*, *nĕque*, *neu*, *neve*, neither, nor.
2. DISJUNCTIVE; as, *aut*, *ve*, *vel*, *seu*, *sive*, either, or.
3. CONCESSIVE; as, *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi*, *licet*, *quanquam*, *quamvis*, though, although, albeit.
4. ADVERSATIVE; as, *sed*, *verŭm*, *autem*, *at*, *ast*, *atqui*, but; *tamen*, *attămen*, *verumtamen*, *verumenimvĕro*, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.
5. CAUSAL; as, *nam*, *namque*, *enim*, for; *quia*, *quippe*, *quantum*, because; *quŏd*, that because.
6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; as, *ergo*, *ideo*, *igitur*, *idcirco*, *ităque*, therefore; *quapropter quocirca*, wherefore; *proinde*, therefore; *cum*, *quum*, seeing, since; *quondoquĭdem*, forasmuch as.
7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE; as, *ut*, *uti*, that, to the end that.
8. CONDITIONAL; as, *si*, *sin*, if; *dum*, *modo*, *dummŏdo*, provided, upon condition that; *siquĭdem*, if indeed.
9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; as, *ni*, *nisi*, unless, except.
10. DIMINUTIVE; as, *saltem*, *certe*, at least.
11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; as, *an*, *anne*, *num*, whether; *ne*, *annon*, whether, not *necne*, or not.

12. EXPLETIVE; as, *autem*, *vero*, now, truly; *quidem*, *equidem*, indeed.
13. ORDINATIVE; as, *deinde*, thereafter; *denique*, finally; *insuper*, moreover; *cæterum* moreover, but, however.
14. DECLARATIVE; as, *videlicet*, *scilicet*, *nempe*, *nimirum*, &c. to wit, namely.

OBS. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions* Thus, *an*, *anne*, &c. are either *interrogative adverbs;* as, *An scribit?* Does he write? or, *suspensive conjunctions;* as, *Nescio an scribat*, I know not if he writes.

OBS. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence; as, *Ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, *sive*, *at*, *sed*, *verum*, *nam*, *quandoquidem*, *quocirca*, *quare*, *sin*, *siquidem*, *præterquam*, &c. Some stand in the second place; as, *Autem*, *vero*, *quoque*, *quidem*, *enim:* and some may indifferently be put either first or second; as, *Etiam*, *equidem*, *licet*, *quamvis*, *quanquam*, *tamen*, *attamen*, *namque*, *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quippe*, *utpŏte*, *ut*, *uti*, *ergo*, *ideo*, *igitur*, *idcirco*, *itaque*, *proinde*, *propterea*, *si*, *ni*, *nisi*, &c. Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive*, *Subjunctive*, and *Common*. To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que*, *ve*, *ne*, which are always joined to some other word, and are called *Enclitics*, because when put after long syllables, they make the accent incline to the foregoing syllable; as in the following verse,

Indoctúsque pilæ, discive, trochive, quiescit. Horat.

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation; thus,

Arbuteos fœtus montanăque fraga legebant. Ovid.

SENTENCES.

A SENTENCE is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together; as, *Ego lego*, I read. *Puer legit Virgilium*, the boy reads Virgil.

That part of grammar which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction*.

Words in sentences have a twofold relation to one another: namely, that of *Concord* or *Agreement;* and that of *Government* or *Influence*.

Concord, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents; as, in gender, number, person, or case.

Government, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mode.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.
2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.
3. All the cases of nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.
4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood.
5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.
6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition; or is placed before the infinitive.
7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.
8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.
9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

All sentences are either SIMPLE or COMPOUND.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A simple sentence is that which has but one nominative, and one finite verb; *that is*, a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mode.

In a simple sentence, there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute*.

The SUBJECT is the word which marks the person or thing spoken of.

The ATTRIBUTE expresses what we affirm concerning the subject; as,

The boy reads his lesson: Here "the boy," is the *Subject* of discourse, or the person spoken of; "reads his lesson," is the *Attribute*, or what we affirm concerning the subject. *The diligent boy reads his lesson carefully at home.* Here we have still the same subject, "the boy," marked by the character of "diligent" added to it; and the same attribute, "reads his lesson," with the circumstances of manner and place subjoined, "carefully," "at home."

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or *phrases*, and is commonly called a *Period.*

The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses.*

In every compound sentence there are either several subjects, and one attribute, or several attributes, and one subject, or both several subjects and several attributes; that is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgment or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must, therefore, be in every sentence or period as many propositions, as there are verbs of a finite mode.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions; as, *Happy is the man* who *loveth religion,* and *practiseth virtue.*

CONCORD.

The following words agree together in a sentence: 1. An adjective with a substantive. 2. A verb with a nominative. 3. A relative with an antecedent. 4. A substantive with a substantive.

1. *Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.*

RULE I. The adjective agrees with its substantive, in number, case, and gender; as,

Bonus vir, a good man;	*Boni viri,* good men.
Fæmina casta, a chaste woman;	*Fæminae castæ,* chaste women.
Dulce pomum, a sweet apple.	*Dulcia poma,* sweet apples.

And so through all the cases and degrees of comparison.

This rule applies also to pronouns and participles; as, *Meus liber,* my book; *ager colendus,* a field to be tilled; Plur. *Mei libri, agri colendi,* &c.

OBS. 1. The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender; as, *triste,* sc. *negotium,* a sad thing, *Virg. Tuum scire,* the same with *tua scientia,* thy knowledge, *Pers.* We sometimes, however, find the substantive understood in the feminine; as, *Non posteriores feram,* sup. *partes,* Ter.

OBS. 2. An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive; as, *Certus amicus,* a sure friend; *Bona ferina,* good venison; *Summum bonum,* the chief good: *Homo* being understood to *amicus, caro* to *ferina,* and *negotium* to *bonum.* A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *incola turba vocant,* the inhabitants, *Ovid Fast.* 3. 582.

OBS. 3. These adjectives, *primus, medius, ultimus, extremus, infimus, imus, summus, supremus, reliquus, cætera,* usually signify *the first part, the middle part,* &c. of any thing: as, *Media nox,* the middle part of the night; *Summa arbor,* the highest part of a tree.

OBS. 4. Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable, and the adjective a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first; as, *vir clarissimus, res præstantissima,* &c.

2. *Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.*

II. The verb agrees with its nominative case, in number and person; as,

Ego lego, I read;	*Nos legimus,* We read.
Tu scribis, Thou writest *or* you write;	*Vos scribitis,* Ye *or* you write.
Præceptor docet, the master teaches;	*Præceptores docent,* Masters teach.

And so through all the modes, tenses, and numbers.

OBS. 1. *Ego* and *nos* are of the first person; *tu* and *vos* of the second person; *ille,* and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the first and second person is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction; as, *tu es patronus, tu pater,* Ter. *Tu legis, ego scribo.*

OBS. 2. An infinitive, or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative; as, *Mentiri est turpe,* to lie is base; *Diu non perlitatum tenuit dictatorem,* the sacrifice not being attended with favourable omens, detained the dictator for a long time, *Liv.* vii. 8. Sometimes the neuter pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to express the meaning more strongly; as, *Facere quæ libet, id est esse regem,* Sallust.

OBS. 3. The infinitive mode often supplies the place of the third person of the imperfect of the indicative; as, *Milites fugĕre,* the soldiers fled, for *fugiebant* or *fugere cæperunt. Invidēre omnes mihi,* for *invidebant.*

OBS. 4. A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of the singular or of the plural number; as, *Multitudo stat,* or *stant,* the multitude stands, *or* stand.

A collective noun when joined with a verb singular, expresses many considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, signifies many separately, or as individuals. Hence, if an

adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural, the adjective or participle will be plural also, and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erant cæsi: Pars obnixæ trudunt*, sc. *formicæ*, Virg. Æn. iv. 406. *Magna pars raptæ*, sc. *virgines*, Liv. i. 9. Sometimes, however, though more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular; as, *Pars arduus*, Virg. Æn. vii. 624.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

3. *Agreement of the Relative with the Antecedent.*

III. The relative *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.

Singular.		*Plural.*
Vir qui,	The man who.	*Viri qui.*
Fœmina quæ,	The woman who.	*Fœminæ quæ.*
Negotium quod,	The thing which.	*Negotia quæ.*
Ego qui scribo,	I who write.	*Nos qui scribimus.*
Tu qui scribis,	Thou who writest.	*Vos qui scribitis.*
Vir qui scribit,	The man who writes.	*Viri qui scribunt.*
Mulier quæ scribit,	The woman who writes.	*Mulieres quæ scribunt.*
Animal quod currit,	The animal which runs.	*Animalia quæ currunt.*
Vir quem vidi,	The man whom I saw.	*Viri quos vidi.*
Mulier quam vidi,	The woman whom I saw.	*Mulieres quas vidi.*
Animal quod vidi,	The animal which I saw.	*Animalia quæ vidi.*
Vir cui paret,	The man whom he obeys.	*Viri quibus paret.*
Vir cui est similis,	The man to whom he is like.	*Viri quibus est similis*
Vir a quo,	The man by whom.	*Viri a quibus.*
Mulier ad quam,	The woman to whom.	*Mulieres ad quas.*
Vir cujus opus est,	The man whose work it is.	*Viri quorum opus est.*

Vir quem misĕror,
cujus miseror, vel *misereseo,*
cujus me miseret,
} The man whom I pity.
cujus vel *cujâ interest*, &c. whose interest it is, &c.

IV. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative is the nominative to the verb; but when a nominative intervenes, the relative is governed by the verb, or some other word in the sentence.

Obs. 1. The relative must always have an antecedent expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective placed between two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former; as,

Vir qui (vir) *legit; vir quem* (virum) *amo:* Sometimes the latter; as, *Quam quisque nôrit artem, in hac* (arte) *se exerceat*, Cic. *Eunuchum, quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedit*, Ter. sc. *Eunuchus* Sometimes both cases are expressed; as, *Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire possent*, Cæs. Sometimes, though more rarely, both cases are omitted; as, *Sunt, quos hoc genus minime juvat*, for *sunt homines, quos homines*, &c. Hor.

Obs. 2. When the relative is placed between two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former; as,

Vultus quem dixere chaos, Ovid. *Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur*, Sal. *Animal, quem vocamus hominem*, Cic. *Cogito id quod res est*, Ter. If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender; as, *Pompeius se afflixit, quod mihi est summo dolori*, scil. *Pompeium se affligere*, Cic. Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word supplied; as, *Scelus qui* for *scelestus*, Ter. *Abundantia earum rerum, quæ mortales prima putant*, scil. *negotia*, Sall. *Vel virtus tua me vel vicinitas, quod ego in aliqua parte amicitiæ puto, facit ut te moneam*, scil. *negotium*, Ter. *In omni Africa, qui agebant*, for *in omnibus Afris*, Sallust. Jug. 89. *Non dissidentiâ futuri, quæ imperavisset*, for *quod*, Ib. 100.

Obs. 3. When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio*, scarcely *facit*.

Obs. 4. The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective; as,

Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui haberem gnatum tali ingenio præditum, Ter. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words; as, *Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuisse feruntur;* i. e. *pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem*, &c. Liv. *Si tempus est ullum jure hominis necandi, quæ multa sunt*, scil. *tempora*, Cic.

Obs. 5. The relative is sometimes entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit; Tyrii tenuere coloni*, scil. *quam* or *eam*, Virg. Or if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case; as, *Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuerant, Romanos invadunt;* for *quique in priore pugna non adfuerant*, Sall. In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed; as, *The letter I wrote*, for *the letter*

which I wrote; The man I love, to wit, *whom*. But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obs. 6. The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent; as, *Cùm aliquid agas eorum, quorum consuêsti*, for *quæ consuêsti agere*, or *quorum aliquid agere consuêsti*, Cic. *Restitue in quem me accepisti locum*, for *in locum, in quo*, Ter. And. iv. 1. 58. But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 7. The adjective pronouns, *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is*, and *idem*, in their construction, resemble that of the relative *qui*; as, *Liber ejus*, His *or* her book; *Vita eorum*, Their life, when applied to men; *Vita earum*, Their life, when applied to women. By the improper use of these pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 8. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis, quantus, quotus*, &c. are also sometimes construed like relatives; as, *Facies est, qualem decet esse sororum*, Ovid. But these have commonly other adjectives either expressed or understood, which answer to them; as, *Tanta est multitudo quantum urbs capere potest*: and are often applied to different substantives; as, *Quales sunt cives, talis est civitas*, Cic.

Obs. 9. The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quod cùm ita esset*, When that was so: not, Which when it was so, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as, *Quem dicunt me esse?* Who do they say that I am; *not* whom. *Quem dicunt adventare?* Who do they say is coming?

Obs. 10. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of the verb is expressed positively; as, *Audire cupio, quæ legeris*, I want to hear what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read; *Audire cupio, quæ legisti*, I want to hear what you *(actually or in fact)* have read.

To the construction of the Relative may be subjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The answer is commonly put in the same case with the question; as,

Qui vocare? Geta, sc. *vocor*. *Quid quæris? Librum*, sc. *quæro*. *Quotâ horâ venisti? Sextâ*. Sometimes the construction is varied; as, *Cujus est liber? Meus*, not *mei*. *Quanti emptus est? Decem assibus*. *Damnatusne es furti? Imò alio crimine*. Often the answer is made by other parts of speech than nouns; as, *Quid agitur? Statur*, sc. *a me, a nobis*. *Quis fecit? Nescio: aiunt Petrum fecisse*. *Quomodo vales? Bene, male*. *Scripsistine? Scripsi, ita, etiam, imò*, &c. *An vidisti? Non vidi, non, minime*, &c. *Chærea tuam vestem detraxit tibi? Factum*. *Et eâ est indutus? Factum*, Ter. Most of the Rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of questions and answers

The same Case after a Verb as before it.

V. Any Verb may have the same Case *after*, as *before* it, when both words refer to the same person or thing; as,

Ego sum discipulus,	I am a scholar.
Tu vocaris Joannes,	You are named John.
Illa incedit regina,	She walks as a queen.
Scio illum haberi sapientem,	I know that he is esteemed wise.
Scio vos esse discipulos,	I know that you are scholars.

So *Redeo iratus, jaceo supplex; Evadent digni*, they will become worthy; *Rempublicam defendi adolescens; nolo esse longus*, I am unwilling to be tedious; *Malim videri timidus, quàm parùm prudens*, Cic. *Non licet mihi esse negligenti*, Cic. *Natura dedit omnibus esse beatis*, Claud. *Cupio me esse clementem; cupio non putari mendacem; Vult esse medium*, sc. *se*, He wishes to be neuter, Cic. *Disce esse pater; Hoc est esse patrem?* sc. *eum*, Ter. *Id est, dominum, non imperatorem esse*, Sallust.

Obs. 1. This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or of one substantive with another; for those words in a sentence which refer to the same object, must always agree together, how much soever disjoined.

Obs. 2. The verbs which most frequently have the same case after them as before them, are,

1. Substantive and neuter verbs; as, *Sum, fio, forem*, and *existo; eo, venio, sto, sedeo, evado, jaceo, fugio*, &c.

2. The passive of verbs of naming, judging, &c. as, *Dicor, appellor, vocor, nominor, nuncupor;* to which add, *videor, existimor, creor, constituor, salutor, designor*, &c.

These and other like verbs, admit after them only the nominative, accusative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accusative; as, *Interest omnium esse bonos*, scil. *se;* it is the interest of all to be good. In some cases we can use either the nominative or accusative promiscuously; as, *Cupio dici doctus* or *doctum*, sc. *me dici; Cupio esse clemens, non putari mendax; vult esse medius.*

Obs. 3. When any of the above verbs are placed between two nominatives of different numbers,

they commonly agree in number with the former; as, *Dos est decem talenta*, Her dowry is ten talents, Ter. *Omnia pontus erant*, Ovid. But sometimes with the latter; as, *Amantium iræ amoris integratio est*, The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love, *Ter.* So when an adjective is applied to two substantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that substantive which is most the subject of discourse; as, *Oppidum est appellatum Possidonia*, Plin. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearer substantive; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, Cic.

Obs. 4. When the infinitive of any verb, particularly the substantive verb *esse*, has the dative before it, governed by an Impersonal verb or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative; as, *Licet mihi esse beato*, I may be happy; or *licet mihi esse beatum*, *me* being understood; thus, *licet mihi* (me) *esse beatum*. The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied; as, *Licet esse beatum*, One may be happy, scil. *alicui* or *homini*.

Obs. 5. The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose; as, *Rettulit Ajax Jovis esse pronĕpos*, for *Se esse pronepotem*, Ovid's Met. xii. 141. *Cum pateris sapiens emendatusque vocari*, for *sapientem*, &c. Horat. Ep. 1. 16. 30. *Acceptum refero versibus esse nocens*, Ovid. *Tutumque putavit jam bonus esse socer*, Lucan.

4. *Agreement of one Substantive with another.*

VI. Substantives signifying the same person or thing, agree in case; as,

Cicĕro orātor, Cicero the orator; *Cicerōnis oratōris*, of Cicero the orator.
Urbs Athēnæ, the city of Athens; *Urbis Athēnārum*, of the city Athens.

GOVERNMENT.

I. The Government of Substantives.

VII. One Substantive governs another signifying a different person or thing in the genitive; as,

Amor Dei, The love of God; *Lex naturæ*, The law of nature; *Domus Cæsăris*, The house of Cæsar, *or* Cæsar's house.

Obs. 1. When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective; as, *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house; *Filius heri*, or *herilis*, a master's son: and among the poets, *Labor Herculeus*, for *Herculis; Ensis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

Obs. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or passive sense; thus, *Amor Dei*, The love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him. So *caritas patris*, signifies either the affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense; thus, *Timor Dei*, always implies *Deus timetur;* and *Providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*. So *caritas ipsius soli*, affection to the very soil, *Liv.* ii. 1.

Obs. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood; as, *Hectŏris Andromăche*, scil. *uxor; Ventum est ad Vestæ*, scil. *ædem* or *templum; Ventum est tria millia*, scil. *passuum*, three miles.

Obs. 4. We find the dative often used after a verb for the genitive particularly among the poets; as, *Ei corpus porrigitur*, His body is extended, *Virg.* Æn. vi. 596.

Obs. 5. Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions; as, *Amicitia, inimicitia, pax cum aliquo; Amor in* vel *erga aliquem; Gaudium de re; Cura de aliquo; Mentio illius*, vel *de illo; Quies ab armis; Fumus ex incendiis; Prædator ex sociis*, for *sociorum*, Sallust, &c.

Obs. 6. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides *of*; as, *Descensus Averni*, the descent *to* Avernus; *Prudentia juris*, skill *in* the law.

Substantive pronouns are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns; as, *pars mei*, a part of me.

So also *adjective pronouns*, when used as substantives, or having a noun understood; as, *Liber ejus, illius, hujus*, &c. The book of him, or his book, sc. *hominis:* The book of her, *or* her book, sc. *feminæ*. *Libri eorum*, v. *earum*, their books; *Cujus liber*, the book of whom, *or* whose book; *Quorum libri*, whose books, &c. But we always say, *meus liber*, not *mei; pater noster*, not *nostri; suum jus*, not *sui*.

When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, nostrûm, vestrûm;* but we use their possessives when an active sense is expressed; as, *Amor mei*, The love of me, that is, The love wherewith I am loved; *Amor meus*, My love that is, the love wherewith I love. We find, however, the possessives sometimes used passively, and their primitives taken actively; as, *Odium tuum*, Hatred of thee, *Ter Phorm.* v. 8. 27. *Labor mei*, My labour, *Plaut*.

The possessives *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive; as, *Pectus tuum hominis simplĭcis*, Cic. Phil. ii. 43. *Noster duorum eventus*, Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium*, Cic. *Mea scripta*

timentis, &c. Hor. *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*, Cic. *Id maxime quemque decet, quod est cujusque suum maxime*, Id.

The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are used when the action of the verb is reflected as it were, upon its nominative; as, *Cato interfecit se. Miles defendit suam vitam. Dicit se scripturum esse.* We find, however, *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind; as, *Deum agnoscimus ex operibus ejus*, Cic. *Persuadent Rauracis, ut unà cum iis proficiscantur*, for *unà secum*, Cæs.

VIII. If the latter of two Substantives have an Adjective of praise or dispraise, joined with it, it may be put either in the genitive or ablative; as,

Vir summæ prudentiæ, or *summâ prudentiâ*, A man of great wisdom.
Puer probæ indolis, or *probâ indole*, A boy of a good disposition.

Obs. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive, but by some preposition understood; as, *cum, de, ex, in*, &c. Thus, *Vir summâ prudentiâ*, is the same with *Vir cum summa prudentia*.

Obs. 2. In some phrases the genitive is only used; as, *Magni formica laboris*, the laborious ant; *Vir imi subsellii, homo minimi pretii*, a person of the lowest rank. *Homo nullius stipendii*, a man of no experience in war, *Sallust*. *Non multi cibi hospitem accipies, sed multi joci*, Cic. *Ager trium jugerum*. In others only the ablative; as, *Es bono animo*, Be of good courage. *Mirâ sum alacritate ad litigandum*, Cic. *Capite aperto est*, His head is bare; *obvoluto*, covered. *Capite et supercilio semper est rasus*, Id. *Mulier magna natu*, Liv. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence; as, *Adolescens eximiâ spe, summæ virtutis*, Cic. The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative; thus we say, either, *Vir præstantis ingenii*, or *præstanti ingenio;* or *Vir præstans ingenio*, and sometimes *præstans ingenii*. Among the poets, the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction, *secundum* or *quod ad*, being understood by the figure commonly called *Synecdŏche;* as, *Miles fractus membra*, i. e. *fractus*, secundum *or* quod ad *membra*, or *habens membra fracta*, Horat. *Os humerosque deo similis*, Virg.

Adjectives taken as Substantives.

IX. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive, governs the genitive; as,

Multum pecuniæ, Much money. *Quid rei est?* What is the matter?

Obs. 1. This manner of expression is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*, and therefore is much used by the best writers; as, *Plus eloquentiæ, minus sapientiæ, tantum fidei, id negotii; quicquid erat patrum, reos diceres*, Liv. *Id loci; Ad hoc ætatis*, Sallust.

Obs. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum*, &c. To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quiddam*, &c. *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive, and therefore by some are thought to be substantives.

Obs. 3. *Nihil*, and these neuter pronouns, *quid, aliquid*, &c. elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive; as, *nihil sinceri*, no sincerity; but seldom govern in this manner adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is* and *e;* as, *Nequid hostile timerent*, not *hostilis* · we find, however, *quicquid civilis*, Liv. v. 3.

Obs. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural; as, *Angusta viarum, Opaca locorum, Telluris operta; loca* being understood. So *Amara curarum, acuta belli*, sc. *negotia*, Horat. An adjective, indeed, of any gender, may have a genitive after it, with a substantive understood; as, *Amicus Cæsaris, Patria Ulyssis*, &c.

Opus and *Usus.*

X. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative; as,

Est opus pecuniâ, There is need of money. *Usus viribus*, Need of strength.

Obs. 1. *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition, as *pro*, or the like understood. They sometimes also, although more rarely, govern the genitive; as, *Lectionis opus est*, Quinct. *Operæ usus est*, Liv.

Obs. 2. *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective; as, *Dux nobis opus est*, We need a general, Cic. *Dices nummos mihi opus esse*, Id. *Nobis exempla opus sunt*, Id.

Obs. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle; as, *Opus maturato*, Need of haste, *Opus consulto*, Need of deliberation; *Quid facto usus est?* Ter. The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, It behoved me to meet with Hirtius, Cic.

Obs. 4. *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut;* as, *Siquid forte sit, quod opus sit sciri*, Cic. *Nunc tibi opus est, ægram ut te adsimules*, Plaut. *Sive opus est imperitare equis*, Horat. It is often placed *absolutely*, i. e. without depending on any other word; as, *sic opus est; si opus sit*, &c.

II. Government of Adjectives.

1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

XI. Verbal adjectives, and such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive; as,

Avidus gloriæ, Desirous of glory. *Ignarus fraudis,* Ignorant of fraud.
Memor benficiorum, Mindful of favours.

To this rule belong: I. Verbal adjectives in AX; as, *capax, edax, ferax, tenax, pertĭnax,* &c. and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS; as, *amans appĕtens, cupiens, insŏlens, sciens; consultus, doctus, expertus, insuetus, insolitus,* &c. II. Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind: 1. Desire; as, *avarus, cupidus, studiosus,* &c. 2. Knowledge, ignorance, and doubting; as, *callidus, certus, certior, conscius, gnarus, perītus, prudens,* &c. *Ignarus, incertus, inscius, imprudens, imperitus, immĕmor, rudis; Ambiguus, dubius, suspensus,* &c. 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary; as, *Anxius, curiosus, solicitus, providus, diligens; Incuriosus, securus, negligens,* &c. 4. Fear, and confidence; as, *Formidolosus, pavidus, timidus, trepidus; Impavidus, interritus, intrepidus.* 5. Guilt, and innocence; as, *Noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus; Innoxius, innocens, insons.*

To these add many adjectives of various significations; as, *æger animi; ardens, audax, aversus, diversus, egregius, erectus, falsus, felix, fessus, furens, ingens, integer, lætus, præstans animi; modicus voti; integer vitæ; seri studiorum,* Hor. But we say, *æger pedibus, ardens in cupiditatibus, præstans doctrinâ, modicus cultu; Lætus negotio, de re,* or *propter rem,* &c. and never *æger pedum,* &c.

Obs. 1. Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles; thus, *patiens algoris,* able to bear cold; and *patiens algorem,* actually bearing cold. So *amans virtutis,* and *amans virtutem doctus grammaticæ,* skilled in grammar; *doctus grammaticam,* one who has learned it.

Obs. 2. Many of these adjectives vary their construction; as, *avidus in pecuniis,* Cic. *Avidior ad rem,* Ter. *Jure consultus et peritus,* or *juris,* Cic. *Rudis literarum, in jure civili,* Cic. *Rudis arte, ad mala,* Ovid. *Doctus Latine, Latinis literis,* Cic. *Assuetus labore, in omnia,* Liv. *Mensæ herili,* Virg. *Insuetus moribus Romanis,* in the dative, *Liv. Laboris, ad onera portanda,* Cæs. *Desuetus bello et triumphis,* in the dative or ablative, rather the dative, *Virg. Anxius, solicitus, securus, de re aliqua; diligens in, ad, de,* Cic. *Negligens in aliquem, in* or *de re; Reus de vi, criminibus,* Cic. *Certior factus de re,* rather than *rei,* Cic.

Obs. 3. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causâ, in re,* or *in negotio,* or some such word understood; as, *Cupidus laudis,* i. e. *causâ,* or *in re laudis,* desirous of praise, that is, on account of, *or* in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain in their own signification the force of a substantive; thus, *studiosus pecuniæ,* fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniæ,* having a fondness for money.

XII. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

Aliquis philosophorum,	Some one of the philosophers.
Senior fratrum,	The elder of the brothers.
Doctissimus Romanorum,	The most learned of the Romans.
Quis nostrum?	Which of us?
Una musarum,	One of the muses.
Octavus sapientum,	The eighth of the wise men.

Adjectives are called *Partitives,* or are said to be placed *partitively,* when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them, in English, *of* or *among;* as, *alius, nullus, solus,* &c. *quis* and *qui,* with their compounds: also Comparatives, Superlatives, and some Numerals: as, *unus, duo, tres; primus, secundus,* &c. To these add *multi, pauci, plerique, medius.*

Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive which they have after them in the genitive; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former; as, *Indus fluminum maximus,* Cic. Rarely with the latter; as, *Delphinus animalium velocissimum,* Plin. The genitive here is governed by *ex numero,* or by the same substantive understood in the singular number; as, *Nulla sororum,* scil. *soror,* or *ex numero sororum.*

Obs. 2. Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *de, e, ex,* or *in;* as, *Unus de fratribus;* or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter;* as, *Pulcherrimus ante omnes,* for *omnium,* Virg. *Primus inter omnes,* Id.

Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis,* Cic. *Maximus stirpis,* Liv. *Ultimos orbis* Britannos, Horat. Od. i. 35. 29.

Obs. 4. Comparatives are used when we speak of two; Superlatives, when we speak of more

than two; as, *Major fratrum*, the elder of the brothers, meaning *two; Maximus fratrum*, The eldest of the brothers, meaning *more than two*. In like manner, *uter, alter, neuter*, are applied with regard to two; *quis, unus, alius, nullus*, with regard to three or more; as, *Uter vestrum*, Whether or which of you *two; Quis vestrum*, Which of you *three*: but these are sometimes taken promiscuously, the one for the other.

2. *Adjectives governing the Dative.*

XIII. Adjectives signifying *profit* or *disprofit*, *likeness* or *unlikeness*, &c. govern the dative; as,

Utilis bello,	Profitable for war.
Perniciŏsus reipublicæ,	Hurtful to the commonwealth.
Simĭlis patri,	Like to his father.

Or thus, *Any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English.*

To this rule belong:

1. Adjectives of profit or disprofit; as, *Benignus, bonus, commodus, felix, fructuosus, prosper, saluber.——Calamitosus, damnosus, dirus, exitiosus, funestus, incommodus, malus, noxius, perniciosus, pestifer.*

2. Of pleasure or pain; as, *Acceptus, dulcis, gratus, gratiosus, jucundus, lætus, suavis.——Acerbus, amarus, insuavis, injucundus, ingratus, molestus, tristis.*

3. Of friendship or hatred; as, *Addictus, æquus, amicus, benevolus, blandus, carus, deditus, fidus, fidelis, lenis, mitis, propitius.——Adversus, æmulus, asper, crudelis, contrarius, infensus, infestus, infidus, immitis, inimicus, iniquus, invisus, invidus, iratus, odiosus, suspectus, trux.*

4. Of clearness or obscurity; as, *Apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus, notus, perspicuus.——Ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obscurus.*

5. Of nearness; as, *Finitimus, proprior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus.*

6. Of fitness or unfitness; as, *Aptus, appositus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus.——Ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconveniens.*

7. Of ease or difficulty; as, *Facilis, levis, obvius, pervius.——Difficilis, arduus, gravis, laboriosus, periculosus, invius.* To these add such as signify propensity or readiness; as, *Pronus, proclivis, propensus, promptus, paratus.*

8. Of equality or inequality; as, *Æqualis, æquævus, par, compar, suppar.——Inequalis, impar, dispar, discors.* Also of likeness or unlikeness; as, *Similis, æmulus, geminus.——Dissimilis, absonus, alienus, diversus, discolor.*

9. Several adjectives compounded with CON; as, *Cognatus, concolor, concors, confinis, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, consonus, conveniens, contiguus, continuus, continens*, contiguous; as, *Mari, aër continens, est*, Cic.

To these add many other adjectives of various significations; as, *Obnoxius, subjectus, supplex, credulus, absurdus, decorus, deformis, præsto*, indecl. at hand, *secundus*, &c.—particularly.

Verbals in BILIS and DUS govern the dative; as,

Amandus vel *amabĭlis omnibus,*	To be loved by all men.

So *Mors est terribilis malis; Optabilis omnibus pax; Adhibenda est nobis diligentia*, Cic. *Semel omnibus calcanda est via lethi*, Hor. Also some participles of the perfect tense; as, *Bella matribus detestata*, hated by, Hor.

Verbals in DUS are often construed with the preposition *a*; as, *Deus est venerandus & colendus a nobis*, Cic. Perfect participles are usually so; as, *Mors Crassi est a multis, defleta*, rather than *multis defleta*, Cic. *A te invitatus, rogatus, proditus*, &c. hardly ever *tibi*.

Obs. 1. The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other part of speech; but put after them, to express the object to which their signification refers.

The particle *to* in English is often to be supplied; as, *Similis patri*, Like his father, *to* being understood.

Obs. 2. Substantives have likewise sometimes a dative after them; as, *Ille est pater, dux*, vel *filius mihi*, He is father, leader, *or* son to me; so, *Præsidium reis, decus amicis*, &c. Hor. *Exitium pecori*, Virg. *Virtutibus hostis*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive; *Affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superstes, conscius, æqualis, contrarius*, and *adversus*; as, *Similis tibi*, or *tui; Superstes patri*, or *patris; Conscius facinori*, or *facinoris*. *Conscius* and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*. We say, *Similes, dissimiles, pares, dispares, æquales, communes, inter se: Par et communis cum aliquo. Civitas secum ipsa discors; discordes ad alia*, Liv.

Obs. 4. Adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accusative with a preposition; as,

Utilis, inutilis, aptus, ineptus, accommodatus, idoneus, habilis, inhabilis, opportūnus, conveniens, &c. *alicui rei*, or *ad aliquid*. Many other adjectives governing the dative, are likewise construed with prepositions; as, *Attentus quæsitis*, Hor. *Attentus ad rem*, Ter.

Obs. 5. Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one: I. Some are usually construed with the dative only; as, *Affabilis, arrogans, asper, carus, difficilis, fidelis, invisus, iratus, offensus, suspectus*, ALICUI. II. Some with the preposition IN and the accusative; as, *Acerbus, animatus, beneficus, gratiosus, injuriosus, liberalis,*

mendax, misericors, officiosus, pius, impius, prolixus, severus, sordidus, torvus, vehemens, IN ALIQUEM.
III. Some, either with the dative, or with the accusative and the preposition IN, ERGA, or ADVERSUS, going before; as, *Contumax, criminosus, durus, exitiabilis, gravis, hospitalis, implacabilis,* (and perhaps also *inexorabilis* and *intolerabilis*,) *iniquus, sævus,* ALICUI or IN ALIQUEM. *Benevolus, benignus, molestus,* ALICUI or ERGA ALIQUEM. *Mitis, comis,* IN or ERGA ALIQUEM and ALICUI. *Pervicax* ADVERSUS ALIQUEM. *Crudelis* IN ALIQUEM, seldom ALICUI. *Amicus, æmulus, infensus, infestus* ALICUI, seldom IN ALIQUEM. *Gratus* ALICUI, or IN, ERGA, ADVERSUS ALIQUEM. We say *alienus alicui* or *alicujus;* but oftener *ab aliquo,* and sometimes *aliquo* without the preposition.

AUDIENS is construed with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat,* he was obedient to the king; not *regis; Dicto audiens fuit jussis magistratuum,* Nep. *Nobis dicto audientes sunt,* not *dictis,* Cic.

Obs. 6. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in,* seldom the dative; as,

Pronus, propensus, proclivis, celer, tardus, piger, &c. *ad iram,* or *in iram.*

Obs. 7. *Proprior* and *Proximus,* in imitation of their primitive *prope,* often govern the accusative; as, *Propior montem,* scil. *ad,* Sall. *Proximus finem,* Liv.

Obs. 8. *IDEM* sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti,* Hor. *Jupiter omnibus idem,* Virg. *Eadem illis censemus,* Cic. But in prose we commonly find *idem qui, et, ac, atque,* and also *ut, cum;* as, *Peripatetici quondam iidem erant qui Academici,* Cic. *Est animus erga te idem ac fuit,* Ter. *Dianam et Lunam eandem esse putant,* Cic. *Idem faciunt, ut,* &c. *In eodem loco mecum,* Cic. But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum;* as, *Luna eadem est cum Diana.*

We likewise say, *alius ac, atque* or *et;* and so, sometimes, *similis* and *par*

3. *Adjectives governing the Ablative.*

XIV. These adjectives, *dignus, indignus, prœditus,* and *contentus;* also, *natus, satus, ortus, editus,* and the like, govern the ablative.

Dignus honore,	Worthy of honour.	*Captus oculis,*	Blind.
Contentus parvo,	Content with little.	*Fretus viribus,*	Trusting to his strength.
Prœditus virtute,	Endued with virtue.	*Ortus regibus,*	Descended of kings.

So *generatus, creatus, cretus, prognatus, oriundus, procreatus regibus.*

Obs. 1. The ablative after these adjectives, is governed by some preposition understood; as, *Contentus parvo,* scil. *cum; Fretus viribus,* scil. *in,* &c. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubina,* Sallust. *Editus de nympha,* Ovid.

Obs. 2. *Dignus, indignus,* and *contentus,* have sometimes the genitive after them; as, *dignus avorum,* Virg. So *Macte esto,* or *macti estote virtutis* or *virtute,* Increase in virtue, *or* Go on and prosper; *Juberem macte virtute esse,* sc. *te,* Liv. ii. 12. In the last example *macte* seems to be used adverbially.

4. *Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.*

XV. Adjectives signifying *plenty* or *want,* govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Plenus iræ or *irâ,* Full of anger. *Inops rationis* or *ratione,* Void of reason.

So *Non inopes temporis, sed prodigi sumus,* Sen. *Lentulus non verbis inops,* Cic. *Dei plena sunt omnia,* Cic. *Maxima quæque domus servis est plena superbis,* Juv. *Res est soliciti plena timoris amor,* Ovid. *Amor et melle et felle est fœcundissimus,* Plaut. *Fœcunda virorum paupertas fugitur,* Lucan. *Omnium consiliorum ejus particeps,* Curt. *Homo ratione particeps,* Cic. *Nihil insidiis vacuum,* Id. *Vacuas cædis habete manus,* Ovid.

Some of these adjectives are construed,

1. With the genitive only; as, *Benignus, exsors, impos, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, prælargus,*

2. With the ablative only; *Beatus, differtus, frugifer, mutilus, tentus, distentus, tumidus, turgidus.*

3. With the genitive more frequently; *Compos, consors, egenus, exhæres, expers, fertilis, indigus, parcus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis.*

4. With the ablative more frequently; *Abundans, cassus, extorris, fœtus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejunus, liber, locuples, nudus, oneratus, onustus, orbus, pollens, solutus, truncus, viduus,* and *captus.*

5. With both promiscuously; *Copiosus, dives, fœcundus, ferax, immunis, inanis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber.*

6. With a preposition; as, *Copiosus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, instructus, à re aliqua;* for *quod ad rem aliquam attinet,* in or with respect to any thing. *Extorris ab solo patrio,* banished; *Orba ab optimatibus concio,* Liv. So *pauper, tenuis, fœcundus, modicus, parcus, in re aliqua. Immunis, inanis, liber, nudus, solutus, vacuus, a re aliqua. Potens ad rem,* and *in re*

Government of the Verb Sum.

§ 1. Verbs *governing only one Case.*

XVI. *Sum,* when it signifies *possession, property,* or *duty,* governs the genitive; as,

Est regis, It belong to the king; It is the part or property of a king.

So *Insipientis est dicere, non putâram,* It is the part or property of a fool, &c. *Militum est suo*

duci parere, It is the part, or duty of soldiers, &c. *Laudare se vani; vituperare stulti est*, Sen. *Hominis est errare; Arrogantis est negligere quid de se quisque sentiat*, Cic. *Pecus est Melibœi*, Virg. *Hæc sunt hominis*, Ter. *Pauperis est numerare pecus*, Ovid. *Temeritas est florentis ætatis, prudentia senectutis*, Cic.

¶ *Meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, are excepted; as,

Tuum est, It is your duty. *Scio tuum esse*, I know that it is your duty.

Obs. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*. Other possessives are also construed in this manner; as, *Est regium, est humanum*, the same with *est regis, est hominis*. *Et facere et pati fortia, Romanum est*, Liv. ii. 12.

Obs. 2. Here some substantive must be understood; as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus*, &c. which are sometimes expressed; as, *Munus est principum; Tuum est hoc munus*, Cic. *Neutiquam officium liberi esse hominis puto*, Ter. In some cases, the preceding substantive may be repeated; as, *Hic liber est* (liber) *fratris*. In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these; *Ea sunt modo gloriosa, neque patrandi belli*, scil. *causâ* or *facta*, Sall. *Nihil tam æquandæ libertatis est*, for *ad æquandam libertatem pertinet*, Liv.

Obs. 3. We say, *Hoc est tuum munus*, or *tui muneris*: So *mos est* vel *fuit*, or *moris*, or *in more*, Cic.

XVII. *Sum*, taken for *habeo*, *(to have,)* governs the dative of a person; as,

Est mihi liber,	A book is to me, that is, I have a book.
Sunt mihi libri,	Books are to me, i. e. I have books.
Dico libros esse mihi,	I say that I have books.

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum; habeo libros*. In like manner DEEST instead of *careo*; as, *Liber deest mihi*, I want a book; *Libri desunt mihi; Scio libros deesse mihi*, &c.

XVIII. *Sum*, taken for *affero*, *(to bring,)* governs two datives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Est mihi voluptati. It is, *or* brings, a pleasure to me.

Two datives are also put after *habeo, do, verto, relinquo, tribuo, fore, duco*, and some others; as,

Ducitur honori tibi, It is reckoned an honour to you. *Id vertitur mihi vitio*, I am blamed for that. So *Misit mihi muneri; Dedit mihi dono; Habet sibi laudi; Venire occurrere auxilio alicui*, Liv.

Obs. 1. Instead of the dative, we often use the nominative, or the accusative; as, *Est exitium pecori*, for *exitio*; *Dare aliquid alicui donum*, or *dono*; *Dare filiam ei nuptam*, or *nuptui*. When *dare*, and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood; as, *Dare crimini ei*, sc. *id*.

Obs. 2. The dative of the person is often to be supplied; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, præsidio, usui*, &c. scil. *mihi, alicui, hominibus*, or some such word. So, *ponere, opponere, pignori*, sc. *alicui*, to pledge. *Canere receptui*, sc. *suis militibus*, to sound a retreat; *Habere curæ, quæstui, odio, voluptati, religioni, studio, ludibrio, despicatui*, &c. sc. *sibi*.

Obs. 3. To this rule belong forms of naming; as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*, my name is Alexander; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander*; or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri*.

XIX. The compounds of *Sum*, except *Possum*, govern the dative; as,

Præfuit exercitui,	He commanded the army.
Adfuit precibus,	He was present at prayers.

The Construction of Comparatives

XX. Words of the comparative degree govern the ablative when *quam* is omitted in Latin; as,

Dulcior melle, Sweeter than honey. *Præstantior auro*, Better than gold.

Obs. 1. The sign of the ablative in English is *than*. The positive with the adverb *magis*, likewise governs the ablative; as, *Magis dilecta luce*, Virg.

The ablative is here governed by the preposition *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; as, *Fortior præ cæteris*. We find the comparative also construed with other prepositions; as, *immanior ante omnes*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The comparative degree may likewise be construed with the conjunction *quàm*; and then, instead of the ablative, the noun is to be put in whatever case the sense requires; as,

Dulcior quàm mel, scil. *est*. *Amo te magis quàm illum*, I love you more than him, that is, *quàm amo illum*, than I love him. *Amo te magis quàm ille*, I love you more than he, i. e. *quàm ille amat*, than he loves. *Plus datur a me quàm illo*, sc. *ab*.

OBS. 3. The conjunction *quàm* is often elegantly suppressed after *amplius* and *plus;* as, *Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti*, Cæs. scil. *quàm*. *Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi*, He has laid on me more than five hundred blows, *Ter*. *Castra ab urbe haud plus quinque millia passuum locant*, sc. *quàm*, Liv.

Quàm is sometimes elegantly placed between two comparatives; as, *Triumphus clarior quàm gratior*, Liv. Or the preposition *pro* is added; as, *Prælium atrocius, quàm pro numero pugnantium editur*, Liv.

The comparative is sometimes joined with these ablatives, *opinione, spe, æquo, justo, dicto;* as, *Credibili opinione major*, Cic. *Credibili fortior*, Ovid. Fast. iii. 618. *Gravius æquo*, Sall. *Dicto citius*, Virg. *Majora credibili tulimus*, Liv. They are often understood; as, *Liberius vivebat*, sc *justo*, too freely, *Nepos*.

Nihil is sometimes elegantly used for *nemo* or *nulli;* as, *Nihil vidi quidquam lætius*, for *neminem*, Ter. *Crasso nihil perfectius*, Cic. *Asperius nihil est humili, cùm surgit in altum*. So *quid nobis laboriosius*, for *quis*, &c. Cic. We say, *inferior patre nulla re*, or *quàm pater*. The comparative is sometimes repeated or joined with an adverb; as, *Magis magisque, plus plusque, minus minusque, carior cariorque; Quotidie plus, indies magis, semper candidior candidiorque*, &c.

OBS. 4. The relation of equality or sameness is likewise expressed in English by conjunctions; as, *Est tam doctus quàm ego*, He is as learned as I. *Animus erga te idem est ac fuit*. *Ac* and *atque* are sometimes, though more rarely, used after comparatives; as, *Nihil est magis verum atque hoc*, Ter.

OBS. 5. The excess or defect of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, expressed or understood; (*or more shortly*, the difference of measure is put in the ablative;) as,

Est decem digitis altior quàm frater, He is ten inches taller than his brother, *or* by ten inches. *Altero tanto major est fratre*, i. e. *duplo major*, he is as big again as his brother, *or* twice as big. *Sesquipede minor*, a foot and a half less; *Altero tanto, aut sesquimajor*, as big again, *or* a half bigger, *Cic*. *Ter tanto pejor est; Bis tanto amici sunt inter se, quàm prius*, Plaut. *Quinquies tanto amplius, quàm quantum licitum sit civitatibus imperavit*, five times more, *Cic*. To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative to increase its force; as, *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio*, &c. thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt*, The more they have, the more they desire. *Quanto melior, tanto felicior*, The better, the happier. *Quoque minor spes est, hoc magis ille cupit*, Ovid. Fast. ii. 766. We frequently find *multo, tanto, quanto*, also joined with superlatives; *Multo pulcherrimam eam haberemus*, Sal. *Multoque id maximum fuit*, Liv.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

1. THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

XXI. Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs; as,

Bene scribit, He writes well. *Fortiter pugnans*, Fighting bravely.
Servus egregiè fidelis, A slave remarkably faithful. *Satis bene*, Well enough.

OBS. 1. Adverbs are sometimes likewise joined to substantives; as, *Homerus planè orator; planè noster, verè Metellus*, Cic. So *Hodie mane; cras mane, heri mane, hodie vesperi*, &c. *tam mane, tam vespere*.

OBS. 2. The adverb for the most part is placed near to the word which it modifies or affects.

OBS. 3. Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative; as, *Nec non senserunt*, Nor did they not perceive, i. e. *Et senserunt*, And they did perceive; *Non poteram non exanimari metu*, Cic. Examples, however, of the contrary of this sometimes occur in good authors, both in English and Latin. Thus two or three negative participles are placed before the subjunctive mode, to express a stronger negation. *Neque tu haud dicas tibi non prædictum*, And do not say that you were not forewarned, *Ter*.

But what chiefly deserves attention in adverbs, is the degree of comparison and the mode with which they are joined:

1. *Apprimè, admŏdum, vehementer, maximè, perquam, valdè, oppidò*, &c. and *per* in composition, are usually joined to the positive; as, *Utrique nostrum gratum admodum feceris*, You will do what is very agreeable to both of us, Cic. *perquam puerile*, very childish; *oppidò pauci*, very few; *perfacile est*, &c. In like manner, *Parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum;* as, *In rebus apertissimis nimium longi sumus; parum firmus, multum bonus*, Cic. Adverbs in *um* are sometimes also joined to comparatives; as, *Forma viri aliquantùm amplior humanâ*, Liv.

QUAM is joined to the positive or superlative in different senses; as, *Quam difficile est!* How difficult it is! *Quam crudelis*, or *Ut crudelis est!* How cruel he is! *Flens quam familiariter*, very familiarly, *Ter*. So *quam severè*, very severely, *Cic*. *Quam latè*, very widely, *Cæs*. *Tum multa, quam*, &c. as many things as, &c. *Quam maximas potest copias armat*, as great as possible, *Sall*. *Quam maximas gratias agit, agam primum quam sæpissime*, Cic. *Quam quisque pessimè fecit, tam maximè tutus est*, Sall.

FACILE, for *haud dubiè*, undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to the superlatives or words of a similar meaning; as, *Facilè doctissimus, facilè princeps*, v. *præcipuus*. LONGE to comparatives or superlatives, rarely to the positive; as, *Longè eloquentissimus Plato*, Cic. *Pedibus longè melior Lycus*, Virg.

2. CUM, *when*, is construed with the indicative or subjunctive, oftener with the latter; DUM, *whilst*, or *how long*, with the indicative; as, *Dum hæc aguntur; Ægroto, dum anima est, spes esse*,

dicitur, Cic. *Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos*, Ovid. DUM and DONEC, for *usquedum*, until, sometimes with the indicative and sometimes with the subjunctive; as, *Operior, dum ista cognosco*, Cic. *Haud desinam, donec perfecero*, Ter. So QUOAD, for *quamdiu, quantum, quatenus* as long, as much, as far as; thus, *Quoad Catilina fuit in urbe. Quoad tibi æquum videbitur quoad possem et liceret; quoad progredi potuerit amentia*, Cic. But QUOAD, *until*, oftener with the subjunctive; as, *Thessalonicæ esse statueram, quoad aliquid ad me scriberes*, Cic. but not always; *Non faciam finem regendi, quoad nunciatum erit te fecisse*, Cic. The pronoun *ejus*, with *facere* or *fieri*, is elegantly added to *quoad*; as, *Quoad ejus facere poteris; Quoad ejus fieri, possit*, Cic. *Ejus* is thought to be here governed by *aliquid* or some such word understood. *Quoad corpus, quoad animam*, for *secundum*, or *quoad attinet ad corpus* vel *animam*, as to the body or soul, is esteemed by the best grammarians not to be good Latin.

3. POSTQUAM or POSTEAQUAM, *after*, is usually joined with the indicative. ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM, *before*; SIMUL, SIMUL AC, SIMUL ATQUE, SIMUL UT, *as soon as*; UBI, *when*, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive; as, *Antequam dico* or *dicam*, Cic. *Simul ac persensit*, Virg. *Simul ut videro Curionem*, Cic. *Hæc ubi dicta dedit*, Liv. *Ubi semel quis perjeraverit, ei credi postea non oportet*, Cic. So NÆ, *truly*; as, *Næ ego homo sum infelix*, Ter. *Næ tu, si id fecisses, melius famæ consuluisses*, Cic. But NE, *not*, with the imperative, or more elegantly with the subjunctive; as, *Ne jura*, Plaut. *Ne post conferas culpam in me*, Ter. *Ne tot annorum felicitatem in unius horæ dederis discrimen*, Liv.

4. QUASI, CEU, TANQUAM, PERINDE, when they denote resemblance, are joined with the indicative; *Fuit olim quasi ego sum, senex*, Plaut. *Adversi rupto ceu quondam turbine venti, confligunt*, Virg. *Hæc omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur*. But when used ironically, they have the subjunctive; as, *Quasi de verbo, non de re laboretur*, Cic.

5. UTINAM, O SI, UT for *utinam*, *I wish*, take the subjunctive; as, *Utinam ea res ei voluptati sit*, Cic. *O mihi præteritos referat si Jupiter annos*, Virg. *Ut illum dii deæque perdant*, Ter.

6. UT, *when*, or *after*, takes the indicative; as, *Ut discessit, venit*, &c. ¶ Also for *quam* or *quomodo*, how! as, *Ut valet! Ut falsus animi est! Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto latent!* Plaut. ¶ Or when it simply denotes resemblance; as, *Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse*, Plaut. ¶ In this sense it sometimes has the subjunctive; as, *Ut sementem feceris, ita metes*, Cic.

7. QUIN for CUR NON, takes the indicative; as, *Quin conticetis vocem indicem stultitiæ vestræ?* Cic. ¶ For IMO, *nay* or *but*, the indicative or imperative; as, *Quin est paratum argentum; quin tu hoc audi*, Ter. ¶ For UT, NON, QUI, QUÆ, QUOD NON, or QUO MINUS, the subjunctive; as, *Nulla tam facilis res, quin difficilis fiet quum invitus facias*, Ter. *Nemo est, quin malet; Facere non possum, quin ad te mittam*, I cannot help sending; *Nihil abest, quin sim miserrimus*, Cic.

1. The Government of Adverbs.

XXII. Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,

Pridie ejus diei,	The day before that day.
Ubique gentium,	Every where.
Satis est verborum,	There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of time, governing the genitive are, *Interea, postea, inde, tunc*; as *Interea loci*, in the meantime; *postea loci*, afterwards; *inde loci*, then; *tunc temporis*, at that time. 2. Of place, *Ubi* and *quo*, with their compounds *ubique, ubicunque, ubivis, ubi-ubi*, &c. Also *Eo, huc, huccine, unde, usquam, nusquam, longe, ibidem*; as, *Ubi, quo, quovis*, &c. also *usquam, nusquam, unde terrarum*, vel *gentium*; *longè gentium*; *ibidem loci, eo audaciæ, vecordiæ, miseriarum*, &c. to that pitch of boldness, madness, misery, &c. 3. Of quantity, *Abunde, affatim, largiter, nimis, satis, parum, minimè*; as, *Abundè gloriæ, affatim divitiarum, largiter auri, satis loquentiæ, sapientiæ parum est illi* vel *habet*. He has enough of glory, riches, &c. *Minimè gentium*, by no means.

Some add *ergo* and *instar*; as, *Ergo virtutis*, for the sake of virtue, *Cic. Instar montis*, like a mountain, *Virg*. But these are properly nouns.

Obs. 1. These adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, because they imply in themselves the force of a substantive; as, *Potentiæ gloriæque abundè adeptus*, the same with *abundantiam gloriæ*; or *res, locus*, or *negotium* and a preposition, may be understood; as, *Interea loci*, i. e. *inter ea negotia loci*; *Ubi terrarum*, for *in quo loco terrarum*.

Obs. 2. We usually say, *pridie, postridie, ejus diei*, seldom *diem*; but *pridie, postridie Kalendas, Nonas, Idus, ludos Apollinares, natalem ejus, absolutionem ejus*, &c. rarely *Kalendarum*, &c.

Obs. 3. *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative; as, *En hostis*, or *hostem*; *Ecce miserum hominem*, Cic. Sometimes a dative is added; as, *Ecce tibi Strato*, Ter. *Ecce duas* (scil. aras) *tibi, Daphni*, Virg. In like manner is construed *hem* put for *ecce*; as, *Hem tibi Davum*, Ter. But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

Obs. 4. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

Omnium optimè loquitur,	He speaks the best of all.
Convenienter naturæ,	Agreeably to nature.
Venit obviam ei,	He came to meet him.
Proximè castris or *castra*,	Next the camp.

2. The Construction of Prepositions.

1. *Prepositions governing the Accusative.*

XXIII. The prepositions *ad, apud, ante*, &c. govern the accusative.

AD astra, *to the stars*; religari ad asserem, *to be bound to a plank*; ad diem veniam, solvam, &c. *at* or *on*; ad portam, ostium, fores, *at, before*; ad urbem Tiberim, *near, at*; ad tem-

pla supplicatio, *in;* ad summum, *at most,* or *to the top;* ad summam, *on the whole;* Cic. ad ultimum, extremum, *at last, finally;* ad *v.* in speciem, *to appearance;* mentis ad omnia capacitas; annus fatalis ad interitum; lenius ad severitatem, *for, with respect to,* Cic. ad vivum, *sc.* corpus, *to the quick;* ad judicem agere, *before;* nihil ad Cæsarem, *in comparison of;* numero ad duodecim, *to the number of;* omnes ad unum, *to a man;* ad hoc, *besides;* ad vulgi opinionem, *according to;* homo ad unguem factus, *an accomplished man;* herbæ ad lunam messæ, *by the light of,* Virg. ad tempus venit, *at;* ira brevis est & ad tempus, *for,* ad tempus consilium capiam, *according to,* Cic. ad decem annos, *after;* annos ad quinquaginta natus, *about,* Cic. nebula erat ad multum diei, *for a great part of the day,* Liv. ad pedes, jacēre, provolvi, procumbere, & ad genua; ad manus esse, *at;* ad manus venire, *to come to a close engagement;* ad libellam deberi, *to a farthing, no more and no less;* ad amussim, *exactly;* ad hæc visa auditaque, *upon seeing and hearing these things,* Liv.

AD seems sometimes to be taken adverbially; as, Ad duo millia cæsa sunt; ad mille hominum amissum est; ad ducenti perierunt, *about,* Liv.

Apud forum, *at;* apud me cœnabis, *at my house;* apud senatum, judices, *v.* aliquem dicere, *before;* apud majores nostros, *among;* apud Xenophontem, *in the book of;* Est mihi fides, *vel* valeo apud illum, *I have credit with him;* facio te apud illum deum, *Ter.*

Ante diem, focum, &c. *before.*

Adversus, *v.* -um; Contra hostes, *against;* adversus infimos justitia est servanda, *toward;* adversum hunc loqui, *to,* Ter. Lerina adversum Antipolim, *over against,* Plin.

Cis *vel* citra flumen, *on this side;* citra necessitatem, *without;* Ede citra cruditatem, bibe citra ebrietatem, *Senec.*

Circum & circa regem, *about;* Varia circa hæc opinio, *Plin.*

Erga amicos, *towards.* Extra muros; Extra jocum, periculum, noxiam, sortem, *without;* nemo extra te, *besides;* extra conjurationem, *not concerned in,* Sall.

Infra tectum, *below the roof.*

Inter fratres, *among;* inter & super cœnam, *during, in the time of;* inter hæc parata, *during these preparations,* Sall. Inter tot annos, *in,* Cic. Inter diem, *whence;* interdiu, *in the day time;* inter se amant, *they love one another;* Quasi non nôrimus nos inter nos, *Ter.*

Intra privatos parietes, intra paucos annos, *within;* intra famam est, *less than report,* Quinct.

Juxta macellum, *near the shambles.*

Ob lucrum, *for gain;* ob oculos, *before;* ob industriam *for* de industria, *on purpose,* Plaut.

Penes quem, *or* quem penes, *in the power of;* Penes te es? [illegible] *you in your senses?* Hor.

Per agros, *th*[illegible]; per vim, per scelus, *by;* per anni tempus, per ætatem licet, *for, by reason of.*

Pone caput, *behind.*

Post hoc tempus, *after;* post tergum, *behind;* post homines natos, post hominum memoriam, *since the world began.*

Præter te nemo, *nobody besides,* or *except;* præter casam fugere, *beyond;* præter legem, morem æquum et bonum, spem, opinionem, &c. *contrary to, against, beyond;* præter cæteros excellere, lamentari, *above;* præter ripam ire, *along, near;* præter oculos, *before,* Cic.

Propter virtutem, *for, on account of;* propter aquæ rivum, *near, hard by,* Virg.

Secundum facta et virtutes tuas, *according to,* Ter. secundum littus, secundum aurem vulneratus est, *near to;* in actione secundum vocem, vultus plurimum valet; secundum patrem tu es proximus, *after, next to;* Prætor secundum me decrevit, sententiam dedit, *for, in my favour,* Cic.

Secus viam, *by, along.*

Supra terram, *above.*

Trans mare, *over, beyond.*

Ultra oceanum, *beyond.*

To prepositions governing the accusative are commonly added Circiter, prope, usque, and versus; as, Circiter meridiem, *about mid day;* prope muros, *near the walls;* usque Puteolos, Tharsum usque, *as far as;* Orientem versus, *towards the east.* But in these *ad* is understood, which we find sometimes expressed; as, Prope ad annum, *Nep.* Ab ovo usque ad mala, *Hor.* Ad oceanum versus, *Cæs.* In Italiam versus, *Cic.*

2. *Prepositions governing the Ablative.*

XXIV. The prepositions *a, ab, abs,* &c. govern the ablative.

A patre, ab omnibus, abs te, *by* or *from;* a puero, *vel* pueris, a pueritia, in cunabulis, teneris unguibus, &c. *from a child, ever since childhood;* ab ovo usque ad mala, *from the beginning to the end of supper;* a manu, *sc.* servus, *an amanuensis* or *clerk;* ad manum, *a waiting man;* a pedibus, *a footman;* a latere principis, *an attendant.* *So* a secretis, rationibus, consiliis, cyathis, &c. *a secretary, accountant,* &c. fores a nobis, *for* nostræ. Injuria ab illo, *for* illius. *Ter.* a cœna, *after;* secundus, tertius a Romulo; ictus ab latere, *on* or *in;* a senatu stare, *for, in defence of;* ab oculis doleo, *Plaut.* ab ingenio improbus, a pecunia et militibus imparatus, *as to, with respect to,* Cic. Est calor a sole; omissiores ab re, *too careless about money;* a villa mercenarium vidi, *Ter.*

Absque causa, *without;* absque te esset, recte ego mihi vidissem *i. e.* si tu non esses, nisi tu esses, *but for you, had it not been for you,* Ter. Absque *is chiefly used by comic writers;* sine, *by orators.*

Clam patre *and* patrem, *without the knowledge of.*

Coram omnibus, *before, in presence of.*

Cum exercitu, *with;* testis mecum est annulus, *in my possession,* Ter. cum prima luce, *at break of day;* cum imperio esse, *in;* cum primis, in primis, *in the first place;* cum metu dicere, cum lætitia vivere, cum cura, &c. *Cic.* *We say,* mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum; *rarely* cum me, cum te, &c. *and* quocum *or* cum quo, quibuscum *or* cum quibus.

De lana caprina rixantur, *about, concerning;* de tanto patrimonio nihil relictum est, *of;* de loco superiore, *from;* de die, *by day;* de nocte, *by night;* de integro, *anew, afresh;* de, *v.* ex improviso, *unexpectedly;* de, *v.* ex industria, *on purpose;* de meo, *at my expense;* id de lucro

putato esse, *clear gain*, Ter. de, *v.* ex compacto agere, *by agreement;* de transverso, *cross-wise, athwart;* de, *v.* ex ejus sententia, consilio, *according to;* qua, *v.* hac de causa, *for;* homo de plebe; templum de marmore, *of;* de scripto dicere, *to read a speech;* de filio emit, *from*, Cic. De servis fidelissimus; de ipsius exercitu non amplius hominum mille cecidit, *Nep.* Robur de exercitu, *Liv.* Adolescens de summo loco, *Plaut.* De procul aspicere, *Id.*

E foro, ex ædibus, *from, out of;* e contrario, *v.* contraria parte, *on the contrary;* e regione, *over against;* e republica, e re alicujus, *for the good of;* statim e somno, ex fuga, ex tanta properantia, aliud ex alio malum, *from, after;* e vestigio, *out of hand, immediately;* poculum ex auro; ex equo pugnare, *on horseback;* facere pugnam ex commodo, *on advantageous ground*, Sall. diem ex die expectare, *from day to day, day after day;* ex ordine, *in order;* magna ex parte, *for the most part;* ex super vacuo, *superfluously;* ex tua dignitate, *v.* virtute, ex decreto senatûs, e natura, *according to; so* vulgus ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa æstimat; ex, *v.* de more, ad *v.* in morem alicujus: Ex animo, *from the heart;* Insolentia ex prosperis rebus, e via languere, ex doctrina nobilis, *on account of;* ex usu est tibi, *of advantage;* ex eo die, *since;* ex amicis certis certissimus, *of, or among;* ex pedibus laborare, *to be ill of the gout*, Cic. E re nata, *as the matter stands*, Ter. Commenta mater est, esse ex alio viro, nescio quo, puerum natum, *by*, Id.

Pro gloria certare, *for;* Rati noctem pro se, *favourable to them*, Sall. Hoc est pro me, *Cic.* pro templo, tribunali, concione, rostris, castris, foribus, *before;* pro sua dignitate, sapientia, &c. pro potestate cogere, pro tempore, re, loco, suo jure, *according to;* est pro prætore, pro te molam, comes facundus pro vehiculo est, *for, instead of;* pro viribus, pro parte virili, pro sua quisque parte, *v.* facultate, *to one's ability or power;* Parum tibi pro eo, quod a te habeo, reddidi, *in comparison of, considering*, Cic. pro ut, pro eo ac, pro eo ut mereor, *as I deserve;* pro se quisque, uterque, &c. *for his own part;* pro rata parte, pro portione, *in proportion;* pro cive se gerit; agere pro victoribus; pro suo uti; pro rupto fœdus habet, *for, as, so;* pro certo, infecto, comperto, nihilo, concesso, &c. habeo, duco. Pro occiso, relictus est, *Cic.*

Præ se pugionem tulit, *before;* speciem præ se boni viri fert, *pretends to be*, Ter. præ lacrymis non possum scribere, *for, because, of;* illum, præ me contempsi, *in comparison of: So the adverb* præut; *as*, præut hujus rabies quæ dabit, *Ter.*

Palam populo, omnibus, *before, with the knowledge of.*

Sine labore, *without;* sine ulla causa, pompa, molestia, querela, impensa, &c. homo sine re, fide, spe, fortunis, sedes, &c. *Cic.*

Capulo tenus, *up to the hilt.* *Tenus* is construed with the genitive plural, when the word wants the singular; as, *Cumarum tenus*, as far as *Cumæ:* or when we speak of things, of which we have by nature only two; as, Oculorum, aurium, narium, labrorum, lumborum, crurum tenus, *up to. We also find* Corcyræ tenus, et ostiis tenus, *Liv.* Colchis tenus, *Flor.* Pectoribus tenus, *Ovid.*

To prepositions governing the ablative is commonly added Procul; as, *Procul domo*, far from home; but here *a* is understood, which is also often expressed; as, *Procul a patria*, Virg. *Procul ab ostentatione*, Quinct. *Culpa est procul a me*, Ter.

3. *Prepositions governing the Accusative or Ablative.*

XXV. The prepositions *in, sub, super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub*, govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

IN when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative; as,

In urbem ire, *into;* amor in patriam, in te benignus, *towards;* in lucem, *until day;* in eam sententiam, *to that purpose, on that head;* in rem tuam est, *for your advantage;* in utramque partem disputare, *on both sides, for and against;* litura in nomen, *on*, Cic. potestas in filium, *over;* in aliquem dicere, *against;* mirum in modum, *after;* in pedes stare, in aurem dormire, *on;* in os laudare, *to, before;* in, *v.* inter patres lectus, *into the number of;* in vulgus probari, spargere, &c. *among;* crescit in dies, in singulos dies, omnes in dies, *every day;* in diem posterum, proximum, decimum, *against;* in diem vivere, *to live from hand to mouth, not to think of to-morrow;* Est in diem, *will happen sometime after*, Ter. Induciæ in duos menses datæ, in hunc diem, annum, &c. *for;* Ternis assibus in pedem, *v.* in singulos pedes, transegit, *He bargained for three shillings a foot*, or *for every foot; So* in jugerum, militem, capita, naves, &c. In medimna singula, H. S. quinos denos dedisti, *Cic.*

In portu navigo, in tempore, *in;* esse in potestate, *v.* in potestatem, honore, *v.* honorem, mente, *v* mentem; in manu, *v.* manibus esse, habere, tenere, *in one's power, on hand;* in amicis, *among;* in oculis, *before;* Occissus est in provinciam, *far* in provincia, *Sall.* In pueritia, adolescentia, senectute, absentia, *for* puer *or* pueri, *when a boy* or *boys*, &c. Hoc in tempore, *Nep.* In loco fratris diligere, *for* ut fratrem, *Ter.*

Sub terras ibit imago, sub aspectum cadit, *under;* sub ipsum funus, *near, just before.* Hor. sub lucem, ortum lucis, noctem, vesperam, brumam, *i. e.* incipiente luce, &c. *at the dawn of day*, &c. sub idem tempus, *about;* sub eas literas recitatæ sunt tuæ, sub festos dies, *after*, Cic.

Sub muro, rege, pedibus, &c. *under;* sub urbe, *near*, Ter. sub ea conditione, *v.* -em, *on* or *with.*

Super Numidiam, *above, beyond;* super ripas, *upon;* super hæc; super morbum etiam fames affixit, *besides*, Liv. super arbore, fronde super viridi, *upon*; super hac re scribere, his accensa

super, *concerning;* alii super alios trucidantur, *Liv.* Super cœnam, super vinum et epulas, *for* inter, *during*, Curt. Nec super ipse suâ molitur laude laborem, *for*, Virg.

SUBTER terram *vel* terra, *under*.

OBS. 1. When prepositions do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs.

Such are *Ante, circa, clam, coram, contra, infra, intra, juxta, palam, pone, post, propter, secus, subter, super, supra, ultra.* But in most of these the case seems to be implied in the sense; as, *Longo post tempore venit*, sc. *post id tempus. Adversus, juxta, propter, secus, secundum*, and *clam*, are by some thought to be always adverbs, having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the accusative or ablative; as, *Intus cellam*, for *intra*, Liv. *Intus templo divum*, sc. *in*, Virg. *Simul his*, sc. *cum*, Hor.

OBS. 2. A and E are only put before consonants; AB and EX, usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants; as,

A patre, a regione; ab initio, ab rege; ex urbe, ex parte; abs before *q* and *t;* as, *abs te, abs quovis homine*, Ter. Some phrases are used only with *e;* as, *e loginquo, e regione, e vestigio, e re mea est*, &c. Some only with *ex;* as, *Ex compacto, ex tempore, magna ex parte*, &c.

OBS. 3. Prepositions are often understood; as, *Devenere locos*, scil. *ad; It portis*, sc. *ex* Virg. *Nunc id prodeo*, scil. *ob* vel *propter*, Ter. *Maria aspera juro*, scil. *per*, Virg. *Ut se loco movere non possent*, scil. *e* vel *de*, Cæs. *Vina promens dolio*, scil. *ex*, Hor. *Quid illo facias? Quid me fiet*, sc. *de*, Ter. We sometimes find the word to which the preposition refers, suppressed; as, *Circum Concordiæ*, sc. *ædem*, Sall. *Campum Stellatim divisit extra sortem ad viginti millibus civium*, i. e *civium millibus ad viginti millia*, Suet. But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, *Emittere servum*, scil. *manu*, Plaut. *Evomere virus*, scil. *ore*, Cic. *Educere copias*, scil. *castris*, Cæs.

3. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

XXVI. The interjections *O, heu, proh*, and some others, govern the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

O vir bonus or *bone!* O good man! *Heu me miserum!* Ah wretched me!

So *O vir fortis atque amicus!* Ter. *Heu vanitas humana!* Plin. *Heu miserande puer!* Virg. *O præclarum custodem ovium* (ut aiunt) *lupum!* Cic.

XXVII. The interjections *hei*, and *væ*, govern the dative; as,

Hei mihi! Ah me! *Væ vobis!* Wo to you!

OBS. 1. *Heus* and *ohe* are joined only with the vocative; as, *Heus Syre*, Ter. *Ohe libelle!* Martial. *Proh* or *pro, ah, vah, hem*, have generally either the accusative or vocative; as, *Pro hominum fidem!* Ter. *Proh Sancte Jupiter!* Cic. *Hem astutias!* Ter.

OBS. 2. Interjections cannot properly have either concord or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connexion with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case, therefore, is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative which is always placed absolutely; thus, *Heu me miserum!* stands for *Heu! quam me miserum sentio; Hei mihi* for *Hei! malum est mihi! Proh dolor!* for *Proh! quantus est dolor!* and so in other examples.

4. THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

XXVIII. The conjunctions *et, ac, atque, nec, aut, neque*, and some others, connect like cases and modes; as,

Honora patrem et matrem,	Honour father and mother.
Nec legit nec scribit,	He neither reads nor writes.

OBS. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions; as likewise, *quam, nisi, præterquam, an;* and also adverbs of likeness; as, *ceu, tanquam, quasi, ut*, &c. as,

Nullum præmium a vobis postulo, præterquam hujus die memoriam, Cic. *Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur*, Id.

OBS. 2. These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence if the construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and modes may be coupled together; as,

Interest mea et reipublicæ; Constitit asse et pluris; Sive es Romæ, sive in Epiro; Decius cum se devoveret, et in mediam aciem irruebat, Cic. *Vir magni ingenii summâque industriâ; Neque per vim, neque insidiis*, Sall. *Tecum habita, et nôris, quam sit tibi curta supellex*, Pers.

OBS. 3. When *et, aut, vel, sive*, or *nec*, are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English by *both* or *likewise; aut* or *vel*, by *either;* the first *sive*, by *whether;* and the first *nec*, by *neither;* as,

Et legit, et scribit; so *tum legit, tum scribit;* or *cum legit, tum scribit*, He both reads and writes; *Sive legit, sive scribit*, Whether he reads or writes; *facere quâ vera, quâ falsa; Increpare quâ consules ipsos, quâ exercitum*, to upbraid both the consuls and the army, *Liv.*

XXIX. Two, or more substantives singular, connected by a conjunction, may have a verb, adjective, or relative plural to agree with them; as,

Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti, Peter and John, who are learned.

OBS. 1. If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia*

valetis, ego et Cicero valemus, If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well, *Cic.* In English, the person speaking usually puts himself last; thus, *You and I read; Cicero and I are well:* but in Latin, the person who speaks is generally put first; thus, *Ego et tu legimus.*

Obs. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter; as, *Pater et mater, qui sunt mortui;* but this is only applicable to beings which may have life. The person is sometimes implied; as, *Athenarum et Cratippi, ad quos,* &c. *Propter summam doctoris auctoritatem et urbis, quorum alter,* &c. *Cic.* Where *Athenæ et urbs* are put for *the learned men* of Athens. So in substantives; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legati missi,* i. e. the king and queen, *Liv.*

Obs. 3. If the substantive signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt,* Sall.

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life: because when we apply a quality or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantive to some certain class, under which they may all be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus.* Now the *Genus* or class which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substances or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this, the Latin Grammarians use the word *Negotia.*

Obs. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest; as,

Et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit, Cic. *Sociis et rege recepto,* Virg. *Et ego in culpa sum, et tu,* Both I am in the fault, and you; or, *Et ego et tu es in culpa,* Both I and you are in the fault *Nihil hic nisi carmina, desunt;* or *nihil hic deest nisi carmina. Omnia, quibus turbari solita erat civitas, domi discordia, foris bellum exortum; Duo millia et quadringenti cæsi,* Liv. This construction is most usual, when the different substantives resemble one another in sense; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium, in senibus est,* Understanding, reason, and prudence is in old men. *Quibus ipse meique ante Larem proprium vescor,* for *vescimur,* Horat.

Obs. 5. The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et;* as,

Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, Virg. The conjunction is frequently understood; as, *Dum ætas, metus, magister prohibebant,* Ter. *Frons, oculi, vultus sæpe mentiuntur,* Cic.

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis.*

XXX. The conjunctions *ut, quo, licet,* &c. govern the subjunctive mood; as,

Lego ut discam, I read that I may learn.
Utinam saperes, I wish you were wise.

Obs. 1. All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the subjunctive mode.

Whether they be adjectives; as, *Quantus, qualis, quotus, quotuplex, uter;* pronouns, as, *quis & cujus;* adverbs, as, *Ubi, quo, unde, quâ, quorsum, quamdiu, quamdudum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, num, utrum, quomodo, qui, ut, quam, quantopĕre;* or conjunctions, as, *ne, an, anne, annon:* Thus, *Quis est?* Who is it? *Nescio quis sit,* I do not know who it is. *An venturus est? Nescio, dubito, an venturus sit; Viden' ut alta stet nive candidum Soracte?* Hor. But these words are sometimes joined with the indicative; as, *Scio quid ago,* Plaut. *Haud scio, an amat,* Ter. *Vide avaritia quid facit,* Id. *Vides quam turpe est,* Cic.

¶ In like manner the relative QUI in a continued discourse; as, *Nihil est quod Deus efficere non possit. Quis est, qui utilia fugiat?* Cic. Or when joined with QUIPPE or UTPOTE; *Neque Antonius procul aberat, utpote qui sequeretur,* &c. Sall. But these are sometimes, although more rarely, joined with the indicative. So *Est qui, sunt qui, est quando* v. *ubi,* &c. are joined with the indicative or substantive.

Note. *Haud scio an recte dixerim,* is the same with *dico, affirmo,* Cic.

Obs. 2. ETSI, TAMETSI, and TAMENETSI, QUAMQUAM, in the beginning of a sentence, have the indicative; but elsewhere, they also take the subjunctive; ETIAMSI and QUAMVIS commonly have the subjunctive, and UT, *although,* always has it; as, *Ut quæras, non reperies,* Cic. QUONIAM, QUANDO, QUANDOQUIDEM, are usually construed with the indicative; SI, SIN, NE, NISI, SIQUIDEM, QUOD, and QUIA, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive. DUM, for *dummŏdo, provided,* has always the subjunctive; as, *Oderint dum metuant,* Cic. And QUIPPE, for *nam,* always the indicative; as, *Quippe vetor fatis.*

Obs. 3. Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions belonging to them; so that, in the following member of the sentence, the latter answers to the former; thus, when *etsi, tametsi,* or *quamvis, although,* are used in the former member of a sentence, *tamen, yet* or *nevertheless,* generally answers to them in the latter. In like manner, *Tam—quam; Adeo* or *ita,—ut:* in English, *As,—as,* or *so;* as, *Etsi sit liberalis, tamen non est profusus,* Although he be liberal, yet he is not profuse. So *prius* or *ante,—quam.* In some of these, however, we find the latter conjunction sometimes omitted, particularly in English.

Obs. 4. The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after these verbs, *Volo, nolo, malo, rogo, precor censeo, suadeo, licet, oportet, necesse est,* and the like; and likewise after these imperatives, *Sine, fac* or *facito;* as, *Ducas volo hodie uxorem; Nolo mentiare; Fac cogites,* Ter. In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave;* as, *Cave facias,* Cic. *Post* is also sometimes understood; thus, *Die octavo, quam creatus erat,* Liv. iv. 47. scil. *post.*

Obs. 5. *Ut* and *Quod* are thus distinguished: *ut* denotes the final cause, and is commonly used with regard to something future; *quod* marks the efficient or impulsive cause, and is generally used concerning the event or thing done; as, *Lego ut discam,* I read that I may learn; *Gaudeo quòd legi,* I am glad that *or* because I have read. *Ut* is likewise used after these intensive words, as they are called, *Adeo, ita, sic, tam, talis, tantus, tot,* &c

Obs. 6. After the verbs *timeo, vereor,* and the like, *ut* is taken in a negative sense for *ne non,* and *ne* in an affirmative sense; as,

Timeo ne faciat, I fear he will do it; *Timeo ut faciat,* I fear he will not do it. *Id paves ne ducas tu illam, tu autem ut ducas,* Ter. *Ut sis vitalis, metuo,* Hor. *Timeo ut frater vivat,* will not;—*ne frater moriatur,* will. But in some few examples they seem to have a contrary meaning.

1. *Verbs governing the Accusative.*

XXXI. Verbs, signifying actively, govern the accusative; as,

Ama Deum, Love God. *Reverere parentes,* Reverence your parents.

Obs. 1. Neuter verbs also govern the accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own; as,

Ire iter or *viam; Pugnare pugnam* or *prælium; Currere cursum; Canere cantilenam; Vivere vitam; Ludere ludum; Sequi sectam; Somniare somnium,* &c. or when they are taken in a metaphorical sense; as, *Corydon ardebat Alexin,* scil. *propter,* i. e. *vehementer amabat,* Virg. *Currimus æquor,* scil. *per,* Id. So *comptos arsit adulteri crines,* Hor. *Saltare Cyclopa; olet hircum; Sulcos et vineta crepat mera,* Hor. *Vox hominem sonat; Sudare mella,* Virg. *Si Xerxes Hellesponto juncto, et Athone perfosso, maria ambulavisset, terramque navigasset,* sc. *per* Cic. Or when they have a kind of active sense; as, *Clamare aliquem nomine,* Virg. *Callere jura; Mœrere mortem; Horret iratum mare,* Hor.

Sometimes instead of the accusative, neuter verbs have an ablative; as, *Ire itinere; dolere dolore, vicem ejus; gaudere gaudio; mori* v. *obire morte; vivere vitâ; ardet virgine,* Horat. *Ludere aleam* v. *-â; manare, pluere, rorare, stillare, sudare, aliquid* vel *aliquo.* *Erubescere jura,* Virg. *origine,* Tacit. *equo vehi,* Curt.

Obs. 2. Several verbs are used both in an active and neuter sense; as,

Abhorrere famam, *to dread infamy,* Liv. a litibus; ab uxore ducenda, *to be averse from,* Id. a meis moribus abhorret, *is inconsistent with,* Cic.

Abolere monumenta viri, *to abolish,* Virg. illis Cladis Caudinæ nondum memoria aboleverat, *was not effaced from, they had not forgotten,* Liv.

Adolere penates, *to burn, to sacrifice to,* Virg.

Ætas adolevit; adolevit ad ætatem, *Plaut.*

Declinare ictum, *to avoid;* loco; agmen aliquo, *to remove.*

Degenerare animos, *to weaken;* patri, *to degenerate from;* a virtute majorum.

Durare adolescentes labore, *to harden;* Res durat ad breve tempus, *endures;* In ædibus durare nequeo, *stay* or *remain,* Plaut.

Inclinare culpam in aliquem, *to lay;* Hos ut sequar inclinat animus, *inclines;* acies inclinat, *vel* inclinatur, *gives away.*

Laborare arma, *to forge;* morbo, a dolore, e renibus, *to be ill;* de re aliqua, *to be concerned.*

Morari iter, *to stop;* in urbe, *to stay;* Hoc nihil moror, *I do not mind.*

Properare pecuniam hæredi, *Hor.* in orbem; ad unam sedem, *Ov.*

Quadrare acervum, *to square,* Hor. aliquid ad normam; alicui, in aliquem, ad multa, *to fit.*

Suppeditare copiam dicendi, *to furnish;* Sumptus illi, *vel* in sumptibus, *Ter.* suppeditat oratio, *is afforded;* Manubiæ in fundamenta vix suppeditârunt, *were sufficient,* Liv.

Obs. 3. These accusatives, *hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca,* &c. are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *circa* or *propter* understood; as, *Id lacrumat, Id succenset,* Ter.

Obs. 4. The accusative is often understood. *Tum prora avertit,* sc. *se,* Virg. *Flumina præcipitant,* sc. *se,* Id. *Quòcunque intenderat,* sc. *se,* turned or directed himself, *Sallust.* *Obiit* sc. *mortem,* Ter *Cum faciam vitulâ,* sc. *sacra,* Virg. Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence; as, *Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridere decorum;* for *dulcem sermonem, decorum risum,* Hor

2. *Verbs governing the Genitive.*

XXXII. *Misereor, miseresco,* and *satago,* govern the genitive; as,

Miserere civium tuorum, Pity your countrymen.

Satagit rerum suarum, He has his hands full at home, *or* has enough to do about his own affairs.

Obs. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction, particularly such as signify some affection of the mind; as, *Ango, decipior, desipio, discrucior, excrucio, fallo* & *fallor, fastideo, invideo, lætor, miror, pendeo, studeo, vereor;* as, *Ne angas te animi,* Plaut. *Laborum decipitur,* Hor. *Discrucior animi,* Ter. *Pendet mihi animus, pendeo animi* vel *animo;* but we always say, *Pendemus animis,* not *animorum,* are in suspense, *Cic.* *Justitiæ prius mirer,* Virg. In like manner, *Abstineo, desino, desisto, quiesco, regno;* likewise, *adipiscor, condico, credo, frustror, funo, laudo, libero, levo, participo, prohibeo;* as, *Abstineto irarum; Desine querelarum; Regnavit populorum,* Hor. *Desistere pugnæ,* Virg. *Quarum rerum condixit,* Liv.

But all these verbs are for the most part differently construed; thus, *Angor, desipio, discrucior, fallor animo.* *Hoc animum meum excruciat.* *Fastidio, miror, vereor aliquem,* vel *aliquid.* *Lætor aliquâ re.* Some of them are joined with the infinitive; or with *quòd, ut, ne,* and the subjunctive.

In like manner we usually say, *Desino aliquid, et ab aliquo,* to give over; *Desisto incepto, de negotio, ab illa mente; Quiesco a labore; Regnare in equitibus, oppidis,* sc. *in,* Cic. *Per urbes,* Virg. *Adipisci id; Frustrari in re; Furere de aliquo,* Cic.

Obs. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs; thus, *Misereor fratris,* scil. *causâ, Angor animi,* scil. *dolore* or *anxietate.*

3. *Verbs governing the Dative.*

XXXIII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has *to*, or *for*, after it in English; as,

Finis venit imperio,	An end is come to the empire, *Liv.*
Animus redit hostibus,	Courage returns to the enemy, *Id.*
Tibi seris, tibi metis,	You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself, *Plaut.*

So, *Non nobis solùm nati sumus,* Cic. *Multa malè eveniunt bonis,* Id. *Sol lucet etiam sceleratis,* Sen. *Hæret lateri lethalis arundo,* Virg.

XXXIV. Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, govern the dative; as,

Satisfacio, satisdo, benefacio, benedico, benevolo, malefacio, maledico tibi, &c.

XXXV. Many verbs compounded with these nine prepositions, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*, *super*, govern the dative; as,

1. *Præcedo, præcurro, præeo, præsideo, præluceo, præniteo, præsto, prævaleo, præverto.*
2. *Accedo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adno, adnato, adequito, adhæreo, adsto, adstipulor, advolvor, affulgeo, allabor, allaboro, annuo, appareo, applaudo, appropinquo, arrideo, aspiro, assentior, assideo assisto, assuesco, assurgo.*
3. *Colludo, concino, consono, convivo.*
4. *Succedo, succumbo, sufficio, suffragor, subcresco, suboleo, subjaceo, subrepo.*
5. *Antecello, anteeo, antesto, anteverto.*
6. *Obrepo, obluctor, obtrector, obstrepo, obmurmuro, occumbo, occurro, occurso, obsto, obsisto, obvenio.*
7. *Incumbo, indormio, indubito, inhio, ingemisco, inhæreo, insideo, insidior, insto, insisto, insudo, insulto, invigilo, illacrymo, illudo, immineo, immorior, immoror, impendeo.*
8. *Intervenio, intermico, intercedo, intercido, interjaceo.*
9. *Supervenio, supercurro, supersto.* But most verbs compounded with SUPER govern the accusative.

XXXVI. Verbs, signifying *to profit*, *hurt*, *favour*, *assist*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *trust*, *threaten*, and *be angry with*, govern the dative.

1. To profit or hurt; as,

Proficio, prosum, placeo, commodo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consulo, for *prospicio.* Likewise, *Noceo, officio, incommodo, displiceo, insidior.*

2. To favour or assist, and the contrary; as,

Faveo, gratulor, gratificor, grator, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adulor, plaudo, blandior, lenecinor, palpor, assentor, supparasitor. Likewise, *Auxilior, adminiculor, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medeor, medicor, opitulor.* Likewise, *Derogo, detraho, invideo, æmulor.*

3. To command and obey, to serve and resist; as,

Impero, præcipio, mando, moderor, for *modum adhibeo.* Likewise, *Pareo, ausculto, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, morigero, morigeror, obsecundo.* Likewise, *Famulor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor.* Likewise, *Repugno, obsto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, refragor, adversor*

4. To threaten and to be angry; as,

Minor, comminor, interminor, irascor, succenseo.

5. To trust; as,

Fido, confido, credo, diffido.

To these add, *Nubo, excello, hæreo, supplico, cedo, despēro, operor, præstolor, prævaricor, recipio,* to promise; *renuncio; respondeo,* to answer or satisfy; *tempero, studeo, vaco,* to apply; *convicior.*

Exc. *Jubeo, juvo, lædo,* and *offendo,* govern the accusative.

Obs. 1. Verbs governing the dative only, are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs governing the dative, have also an accusative expressed or understood.

Obs. 2. Most verbs governing the dative only, have been enumerated; because there are a great many verbs compounded with prepositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise construed: and still more signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative; as, *Læo, erigo, alo, nutrio, amo, diligo, vexo, crucio, aversor,* &c. *aliquem,* not *alicui.*

Obs. 3. Many of these verbs are variously construed, particularly such as are compounded with a preposition; as,

Anteire, antecedere, antecellere, præcedere, præcurrere, præire, &c. alicui *or* aliquem, *to go before, to excel.*

Acquiescere, rei, re, *v.* in re. Adequitare portæ Syracusas.

Adjacere, mari, *v.* mare, *to lie near.*

Adnare navibus, naves, ad naves, *to swim to*

Adversari ei, *rarely* eum, *to oppose.*

Advolvi genibus, genua, ad genua, *to fall at one's knees.*

Advolare ei, ad eum, rostra, *to fly up to.*

Afflare rei, *v.* homini; rem, *v.* hominem; aliquid, alicui, *to breathe upon.*

Adulari ei, *v.* eum, *to flatter.* Allabi oris; aures ejus, *Virg.* ad exta, *Liv.*
Apparere consuli, *to attend;* ad solium Jovis; Res apparet mihi, *appears.*
Appropinquare Britanniæ, portam, ad portam, *to approach.*
Congruere alicui, cum re aliqua, inter se, *to agree.*
Dominari cunctis oris, *Virg.* in cætera animalia, *to rule over.* Ovid.
Fidere, confidere alicui rei, aliqua re, in re, *to trust to,* or *in.*
Ignoscere mihi, culpæ meæ, mihi culpam, *to pardon me* or *my fault.*
Impendēre alicui, aliquem, in aliquem, *to hang over.*
Incessit cura, cupido, timor ei, eum, *v.* in eum, *seized.*
Incumbere toro; gladium, in gladium, *to fall upon;* labori, ad laudem, ad studia, in studium, curam, cogitationem, &c. *to apply to.*
Indulgere alicui, id ei; nimio vestitu, *to indulge in,* Ter.
Inhiare auro, bona ejus, *to gape after.* **Innasci** agris, in agris, *to grow in.*
Insultare rei et homini, *v.* hominem; fores; patientiam ejus, in miseriam ejus; bonos, *to insult over.*
Inniti rei, re, in re; in aliquem, *to depend on.*
Latet res mihi, *v.* me, *is unknown to me.* **Mederi** ei; cupiditates, *to cure.*
Ministrare ei, *to serve;* arma ei, *to furnish.*
Moderari animo, gentibus: navim, omnia, *to rule.*
Nocere ei, *rarely* eum, *to hurt,* Plaut.
Nubere alicui; in familiam; Nupta ei *and* cum eo, *to marry,* Cic.
Obrepere ei *and* eum, *to creep upon;* in animos; ad honores.
Obstrepere auribus *and* aures. **Obtrectare** ei laudibus, ejus, *to detract from.*
Obumbrat sibi vinea; solem, nubes, *shades.* **Palpari** alicui *and* aliquem.
Pacisci alicui, cum aliquo; vitam ab eo, *Sall.* vitam pro laude, *Virg.*
Præstolari alicui *and* aliquem, *to wait upon.*
Procumbere terræ; genibus ejus, *Ovid.* ad genua, *Liv.* ad pedes, *to fall.*

To these may be added verbs, which, chiefly among the poets, govern the dative; but in prose are usually construed with a preposition; as, 1. *Contendo, certo, bello, pugno, concurro, coeo alicui,* for *cum aliquo;* 2. *Distare, dissentire, discrepare, dissidere, differre rei alicui,* for *à re aliqua.* We also say, *Contendunt, pugnant, distant,* &c. *inter se;* and *contendere, pugnare contra* and *adversus aliquem.*

Obs. 4. Many verbs vary both their signification and construction; as, *Timeo, metuo, formido, horreo tibi, de te,* and *pro te,* I am afraid for you, *or* for your safety; but *timeo, horreo te,* v. *a te,* I fear *or* dread you as an enemy; So *Consulo, prospicio, caveo tibi, hoc,* I foresee this; *Studere aliquid,* to desire; *alicui,* to favour; *alicui rei, rem,* and *in re,* to apply to a thing. So *Æmulor tibi,* I envy; *te,* I imitate, *Ausculto tibi,* I obey *or* listen to; *te,* I hear; *Cupio tibi,* I favour; *rem,* I desire; *Fœnero* and *-or tibi,* I lend you on interest; *abs te,* I borrow; *Metuisti, ne non tibi istuc fœneraret,* should not return with interest, *or* bring usury, *Ter.* And thus many other verbs, which will be afterwards explained.

Obs. 5. Verbs signifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a thing are construed with the preposition *ad;* as,

Eo, vado, curro, propero, festino, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclino, &c. *ad locum, rem,* v. *hominem.* Sometimes, however, in the poets they are construed with the dative; as, *It clamor cælo,* for *ad cælum,* Virg.

XXXVII. *Recordor, memini, reminiscor,* and *obliviscor,* govern the accusative or genitive; as,

Recordor lectionis or *lectionem,* I remember the lesson.
Obliviscor injuriæ or *injuriam,* I forget an injury.

Obs. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive, or some part of a sentence; as, *Memini videre virginem,* Ter. *Oblitus est, quid paulo ante posuisset,* Cic.

Obs. 2. *Memini,* when it signifies to *make mention,* is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de;* as, *Memini alicujus,* vel *de aliquo.* So *recordor,* when it signifies to recollect; as, *Velim scire ecquid de te recordere,* Cic.

4. *Verbs governing the Ablative.*

XXXVIII. Verbs of *abounding* and *wanting,* govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive; as,

Abundat divitiis, He abounds in riches.
Caret omni culpa, He has no fault.

Verbs of plenty are, *Abundo, affluo, exubĕro, redundo, suppedito, scateo,* &c.—of want, *Careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, deficior, destituor,* &c.

Obs. 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently govern the genitive; as, *Eget æris,* He needs money, *Hor. Non tam artis indigent, quàm laboris,* Cic.

Obs. 2. The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood; and sometimes we find it expressed; as, *Vacat a culpa,* he is free from fault, *Liv.*

XXXIX. *Utor, abutor, fungor, fruor, potior, vescor,* and some others, govern the ablative; as,

Utitur fraude, He uses deceit. *Abutitur libris,* He abuses books.

To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, victito, consto, labōro,* for *male me habeo,* to be ill *passor, epulor, nitor,* &c.

Obs. 1. *Potior* often governs the genitive; as, *Potiri urbis*, Sall. And we always say, *Potiri rerum*, to possess the chief command, never *rebus; imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. *Potior, fungor, vescor, epulor*, and *pascor*, sometimes have an accusative; as, *Potiri urbem*, Cic. *Officia fungi*, Ter. *Munera fungi*, Tacit. *Pascuntur silvas*, Virg. And in ancient writers, *utor, abutor*, and *fruor;* as, *Uti consilium*, Plaut. *Operam abutitur*, Ter. *Depasco* and *depascor*, always take an accusative; as, *Depascitur artus*, Virg.

XL. A verb compounded with a preposition, often governs the case of that preposition; as,

Adeamus scholam,	Let us go to the school.
Exeamus scholâ,	Let us go out of the school.

Obs. 1. The preposition with which the word is compounded, is often repeated; as, *Adire ad scholam; Exire ex schola; Aggredi aliquid*, or *ad aliquid; ingredi orationem*, or *in orationem; inducere animum*, and *in animum; evadere undis* and *ex undis; decedere de suo jure, decedere viâ* or *de via; expellere, ejicere, exterminare, extrudere, exturbare urbe*, and *ex urbe*. Some do not repeat the preposition; as, *Affari, alloqui, allatrare aliquem*, not *ad aliquem*. So *Alluere urbem, accolere flumen; circumvenire aliquem; præterire injuriam; abdicare se magistratu*, (also *abdicare magistratum;*) *transducere exercitum fluvium*, &c. Others are only construed with the preposition; as, *Accurrere ad aliquem, adhortari ad aliquid, incidere in morbum, avocare a studiis, avertere ab incepto*, &c.

Some admit other prepositions: as, *Abire, demigrare loco;* and *a, de, ex loco; abstrahere aliquem a, de*, vel *e conspectu; Desistere sententiâ, a* vel *de sententia; Excidere manibus, de*, vel *e manibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accusative; as, *Egredi urbe* or *urbem*, sc. *extra; egredi extra vallum*, Nep. *Evadere insidiis*, or *insidias*. *Patrios excedere muros*, Lucan. *Sceleratâ excedere terrâ*, Virg. *Elabi ex manibus; pugnam, vincula*, Tac.

Obs. 3. This rule does not take place, unless when the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself; as, *Alloquor patrem*, or *loquor ad patrem*.

The Construction of the Infinitive.

XLI. The infinitive mood may be governed by a verb, participle, adjective, or noun; as,

Cupio discere, I desire to learn.

Obs. 1. The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; as, *Horatius est dignus legi*, Quinctil. And sometimes depends on a substantive; as, *Tempus, equûm fumantia solvere colla*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood; as, *Mene incepto desistere victam*, scil. *decet*, or *par est*, Virg. *Videre est*, one may see. *Dicere non est*, scil. *copia*, or *facultas*, Horat. And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied; as, *Socratem fidibus docuit*, scil. *canere*, Cic. So *Discere, scire, fidibus*.

Obs. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients *Nomen verbi*, the name or noun of the verb; because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive; as, *Velle suum cuique est*, Every one has a will of his own; and likewise supplies the place of a noun, not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases; as, 1. In the nominative, *Latrocinari, fraudare, turpe est*, Cic. *Didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores*, Ovid. 2. In the genitive, *Peritus cantare* for *cantandi*, or *cantûs*, Virg. 3. In the dative, *Paratus servire*, for *servituti*, Sall. 4. In the accusative, *Da mihi fallere*, for *artem fallendi*, Horat. *Quod faciam superest, præter amare, nihil*, Ovid. 5. In the vocative. *O vivere nostrum, ut non sentientibus effluis!* for *vita nostra*. 6. In the ablative, *Dignus amari*, for *amore*, or *qui ametur*, Virg.

Obs. 4. Instead of the infinitive, a different construction is often used after verbs of *doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping;* in short, after any verb which has a relation to futurity; as, *Dubitat ita facere*, or more frequently, *an, num*, or *utrum ita facturus sit; Dubitavit an faceret necne, Non dubito quin fecerit. Vis me facere*, or *ut faciam. Metuit tangi*, or *ne tangatur. Spero te venturum esse*, or *fore ut venias. Nunquam putavi fore ut ad te supplex venirem*, Cic. *Existimabant futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur*, Cæs.

Obs. 5. *To*, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, is omitted after *bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel*, and some others; as, *I bid him do it;* and in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, I am sent to complain, *Mittor questum*, or *ut querar*, &c. Ready to hear, *Promptus ad audiendum;* Time to read, *Tempus legendi;* Fit to swim, *Aptus natando;* Easy to say, *Facile dictu;* I am to write, *Scripturus sum;* A house to let, *or more properly*, to be let, *Domus locanda;* He was left to guard the city, *Relictus est ut tueretur urbem*.

Accusative before the Infinitive.

XLII. When *quod, quin, ut*, or *ne*, is omitted in Latin, the word, which would otherwise be in the nominative, is put in the accusative, and the verb in the infinitive mood; as,

Gaudeo te valere, I am glad that you are well.

Obs. 1. The particle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the particle is omitted; as, *Aiunt regem adventare*, They say the king is coming, *that* being understood.

Obs. 2. The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a neuter or substantive verb; but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

Obs. 3. The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Turpe est militem fugere,* That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

Obs. 4. The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse,* must frequently be supplied; especially after participles; as, *Hostium exercitum cæsum fusumque cognovi,* Cic. Sometimes both the accusative and infinitive are understood; as, *Pollicitus suscepturum,* scil. *me esse,* Ter.

Obs. 5. The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions, *quod, ut, ne,* or *quin;* as, *Gaudeo te valere,* i. e. *quod valeas,* or *propter tuam bonam valetudinem; Jubeo vos bene sperare,* or *ut bene speretis; Prohibeo eum exire,* or *ne exeat; non dubito eum fecisse,* or much better, *quin fecerit. Scio quod filius amet,* Plaut. for *filium amare. Miror si potuit,* for *eum potuisse,* Cic. *Nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes virtute superârit,* for *populum Romanum superasse,* Nep. *Ex animi sententia juro, ut ego rempublicam non deseram,* for *me non deserturum esse,* Liv. xxii. 53.

The Construction of Participles, Gerunds, and Supines.

XLIII. Participles, gerunds, supines, and adverbs, govern the same case as the words from which they are derived; as,

Amans virtutem, Loving virtue. *Carens fraude,* Wanting guile.

Obs. 1. Passive participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are used as adjectives; as,

Suspectus mihi, Suspected by me; *Suspectiores regibus,* Sall. *Invisus mihi,* hated by me, or hateful to me; *Indies invisior,* Suet. *Occulta, et maribus non invisa solum, sed etiam inaudita sacra,* unseen, *Cic.*

EXOSUS, PEROSUS, and often also *PERTÆSUS,* govern the accusative; as, *Tædas exosa jugales,* Ovid. *Plebs consulum nomen haud secus quam regum perosa erat,* Liv. *Pertæsus ignaviam suam; semet ipse,* displeased with, Suet. *vitam,* weary of, Justin. *levitatis,* Cic.

Verbals in BUNDUS govern the case of their own verbs; as, *Gratulabundus patriæ,* Just. *Vitabundus castra hostium,* Liv. So sometimes also nouns; as, *Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus,* Cic. *Insidiæ consuli,* Sall. *Domum reditionis spe sublatâ,* Cæs. *Spectatio ludos,* Plaut.

Obs. 2. These verbs *do, reddo, volo, curo, facio, habeo, comperio,* with the perfect participle, form a periphrasis similar to what we use in English; as, *Compertum habeo,* for *comperi,* I have found, *Sall. Effectum dabo,* for *efficiam; Inventum tibi curabo, et adductum tuum Pamphilum,* i. e. *inveniam* et *adducam,* Ter. Sometimes the gerund is used with *ad;* as, *Tradere ei gentes diripiendas,* or *ad diripiendum,* Cic. *Rogo, accipio, do aliquid utendum;* or *ad utendum;* or *Misit mihi librum legendum,* or *ad legendum,* &c.

Obs. 3. These verbs, *curo, habeo, mando, loco, conduco, do, tribuo, mitto,* &c. are elegantly construed with the participle in *dus* instead of the infinitive; as, *Funus faciendum curavi,* for *fieri,* or *ut fieret; Columnas ædificandas locavit,* Cic.

The Construction of Gerunds.

Obs. Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns; as,

Studendum est mihi,	I must study.	*Aptus studendo,*	Fit for studying.
Tempus studendi,	Time of study.	*Scio studendum esse mihi,*	I know that I must study.

XLIV. The gerund in *dum,* of the nominative, with the verb *est,* governs the dative; as,

Legendum est mihi, I must read. *Moriendum est omnibus,* All must die.

So *Scio legendum est mihi; moriendum esse omnibus,* &c.

Obs. 1. This gerund always imports obligation or necessity; and may be resolved into *oportet, necesse est,* or the like, and the infinitive or the subjunctive, with the conjunction *ut;* as, *Omnibus est moriendum,* or *Omnibus necesse est mori,* or *ut moriantur;* or *Necesse est ut omnes moriantur. Consulendum est tibi a me,* I must consult for your good; for *Oportet ut consulam tibi,* Cic.

Obs. 2. The dative is often understood; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano,* sc. *tibi,* Juv. *Hic vincendum, aut moriendum, milites, est,* sc. *vobis,* Liv. *Deliberandum est diu, quod statuendum est semel,* sc. *tibi vel alicui,* P. Syr.

XLV. The gerund in *di,* of the genitive, is governed by nouns, or adjectives; as,

Tempus legendi, Time of reading. *Cupidus discendi,* Desirous of learning.

Obs. This gerund is sometimes construed with the genitive plural; as, *Facultas agrorum condonandi,* for *agros,* Cic. *Copia spectandi comœdiarum,* for *comœdias,* Ter. But chiefly with pronouns; as, *In castra venerunt sui purgandi causâ,* Cæs. *Vestri adhortandi causa,* Liv. *Ejus videndi cupidus,* sc. *fœminæ,* Ter. The gerund here is supposed to govern the genitive like a substantive noun.

XLVI. The gerund in *do,* of the dative, is governed by adjectives signifying *usefulness,* or *fitness,* &c.; as,

Charta utilis scribendo, Paper useful for writing.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the adjective is understood; as, *Non est solvendo,* scil. *par,* or *habilis,* He is not able to pay. *Is finis censendo factus est,* Liv.

Obs. 2. This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs; as, *Adesse scribendo*, Cic. *Aptat habendo ensem*, for wearing, *Virg*.

XLVII. The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative, is governed by the prepositions *ad*, *ob*, *inter*, *ante*, *propter*; as,

Promptus ad audiendum,	Ready to hear.
Attentus inter docendum,	Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions; as, *Circa movendum*, Quinctil. Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnibus*, I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood.

XLVIII. The gerund in *do*, of the ablative, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*; or without a preposition, as the ablative of *cause*, *means*, or *manner*; as,

Pœna a peccando absterret, Punishment frightens from sinning.

Memoria excolendo augetur,	The memory is improved by exercising it.
Defessus sum ambulando,	I am wearied with walking.

Obs. The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive. Hence the one is frequently put for the other; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legere*: only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, *Cum Tisidum vocaretur ad imperandum*, i. e. *ut ipsi imperetur*, to receive orders, *Sall*. *Nunc ades ad imperandum, vel ad parendum potius, Sic enim antiqui loquebantur*, Cic. i. e. *ut tibi imperetur*. *Urit videndo*, i. e. *dum videtur*, Virg.

Gerunds turned into participles in dus.

Obs. 1. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

By the Gerund.		By the Participle or Gerundive.
Petendum est mihi pacem,		*Pax est petenda mihi.*
Tempus petendi pacem,	or more	*Tempus petendæ pacis.*
Ad petendum pacem,	frequently	*Ad petendam pacem.*
A petendo pacem,		*A petenda pace.*

Obs. 2. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was; as,

Genitive. *Inita sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani extinguendi*, Cic.

Dative. *Perpetiendo labori idoneus*, Colum. *Capessendæ reipublicæ habilis*, Tac. *Area firma templis ac porticibus sustinendis*, Liv. *Oneri ferendo est*, sc. *aptus* v. *habilis*, Ovid. *Natus miseriis ferendis*, Ter. *Literis dandis vigilare*, Cic. *Locum oppido condendo capere*, Liv.

Acc. and Ablative. *Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnanda Capua duces Romanos abstrahere*, Liv. *Orationem Latinam legendis nostris efficies pleniorem*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The gerunds of verbs which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *medeor*, *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, and *potior*; as, *Spes potiundi urbe*, or *potiundæ urbis*; but we always say, *Cupidus subveniendi tibi*, and never *tui*.

The Construction of Supines.

1. *The Supine in* um.

XLIX. The supine in *um*, is put after a verb of motion; as,

Abiit deambulatum, He hath gone to walk.

So *Ducere cohortes prædatum*, Liv. *Nunc venis irrisum dominum? Quod in rem tuam optimum factu arbitror, te id admonitum venio*, Plaut.

Obs. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *It se perditum*, the same with *id agit*, or *operam dat, ut se perdat*, He is bent on his own destruction, *Ter*. This supine with *iri* taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive; as, *An credebas illam sine tuâ operâ iri deductum domum?* Which may be thus resolved, *An credebas iri* (a te *vel* ab aliquo) *deductum* (i. e. ad deducendum) *illam, domum*, Ter.

Obs. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum; Cantatum provocemus*, Ter. *Revocatus defensum patriam*; *Divisit copias hiematum*, Nep.

Obs. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *Venit oratum opem*: or 1. *Venit opem orandi causâ*, or *opis orandæ*. 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*, or *ad orandam opem*. 3. *Venit opi orandæ*. 4. *Venit opem oraturus*. 5. *Venit qui*, or *ut opem oret* 6. *Venit opem orare*. But the third and the last of these are seldom used.

2. *The Supine in* u.

L. The supine in *u*, is put after an adjective; as,

Facile dictu, Easy to tell, *or* to be told.

So *Nihil dictu fœdum, visuque hæc limina tangat; intra quæ puer est*, Juv. *Difficilis res est inventu verus amicus; Fas* v. *nefas est dictu; Opus est scitu*, Cic.

Obs. 1. The supine in *u* being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *Nunc obsonatu redeo*, from getting provisions, *Plaut.* *Primus cubitu surgat*, (villicus) from bed, *postremus cubitum eat*, Cato.

Obs. 2. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive, or gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, *Difficile cognitu, cognosci*, or *ad cognoscendum*; *Res facilis ad credendum*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The supines being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood; the supine in *um* by the preposition *ad*, and the supine in *u* by the preposition *in*.

The Construction of Circumstances.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price of a thing.* 2. The *Cause, Manner,* and *Instrument.* 3. *Measure* and *Distance.* 4. *Time.*

1. Price.

LI. Nouns, signifying the *price* of a thing, are put in the ablative; as,

Emi librum duobus assibus,	I bought a book for two shillings.
Constitit talento,	It cost a talent.

So *Asse carum est; vile viginti minis; auro venale*, &c. *Nocet empta dolore voluptas*, Hor. *Spem pretio non emam*, Ter. *Plurimi auro veneunt honores*, Ovid.

¶ These genitives, *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*, are excepted; as,

Quanti constitit, How much cost it? *Asse et pluris*, A shilling and more.

Obs. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; as, *parvo pretio, impenso pretio vendere*, Cic.

Obs. 2. *Magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo*, are often used without the substantive; as, *Permagno constitit*, scil. *pretio*, Cic. *Heu quanto regnis nox stetit una tuis?* Ovid. Fast ii. 812. We also say, *Emi carè, cariùs, carissimè; bene, meliùs, optimè; malè, pejùs, viliùs, vilissimè Valde carè æstimas: Emit domum prope dimidio cariùs, quàm æstimabat*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as, *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret*, Liv.

2. Manner and Cause.

LII. Nouns, signifying the *instrument, cause, means,* or *manner,* are put in the ablative; as,

Palleo metu,	I am pale for fear.
Fecit suo more,	He did it after his own way.
Scribo calamo,	I write with a pen.

So *Ardet dolore; pallescere culpâ; æstuare dubitatione; gestire voluptate* vel *secundis rebus: Confectus morbo; affectus beneficiis, gravissimo supplicio; insignis pietate; deterior licentiâ: Pietate filius, consiliis pater, amore frater*; hence *Rex Dei gratiâ. Paritur pax bello*, Nep. *Procedere lento gradu; Acceptus regio apparatu: Nullo sono convertitur annus*, Juv. *Jam veniet tacito curva senecta pede*, Ovid. *Percutere securi, defendere saxis, configere sagittis*, &c.

Obs. 1. The ablative is here governed by some prepositions understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed; as, *De more matrum locuta est*, Virg. *Magno cum metu; Hac de causa; Præ mœrore, formidine*, &c. But hardly ever before the instrument; as, *Vulnerare aliquem gladio*, not *cum gladio*: unless among the poets, who sometimes add *a* or *ab*; as, *Trajectus ab ense*, Ovid.

Obs. 2. When any thing is said to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of *Concomitancy*, and has the preposition *cum* usually added; as, *Obsedit curiam cum gladiis; Ingressus est cum gladio*, Cic.

Obs. 3. Under this rule are comprehended several other circumstances; as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the ADJUNCT, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to express the character or quality of the person or thing spoken of; as, *Capitolium saxo quadrato constructum*, Liv. *Floruit acumine ingenii*, Cic. *Pollet opibus, valet armis, viget memoriâ, famâ nobilis*, &c. *Æger pedibus.* When we express the matter of which any thing is made, the preposition is usually added; as, *Templum de marmore*, seldom *marmoris*; *Poculum ex auro factum*, Cic.

3. Measure and Distance.

LIII. Nouns, signifying *measure,* or *distance,* are put in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative; as,

Murus est decem pedes altus,	The wall is ten feet high.
Urbs distat triginta millia, or *triginta millibus passuum,*	The city is thirty miles distant.
Iter, or *itinere unius diei,*	One day's journey.

Obs. 1. The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension, as, *Longus, latus, crassus, profundus*, and *altus: Patet, porrigitur, eminet*, &c. The names of measure

are *pes, cubitus, ulna, passus, digitus*, an inch; *palmus*, a span, a hand-breadth, &c. The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance; as, *Eo, curro, absum, disto*, &c. The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

Obs. 2. When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti*, and sometimes *denûm pedum*, for *denorum*, in the genitive, *ad mensuram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

Obs. 3. When we express the distance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative; or the accusative with the preposition *ad*; as, *Sex millibus passuum ab urbe consedit*, or *ad sex millia passuum*, Cæs. *Ad quantum milliarium*, v. *milliare consedit*, Cic. *Ad quintum lapidem*, Nep.

Obs. 4. The excess or difference of measure and distance is put in the ablative; as,
Hoc lignum excedit illud digito. Toto vertice supra est, Virg. *Britanniæ longitudo ejus latitudinem ducentis quadraginta milliaribus superat.*

4. Time.

LIV. Nouns, signifying the time *when*, are put in the ablative; those, *how long*, in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative; as,

Venit horâ tertiâ, He came at three o'clock.

¶ When the question is made by *Quamdiu?* How long? time is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative; as,

Mansit paucos dies,	He staid a few days.
Sex mensibus abfuit,	He was away six months.

* *Or thus*, Time *when* is put in the ablative; time *how long* is put in the accusative.

Obs. 1. When we speak of any precise time, it is put in the ablative; but when continuance of time is expressed, it is put, for the most part, in the accusative.

Obs. 2. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition; as, *In præsentia*, or *in præsenti*, scil. *tempore; in* vel *ad præsens; Per decem annos; Surgunt de nocte, ad horam destinatam; Intra annum; Per idem tempus, ad Kalendas soluturos ait*, Suet. The preposition *ad* or *circa* is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions, *hoc, illud, id, isthuc ætatis, temporis, horæ*, &c. for *hac ætate, hoc tempore*, &c. And *ante* or some other word; as, *Annos natus unum & viginti*, sc. *ante. Siculi quotannis tributa conferunt* sc. *tot annis, quot* vel *quotquot sunt*, Cic. *Prope diem*, sc. *ad*, soon; *Oppidum paucis diebus, quibus eò ventum est, expugnatum*, sc. *post eos dies*, Cæs. *Ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias accepi tuas literas*, for *die tertio ante*, Cic. *Qui dies futurus esset in ante diem octavum Kalendas Novembris*, Id. *Ex ante diem quintum Kal. Octob.* Liv. *Lacedæmonii septingentos jam annos amplius unis moribus et nunquam mutatis legibus vivunt*, sc. *quam per*, Cic. We find, *Primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque*, sc. *Atticus;* for *septemdecim annos natus*, seventeen years old, *Nep*.

Obs. 3. The adverb *ABHINC*, which is commonly used with respect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without a preposition; as, *factum est abhinc biennio* or *biennium*. It was done two years ago. So likewise are *post* and *ante;* as, *Paucos post annos:* but here, *ea*, or *id*, may be understood.

1. *Verbs governing the Accusative and the Genitive.*

LV. Verbs of *accusing, condemning, admonishing*, and *acquitting*, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

Arguit me furti,	He accuses me of theft.
Meipsum inertiæ condemno,	I condemn myself of laziness.
Illum homicidii absolvunt,	They acquit him of manslaughter.
Monet me officii,	He admonishes me of my duty.

Verbs of accusing are, *Accŭso, ago, appello, arcesso, inquīro, arguo, defĕro, insimŭlo, postŭlo, allĭgo, astringo;* of condemning, *Damno, condemno, infamo, noto;* of acquitting, *Absolvo, libĕro, purgo;* of admonishing, *Moneo, admoneo, commonefacio.*

Obs. 1. Verbs of accusing and admonishing, instead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative with the preposition *de;* as, *Monere aliquem officii*, or *de officio; Accusare aliquem furti*, or *de furto. De vi condemnati sunt*, Cic.

Obs. 2. *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative; but in the ablative usually without a preposition; as, *Damnare, postulare, absolvere eum criminis*, v. *capitis;* and *crimine*, v. *capite;* also *Absolvo me peccato*, Liv. And we always say, *Plectere, punire aliquem capite*, and not *capitis*, to punish one capitally, or with death.

Obs. 3. Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the accusative of a person, and the genitive of a thing, but the contrary; thus we say, *Culpo, reprehendo, taxo, traduco, vitupero, calumnior, criminor, excuso*, &c. *avaritiam alicujus*, and not *aliquem avaritiæ*. We sometimes also find *accuso, incuso*, &c. construed in this manner; as, *Accusare, inertiam adolescentium*, for *adolescentes inertia*, Cic. *Culpam arguo*, Liv. We say, *Agere cum aliquo furti*, rather than *aliquem*, to accuse one of theft, *Cic.*

Obs. 4. Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc, illud, istud, id, unum, multa*, &c. as, *Moneo, accuso te illud.* We seldom find, however, *Errorem te moneo*, but *erroris* or *de errore;* except in old writers, as Plautus.

LVI. Verbs of *esteeming*, govern the accusative of the person, or thing esteemed, and the genitive of the value; as,

Æstimo te magni, I value you much.

Verbs of valuing are, *Æstimo, existimo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo.* They govern several other genitives; as, *tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, minoris, minimi, plurimi, maximi, nauci, pili, assis, nihili, teruncii, hujus.*

Obs. 1. *Æstimo* sometimes governs the ablative; as, *Æstimo te magno, permagno, parvo*, scil. *pretio:* and also *nihilo.* We likewise say, *Pro nihilo, habeo, puto, duco.*

Obs. 2. *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consulo;* as, *Hoc consulo boni, æqui bonique facio,* I take this in good part.

Obs. 3. The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood; as, *Arguere aliquem furti*, scil. *de crimine furti; Æstimo rem magni*, scil. *pretii*, or *pro re magni pretii; Consulo bono*, i. e. *statuo* or *censeo esse factum*, or *manus boni viri*, or *animi; Monere aliquem officii*, i. e. *officii causâ*, or *de re* or *negotio officii.*

2. *Verbs governing the Accusative and the Dative.*

LVII. Verbs of *comparing, giving, declaring*, and *taking away*, govern the accusative and dative; as,

Compăro Virgilium Homero,	I compare Virgil to Homer.
Suum cuique tribuito,	Give every one his own.
Narras fabulam surdo,	You tell a story to a deaf man.
Eripuit me morti,	He rescued me from death.

Or rather,—Any active verb may govern the accusative and the dative, *(when together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted,)* as,

Legam lectionem tibi, I will read the lesson to you. *Emit librum mihi*, He bought a book for me. *Sic vos non vobis fertis aratra boves*, Virg. *Paupertas sæpe suadet mala hominibus*, advises men to do bad things, *Plaut. Imperare pecuniam, frumentum, naves, arma aliquibus*, to order them to furnish, *Cæs.*

Obs. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition; as, *Comparare unam rem cum alia*, and *ad aliam*, or *comparare res inter se* · *Eripuit me morti, morte, a* or *ex morte: Mittere epistolam alicui*, or *ad aliquem; Intendere telum alicui*, or *in aliquem: Incidere æri, in æs*, or *in ære;* and so in many others.

Obs. 2. Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently; as,
Circumdare mœnia oppido, or *oppidum mœnibus*, to surround a city with walls.
Intercludere commeatum alicui, or *aliquem commeatu*, to intercept one's provisions.
Donare, prohibere rem alicui, or *aliquem re*, to give one a present, to hinder one from a thing.
Mactare hostiam Deo, or *Deum hostiâ*, to sacrafice.
Impertire salutem alicui, or *aliquem salute*, to salute one.
Interdixit Galliam Romanis, or *Romanos Galliâ*, he debarred the Romans from Gaul.
Induere, exuere vestem sibi, or *se veste*, to put on, to put off one's clothes.
Levare dolorem alicui; dolorem alicujus; aliquem dolore, to ease one's distress.
Minari aliquid alicui, or sometimes, *alicui aliquo*, Cic. to threaten one with any thing; *Cæsari gladio*, Sall.
Gratulor tibi hanc rem, hac re, in, pro, and *de, hac re*, I congratulate you on this. *Mettus Tullo devictos hostes gratulatur*, Liv.
Restituere alicui sanitatem, or *aliquem sanitati*, to restore to health.
Aspergere labem alicui, or *aliquem labe*, to put an affront on one; *aram sanguine, litare Deum sacris*, and *sacra Deo*, to sacrifice.
Excusare se alicui and *apud aliquem, de re; valetudinem ei.*
Exprobare vitium ei v. *in eo*, to upbraid.
Occupare pecuniam alicui and *apud aliquem*, i. e. *pecuniam fœnori locare*, to place at interest, *Cic.*
Opponere se morti, and *ad mortem; Renunciare id ei*, and *ad eum*, to tell.

Obs. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad;* as,
Porto, fero, lego, -as, præcipito, tollo, traho, duco, verto, incito, suscito; also *hortor* and *invito, voco, provoco, animo, stimulo, conformo, lacesso;* thus, *Ad laudem milites hortatur; Ad prætorem hominem traxit*, Cic. But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, *Inferre Deos Latio*, for *in Latium*, Virg. *Invitare aliquem hospitio*, or *in hospitium*, Cic.

Obs. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubere alicui*, scil. *se; Cedere alicui*, scil. *locum; Detrahere alicui*, scil. *laudem; Ignoscere alicui*, scil. *culpam.* And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, *Dedit mihi librum*, He gave me a book, *for* to me.

3. *Verbs governing two Accusatives.*

LVIII. Verbs of *asking*, and *teaching*, govern two accusatives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Poscimus te pacem,	We beg peace of thee.
Docuit me grammaticam,	He taught me grammar.

Verbs of asking which govern two accusatives are, *Rogo, oro, exōro, obsecro, precor, posco, reposco, flagito,* &c. Of teaching, *Doceo, edoceo, dedoceo, erudio.*

Obs. 1. *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives; as, *Celavit me hanc rem,* He concealed this matter from me; or otherwise, *celavit hanc rem mihi,* or *celavit me de hac re.*

Obs. 2. Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition; as, *Rogare rem ab aliquo; Docere aliquem de re,* to inform; but we do not say, *docere aliquem de grammatica,* but *grammaticam,* to teach. And we always say, with a preposition, *Peto, exigo, a* v. *abs te, Percontor, scitor, sciscitor ex* or *a te,* or *te* without the preposition: *Interrogo, consulto te de re; Ut facias te obsecro; Exorat pacem divûm,* for *divos,* Virg. *Instruo, instituo, formo, informo aliquem artibus,* in the ablative, without a preposition. *Imbuo eum artibus, in* v. *ab artibus.* Also *instruo ad rem,* v. *in re, ignorantiam alicujus. Erudire aliquem artes, de* v. *in re, ad rem. Formare ad studium, mentem studiis, studia ejus.*

Obs. 3. The accusative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but by *quod ad* or *secundum* understood.

4. *Verbs governing the Accusative and the Ablative.*

LIX. Verbs of *loading, binding, clothing, depriving,* and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative; as,

Onerat naves auro, He loads the ships with gold.

Verbs of loading are, *onĕro, cumŭlo, premo, opprĭmo, obruo.* Of unloading, *levo, exonĕro,* &c. Of binding, *astringo, ligo, allĭgo, devincio, impedio, irretio, illaqueo,* &c. Of loosing, *solvo, exsolvo, libĕro, laxo, expedio,* &c. Of depriving, *privo, nudo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, emungo.* Of clothing, *vestio, amicio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, corōno,* and *calceo.* Of unclothing, *exuo, discingo,* &c.

Obs. 1. The preposition by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed; as, *Solvere aliquem ex catenis,* Cic. Sometimes the ablative is to be supplied; as, *Complet naves,* sc. *viris,* mans the ships, *Virg.*

Obs. 2. Several of these verbs likewise govern the genitive; as, *Adolescentem suæ temeritatis implet,* Liv. And also vary their construction; as, *Induit, exuit se vestibus,* or *vestes sibi.*

The Construction of Passive Verbs.

LX. When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case; as,

Accusor furti,	I am accused of theft.
Virgilius comparatur Homero,	Virgil is compared to Homer.
Doceor grammaticam,	I am taught grammar.
Navis oneratur auro,	The ship is loaded with gold.

So *Scio homines accusatum iri furti;——Eos ereptum iri morti, morte, a* vel *ex morte;——pueros doctum iri grammaticam;——rem celatum iri mihi* vel *me; me celatum iri de re,* &c.

Sometimes the active has three cases, and then the passive has the two last cases; as, *Habetur ludibrio iis.*

Obs. 1. Passive verbs are commonly construed with the ablative and the preposition *a;* as, *Tu laudaris a me,* which is equavalent to *Ego laudo te. Virtus diligitur a nobis; Nos diligimus virtutem; Gaudeo meum factum probari a te,* or *te probare meum factum.* And so almost all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs also admit this preposition; as, *Mare a sole collucet,* Cic. *Phalaris non a paucis interiit,* Id. So *cadere ab hoste; Cessare a preliis; Mori ab ense; Pati, furari, aliquid ab aliquo,* &c. Also *Venire ab hostibus,* to be sold; *Vapulare ab aliquo, Exulare ab urbe.* Thus likewise many active verbs; as, *Sumere, petere, tollere, pellere, expectare, emere,* &c. *ab aliquo.* The preposition is sometimes understood after passive verbs; as, *Deseror conjuge,* Ovid. *Desertus suis,* sc. *a,* Tacit. *Tabulâ distinguitur undâ, qui navigat,* sc. *ab unda,* Is kept from the water by a plank, *Juvenal.*

The preposition PER is also used in the same sense with A; as, *Per me defensa est respublica,* or *a me; Per me restitutus; Per me* v. *a me factum est,* Cic. But PER commonly marks the instrument, and A the principal efficient cause; as, *Res agitur per creditores, a rege,* sc. *a rege* vel *a legato ejus,* Cic. Fam. i. 1.

Obs. 2. Passive verbs sometimes govern the dative, especially among the poets; as, *Neque cernitur ulli,* for *ab ullo,* Virg. *Vix audior ulli,* Ovid. *Scriberis Vario,* for *a Vario,* Hor. *Honesta bonis viris quæruntur,* for *a viris,* Cic. VIDEOR, to seem, always governs the dative; as, *Videris mihi,* You seem to me: but we commonly say, *Videris a me,* You are seen by me; although not always; as, *Nulla tuarum audita mihi, neque visa sororum,* for *a me,* Virg.

Obs. 3. *Induor, amicior, cingor, accingor,* also *exuor,* and *discingor,* are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice; as, *Induitur vestem* or *veste.*

Obs. 4. Neuter verbs are for the most part only used impersonally in the passive voice; unless when they are joined with a noun of a similar signification to their own; as, *Pugna pugnata est,* Cic. *Bellum militabitur,* Horat. Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to

a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely; as, *Statur, fletur, curritur, vivitur, venitur*, &c. *a nobis, ab illis*, &c. We are standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest vivi a me, vel ab aliquo*, I or any person may live well. *Provisum est nobis optimè a Deo; Reclamatum est ab omnibus*, all cried out against it, *Cic.*

They also govern the same cases as when used personally; as, *Ut majoribus natu assurgatur, ut supplicum misereatur*, Cic. Except the accusative: for in these phrases, *Itur Athenas, pugnatum est biduum, dormitur totam noctem*, the accusative is not governed by the verb, but by the prepositions *ad* and *per* understood. We find, however, *Tota mihi dormitur hyems; Noctes vigilantur amaræ; Oceanus raris ab orbe nostro navibus audetur*, Tacit.

The Construction of Impersonal Verbs.

LXI. Impersonal verbs govern the dative; as,

Expedit reipublicæ, It is profitable for the state.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; as,

Favetur mihi, I am favoured, and not *Ego faveor*. So *nocetur mihi, imperatur mihi*, &c. We find, however, *Hæc ego procurare imperor; Ego cur invideor*; for *imperatur, invidetur mihi*, Hor.

Obs. 1. These verbs, *Potest, cœpit, incipit, desinit, debet*, and *colet*, are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs; as,

Non potest credi tibi, You cannot be believed; *Mihi non potest noceri*, I cannot be hurt; *Negat jucundè posse vivi sine virtute*, Cic. *Per virtutem potest iri ad astra. Aliorum laudi et gloriæ invideri solet*, The praise and glory of others use to be envied, *Id. Neque a fortissimis infirmissimo generi resisti posse*, Sallust.

Obs. 2. Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res* vel *de hac re*, vel *hujus rei*, scil. *memoria*, This thing came into my mind. *Est curæ mihi hæc res* vel *de hac re. Doleo* vel *dolet mihi id factum esse.*

Obs. 3. The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English; as, *It rains, it shines*, &c. And in the Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut*, forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative; as, *nobis non licet peccare*, the same with *peccatum; Omnibus bonis expedit rempublicam esse salvam*, i. e. *Salus reipublicæ expedit omnibus bonis*, Cic. *Accidit, evēnit, contigit, ut ibi essemus.* These nominatives, *hoc, illud, id, idem, quod*, &c. are sometimes joined to impersonal verbs; as, *idem mihi licet*, Cic. *Eadem licent*, Catull.

Obs. 4. The dative is often understood; as, *Faciat quod libet*, sc. *sibi*, Ter. *Stat casus renovare omnes*, sc. *mihi*, I am resolved, *Virg.*

LXII. *Interest* and *refert* require the genitive; as,

Interest omnium, It is the interest of all. *Refert patris*, It concerns my father.

¶ But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, are put in the accusative plural neuter; as,

Non mea refert, It does not concern me.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea, tua sua*, &c. to be in the ablative singular feminine. We say either *cujus interest*, and *quorum interest*; or *cuja interest*, from *cujus, -a, -um.*

Obs. 2. *Interest* and *refert* are often joined with these nominatives, *Id, hoc, illud, quid, quod, nihil*, &c. also with common nouns; and with these genitives, *Tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi, pluris*; as, *Illud mea magni interest*, Cic. *Hoc parvi refert. Usque adeo magni refert studium*, Lucret. *Incessus in gravida refert*, Plin.

They are frequently construed with these adverbs, *Tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, infinitum, parum, maximè, vehementer, minimè*, &c. as, *Faciam, quod maximè reipublicæ interesse judicabo*, Cic. Sometimes instead of the genitive, they take the accusative with the preposition *ad*; as, *Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert, Persæ quid rerum gerant?* Of what importance is it? &c. *Plaut. Magni ad honorem nostrum interest*, Cic. rarely the dative; as, *Dic quid referat intra naturæ fines viventi*, &c. Hor. Sometimes they are placed absolutely; as, *Magnopere interest opprimi Dolobellam*, It is of great importance, *Cic. Permultum interest, qualis primus aditus sit*, Id. *Adeone est fundata leviter fides, ut ubi sim, quam qui sim, magis referat*, Liv. *Plurimum enim intererit, quibus artibus, aut quibus hunc tu moribus instituas*, Juv.

Obs. 3. The genitive after *interest* and *refert* is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea, tua, sua*, &c. likewise agree; as, *Interest Ciceronis*, i. e. *est inter negotia Ciceronis; Refert patris*, i. e. *refert se hæc res ad negotia patris.* So *Interest mea, est inter negotia mea.*

LXIII. *Miseret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing; as,

Miseret me tui,	I pity you.	*Tædet me vitæ*,	I am weary of life.
Pœnitet me peccati,	I repent of my sin.	*Pudet me culpæ*,	I am ashamed of my fault.

Obs. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood, or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined; as, *miseret me tui*, that is, *negotium* or *miseratio tui miseret me.*

Obs. 2. An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *Pœnitet*

me peccasse, or *quod peccaverim*. The accusative is frequently understood: as, *Scelerum si bene pœnitet*, scil. *nos*, Horat.

Obs. 3. *Miseret*, *pœnitet*, &c. are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc*, *id*, *quod*, &c. as, *Ipsa sui miseret*, Lucr. *Nonne hæc te pudent*, Ter.. *Nihil quod pœnitere possit*, *facias*, for *cujus te pœnitere possit*, Cic.

We sometimes find *miseret* joined with two accusatives; as, *Menedemi vicem miseret me*, scil. *secundum* or *quod ad*, Ter.

Obs. 4. The preterites of *miseret*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, when used in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active; as, *Miseritum est me tuarum fortunarum*, Ter. We likewise find, *miserescit* and *miseretur* used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui*, Ter. *Misereatur te fratrum*. *Neque me tui*, *neque tuorum liberorum misereri potest*, Cic.

LXIV. ***Decet*, *delectat*, *juvat*, and *oportet*, govern the accusative of a person with the infinitive mood; as,**

Delectat me studere, It delights me to study.
Non decet te rixari, It does not become you to scold.

Obs. 1. These words are sometimes used personally; as, *Parvum parva decent*, Hor. *Est aliquid, quod non oporteat, etiamsi liceat*, Cic. *Hæc facta ab illo oportebant*, Ter.

Obs. 2. *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Ita nobis decet*, Ter.

Obs. 3. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mode, *ut* being understood; as, *Sibi quisque consulat oportet*, Cic. Or with the perfect participle, *esse* or *fuisse* being understood; as, *Communicatum oportuit; mansum oportuit; Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*, The young man should have been humoured, *Ter.*

Obs. 4. *Fallit*, *fugit*, *præterit*, *latet*, when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive; as, *In lege nullâ esse ejusmodi caput, non te fallit; De Dionysio fugit me ad te antea scribere*, Cic.

NOTE. *Attinet*, *pertinet*, and *spectat*, are construed with *ad*; *Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conservari*, Cic. And so personally, *Ille ad me attinet*, belongs, *Ter.* *Res ad arma spectat*, looks, points, *Cic.*

Construction of the Names of Places.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where*, or *in which*. 2. The place *whither*, or *to which*. 3. The place *whence*, or *from which*. 4. The place *by*, or *through which*.

At or in a place is put in the genitive; unless the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

To a place is put in the accusative; From or by a place in the ablative.

But these cases will be more exactly ascertained by reducing the circumstances of place to particularly questions.

1. *The Place* Where.

LXV. The name of a town, signifying the place *where*, or *in which*, if it be of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; but if it be of the third declension, or plural number, it is put in the ablative: as,

Vixit Romæ, He lived at Rome.
Mortuus est Londini, He died at London.
Habitat Carthagine, He dwells at Carthage.
Studuit Parisiis, He studied at Paris.

Obs. 1. When a thing is said to be done, not in the place itself but in its neighbourhood, or near it, we always use the preposition *ad* or *apud*; as, *Ad* or *apud Trojam*, At *or* near Troy.

Obs. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed by the preposition *in* understood; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply *in urbe*, or *in oppido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed; thus, we do not say, *Natus est Romæ urbis celebris*: but either *Romæ in celebri urbe*, or *in Romæ celebri urbe*, or *in Roma celebri urbe*, or sometimes *Romæ celebri urbe*. In like manner we usually say, *Habitat in urbe Carthagine*, with the preposition. We likewise find, *Habitat Carthagini*, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative when the question is made by *ubi?*

2. *The Place* Whither.

LXVI. The name of a town, signifying the place *whither*, is put in the accusative; as,

Venit Romam, He came to Rome.
Profectus est Athenas, He went to Athens.

Obs. 1. We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom; as, *Carthagini nuntios mittam*, Horat.

Obs. 2. Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied; as, *Romam, erat nuntiatum*, The report was carried to Rome, *Liv.* *Hæc nuntiant domum Albani*, Id. *Messanam literas dedit*, Cic.

3. *The Place* Whence.

LXVII. The name of a town, signifying the place *whence*, or *through what place*, is put in the ablative; as,

Discessit Corintho,	He departed from Corinth.
Laodiceâ iter faciebat,	He went through Laodicea.

When motion *by* or *through* a place is signified, the preposition *per* is commonly used; as, *Per Thebas iter fecit*, Nep.

Domus and *Rus*.

LXVIII. *Domus* and *rus*, signifying the place *where*, are construed like the names of towns; as,

Manet domi,	He stays at home.
Domum revertitur,	He returns home.
Domo arcessitus sum,	I am called from home.
Vivit rure, or more frequently *ruri,*	He lives in the country.
Rediit rure,	He is returned from the country.
Abiit rus,	He is gone to the country.

Obs. 1. *Humi, militiæ*, and *belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns; thus,

Domi et militiæ, or *belli*, At home and abroad. *Jacet humi*, He lies on the ground.

Obs. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition; as, *In domo paterna*, not *domi paternæ;* So *Ad domum paternam: Ex domo paternâ*. Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, regius*, and *alienus;* as, *Domi meæ vixit*, Cic. *Regiam domum comportant*, Sall.

Obs. 3. When *domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used, and sometimes not; as, *Deprehensus est domi, domo*, or *in domo Cæsaris*.

Obs. 4. To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added; as,

When the question is made by

Ubi? *Natus in Italia, in Latio, in urbe*, &c.
Quo? *Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in* or *ad urbem*, &c.
Unde? *Rediit ex Italia, e Latio, ex urbe*, &c.
Qua? *Transit per Italiam, per Latium, per urbem*, &c.

Obs. 5. A preposition is often added to names of towns; as, *In Roma*, for *Romæ; ad Romam, ex Roma*, &c.

Peto always governs the accusative as an active verb without a preposition; as, *Petivit Egyptum*, He went to Egypt.

Obs. 6. Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition like names of towns; as, *Pompeius Cypri visus est*, Cæs. *Cretâ jussit considere Apollo*, Virg. *Non Lybiæ*, for *in Lybia; non antè Tyro*, for *Tyri*, Id. Æn. iv. 36. *Venit Sardiniam*, Cic. *Romæ, Numidiæque facinora ejus memorat*, Sall.

The Ablative Absolute.

LXIX. A noun, or pronoun, joined with a participle expressed or understood, when its case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute; as,

Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebræ,	The sun rising, *or* while the sun riseth, darkness flies away.
Opere peracto, ludemus,	Our work being finished, *or* when our work is finished, we will play.

So *Dominante libidine, temperantiæ nullus est locus; Nihil amicitiâ præstabilius est, exceptâ virtute; Oppressâ libertate patriæ, nihil est quod speremus, amplius; Nobilium vitâ victuque mutato, mores mutari civitatum puto*, Cic. *Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi cogerentur, pugnam inituris, et dictatore arcem Romanam respectante; at ab auguribus, simul aves rite admisissent, ex composito tolleretur signum*, Liv. *Bellice, depositis clypeo paulisper et hastâ, Mars ades*, Ovid. Fast. iii. 1.

Obs. 1. This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence.

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place; the ablative absolute is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of; as, *Milites, hostibus*

victis, redierunt. The soldiers having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostibus victis,* may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. *The enemy conquered,* or *being conquered:* 2. *When* or *after the enemy is* or *was conquered:* 3. *By conquering the enemy:* 4. *Upon the defeat of the enemy,* &c.

Obs. 2. The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute; as, *Cicero locutus hæc consedit,* never *his locutis.* The participles of common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of passive verbs; as, *Romani adepti libertatem floruerunt;* or, *Romani, libertate adeptâ floruerunt.* But as the participles of common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore rarely find them used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 3. The participle *existente* or *existentibus,* is frequently understood; as, *Cæsare duce,* scil. *existente. His consulibus,* scil. *existentibus. Invitâ Minervâ,* sc. *existente,* against the grain; *Crassâ Minervâ,* without learning, *Hor. Magistrâ ac duce naturâ; vivis fratribus; te hortatore; Cæsare impulsore,* &c. Sometimes the substantive must be supplied; as, *Nondum comperto, quam regionem hostes petissent,* i. e. *cum nondum compertum esset,* Liv. *Tum demum palam facto,* sc. *negotio,* Id. *Excepto quod non simul esses, cætera lætus,* Hor. *Parto quod avebas,* Id. In such examples *negotio* must be understood, or the rest of the sentence considered as the substantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb supply the place of a substantive; as, *Vale dicto,* having said farewell, *Ovid.*

Obs. 4. We sometimes find a substantive plural joined with a participle singular; as, *Nobis presente,* Plaut. *Absente nobis,* Ter. We also find the ablative absolute, when it refers to the same person with the nominative to the verb; as, *me duce ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni,* Ovid. Amor. ii. 12. 12. *Lætos fecit se consule fastos,* Lucan, v. 384. *Populo spectante fieri credam, quicquid me conscio faciam,* Senec. de. Vit. Beat. c. 20. But examples of this construction rarely occur.

Obs. 5. The ablative called *absolute* is governed by some preposition understood; as, *a, ab, cum, sub,* or *in.* We find the preposition sometimes expressed; as, *Cum diis juvantibus,* Liv. The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely; as, *Perniciosa libidine paulisper usus, infirmitas naturæ accusatur,* Sall. Jug. i.

Obs. 6. The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways; thus, *Superbo regnante,* is the same with *cum, dum,* or *quando Superbus regnabat. Opere peracto,* is the same with *Post opus peractum,* or *Cum opus est peractum.* The present participle, when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e.*

Obs. 7. When a substantive is joined with a participle in English independently in the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative; as, *Illo descendente,* He descending. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.

APPENDIX TO SYNTAX.

I. VARIOUS SIGNIFICATION AND CONSTRUCTION OF VERBS.

[The verbs are here placed in the same order as in Etymology.]

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ASPIRARE ad gloriam & laudem, *to aim at;* in curiam, *to desire to be admitted,* Cic. equis Achillis, *to wish for;* labori ejus, *to favour;* amorem dictis, *sc.* ei, *to infuse,* Virg.

DESPERARE sibi de se; salutem, saluti, de salute, *to despair of.*

LEGARE aliquem ad alium, *to send as an ambassador;* aliquem sibi, *to make his lieutenant;* pecuniam alicui, *i. e.* testamento relinquere. *N. B.* Publice *legantur* homines; qui inde *legati* dicuntur: privatim *allegantur;* unde *allegati.*

DELEGARE æs alienum fratri, *to leave him to pay;* laborem alteri, *to lay upon;* aliquid ad aliquem, i. e. in eum transferre, *Cic.*

LEVARE metum ejus & ei, eum metu, *to ease.*

MUTARE locum, solum, *to be banished;* aliquid aliqua re; bellum pro pace, *to exchange;* vestem, i. e. sordidam togam induere, *Liv.* vestem cum aliquo, *Ter.* fidem, *to break.*

OBNUNTIARE comitiis *vel* concilio, i. e. comitia auspiciis impedire, *to hinder, by telling bad omens, and repeating these words* ALIO DIE; Consuli *v.* magistratui; i. e. prohibere ne cum populo agat, *Cic.*

PRONUNTIARE pecuniam pro reo, *to promise;* aliquid edicto, *to order;* sententias, *to sum up the opinions of the senators,* Cic.

RENUNTIARE aliquid, de re, alicui, ad aliquem, *to tell;* consulem, *to declare, to name;* vitæ amicitiam ei, *to give up;* muneri, hospitio, *to refuse;* repudium, *to divorce.*

OCCUPARE aliquem, *to seize;* se in aliquo negotio, *to be employed;* se ad negotium, *Plaut.* pecuniam alicui, *v.* apud aliquem grandi fœnore, *to give at interest,* Cic. occupat facere bellum, transire in agrum hostium, *begins first, anticipates,* Liv.

PRÆOCCUPARE saltum, portas Ciciliæ, *to seize beforehand,* Nep.

PRÆJUDICARE aliquem, *to condemn one from the precedent of a former sentence or trial,* Cic.

ROGARE aliquem id, & de ea re; id ab eo; salutem, & pro salute, *Cic.* legem, *to propose; hence* UTI ROGAS, dicere, *to pass it;* militem sacramento, *to administer the military oath;* Roget quis? *if any one should ask.* Comitia rogandis consulibus, *for electing,* Liv.

ABROGARE legem, *seldom* legi, *to disannul a law, to repeal, or to change in part;* multam, *to take off a fine;* imperium ei, *to take from.*

ARROGARE id sibi, *to claim.*

DEROGARE aliquid legi *v.* de lege, *to repeal* or *take away some clause of a law;* lex derogatur, *Cic.* fidem ei, *v.* de fide ejus, *to hurt one's credit;* ex æquitate; sibi, alicui, *to derogate* or *take from.*

EROGARE pecuniam in classem, in vestes, *to lay out money on.*

IRROGARE multam ei, *to impose.*

OBROGARE legi, *to enact a new law contrary to an old.*

PROROGARE imperium, provinciam alicui, *to prolong;* diem ei ad solvendum, *to put off.*

SUBROGARE aliquem in locum alterius, *to substitute;* legi, *to add a new clause* or *to put one in place of another.*

SPECTARE orientem, ad orientem, *to look towards;* aliquem ex censu, animum alicujus ex suo, *to judge of.*

SUPERARE hostes, *to overcome;* montes, *to pass;* superat pars cœpti, *sc.* operis, *remains;* Captæ superavimus urbi, *survived,* Virg.

TEMPERARE iras, ventos, *to moderate;* orbem, *to rule;* mihi sibi, *to restrain, to forbear;* alicui, *to spare;* cædibus, a lacrymis, *to abstain from.*

VACARE curâ, culpâ, morbo, munere militiæ, &c. a labore, *to be free from;* animo, *sc.* in, *to be at ease;* philosophiæ, in *v.* ad rem, *to apply to;* vacat locus, *is empty;* si vacas *v.* vacat tibi, *if you are at leisure.*

VINDICARE mortem ejus, *to revenge;* ab interitu, exercitum fame, *to free;* id sibi, & ad se, *to claim;* libertatem ejus, *to defend;* se in libertatem, *to set at liberty.*

DARE animam, *to die;* animos, *to encourage;* manus, *to yield;* manum ei, *to shake hands,* Plaut. jura, *to prescribe laws;* literas alicui ad aliquem, *to give one a letter to carry to another;* terga, fugam, *v.* se in fugam, in pedes, *to fly;* hostes in fugam, *to put to flight;* operam, *to endeavour;* operam philosophiæ, literis palæstræ, *to apply to;* operam honoribus, *to seek,* Nep. veniam ei, *to grant his request,* Ter. gemitus, lacrymas, amplexus, cantus, ruinam, fidem, jusjurandum, &c. *to groan, weep, embrace, sing, fall,* &c. cognitores honestos, *to give good vouchers for one's character,* Cic. aliquid mutuum, *v.* utendum, *to lend;* pecuniam fœnori, & collocare, *to place at interest;* se alicui ad docendum, *Cic.* multum suo ingenio, *to think much of;* se ad aliquid, *to apply to;* se auctoritati senatûs, *to yield;* fabulam, scripta foras, *to publish,* Cic. effectum, *to perform;* senatum, *to give a hearing of the senate;* actionem, *to grant leave to prosecute;* præcipitem, *to tumble headlong;* aliquid paternum, *to act like one's father;* lectos faciendos, *to bespeak,* Ter. litem secundum aliquem, *to determine a law-suit in favour of one;* aliquem exitio, morti, neci, letho, *rarely* lethum alicui, *to kill;* aliquid alicui dono, *v.* muneri, *to make a present;* crimini, vitio, laudi, *to accuse, blame, praise;* pœnas, *to suffer;* nomen militiæ, *v.* in militiam, *to list one's self to be a soldier;* se alicui, *to be familiar with,* Ter. Da te mihi hodie, *be directed by me,* Id

aures, *to listen;* oblivioni, *to forget;* civitatem ei, *to make one free of the city;* dicta, *to speak;* verba alicui, *to impose on, to cheat;* se in viam, *to enter on a journey;* viam ei, *to give place;* jus gratiæ, *to sacrifice justice to interest;* se turpiter, *to make a shabby appearance;* fundum vel domum alicui, mancipio, *to convey the property of, to warrant the title to;* Vitaque mancipio nulli datur, omnibus usu, *Lucr.* servos in quæstionem, *to give up slaves to be tortured;* primas, secundas, &c. (sc. partes) actioni, *to ascribe every thing to delivery,* Cic. Dat ei bibere, *Ter.* comas diffundere ventis, *to let them flow loose,* Virg. Da mihi *v.* nobis, *tell us,* Cic. Ut res dant se, *as matters go;* solertem dabo, *I'll warrant him expert,* Ter.

SATISDARE judicatum solvi, *to give security that what the judge has determined shall be paid,* Cic.

STARE contra aliquem; ab, cum, *v.* pro aliquo, *to side with, to be of the same party;* judicio ejus, *to follow;* in sententia; pacto, conditionibus, conventis, *to stand to, to make good an agreement;* re judicatâ, *to keep to what has been determined;* stare, *v.* constare animo, *to be in his senses:* Non stat per me quo minus pecunia solvatur, *It is not owing to me that,* &c. multorum sanguine ea Pœnis victoria stetit, *cost,* Liv. Mihi stat alere morbûm, desinere, *I am resolved,* Nep.

ADSTARE mensæ, *to stand by;* ad mensam, in conspectu.

CONSTARE ex multis rebus, animo et corpore, *to consist of;* secum, *to be consistent with,* Cic. liber constitit *v.* stetit mihi duobus assibus, *cost me;* non constat ei color, *his colour comes and goes;* auri ratio constat, *the sum is right,* Constat, impers. *It is evident, certain,* or *agreed on;* mihi, inter omnes, de hac re.

EXTARE aquis, *to be above,* Ovid. ad memoriam posteritatis, *to remain,* Cic. sepulchra extant, *Liv.*

INSTARE victis, *to press on the vanquished;* rectam viam, *to be in the right way;* currum Marti, *to make speedily,* Virg. instat factum, *insists that it was done,* Ter.

OBSTARE ei, *to hinder.*

PRÆSTARE multa, *to perform;* alicui, *v.* aliquem virtute, *to excel;* silentium ei, *to give;* auxilium, *to grant,* Juv. impensas, *to defray;* iter tutum, *to procure;* se incolumem, *to preserve;* se virum, *i. e.* præbere, exhibere; amorem, *v.* benevolentiam alicui, *to show;* culpam, *v.* damnum, i. e. in se transferre, *to take on one's self;* præstabo de me eum facturum, *I will be answerable.* In iis rebus repetendis, quæ mancipî sunt, is periculum judicii præstare debet, qui se nexu obligavit, *In recovering,* or *in an action to recover those things which are transferable, the seller ought to take upon himself the hazard of a trial,* Cic. *N. B.* Those things were called, Res mancipî, (*contracted for* mancipii, i. e. quas emptor manu caperet,) *the property of which might be transferred from one Roman citizen to another; as houses, lands, slaves,* &c.

Præstat impers. i. e. *it is better;* Præsto esse alicui, adv. *to be present, to assist;* Libri præstant venales, *the books are exposed to sale.*

ACCUBARE alicui in convivio, *to recline near;* apud aliquem. Incubare ovis & ova, *to sit upon;* stratis & super strata.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

HABERE spem, febrim, finem, bonum exitum, tempus; consuetudinem, voluntatem nocendi; opus in manibus, *v.* inter manus, *to have;* gratiam & gratum, *to have a grateful sense of a favour;* judicium, *to hold a trial;* honorem ei, *to honour;* in oculis, *to be fond of,* Ter. fidem alicui, *to trust or believe;* curam de *v.* pro eo; rationem alicujus, *to pay regard to, to allow one to stand candidate for an office;* rationem, *v.* rem cum aliquo, *to have business with;* satis, *to be satisfied;* orationem, concionem ad populum, *to make a speech;* aliquem odio, in odium, *to hate;* ludibrio, *to mock;* religioni, *to have a scruple about it; So,* habere aliquid quæstui, honori, prædæ, voluptati, &c. sc. sibi; se bene *v.* graviter, *to be well* or *ill;* se parcè et duriter, *to live,* Ter. aliquid compertum, cognitum, perspectum, exploratum, certum, *v.* pro certo, *to know for certain;* aliquem contemptui, despicatui, -um, *v.* in despicatum, *to despise;* excusatum, *to excuse;* susque deque, *to scorn, to slight;* Ut res se habet, *stands, is;* rebus ita se habentibus, *in this state of affairs;* Hæc habeo, *v.* habui dicere de, &c. Non habeo necesse scribere, quid sim facturus, *Cic.* Habe tibi tuas res, *a form of divorce.*

ADHIBERE diligentiam, celeritatem, vim, severitatem in aliquem, *to use;* in convivium *v.* consilium, *to admit;* remedium vulneri, curationem morbo, *to apply;* vinum ægrotis, *to give;* aures versibus, *to hear with taste;* cultum & preces diis, *to offer,* Cic. Exhibere molestiam alicui, *to cause trouble.*

JUBERE legem, *to vote for, to pass;* regem, *to choose;* aliquem salvere, *to wish one health;* esse bono animo, &c. Uxorem suas res sibi habere jussit, *divorced,* Cic.

DOCEO te hanc rem, & de hac re. Doctus, *adj.* utriusque linguæ; Latinis & Græcis literis; Latinè; & Græcè; ad militiam.

MISCERE aliquid alicui, cum aliquo, ad aliquid; vinum aquâ, *Plin.* cuncta sanguine, *Tacit.* sacra profanis, *Hor.* humana divinis, *Liv.*

VIDERE rem *v.* de re; sibi, de isthoc, *to take care of,* Ter. plus, *to be more wise,* Cic. De hoc tu videris, *consider, be answerable for,* Cic. Videor videre, *methinks I see;* visus sum audire, *methought I heard;* mihi visus est dicere, *he seemed;* Quid tibi videtur? *What think you?* Si tibi videtur, *if you please;* videtur fecisse, *guilty,* &c.

INVIDERE honorem ei, *v.* honori ejus; ei, *vel* eum, *to envy.*

PROVIDERE & prospicere id, *to foresee;* ei, *to provide for;* in posterum; rei frumentariæ, rem *v.* de re.

SEDERE ad dextram ejus; in equo, *to ride;* toga bene sedet, *fits;* Sedet hoc animo, *is fixed,* Virg.

ASSIDERE ei; Adherbalem, *to sit by,* Sall. Assidet insano, *is near* or *like to,* Hor.

DISSIDERE cum aliquo, *to disagree.*

INSIDERE equo, & in equo, *to sit upon;* locum, *Liv.* in animo, memoriâ, *to be fixed.*

PRÆSIDERE urbi, imperio, *to command,* Cic exercitum, Italiam, *Tacit.*

SUPERSEDERE labore, litibus; pugnæ, loqui, *to forbear, to give over.*

PENDERE promissis, ab *v.* ex aliquo, *to*

depend; de, ex, ab & in arbore; Opera pendent interrupta, *Virg.*

Impendet malum nobis, nos, *v.* in nos, *threatens.*

SPONDERE & despondere filiam alicui, *to betroth.*

Despondere domum alicujus sibi, *to be sure of,* Cic. animo & -is, *to promise, to hope;* animum & -os, *to despair,* Liv.

Respondere ei, literis ejus, his, ad hæc, ad nomen, *to answer;* votis ejus, *to satisfy his wishes;* ad spem.

SUADERE ei pacem, *v.* de pace; legem, *to speak in favour of.*

DOLERE casum ejus; de, ab, ex, in, pro, re; dolet mihi cor, *v.* hoc dolet cordi meo; caput dolet a sole.

VALERE gratiâ apud aliquem, *to be in favour with one;* lex valet, *is in force;* quid verbum valeat, non video, *signifies;* valet decem talenta, *or oftener* talentis, *is worth;* vale *vel,* valeas, *farewell; or ironically, away with you.*

EMINERE aliqua re, *vel* in aliqua re, inter omnes; super cætera, *Liv.* super utrumque, *Hor. to be eminent, to excel;* ex aqua, *v.* aquam, super undas, *to be above.* Imminere alicui, *to hang over, to threaten;* in occasionem, exitio alicujus, *to seek, to watch for.*

TENERE promissum; se domi, oppido, castris, *sc.* in, *to keep;* modum, ordinem, *to observe;* rem, dicta, lectionem, *to understand, to remember;* linguam, *but not* suam, silentium, se in silentio, *to be silent;* ora, *to keep the countenance fixed;* secundum locum imperii, *to hold,* Nep. jura civium, *to enjoy,* Cic. causam, *to gain;* mare, *to be in the open sea, to hold, to be master of;* terram, portum, metam, montes, *to reach;* risum, lachrymas, *to restrain:* se ab accusando, quin accuset, *Cic.* Ventus tenet, *blows;* teneri legibus, jurejurando, &c. *to be bound by;* leges tenent eum, *bind;* teneri in manifesto furto, *to be seized;* tenet fama, *prevails.*

Abstinere maledictis, *v.* a, *to abstain;* publico, *to live retired,* Tacit. animum a scelere, ægrum a cibo, *to keep from;* jus belli ab aliquo, *not to treat rigorously,* Liv. Id ad me, ad religionem, &c. pertinet, *concerns me;* crimen ad te pertinet, *Cic.* But it is not proper to say, Liber ad me, ad fratrem pertinet, *for* meî fratris est, *belongs to;* venæ ad vel in omnes corporis partes pertinet, *reach.*

Sustinere personam judicis, nomen consulatûs, *to bear the character;* assensionem, *v.* se ab assensu, *to withhold assent;* rem in noctem, *to defer.*

MANERE apud aliquem; in castris; ad urbem; in urbe; proposito, sententiâ, in sententia, statu suo, &c. adventum hostium, *to expect,* Liv. promissis, *to stand to, to keep,* Virg. Omnes una manet nox, *awaits,* Horat. Manent ingenia senibus, modò permaneat studium & industria, *Cic.* Munera vobis certa manent, *Virg.*

MERERE laudem; bene, male de aliquo; stipendia, equo, pedibus, *to serve as a soldier;* fustuarium, *to be beaten to death.*

HÆRERE lateri; tergis, *v.* in terga hostium, *Liv.* curru, *Virg.* alicui in visceribus, *Cic.* Hæret mihi aqua, *I am in doubt;* Vide, ne hæreas, *lest you be at a loss,* Cic.

Adhærere & adhærescere justitiæ; ad turrim; in me. Inhærere rei, & in re.

MOVERE castra, *to decamp;* bella, *to raise;* aliquem tribu, *to remove a Roman citizen from a more honourable to a less honourable tribe;* e senatu, *to degrade a senator;* risum *vel* jocum alicui, *to cause laughter;* stomachum ei, *to trouble,* Cic.

FAVETE ore, *vel* linguis, *sc.* mihi, *attend in silence,* or *abstain from words of a bad omen.*

CAVERE aliquid, aliquem, *vel* ab aliquo, *to guard against, to avoid;* alicui, *to provide for, to advise as a lawyer does his client;* aliquid alicui, *Cic.* sibi ab aliquo *vel* per aliquem de re aliqua, *to get security on;* mihi prædibus & chirographo cautum est, *I have got security by bail and bond;* veteranis cautum esse volumus, *Cic.* Cave facias, *sc.* ne, *see you don't do it;* mihi cavendum, *vel* mea cautio est, *I must take care.*

CONNIVERE ad fulgura, *Suet. to wink;* in hominum sceleribus, *to take no notice of,* Cic.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in IO.

FACERE initium, finem, pausam, finem vitæ; pacem, amicitiam; testamentum, nomen, fossam, pontem in flumine, in Tiberim, *to make;* divortium cum uxore, *Cic.* bellum regi, *Nep.* se hilarem, *to show,* Ter. se divitem, miserum, pauperem, *to pretend,* Cic. æs alienum, contrahere, *v.* conflare, *to contract debt;* animos, *to encourage;* damnum, detrimentum, jacturam, *to loose;* naufragium, *to suffer;* sumptum, *to spend;* gratum alicui, *to oblige;* gratiam delicti, *to pardon a fault;* gratiam legis, *to dispense with;* justa *vel* funus alicui, *to perform one's funeral rites;* rem, *to make an estate;* pecuniam, divitias ex metallis; fœdus, *v.* inire, icere, ferire, percutere, jungere, sancire, firmare, &c. *to make a league;* moram alicui, *to delay;* verba, *to speak;* audientiam sibi, *Cic.* negotium, et facessere, *to trouble;* aliquid missum, *to pass over:* aliquem missum, *to dismiss* or *excuse;* ad aliquid, *rarely* alicui, *to be fit* or *useful;* ratum, *to ratify;* planum, *to explain;* palam suis, *to make known,* Nep. stipendium pedibus, *v.* equo, & merere, *to serve in the army;* sacra, sacrificium, *v.* rem divinam, *to sacrifice;* reum, *to impeach;* fabulam, carmen, versus, &c. *to write a play,* &c. copiam consilii ei, *to offer advice;* copiam *vel* potestatem dicendi legatis, *to grant leave;* fidem, *to procure* or *give credit;* periculum, *to make trial;* potestatem sui, *to expose himself,* Nep. aliquem loquentem, *v.* loqui, *to suppose* or *represent,* Cic. piraticam, *sc.* rem, *to be a pirate;* argentariam, medicinam, mercaturam, &c. *to be an usurer, a physician,* &c. versuram, *to contract a new debt, to discharge an old one, to borrow money at great interest,* Cic. cum *v.* ab aliquo, *to side with;* contra *v.* adversus, *to oppose;* nomen, *v.* nomina, *to borrow money;* and also, *to settle accounts;* i. e. rationes acceptarum, *sc.* pecuniarum & expensarum inter se conferre; nomen in litura, *to write it where something was before,* Cic. pedem, *v.* pedes, *to trim the sails,* Virg. Fac ita esse, *suppose it is so;* obvius fieri alicui, *to meet;* ne longum, *v.* longa faciam, ut breve faciam, *not to be tedious;* equus non facit, *will not move,* Cic. Fac velle, *sc.* me, *suppose me to be willing,* Virg. Æn. iv. 540.

Afficere aliquem laude, honore, præmio, &

ignominiâ, pœnâ, morte, leto, &c. *to praise, honour*, &c. *to disgrace, punish*, &c. Affectus ætate, morbo, *weakened*.

Conficere bellum, *to finish*; orationes, *to compose*, Nep. cibum, *to chew*; argentum, *to raise, to get*; also *to spend*, Cic. cum aliquo de re, *to conclude a bargain*; exercitus hostium, *to destroy*; alterum, Curiatium, *to kill*, Liv. Qui stipendiis confectis erant, i. e. emeriti, *had served out their time*, Cic.

Deficere animo, *to faint*; ab aliquo, *to revolt*; tempus deficit mihi *vel* me, *fails*; Defici viribus, ratione, &c. *to be deprived of*.

Inficere se vitro, *to stain*; Infectus, part. *stained*; infectus, adj. *not done*. Inficior, -atus, -ari, *to deny*.

Officere alicui, *to hinder* or *hurt*; Diogeni apricanti, *to stand betwixt him and the sun*; auribus, visui, *to stop* or *obstruct*; Umbra terræ soli officiens noctem efficit, *Cic.*

Præficere aliquem exercitui, *to set over*. Proficere alicui, *to profit, to do good*; in philosophia, & progressus facere, *to make progress*.

Reficere muros, templa, ædes, rates, res, *to repair*; animum, vires, saucios, se, jumenta, *to refresh, to recover*.

Sufficere laboribus, ictibus, *to be able to bear*; arma *v.* vires alicui, *to afford*; Valerius in locum Collatini suffectus est, *was substituted*, Liv. Filius patri suffectus, *Tacit.* Oculos suffecti sanguine & igne, *sc.* secundum, *having their eyes red and inflamed*, Virg.

Satisfacere alicui, in *v.* de aliqua re, *to satisfy*; fidei, promisso, *to perform*.

JACERE aliquem in præceps; contumelias in eum, *to throw*; fundamenta, & ponere, *to lay*; talos, *to play at dice*; anchoram, *to cast*.

Adjicere, *to add*; oculos alicui rei, *to covet*; animum studiis, *to apply*; sacerdotibus creandis, *Liv.*

Conjicere se in pedes, *v.* fugam, *to fly*; cætera, *to conjecture*.

Injicere manus ei, *to lay on*; spem, ardorem, suspicionem, pavorem, alicui, *to inspire*; admirationem sui cuivis ipso aspectu, *Nep.*

Objicere se hostibus, in *v.* ad omnes casus, *to oppose* or *expose*; crimen ei, *to lay to one's charge*.

Rejicere tela in hostes, *to throw back*; judices, mala, *to reject*; rem ad senatum, Romam, *to refer*; rem ad Idus Febr. *to delay*, Cic.

Subjicere ova gallinæ, *to set a hen*; se imperio alicujus, *to submit*; testamenta, *to forge*; testes, *to suborn*; partes *v.* species generibus, ex quibus emanant, *to put* or *class under*; aliquid ei, *to suggest*; libellum ei, i. e. in manus dare: odio civium, *to expose*; bona Pompeii *v.* fortunas hastæ *vel* voci & sub voce præconis, *to expose to public sale*, Cic. sub hasta venire, *to be sold*, Liv.

Trajicere copias *v.* exercitum, fluvium, Hellespontum, *vel* trans fluvium, *to transport*; Marius cum parva navicula in Africam trajectus est, *passed* or *sailed over*. Trajectus ferro, *pierced*.

CAPERE conjecturam, consilium, dolorem, fugam, specimen, spem, sedem, &c. *to guess, consult, grieve, fly, essay, hope, sit*, &c. augurium, *v.* auspicium, & agere, *to take an omen*; exemplum de aliquo: locum castris; terram, *to alight*; insulam, summa, *sc.* loca, *to reach*; spolia ex nobilitate, *to gain*, Sall. de republica nihil præter gloriam, *Nep.* magistratum, *to receive* or *enjoy*; virginem Vestalem, *to choose*; amentiam, spiritus, superbiam alicujus, *to bear, to contain*; aliquem, consilio, perfidia, *to catch*; nec te Troja capit, *Virg.* Ædes vix nos capiunt, *the house hardly contains us*. Altero oculo capitur, *blind of one eye*; capitur locis, *he is delighted with*, Virg.

Accipere pecuniam, vulnus, cladem, injuriam ab aliquo, *to receive*; Orbis terrarum divitias accipere nolo pro patriæ caritate, *Nep.* binas literas eodem exemplo, *two copies of the same letter*, Cic. clamorem de Socrate, *to hear*, id in bonam partem, *to take in good part, to understand in a good sense*: omnia ad contumeliam, aliter, aliorsum, ac, atque, *Ter.* rudem *v.* rude donari, *to be discharged as a gladiator*; aliquem bene, *v.* male, *to treat*; eum male acceptum in Midiam hiematum coegit redire, *roughly handled*, Nep. rogationem, *to approve the bill*; nomen, i. e. ad pretendum admittere, *to allow to stand candidate*; omen, *to esteem good*; satisfactionem, *v.* excusationem, *Cæs.* Acceptus plebi, apud plebem, *popular*.

Concipere verba juramenti, *to prescribe the form of an oath*; conceptis verbis jurare: inimicitias cum aliquo, *to bear enmity to one*; aquam, *to gather, to form the head of an aqueduct*, Frontinus.

Excipere eum hospitio, *to entertain*; fugientes, *to catch*; extremum spiritum cognatorum; sanguinem paterâ, *to keep* or *gather*; notis, & scribere, *to write in short hand*; motus futuros, *to perceive*: Hos homines excipio, *I except*; virtutem excipit immortalitas; turbelentior annus excepit, *succeeded*; sic excepit regia Juno, *replied*, Virg.

Incipere, occipere, *to begin*. Percipere fructus, *to reap*.

Præcipere futura, *to foresee*; gaudia, spem victoriæ, *to anticipate*; pecuniam mutuam, *to take before the time*, Cæs. lac, *to dry up*, Virg. alicui id, *v.* de ea re, *to order*; artem ei, *to teach*.

Recipere aliquid, *to receive*; urbem, *to recover*; eum tectis, *to entertain*; se *v.* pedem, *to retreat*; se domum, *to return*; se, mentem, animum, *to come to one's self again, to recover spirits*; in se, *to take charge*; alicui, *to promise*; se ad frugem, *to amend*; senem sessum, *to give a seat to*, Cic.

RAPERE *vel* trahere in pejorem partem, *to take a thing in the worst sense*; in jus, *to bring before a judge*; partes inter se, *to share*, Liv. Sub divum, *to reveal*, Horat.

UO.

EXUERE vestes sibi, se vestibus; jugum sibi, se jugo, *to cast off*; fidem, sacramentum, *to break*; mentem, *to change*, Virg. hostem castris, *to beat from*.

RUERE ad interitum, in ferrum: cæteros. *Ter.* spumas, *to drive* or *toss*, Virg.

LUERE pœnas capitis, *to suffer*; æs alienum, *to pay*, Curt. culpam suam *vel* alterius, morte, sanguine, *to expiate, to atone*, or *suffer for*.

Fluere amicitias remissione usûs, *to drop gradually*, Cic.

STATUERE stipendium iis de publico, *to appoint*; exemplum in hominem, *vel* -ne, *to make one a public example*; aliquem capite in terram, *to set* or *place*, Ter.

Constituere coloniam, *to settle*; agmen paulisper, *to make, to stop* or *halt*, Sall. in digitis, *to count on one's fingers*, Cic. urbem, *to build*, Ovid. Is hodie venturum ad me consituit domum, *appointed, resolved*, Ter. Si utilitas amicitiam con-

stituit, tollet eadem, *makes, constitutes*, Cic. Corpus bene constitutum, *a good constitution*, Id.

Destituere aliquem, *to forsake*; spem, *to deceive*; propositum, *to give over*, Ovid. deos pactâ mercede, *to defraud*, Hor.

Instituere aliquem secundum hæredem filio, *to appoint*, Cic. collegium fabrorum, sacra, *to institute, to found*, Plin. aliquem doctrinâ Græcis literis, *to instruct*; naves, *to build*, Cæs. sermonem, *to enter upon*, Id. animum ad cogitandum, *to settle*; antequam pro Muræna dicere instituo, *I begin*, Cic.

Præstituere petitori, qua actione illum uti oporteat, *to prescribe to the prosecutor what form of process he should use*, Cic. tempus ei, *to determine*.

Restituere exules; virginem suis, *to restore*; oppida vicosque, *to repair*; aciem inclinatum, *to rally*; prælium, *to renew*, Liv.

Substituere aliquem in locum ejus, pro altero, *to substitute*, or *put in the place of*, Cic.

STRUERE epulas, *to prepare*; insidias, mendacium, *to contrive*; odium, crimen alicui, *vel* in aliquem, *to raise against*.

BO.

SCRIBERE suâ manu, bene, velociter, epistolam alicui, *v.* ad aliquem; bellum, *v.* de bello; milites, *to enlist*; supplementum militibus, *to recruit them*; hæredem, *to make one his heir*; dicam ei, *to raise an action against one*; nummos, *to give a bill of exchange*; de rebus suis scribi cupivit, *Cic.* Decemvir legibus scribendis, *Liv.*

Ascribere aliquem civitati, in civitatem, *v.* -e, *to make free*.

Describere aliquem, *to describe and not to name*; partes Italiæ, pecuniam, populum ordinibus, *to distribute, to divide*; vectigal civitatibus, i. e. imperare; jura, i. e. dare *v.* constituere; censores binos in singulas civitates, i. e. facere, *Cic.*

Inscribere literas alicui, *to correct a letter*; librum, *to entitle* or *name*; ædes mercede, *to put a ticket on one's house to let*, Ter.

Proscribere bona alicujus, ædes suas, auctionem, *to publish to be sold, to set to sale*; aliquem, *to banish, to outlaw*.

Rescribere alicujus literis *v.* ad literas, alicui ad aliquid, *to write an answer*; pecuniam, *to pay money by bill*; legionem ad equum, *to set foot-soldiers on horseback*, Cæs.

Subscribere exemplum literarum, *to write below*; causæ, *to join* or *take part in an accusation*; Cæsaris iræ, *to favour*, Ovid.

CO.

DICERE aliquid, *v.* de aliqua re, ex aliquo loco, alicui, ad *v.* apud aliquem; in aliquem, *against*; ad aliquid, *in answer to*; sententiam, *to give an opinion*; jus, *to administer justice, to pronounce sentence*; mulctam ei, *to amerce* or *fine*; diem ei, *to appoint a day for his trial before the people*; prodicere, *to put it off*; causam, *to plead*; testimonium, *to give evidence*; non idem, *loqui* est ac *dicere*, *to harangue*, Cic. sacramento, *seldom* sacramentum, *to take the military oath*.

Addicere aliquid ei, *to call out at an auction, to sell*; servituti, *v.* in servitutem, *to sentence* or *adjudge to bondage*; bona, *to give up the goods of the debtor to the creditor*; se alicui, *to devote himself to one's service*: aves non addixerunt, *v.* abdixerunt, *the birds did not give a favourable omen*; pretio addictam habere fidem, *to be corrupt*, Cic.

Condicere operam alicui, *to promise assistance*; cœnam alicui, *v.* ad cœnam, *to purpose supping with one without invitation*.

Edicere alicui, *to order*; delectum, *to appoint a levy*; prædam militibus, *to promise by an edict*; justitium, diem comitiis, *vel* comitia consulibus creandis, *to appoint*.

Indicere bellum, justitium, *to proclaim war*; legem sibi, *to appoint*, Cic. cœtus in domos tribunorum, *to summon*, Liv. indicare, *to show*; Indictus, an adj. *not said*; causâ indictâ, *v.* non cognitâ condemnari, *to be condemned without being heard*; me indicente, hæc non fiunt, *not telling*, Ter.

Interdicere alicui, aliquid *v.* aliqua re; fœminis usum purpuræ, *to forbid* or *debar from*; ei aquâ & igne, *v.* aquam et ignem, *to banish*; male rem gerentibus, bonis paternis interdici solet, *Cic.* interdici non poterat socero gener, *discharged the company of*, Nep.

Prædicere alicui aliquid, de aliqua re, id in hac re, *to foretel, to forewarn*.

DUCERE in carcerem *v.* vincula, *to lead*; exercitum, *to command*; spiritum, animam, vitam, *to breathe, to live*; fossam, murum, sulcum, *to make* or *draw*; bellum, *to prolong*, also *to carry on*, Virg. ætatem, diem, *to spend*; uxorem, *to take a wife*; in jus, *to summon before a judge*; aliquem, & vultum alicujus, ære, ex ære, de auro, marmore, &c. *to make a statue*; genus, nomen ab *v.* ex aliquo, *to derive*; omnia pro nihilo, infra se; id laudi, laudem, *v.* in laudem, *(oftener the first,) to reckon it a praise to him*; in conscientiam, *to impute to a consciousness of guilt*; in gloria, *Plin.* in crimen, *Tacit.* centesimas, *sc.* usuras, *vel* fœnus centesimis, *to compute interest at one for the hundred a month*, or *at* 12 *per cent. per annum*; binis centesimis fœnerari, *to take* 24 *per cent. per annum*, Cic. ducere, longas voces in fletum, *to draw out*, Virg. ordines, *to be a centurion*, Liv. ilia, *to pant like a broken-winded horse*, Hor.

Adducere aliquem in judicium, arbitrium meum, *to bring to a trial*; in suspicionem regi, *Nep.* arcum, *to draw in*; habenas, *to straiten the reins*.

Conducere aliquem ex loco, *to convey*; navem, domum, coquos, *to hire*; columnam faciendam, *to engage to make at a certain price*; Conducit hoc tuæ laudi, in *v.* ad rem, *is of advantage*.

Deducere naves, *to launch*; classem in prælium, *to bring*, Nep. equites, *to make to alight*, Liv. eum domum, *to accompany, to carry home*; de sententia, *Cic.* coloniam, *to transplant*; lacum, *to drain*.

Educere gladium e vagina, *to draw*; florem Italiæ, *to lead out*; copias in aciem, *Cic.* filium, *to educate*, *oftener* educare; in astra, *to extol*, Hor. cælo, Virg.

Inducere tenebras clarissimis rebus, *to bring on*, Cic. animum, *v.* in animum, *to persuade himself*; scuta pellibus, *to cover*, Cæs. soleas pedibus, *v.* in pedes, *to put on*; colorem picturæ, *to varnish*, Plin. nomina, *to cancel* or *rase, to rub out*.

Obducere exercitum, *to lead against*; callum dolori, *to blunt it*; sepulchrum sentibus, *to cover*;

Reducere aliquem in memoriam alicujus, *vel* alicui aliquid in memoriam, *to bring back to one's remembrance*; in gratiam cum aliquo, *to reconcile*. Vallis reducta, *retired* or *low*.

Producere testes, *to bring out*; funus, *to*

stend; sermonem in noctem, *to prolong, to continue*; rem in hiemem, *to defer*; servos vendendos, *to bring to market*.

Subducere se a custodibus, *to steal away*; naves, *to draw up on shore*; cibum ei & deducere, *to take from*; summam, rationes, *to reckon, to cast up accounts*.

PARCERE sibi, labore, *to spare*, &c. a cædibus, *to forbear*; aurum natis, *Virg*.

ASSUESCERE rei alicui, *v.* re aliqua, in *v.* ad hoc, *to be accustomed*; mentem, pluribus & assuefacere, *Hor*. Animis bella, Virg. *to accustom*. So, insuesco rei *v.* re; insuevit hoc me pater, *Hor*.

SCISCERE legem, *to vote, to decree*; *hence* plebiscitum.

Asciscere regium nomen, *to assume*; socios sibi, ad societatem sceleris, *to associate*; ritus peregrinos, *to adopt*.

Consciscere mortem *v.* necem sibi, *to kill one's self*; fugam sibi, *to flee*, Liv.

DISCERE aliquid ab aliquo, *v.* apud aliquem, ex aliqua re, *or without* ex: Dediscere, *to forget what he hath learned*; Ediscere, *to get by heart*.

Descendere de palatio, præsidio, ædibus; in forum, curiam, campum; ad accusandum, ad omnia, ad extrema, *to have recourse to*, Cic.

DO.

LUDERE aleâ, *v.* -am, *to play at dice*; par impar, *at even and odd*; operam, *to lose one's labour*.

Alludere alicui, ad aliquem: Colludere ei, cum eo; illudere ei, eum, in eum, in eo; id, *to mock*.

EVADERE insidias, -iis, *vel* ex, *to escape*; in muro, *to mount*: Hæc quorsum evadant, nescio, *to what they will turn out*; clarus evasit, *became*.

CEDERE multa multis de suo jure, *Cic*. Bona creditoribus, *to yield, whence* cessio bonorum; alicui loco, de, a, ex loco, *v.* locum, *to give place*; vitâ, e vita decedere, *to die*; foro, *to turn bankrupt*: Hæreditas cedit mihi, *falls to*; Cedit in proverbium, *becomes*.

Accedere oppidum, -do, ad *v.* in oppidum, *to approach*; ad conditiones, *to agree to*; Ciceroni, sententiæ, *v.* ad sententiam ejus, *to agree with*; ad Ciceronem, *to go to*; ad rempublicam, *to bear the questorship*, or *the first public office*; ad amicitiam Philippi, *to gain the friendship of*, Nep. Ad hæc mala hoc mihi accedit etiam, *added*, Ter. Robur accessit ætati, *Cic*. Animi accessere hosti, *Liv*. Ad corporis firmitatem plura animi bona accesserant, *Nep*. Accedit plurimum pretio; huc, eò, accedit quod, *is added*.

Antecedere alicui rei; aliquem, *rarely* alicui, *to excel*.

Concedere ei aliquid & de aliquo; paulum de suo jure; tempus ad rem, *to grant*; ab oculis, ad dextram, in exilium, in hiberna, *to retire, to go*; fato, naturæ, vitâ, *to die*; in sententiam ejus, *to come into one's measures*; in conditiones, *to agree to*, Liv.

Discedere transversum, & latum unguem, *v.* digitum a re, *to depart in the least*.

Intercedere legi, *to give a negative against, to oppose a law*; pecuniam pro aliquo, *to become surety*: Intercedit mihi tecum amicitia *vel* inter nos, *there is*, &c.

Succedere ei, in locum ejus, *to succeed*; muro, *v.* murum; ad urbem; sub primam aciem; in pugnam, *to come to*.

CADERE altè, ab alto, in terram, *to fall*; causâ, formulâ, in judicio, & litem perdere, *to lose one's cause, to be cast*; in *v.* sub sensum, oculos, potestatem, &c. in morbum, & incidere, *Cic*. Non cadit in virum bonum mentiri, *is incapable of*, Cic. Homini lachrymæ cadunt, quasi puero, gaudio, *Ter*.

Accidere genibus, *v.* ad genua, *to fall at*; auribus *v.* ad aures, *to come to*; alicui, casu, præter opinionem, *to happen*; accidit in te istud verbum, *applies*, Ter.

TENDERE vela, *to stretch*; insidias, retia, plagas, &c. *to lay snares*; arcum, *to bend*; iter, cursum, *to direct*; ad altiora, in cœlum, *to aim at*; extra vallum, *sc.* tabernaculum, *to pitch a tent*: Manibus tendit divellere nodos, *tries*, Virg.

Attendo te, *Cic.* tibi, *Plin.* de hac re, ad hanc rem, *to take heed*; animum ad rem; res hostium, *Sall*.

Contendere nervos, omnibus nervis, *to exert one's self*; aliquid ab aliquo, *to ask earnestly*; inter se; amori, poet. *for* cum amore, *to strive*; causas, *sc.* inter se, *to compare*, Cic. Aliquid ad aliquid, cum aliquo, & alicui.

Comprehendere naturam rerum, *to understand*; rem pluribus & luculentioribus verbis, *to express*; aliquem humanitate, amicitia, *to gain*; rem fictam, *to discover*.

Intendere animum rei, ad *v.* in rem, *to apply*: Intendi animo in rem, *Liv*. Vocem, nervos, *to exert*; arcum, *to bend*; actionem, *v.* litem alicui *v.* in aliquem, *also* impingere, *to raise a law suit against one*; telum ei, *v.* in eum, *to shoot at*; manum *v.* digitum in aliquid, *to point at*; aliquo, *sc.* ire, *to go to*; officia, *to overdo, to do more than is required*, Sall.

Obtendere velum rei, *v.* rem velo, *to cover, to veil*.

PENDERE pecuniam, *to pay*; pœnas, *to suffer*; id parvi, *to value it little*.

Suspendere aliquem arbori, de, in, *v.* ex arbore, *to hang*; expectatione, *vel* suspensum detinere, *to keep in suspense*; ædificium, *to arch a house*; naso adunco, *to sneer at*, Horat.

ABDERE se literis, in literas, *to hide* or *shut up one's self among books*; se domum, rus, &c. domo, *Virg*. in silvas, tenebras, &c.

Condere urbem, *to build*; fructus, *to lay up*; in carcerem, *to imprison*; carmen, *to compose*; lumina, *to close*, Ov. Jura, *to establish*; terrâ, sepulchro, in sepulchro, *to bury*.

Dedere se alicui, in ditionem alicujus, ad aliquem, *to surrender*: Deditus præceptori, & studiis, *fond of*; vino epulisque, *engaged in*, Nep. deditâ operâ, *on purpose*.

Edere librum, & in lucem, *to publish*; ovum, *to lay*; sonos, cantus, risus, gemitus, questus, hinnitum, pugnam, stragem, *to sound, sing*, &c. munus gladiatorium, *to exhibit a show of gladiators*; nomen, *to mention*; fœtus, *to bring forth*; extremum spiritum, *to die*; exempla cruciatûs in aliquem, *to inflict exemplary torture*.

Obdere pessulum foribus, *to bolt the door*.

Prodere arcem hostibus, *to betray*; aliquid posteris, *v.* memoriæ, *to hand down*; genus ab aliquo, *to derive*; flaminem, interregem, *to appoint*; aliquot dies nuptiis, *to put off*, Ter. exemplum, *to give to posterity*, Liv.

Reddere animum, se sibi, *to revive*; animam *v.* vitam, *to die*; Latinè, verbum verbo, *to translate*; matrem, i. e. referre, *to resemble*; epistolam alicui, *to deliver*.

Subdere calcar equo, *to spur*; spiritus alicui, *to encourage*.

Credere rem; homini, *to believe*; aliquid alicui, *to trust*; pecuniam ei per syngrapham,

to lend on bond or *bill;* rumoribus credi non oportet: Itaque credo, si, &c. *I suppose*, Cic.

FUNDERE aquam, *to pour out;* hostes, *to rout.*

Effundere fruges, copiam oratorum, *to produce;* ærarium, *to spend;* odium, i. e. dimittere, *to drop;* gratiam collectam, i. e. perdere: omnia, quæ tacuerat, *to tell.*

GO.

JUNGERE se cum aliquo, alicui, & ad aliquem, dextram dextræ; equos currui; amnem ponte, *to make a bridge.*

Adjungere accessionem ædibus, *to build an addition to one's house;* animum ad studia, *to apply.*

STRINGERE cultrum, gladium, ensem, *to draw;* frondes, *to lop off;* glandes, baccas, *to beat down;* rem, *to waste one's fortune*, Hor. littus, *to touch, to brush* or *graze upon*, Virg.

TANGERE rem acu, *to hit the nail on the head.*

Attingere Brittaniam navibus, *to reach;* reges, res summas, *to mention*, Nep. Aliquem cognatione, affinitate, *to be related to;* forum, *to reach manhood*, Cic. Res non te attingit, *concerns.*

FINGERE orationem, *to polish;* oratorem, *to form;* se ad arbitrium alterius, *to adopt:* Vultus a mente fingitur, lingua fingit vocem, *Cic.* Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam, *Nep.*

FRANGERE nucem, *to break;* navem, *to suffer shipwreck;* fœdus, fidem, *to violate;* sententiam ejus, *to refute*, Cic. hostem, *to subdue.*

AGERE gratias, *to give thanks;* vitam, *to live;* prædas, *to plunder;* fabulam, *to act a play;* triumphum de aliquo, ex aliqua re, *to triumph;* nugas, *to trifle;* ambages, *to beat about the bush;* stationem, custodiam urbis, *to be on guard;* rimas, *to chink, to leak, to be rent;* causam, *to plead;* de re, *to speak;* radices, *to take root;* cuniculos, *to undermine;* undam, *to raise a steam;* animam, *to be at the last gasp;* alias res, *to be inattentive;* festum diem, natalem, ferias, &c. *to keep, to observe;* actum, *v.* rem actam, *to labour in vain;* censum, & habere, *to make a review of the people, their estates*, &c. forum, *to hold a court to try causes;* lege in aliquem, & cum aliquo, *to go to law with one;* hence actor, *a plaintiff;* in hæreditatem, *to claim;* cum populo, *to treat with, to lay before;* decimum agit annum, *he is ten years old;* id agitur, *that is the question;* libertas agitur, *v.* de libertate, *is at stake;* actum est de libertate, *is lost;* actum est ilicet, *all is over;* actum est de pace, *was treated about;* cum illo bene actum est, *he has been lucky* or *well used;* hoc age, *mind what you are about:* Civitas læta agere, *for* erat, *Sall.*

Adigere milites sacramento, ad *v.* in jusjurandum, in sua verba, per jusjurandum, *to force to enlist;* arbitrum, i. e. agere *v.* cogere aliquem ad arbitrum, *to force to submit to an arbitration*, Cic.

Cogere copias, *to bring together;* ad militiam, *to force to enlist;* senatum, *to assemble;* in senatum, *sc.* minis pignoribus captis, &c. *to force to attend;* agmen, *to rally, to bring up;* lac, *to curdle;* jus civile diffusum & dissipatum, in certa genera cogere, *to digest, to arrange.*

Exigere foras, *to drive out, to divorce;* aliquid ab aliquo, *to require;* sarta tecta, *sc.* et, i. e. sarta et tecta, ut sint bene reparata, *to require that the public works be kept in good reparation*, Cic. supplicium de aliquo, *to inflict;* sua nomina, *to demand* or *call in one's debts;* ævum, vitam, annos, *to spend;* aliquid ad normam, *to try* or *examine;* columnam ad perpendiculum, *to apply the plummet, to see if it be straight;* monumentum, *to finish*, Hor. tempus & modum, *to settle.* Virg. comœdiam, *to disapprove, to hiss off*, Ter.

Redigere aliquid in memoriam alicujus, *to bring back;* pecuniam ex bonis venditis, *to raise money;* hostes sub imperium, *to reduce.*

LEGERE oram, littus, *to coast along;* vela, *to furl the sails;* halitum, *to catch one's breath;* milites, *to enlist;* aliquem in senatum, in Patres, *to choose;* sacra, *to steal, to commit sacrilege*, Hor.

HO.

TRAHERE obsidionem, bellum, *to prolong;* purpuras, *to spin;* aliquid in religionem, *to scruple;* navem remulco, *to tow.*

Detrahere aliquem, *to draw down;* alicui *vel* de aliquo, de fama, *to detract from, to lessen one's fame;* aliquid alicui, *to take by force;* laudem, *v.* de laudibus: novem partes multæ, *to take from the fine*, Nep.

Extrahere diem, *to spin out, to spend;* certamen, bellum, judicium, *to prolong.*

VEHERE, vehens, invehens, invectus curru, quadrigis, &c. *riding in a chariot;* invehi in portum ex alto, *to enter;* in aliquem, *to inveigh against;* provehi longiùs, *to proceed too far.*

LO.

CONSULERE rem, *v.* de re, *to consult about*, eum, *to ask his advice;* ei, *to consult for his good;* de salute sua; gravius in aliquem, *to pass a severe sentence against;* in commune, publicum, medium, *to provide for the common good;* verba boni, *to take in good part;* ego consulor, *my advice is asked;* mihi consulitur, *my good is consulted;* mihi consultum ac provisum est, *for* a me, *I have taken care.* Cic.

APPELLERE classe in Italiam, vel classem, *to land on;* se aliquò, *Ter.* ad villam nostram navis appelletur, *Cic.* animum ad philosophiam, *to apply.*

ANTECELLERE ei, *rarely* eum: excellere aliis, super, inter, præter alios aliqua re, *v.* in re, *to excel.*

TOLLERE animos suos, *to take courage*, animos alicui, *to encourage;* aliquem laudibus, & laudes ejus in astra, *to extol;* inducias, *to break a truce;* clamores, *to cry;* filium, *to educate;* de *vel* e medio, *to kill.*

MO.

ADIMERE claves uxori, *to divorce;* annulum *v.* equum equiti, *to take away from a knight the ring* or *horse given him by the public, to degrade.*

Dirimere litem, controversiam, *to determine.*

Eximere aliquem servitio, noxæ e vinculis, a culpa, de numero proscriptorum, obsidione, *to free;* de dolio, *to draw out;* diem dicendo, *to waste in speaking.*

Interimere se, *to kill.*

Redimere captivos, *to ransom;* pecuaria de censoribus, *to take* or *form the public pastures.*

SUMERE in manus; diem, tempus ad deliberandum; exemplum ex, *v.* de eo, *to take;* pœnas, supplicium de aliquo, *to punish;* pecunias mutuas, *to borrow;* togam virilem, *to put on the dress of a man;* sibi inimicitias, *to get ill will;* operam in re, *vel* in rem insumere, *to bestow pains;* sumo tantum, *vel* hoc mihi, *I take this upon me.*

PREMERE caseum, *to make cheese;* vocem, *to be silent;* dolorem corde, *to conceal;* vestigia

ejus, *to follow;* littus, *to come near;* pollicem, *to save a gladiator;* librum in nonum annum, *to delay publishing*, Hor.

Exprimere succum, *to press out;* risum alicui; pecuniam ab aliquo, *to force from;* effigiem, *to draw to the life;* verbum verbo, de verbo, e verbo, ad verbum, de Græcis, &c. *to translate word for word.*

Imprimere aliquid animo, in animo, *v.* in animum, *to imprint.*

Reprimere se, & reprendere *v.* retinere, *to check.*

NO.

PONERE spem in homine *v.* re, & habere; castra, *to pitch;* vitem, *to plant;* vitam, *to die;* ova, *to lay;* insidias alicui; panem convivis, *not* ante; personam amici, *to lay aside the character of a friend;* præmia, *to propose;* pocula, *to stake* or *lay;* studium, tempus, multum operæ in aliqua re, *to employ, to bestow;* aliquid in laude, in vitiis, in loco beneficii, *to reckon;* ferocia corda, *to lay aside;* aliquem in gratiam *v.* gratia, i. e. efficere gratiosum apud alterum, *Cic.* ventos, *to calm;* hominem coloribus, saxo, *to paint, engrave*, Hor. pecuniam in fœnore, *to lay out at interest;* templa, *to build*, Virg. Venti possuere, *are hushed*, Virg. Pone esse victum eum, *Ter.* Positum sit, *suppose, grant*, Cic.

Componere carmen, literas, &c. *to compose;* lites, *to settle;* bellum, *to finish by treaty;* parva magnis, dicta cum factis, *to compare;* manus manibus, *to join*, Virg.

Deponere *v.* ponere togam prætextam, *to lay aside the dress of a boy;* imperium & demittere, *to lay down a command.*

Exponere rem, *to set forth* or *explain;* frumentum, *to expose to sale*, Cic. pueros, fœtus, *to leave to perish*, Liv. exercitum, *sc.* in terram, *to land.*

Imponere onus alicui *v.* in aliquem: aliquem in equum, *to set upon;* personam *v.* partes duriores ei, *to lay a task* or *duty on one;* alicui, *to impose on, to deceive*, Nep. honorem ei, *to confer;* vadimonium ei, *to force to give bail*, Nep. manum summam *v.* extremam rei alicui, in aliqua re, *to finish;* pontem flumini, *to make a bridge*, Curt. Hoc loco libet interponere, *to insert*, Nep.

Opponere se periculis & ad pericula, *to expose;* pignori, *to pledge;* manum fronti, ante oculos, *to put*, Ovid.

Proponere aliquid sibi facere, exempla ei ad imitandum, *to propose, to set before;* edicta, legem in publicum, i. e. publicè legenda effigere: congiarium, *to promise a largess, a gift of corn* or *money.*

Supponere ova gallinæ, *to set a hen;* testamentum, *v.* subjicere, *to forge.*

CANERE aliquem, *to praise;* signa, classicum, bellicum, i. e. ad arma conclamare, *to sound an alarm, to give the signal for battle;* receptui, *rarely* um, *to sound a retreat;* tibia, *to play on the pipe;* ad tibiam, *to sing to it;* palinodiam, *to utter a recantation.*

STERNERE lectos, *to spread* or *cover the couches;* equos, *to harness;* viam, *to pave;* æquora, *to calm*, Virg.

PO.

CARPERE agmen, *to cut off the rear;* somnos, quietem, *to sleep;* viam, iter, *to go*, Virg. opera alterius, *to censure;* labores, virtutes, *to diminish* or *obscure*, Hor.

RUMPERE fidem, fœdus, amicitiam, *to violate;* vocem *v.* silentium, *to speak*, Virg.

Erumpere ex tenebris, castris, &c. se portis, *to break out;* stomachum in aliquem, *to vent passion;* nubem, *to break*, Virg.

RO.

QUÆRERE bonam, gratiam sibi, *to seek* or *gain*, Cic. sermonem, *to beat about for conversation*, Ter. rem mercaturis faciendis, *to make a fortune by merchandise;* ex aliquo, & in aliquem, de re aliqua per tormenta, *to put to the rack*, in dominum de servo quæri noluerunt Romani, *Cic.*

Inquirere aliquid, *to search after;* aliquem capitis, *v.* -te, *to accuse* or *try for a capital crime.*

GERERE res, *to perform;* negotium malè, *to manage;* consulatum, *to bear, to manage;* se bene *vel* malè, *to behave;* exercitum, *to conduct*, Sallust. morem ei, *vel* morigerari, *to humour;* civem, se pro cive, personam alicujus, *to pass for, to bear the character of;* inimicitias *vel* simultatem cum aliquo, *to be at enmity* or *variance with.*

Ingerere convicia ei, in eum, *to inveigh against.*

Suggerere aliquid ei, *to suggest, to hint;* sumptus his rebus, *to supply* or *afford;* Horatium Bruto, *to choose in place of, to put after*, Liv.

SERERE crimina in eum, *to raise, to spread accusations.*

Conserere manus, manu, certamen, pugnam, cum hostibus, inter se, *to engage.*

Asserere aliquid, *to affirm;* aliquem manu, ab injuria, in libertatem, *to free;* in servitutem, *to reduce;* divinam majestatem, *to claim.*

TO.

PETERE aliquid alicui; id ab eo, *rarely* eum; in beneficii gratiæque loco, Cic. *to ask;* urbem Romam, murum, montes, *to go to, to make for;* aliquem sagittâ, lapide, *to aim at;* consulatum pœnas ab aliquo, repetere, *to punish.*

Competere animo, *to be in one's senses;* in eum competit actio, *an action lies against him*, Cic.

Repetere res, *to demand restitution;* bona lege, *v.* prosequi lite, *to recover by law;* castra, oppidum, huc, *to return to;* aliquid memoriâ, *to call to mind;* altè, *to trace from the beginning.* Mihi nihil suppetit, multa suppetunt, *I have;* si vita suppetet, *if life shall remain*, Cic.

MITTERE alicui, *v.* ad aliquem; in suffragia, *to send the people to vote;* aulæum, mappam, *to drop the curtain;* talos, *to throw the dice;* senatum, *to dismiss;* timorem, *to lay aside;* in acta, *to register, to record;* sanguinem, *vel* emittere, *to let blood;* noxam, *to forgive;* signa timoris, *to show;* vocem, *to utter, to speak;* habenas, *v.* remittere, *to slacken;* manu, et emittere, *to free a slave;* filium, emancipare, *to free a son from the power of his father;* sub jugum, *to make to pass under the yoke;* inferias manibus diis, *to sacrifice to the infernal gods;* rem, *v.* de re, *to omit;* mitto rem, *I say nothing of fortune*, Ter. in possessionem bonorum, *to give the possession of the debtor's effects;* misit orare, ut venirem; i. e. aliquem ad orandum, *Ter.*

Amittere litem, *v.* causam; vitam, sedem, lumina, aspectum, *to lose*, Cic.

Admittere in cubiculum, *to admit;* equum immittere, & permittere, *to gallop;* delictum in se, *to commit a fault;* aves non admiserunt, *have not given a favourable omen*, Liv.

Committere facinus, *to commit;* se alicui, *v.* in fidem alicujus, *to entrust;* prælium, *to engage;* exercitum pugnæ, rem in casum ancipitis eventûs prælii, *to risk a battle;* Liv. iv. 27. aliquem cum

aliquo, homines inter se, *to set at variance* or *by the ears;* rem eo, *to bring that to pass;* gladiatores, pugiles, Græcos cum Latinis, *to match* or *pair;* committere, ut, *to cause;* incommoda sua legibus & judiciis, *to seek redress by law.*

Compromittere. Candidati *compromiserunt*, H. S. quingenis in singulos apud M. Catonem depositis, petere ejus arbitratu, ut qui contra fecisset, ab eo condemnaretur, *made a compromise* or *agreement*, &c.

Dimittere exercitum, *to disband;* uxorem, & repudiare, nuntium *v.* repudium ad eam remittere, *to divorce.*

Promittere id ei, *to promise;* capillum, barbam, *to let grow*, Liv.

Permittere alicui, *to allow;* divis cætera, *to leave*, Horat. se in fidem *v.* fidei ejus; vela ventis; equum in hostem; rem suffragiis populi, *to let the people decide;* tribunatum vexandis consulibus, *to give up, to employ*, Liv.

Remittere animum, *to ease;* calces, tela, *to throw back;* ex pecunia, de supplicio, tributo, &c. *to abate;* debitum, iras alicui, *to give up, to forgive;* justitium, *to discontinue;* pugnam, *to slacken;* remittit explorare, *neglects*, Sallust.

Submittere fasces populo, *to lower;* se *v.* animum, *to submit, to humble;* percussores alicui, *to suborn assassins.*

Transmittere in Africam, neut. *to pass over.*

VERTERE in fugam, *to put to flight;* terga, *to fly;* ab imo, *to overthrow;* solum, *to go into banishment;* id ei vitio, *v.* crimini, & in crimen, *to blame;* in superbiam, *to impute;* Platonem, Latinè Græca, Græca *vel* ex Græcis in Latinum, *to translate;* pollicem, *to doom a gladiator to death by turning up the thumb;* terram, *to plough;* crateram, *to empty*, Virg. Stilum, *to correct*, Horat. Salus *vel* causa in eo vertitur, *depends;* fortuna verterat, *Liv.* Annus vertens, *a whole year*, Nep. Res bene vertat, Di bene vertant, *prosper.*

Animadvertere id, *to observe;* in eum verberibus, morte, &c. *to punish.*

Advertere agmen urbi, *to bring up to*, Virg. oras, *to arrive at;* aures, mentes, animum *v.* animo ad aliquid, monitis, *to attend to;* in aliquem, *oftener* animadvertere, *to punish.*

Antevertere ei, *to come before;* damnationem veneno, *to prevent;* rem rei, *to prefer*, Plaut.

Intervertere pecuniam alicujus, & aliquem pecuniâ, *to embezzle, to cheat;* candelabrum, *to steal, to pilfer;* promissum & receptum, *sc.* Dolobellæ consulatum intervertit, ad seque transtulit, *treacherously withheld*, Cic.

Prævertere, & -ti, dep. ventos cursu, *to outstrip;* desiderium plebis, *to prevent;* metum supplicii morte voluntariâ, *Liv.* Aliquid alicui rei, *to put before*, Id.

SISTERE vadimonium; se in judicio, *to appear in court at one's trial;* nec sisti posse, *nor could the state be saved*, Liv.

Assistere ei, *to stand by;* ad fores; contra, super eum.

Consistere in digitos, *to stand on tiptoe;* in anchoris, ad anchoram, *to ride at anchor;* frigore, *to be frozen*, Ovid. Spes in velis consistebat, *depended on;* virtus in actione consistit, *Cic.*

Insistere jacentibus, *to stand upon;* vestigiis ejus; viam, *v.* viâ; in re aliqua, in rem, *v.* rei; in dolos, negotium, *to insist upon, to urge*, Plaut.

Obsistere ei, *to stop, to oppose.*

Resistere ei, *to resist.*

Subsistere, *to stand still;* sumptui, *to bear.*

VO.

SOLVERE pecuniam ei, *to pay;* versurâ, *to pay a debt by borrowing from another*, Ter. Fidem, *to break a promise*, or according to others, *to perform*, Ter. And. IV. 1. 19. litem æstimatam, *to pay the fine imposed on him*, Nep. Votum, *to discharge;* obsidionem urbis, *v.* urbem obsidione, *to raise a siege;* navem e portu, *to set sail;* epistolam, *v.* resignare, *to break open;* aliquem legibus, legum vinculis, *to free from;* solvitur in somnos, *Virg.* Oratio soluta, i. e. libera, numeris non astricta & devicta, *prose;* solve metus, *dismiss*, Virg.

Dissolvere societatem, *to break.*

Resolvere vocem, *v.* ora, *to break silence*, Virg. jura, *to violate;* vectigal, *to take off taxes*, Tacit. In pulverem, *to reduce to*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

AUDIRE aliquem, aliquid ex *v.* ab aliquo, *to hear from one;* de aliquo, *about one*, also *from one*, *as*, sæpe hoc audivi de patre, *for* ex patre, *Cic.* Audire bene *v.* malè apud socios, ab omnibus, *to be well spoken of, to have a good character;* rexque paterque audîsti, *have been called*, Hor. Antigonus credit de suo adventu esse auditum, *Nep.*

VENIRE ad finem, aures, pactionem, certamen, manus, nihilum, &c. in suspicionem, odium, gratiam, &c. in jus, *to go to law*, Liv. in circulum, *into a company*, Nep. Hæreditas ei venit, *he has succeeded to an estate;* ei usu venit, *happened*, Nep. Quod in buccam venerit, scribito, *occurs*, Cic.

Advenire & adventare ei, urbem, ad urbem, *to come to.*

Antevenire aliquem, et antevertere, *Sall.* rei, *Plaut.* tempus, consilia et itinera.

Convenire in colloquium; fratrem, *to meet with, to speak to;* ego et frater conveniemus, copiæ convenient, *will meet together;* convenit mihi cum fratre de hac re, inter me et fratrem, inter nos; hæc fratri mecum conveniunt, *I and my brother are agreed;* sævis inter se convenit ursis, *Juv.* Ipsi secum non convenit, *vel* ipse, *he is inconsistent;* pax convenit, *vel* conventa est, *is agreed upon;* rem conventuram putamus, *Cic.* conditiones non convenerunt; mores conveniunt, *agree;* calcei pedibus *v.* ad pedes conveniunt, *fit, suit;* hoc in illum convenit. Catilinam interfectum esse convenit, *ought to have been slain*, Cic. Convenire in manum, *the usual form of marriage, named* Coemptio, *whereby women were called* matres-familias.

SENTIRE sonorem, colorem, &c. *to perceive;* cum aliquo, *to be of one's opinion;* bene *vel* malè de eo, *to think well* or *ill of him.*

Consentire tibi tecum, inter se; alicui rei, de *v.* in aliqua re; ad aliquid peragendum, *to agree* So dissentire; *et* ab aliquo, *to disagree;* ne vita orationi dissentiat, *Senec.*

DEPONENT VERBS.

PROFITERI philosophiam, *to profess, to teach publicly;* se candidatum, *to declare himself a candidate for an office;* pecunias, agros, nomina, &c. apud censorem, *to give an account of, to declare how much one has;* indicium, *to promise to make a discovery.*

LOQUI cum aliquo, inter se, *sometimes* alicui, ad *v.* apud aliquem; aliquid, de aliqua re.

SEQUI feras; sectam Cæsaris, *to be of his party,* Cic. Assequi, consequi, *to overtake;* gloriam, *to attain.* Consequi hæreditatem, *to get,* Cic.

Prosequi aliquem amore, laudibus, &c. *to love, praise,* &c.

NITI hastâ; in cubitum, *to lean;* ejus consilio, eo, *to depend on;* ad gloriam, ad *v.* in summa, *to aim at;* in vetitum, in adversum, contra aliquem, pro aliquo, *to strive;* gradibus, *to ascend.*

UTI eo familiariter, *to be familiar with one;* ventis adversis, *to have have cross winds;* honore usus, *one who has enjoyed a post of honour.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

ESSE magni roboris, *v.* -no -re; ejus opinionis, *v.* ea opinione; in maxima spe: in timore, luctu, opinione, itinere, &c. cum telo, in *vel* cum imperio; magno periculo, *v.* in periculo; in tuto; apud se, *in his senses;* sui juris, *v.* mancipii, sui potens, *v.* in sua potestate, *to be at his own disposal:* Res est in vado, *is safe,* Ter. Est animus, *sc.* mihi, *I have a mind,* Virg. Est ut, cur, quamobrem, quod, quin, &c. *There is cause;* bene, male est mihi, *with me;* nihil est mihi tecum, *I have nothing to do with you:* Quid est tibi, *sc.* rei, *What is the matter with you?* Ter. Cernere erat, *one might see;* religio est mihi id facere, *I scruple to do it;* si est, ut facere velit, ut facturus sit, ut admiserit, &c. *for* si velit, &c. *Ter.* Est ut viro vir latius ordinet arbusta sulcis, *it happens,* Hor. Certum est facere, *sc.* mihi, *I am resolved,* Ter. Non certum est, quid faciam, *I am uncertain,* Id. Cassius quærere solebat, Cui Bono fuerit: Omnibus bono fuit, *it was of advantage,* Cic.

Adesse pugnæ, in pugna, ad exercitum, ad tempus, in tempore, cum aliquo, *to be present;* alicui, *to favour, to assist;* scribendo, *v.* esse ad scribendum, *to subscribe one's name to a decree of the senate,* Cic. consilio utrique, *to be a counsellor to,* Nep.

Abesse domo, urbe, a domo, ab signis, *to be absent;* alicui, *v.* deesse, *to be wanting, not to assist;* a sole, *to stand out of the sun;* sumptus funeri defuit, *he had not money to bury him,* Liv. Abesse a persona principis, *to be inconsistent with the character,* Nep. Paulum *v.* parum abfuit quin urbem caperent, quin occideretur, &c. *they were near taking,* &c. Tantum abest ne enervetur oratio, ut, &c. *is so far from being,* &c. Cic. Tantum abfuit a cupiditate pecuniæ, a societate sceleris, &c. *Nep.*

Interesse convivio, *v.* in convivio, *to be at a feast;* anni decem interfuerent, *intervened;* stulto intelligens quid interest, *Ter.* Hoc dominus, & pater interest id. Inter hominem & belluam hoc interest, Cic. *differ in this, this is the difference;* multum interest, utrum, *it is of great importance.* Pons inter eos interest, *is between,* Cic

Præesse exercitui, *to command;* comitiis, judicio, quæstioni, *to preside in* or *at.*

Obesse ei, *to hurt, to hinder.*

Superesse, *to be over and above;* alicui, *to survive;* modò vita supersit, *sc.* mihi, *if I live;* super est, ut, *it remains, that.*

IRE ad arma, ad saga, *to go to war;* in jus, *to go to law;* pedibus in sententiam alicujus, *to agree with;* viam *v.* viâ; res bene eunt, *Cic.* Tempus, dies, mensis it, *passes.*

Abire magistratu, *to lay down an office,* a conspectu, *to retire from company,* in ora hominum, *to be in every body's mouth;* ab emptione, *to retract his bargain;* decem menses abierunt, *have past,* Ter. Non hoc tibi sic abibit, i. e. non feres hoc impune, *Ter.* Abi in malam rem, *a form of imprecation.*

Adire periculum capitis, *to run the hazard of one's life.*

Exire vitâ, e, *v.* de vita, *to die;* ære alieno, *Cic.* Verbum exit ex ore, *Id.* tela, *to avoid,* Virg. Tempus induciarum cum Vejenti populo exierat, *had expired,* Liv.

Inire magistratum; suffragium, rationem, consilium, pugnam, viam, &c. *to enter upon, to begin;* gratiam ejus, apud eum, cum *vel* ab eo, *to gain his favour:* Ineunte æstate, vere, anno, &c. *in the beginning of; but we seldom say,* Ineunte die, nocte, &c. Ab ineunte ætate, *from our early years.*

Obire diem edicti, *vel* auctionis; judicium, vadimonium, *to be present at;* provinciam, domos nostras, *to visit, to go through,* Cic. negotia, res, munus, officium, legationem, sacra, *to perform;* pugnas, *Virg.* mortem, *vel* morte; diem supremum *v.* diem, *to die.*

Præire alicui, *to go before;* verba, carmen, *vel* sacramentum alicui, *to repeat* or *read over before;* alicui voce, quid judicet, *to prescribe or direct by crying,* Cic.

Prodire in publicum, *to go abroad;* non præterit te, *you are not ignorant,* Cic. Dies induciarum præteriit, *is past,* Nep.

Redire in gratiam cum aliquo, *to become friends again;* ad se, *to come to himself, to recover his senses.*

Subire murum, *vel* -o, ad montes, *to come up to;* laborem *vel* -i, onus, pœnam, periculum, crimen, *to undergo;* spes, timor subiit animum, *came into.*

VELLE aliquem, *sc.* alloqui *vel* conventum, *to desire to speak with;* alicui, ejus causa, *to wish one's good;* tibi consultum volo; nihil tibi negatum volo, *I wish to deny,* Liv. Quid sibi vult; *What does he mean?* Volo te hoc facere, hoc a te fieri: si quid recte curatum velis; illos monitos etiam atque etiam volo, *sc.* esse, *I will admonish them again and again,* Cic. nollem factum, *I am sorry it was done;* nollem huc exitum, *sc* esse a me, *I wish I had not come out here,* Ter.

FERRE legem, *to propose* or *make;* privilegium de aliquo, *to propose* or *pass an act of impeachment against one,* Cic. rogationem ad populum, *to bring in a bill;* conditiones ei, *to offer terms;* suffragium, *to vote;* sententiam, *to give an opinion;* centuriam, tribum, *to gain the vote of;* perdere, *to lose it;* victoriam ex eo; omne punctum, omnia suffragia, *to gain all the votes;*

repulsam, *to be rejected:* fructum hoc fructi, *to reap*, Ter. lætitiam de re, *to rejoice;* præ se, *to pretend* or *declare openly;* alienam personam, *to disguise one's self;* in oculis, *to be fond of*, Ter. manus, in prælia, *to engage*, Virg. acceptum et expensum, *to mark down as received and spent or lent, as Dr. and Cr.* Cic. animus, opinio fert, *inclines;* tempus, res, causa fert, *allows, requires.*

Conferre benevolentiam alicui, in *vel* erga aliquem, *to shew;* beneficia, culpam in eum, *to confer, to lay;* operam, tempus, studium, ad *vel* in rem, & impendere, *to apply;* capita inter se, consilia sua, *to lay their heads together, to consult;* signa, arma, manus, *to engage;* omne bellum circa Corinthum, *Nep.* pedem, *to set foot to foot;* rationes, *to cast up accounts;* castra castris, *to encamp over against one another;* se in, *vel* ad urbem, *to go to;* tributa, *to pay;* se alicui, *vel* cum aliquo, *to compare;* neminem cum illo conferendum pietate puto, *Cic.* Hæc conferunt ad aliquid; oratori futuro, *serve, are useful to*, Quinct.

Deferre situlam *vel* sitellam, *to bring the ballot box;* aliquid ad aliquem, *to carry word, to tell; rarely* alicui; causam ad patronos; honores ei; gubernacula rei publicæ in eum; summam rerum ad eum, *to confer;* in beneficiis ad ærarium, *to recommend for a public service*, Cic. aliquem ambitûs, de ambitu, nomen alicujus ad prætorem, apud magistratum, *to accuse of bribery;* primas, *sc.* partes ei, *to give him the preference*, Cic.

Differre *vel* transferre rem in annum; post bellum, diem solutionis, *to put off;* rumores, *to spread;* ab aliquo, alicui, inter se, moribus, *to differ in character;* amore, cupiditate, doloribus, differri, *to be distracted* or *torn asunder*, Cic. & Ter.

Efferre fruges, *to produce;* verba, *to utter;* verbum de verbo expressum, *to translate*, Ter. pedem domo, *to go out;* corpus amplo funere, & cum funere, *to bury;* ad honorem, ad cœlum laudibus, *to raise, to extol;* foras peccatum, *to divulge.*

Inferre bellum patriæ; vim, manus, necem alicui, *to bring upon;* signa, se, pedem, *to advance;* litem *vel* periculum capitis alicui, *vel* in aliquem, *to bring one to a trial for his life.*

Offerre se morti, ad mortem, in discrimen, *to expose, to present.*

Perferre legem, *to carry through, to pass it.*

Præferre facem ei, *to carry before;* salutem ei reipublicæ suis commodis, & anteferre, anteponere, *to prefer.* Prælatus equo, *riding before.*

Proferre imperium, pomœrium, terminos, *to enlarge;* in medium, in apertum, in lucem, *to publish;* nuptias diem, *to delay;* diem Ilio, *to defer the destruction of*, Hor.

Referre alicui, *to answer;* se, gradum *v.* pedem, *to retreat;* gratiam alicui, *to make a requital;* par pari, *Ter.* victoriam ab, *vel* ex aliquo, et reportare, *to gain;* institutum, *to renew;* judicia ad equestrem ordinem, *to restore to the Equites the right of judging;* aliquid, de aliqua re, ad senatum, ad consilium, ad sapientes, ad populum, *to lay before;* aliquid in tabulam, codicem, album, commentarium, &c. *to mark down;* aliquid acceptum alicui, & in acceptum, *to acknowledge one's self indebted;* pecunias acceptas & expensas; nomina *vel* summas in codicem accepti et expensi, *to mark down accounts;* alienos mores ad suos, *to judge of by;* in *v.* inter ærarios, *to reduce to the lowest class;* in numerum deorum, in *vel* inter deos, & reponere, *to rank among;* pugnas, res gestas, *to relate;* patrem ore, *to resemble;* amissos colores, *to regain*, Horat.

Transferre rationes in tabulas, *to post one's books, state accounts;* in Latinam linguam, *to translate;* verba, *to use metaphorically;* culpam in eum & rejicere, *to lay the blame on him.*

II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A *Figure* is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The figures of *Syntax* or *Construction* may be reduced to these three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, and *Hyperbăton.*

The two first respect the constituent parts of a sentence; the last respects only the arrangement of the words.

1. Ellipsis.

ELLIPSIS is when one or more words are wanting to complete the sense; as, *Aiunt, ferunt, dicunt, perhibent*, scil. homines; *Dic mihi, Damœta, cujum pecus;* that is, *Dic* (tu) *mihi, Damœta,* (eum hominem) *cujum pecus;* (est hoc pecus.) *Aberant bidui*, sc. *iter* vel *itinere.* *Decies sestertiûm*, sc. *centena millia.* *Quid multa?* sc. *dicam.* *Antiquum obtines*, sc. *morem*, v. *institutum*, Plaut. *Hodie in ludum occepi ire literarium, ternas jam scio*, sc. *literas*, i. e. AMO, *Id.* *Triduo abs te nullas acceperam*, sc. *literas*, i. e. *epistolam*, Cic. *Brevi dicam* sc. *sermone:* So *Complecti, respondere*, &c. *breve.* *Dii meliora*, sc. *faciant:* *Rhodum volo, inde Athenas*, sc. *ire*, Id. *Bellicum*, v. *classicum canere*, sc. *signum*, Liv. *Civicâ donatus*, sc. *coronâ;* So *obsidionalem, muralem adeptus*, &c. Id. *Epistola librarii manu est*, sc. *scripta*, Cic.

When a conjunction is to be supplied, it is called Asyndĕton; as, *Deus optimus maximus*, sc. *et;* *Sartum tectum, conservare*, i. e. *sartum et tectum;* So *Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit*, Cic. *Ferte citi flammas, date vela, impellite remos*, Virg. *Velis remis*, sc. *seu.*

To this figure may be reduced most of those irregularities in Syntax, as they are

called, which are variously classed by grammarians, under the names of ENALLĂGE, i. e. the changing of words and their accidents, or the putting of one word for another; ANTIPTŌSIS, i. e. the putting of one case for another; HELLENISM or GRÆCISM, i. e. imitating the construction of the Greeks; SYNĔSIS, i. e. referring the construction, not to the gender or number of the word, but to the sense, &c. thus, *Samnitium duo millia cæsi*, is, *Duo millia* (hominum) *Samnitium* (fuerunt homines) *cæsi*, Liv. So *Servitia immemores*, Liv. *Monstrum quæ*, scil. mulier, Hor. *Scelus qui*, sc. *homo*, Ter. *Omnia Mercurio similis*, scil. secundum, *Virg*. *Missi magnis de rebus uterque, legati;* i. e. *Missi legati* (et) *uterque* (legatus missus) *de magnis rebus*, Horat. *Servitia repudiabat cujus*, scil. servitii, *Sall. Cat.* 51. *Familia nostra, quorum*, &c. sc. *hominum*, Sall. *Concursus populi, mirantium*, Liv. *Illum ut vivat optant*, for *ut ille vivat*, Ter. *Populum late regem*, for *regnantem*, Virg. *Expediti militum*, for *milites; Classis stabat Rhegii*, for *ad Rhegium*, Liv. *Latium Capuaque agro multati*, sc. *homines*, Id. *Utraque formosæ*, sc. *mulieres*, Ovid. *Aperite aliquis ostium*, Ter. *Sensit delapsus*, for *delapsum*, sc. *se esse*, Virg.

When a writer frequently uses the Ellipsis, his style is said to be elliptical or concise.

2. PLEONASM.

PLEONASM is when a word more is added than is absolutely necessary to express the sense; as, *Video oculis*, I see with my eyes; *Sic ore locuta est; adest præsens: Nusquam gentium; vivere vitam; servire servitutem; Quid mihi Celsus agit? Fac me ut sciam*, &c. *Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo*, Ter. *Suo sibi succo vivant*, Plaut.

When a conjunction is used apparently redundant, it is called POLYSYNDĔTON; as, *Una Eurusque Notusque ruunt*, Virg.

When that which is in reality one, is so expressed as if there were two, it is called HENDIADYS; as, *Pateris libamus et auro*, for *aureis pateris*, Virg.

When several words are used to express one thing, it is called PERIPHRASIS; as, *Urbs Trojæ*, for *Troja*, Virg. *Res voluptatem*, for *voluptates*, Plaut. *Usus purpurarum*, for *purpura; Genus piscium*, for *pisces; Flores rosarum*, for *rosæ*, Hor.

3. HYPERBATON.

HYPERBATON is the transgression of that order or arrangement of words which is commonly used in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various sorts into which it is divided, are, *Anastrŏphe, Hystĕron protĕron, Hypallăge, Synchĕsis, Tmesis*, and *Parenthĕsis*.

1. ANASTRŎPHE is the inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first; as, *Italiam contra; His accensa super; Spemque metumque inter dubii;* for *contra Italiam, super his, inter spem*, &c. Virg. *Terram sol facit are*, for *arefacit*, Lucret.

2. HYSTĔRON PROTĔRON is when that is put in the former part of the sentence, which, according to the sense, should be in the latter; as, *Valet atque vivit*, for *vivit atque valet*, Ter.

3. HYPALLĂGE is the exchanging of cases; as, *Dare classibus austros*, for *dare classes austris*, Virg.

4. SYNCHĔSIS is a confused and intricate arrangement of words; as, *Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus aras;* for *Quæ saxa in mediis fluctibus Itali vocant aras*, Virg. This occurs particularly in violent passion; as, *Per tibi ego hunc juro fortem castumque cruorem*, Ovid. Fast. ii. 841. *Per vos liberos atque parentes*, sc. *oro vos per liberos*, &c. Sallust. Jug. 14.

5. TMESIS is the division of a compound word and the interposing of other words betwixt its parts; as, *Septem subjecta trioni gens*, for *Septentrioni*, Virg. *Quæ meo cunque animo libitum est facere*, for *quæcunque*, Ter. *Quem sors dierum cunque dabit, lucro Appone*, Horat.

6. PARENTHĔSIS is the inserting of a member into the body of a sentence, which is neither necessary to the sense, nor at all affects the construction; as, *Tityre, dum redeo*, (brevis est via,) *pasce capellas*, Virg.

III. ANALYSIS AND TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of translating either from English into Latin, or from Latin into English, arises in a great measure from the different arrangement of words which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darium vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit;* and in each of these the sense is equally obvious: but in English, we can only say, *Alexander conquered Darius.* This variety of arrangement in Latin, gives it a great advantage over the English; not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes, indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal hurl'd,* Milton. *Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you.* But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given, is to imitate the CLASSICS.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial;* or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorial.*

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another, according to the natural order of syntax.

Artificial or *Oratorial* order is, when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking, or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order, therefore, to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analysis* or *Resolution* of sentences. It is practice only that can teach one to do this with readiness. However, to a beginner, the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *first* the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or show its dependence on what went before; *next* the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence; supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up; as,

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibique persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis præceptisque lætabère, Cic. Off. lib. 3. fin.

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear to me; but will be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences; 1. *Igitur, mi* (fili) *Cicero,* (tu) *vale,* 2 *et* (tu) *persuade tibi* (ipsi) *te esse quidem* (filium) *carissimum mihi:* 3. *sed* (tu persuade tibi ipsi te) *fore* (filium) *cariorem* (mihi in) *multo* (negotio, 4. *si* (tu) *lætabere talibus monumentis,* 5. *et* (si tu lætabere talibus) *præceptis.*

1. Fare *(you)* well then, my *(son)* Cicero, 2. and assure *(you)* yourself that you are indeed *(a son)* very dear to me; 3. but *(assure you yourself that you)* will be *(a son)* much dearer *(to me)* 4. if you shall take delight in such writings, 5. and *(if you shall take delight in such)* instructions.

It may not be improper here to exemplify *Analogical Analysis*, as it is called, or the analysis of words, from the foregoing sentence, *Vale igitur*, &c. thus,

Vale, scil. *tu;* Fare *(thou)* well, Second person singular of the imperative mood, active voice, from the neuter verb, *Valeo, valui, valitum, valere,* to be in health; of the second conjugation, not used in the passive. *Vale* agrees in the second person singular with the nominative *tu*, by the second rule of syntax.

Igitur, then, therefore, a conjunction, importing some inference drawn from what went before.

Mi, Voc. sing. masc. of the adjective pronoun, *meus, -a, -um,* my; derived from the substantive pronoun *Ego,* agreeing with *Cicero,* by Rule 1. *Cicero,* voc. sing. from the nominative *Cicero, -ônis,* a proper noun of the third declension.

Et, and, a copulative conjunction, which connects the verb *persuade* with the verb *vale*, by Rule 28. We turn *que* into *et* because *que* never stands by itself.

Persuade scil. *tu*, persuade thou, second person singular of the imperative active, from the verb *persuadeo, si, sum, dère,* to persuade; compounded of the preposition *per,* and *suadeo, -si, -sum,* to

advise, used impersonally in the passive; thus, *Persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded; seldom or never *Ego persuadeor*. We say, however, in the third person, *Hoc persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded of this.

Tibi, dat. sing. of the personal pronoun *tu*, thou; governed by *persuade*, according to Rule 33. *Te* accusative sing. of *tu*, put before *esse*, according to Rule 42.

Esse, present of the infinitive, from the substantive verb *sum*, *fui*, *esse*, to be.

Quidem, indeed, an adverb, joined with *carissimum* or *esse*.

Carissimum, accusative sing. masc. from *carissimus*, *-a*, *-um*, very dear, dearest, superlative degree of the adjective *carus*, *-a*, *-um*, dear; Comparative degree, *carior*, *carior*, *carius*, dearer, more dear: agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood, by Rule 1. and put in the accusative by Rule 5.

Mihi, to me, dat. sing. of the substantive pronoun *Ego*, I; governed by *carissimum*, by Rule 13.

Sed, but, an adversative conjunction, joining *esse* and *fore*.

Fore, the same with *esse futurum*, to be, *or* to be about to be, infinitive of the defective verb *forem*, *-res*, *-ret*, &c. governed in the same manner with the foregoing *esse*, thus, *te fore*, Rule 42. or thus, *esse sed fore*. See Rule 28.

Multo, scil. *negotio*, ablat. sing. neut. of the adjective *multus*, *-a*, *-um*, much, put in the ablative, according to observation 5. Rule 20. But *multo* here may be taken adverbially in the same manner with *much* in English.

Cariorem, accus. sing. masc. from *carior*, *-or*, *-us*, the comparative of *carus*, as before, agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood. Rule 1. or Rule 5.

Si, if, a conditional conjunction, joined either with the indicative mode, or with the subjunctive, according to the sense, but oftener with the latter. See Rule 60.

Lætabĕre, Thou shalt rejoice, second person singular of the future of the indicative, from the deponent verb *lætor*, *lætatus*, *lætāri*, to rejoice: Future, *læt-abor*, *abĕris* or *abĕre*, *ābitur*, &c.

Talibus, ablat. plur. neut. of the adjective *talis*, *talis*, *tali*, such; agreeing with *monumentis*, the ablat. plur. of the substantive noun *monumentum*, *-ti*, neut. a monument or writing, of the second declension; derived from *moneo*, *-ui*, *-itum*, *-ēre*, to admonish; here put in the ablative, according to Rule 52. *Et*, a copulative conjunction, as before.

Præceptis, a substantive noun in the ablative plural, from the nominative *præceptum*, *-ti*, neut. a precept, an instruction; derived from *præcipio*, *-cēpi*, *-ceptum*, *-cipĕre*, to instruct, to order, compounded of the preposition *præ*, before, and the verb *capio*, *cēpi*, *captum*, *capĕre*, to take. The *ă* of the simple is changed into *ĭ* short; thus, *præcĭpio*, *præcĭpis*, &c.

The learner may in like manner be taught to analyze the words in English, and in doing so, to mark the different idioms of the two languages.

To this may be subjoined a *Praxis*, or Exercise on all the different parts of grammar, particularly with regard to the inflection of nouns and verbs in the form of questions, such as these, Of Cicero? *Cicerōnis*. With Cicero? *Cicerōne*. A dear son? *Carus filius*. Of a dear son? *Cari filii*. Ō my dear son? *Mi* or *meus care fili*. Of dearer sons? *Cariōrum filiōrum*, &c.

Of thee? *or* of you? *Tui*. With thee or you? *te*: Of you? *Vestrûm* or *vestri*. With you? *Vobis*

They shall persuade? *Persuadebunt*. I can persuade? *Persuadeam*, or much more frequently *possum persuadere*. They are persuaded? *Persuadetur*, or *persuasum est illis*, according to the time expressed. He is to persuade? *Est persuasurus*. He will be persuaded? *Persuadebitur*, or *persuasum erit illi*. He cannot be persuaded? *Non potest persuaderi illi*. I know that he cannot be persuaded? *Scio non posse persuaderi illi*. That he will be persuaded? *Ei persuasum iri*, &c.

When a learner first begins to translate from the Latin, he should keep as strictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made further progress, something more will be requisite. He should then be accustomed, as much as possible, to transfuse the beauties of an author from the one language into the other. For this purpose it will be necessary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but also with the different kinds of style adapted to different sorts of composition, and to different subjects; together with the various turns of thought and expression which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought; or the *Figures of Rhetoric*.

IV. DIFFERENT KINDS OF STYLE.

The kinds of Style *(generæ dicendi)* are commonly reckoned three; the low, *(humile, submissum, tenue;)* the middle, *(medium, temperatum, ornatum, floridum;)* and the sublime, *(sublime, grande.)*

But besides these, there are various other characters of style; as, the *diffuse* and *concise*; the *feeble* and *nervous*; the *simple* and *affected*, &c.

There are different kinds of style adapted to different subjects and to different kinds of composition; the style of the Pulpit, of the Bar, and of Popular Assemblies; the style of History, and of its various branches, Annals, Memoirs or Commentaries, and Lives; the style of Philosophy, of Dialogue or Colloquial discourse, of Epistles, and Romance, &c.

There is also a style peculiar to certain writers, called their *Manner*; as the *style* of Cicero, of Livy, of Sallust, &c.

But what deserves particular attention is, the difference between the style of poetry and of prose. As the poets in a manner paint what they describe, they employ various epithets, repetitions, and turns of expression, which are not admitted in prose.

The first virtue of style *(virtus orationis)* is perspicuity, or that it be easily understood. This requires, in the choice of the words, 1. *Purity*, in opposition to barbarous, obsolete, or new coined words, and to errors in Syntax: 2. *Propriety*, or the selection of the best expressions, in opposition to vulgarisms or low expressions: 3. *Precision*, in opposition to superfluity of words, or a *loose style.*

The things chiefly to be attended to in the structure of a sentence, or in the disposition of its parts, are, 1. *Clearness*, in opposition to *ambiguity* and *obscurity:* 2. *Unity* and *Strength*, in opposition to an *unconnected*, *intricate*, and *feeble* sentence: 3. *Harmony*, or musical arrangement, in opposition to *harshness* of sound.

The most common defects of style *(vitia orationis)* are distinguished by various names:

1. A BARBARISM is when a foreign or strange word is made use of; as, *croftus*, for *agellus; rigorosus*, for *rigidus* or *severus; alterare*, for *mutare*, &c. Or when the rules of Orthography, Etymology, or Prosody are transgressed; as, *charus*, for *carus; stavi*, for *steti; tibĭcen*, for *tibīcen.*

2. A SOLECISM is when the rules of Syntax are transgressed; as, *Dicit libros lectos iri*, for *lectum iri.* A barbarism may consist in one word, but a solecism requires several words.

3. An IDIOTISM is when the manner of expression peculiar to one language is used in another; as an *Anglicism* in Latin, thus, I am to write, *Ego sum scribĕre*, for *ego sum scripturus;* It is I, *Est ego*, for *Ego sum:* Or a *Latinism* in English, thus, *Est sapientior me*, He is wiser than me, for *than I; Quem dicunt me esse?* Whom do they say that I am? for *who*, &c.

4. TAUTOLOGY is when we either uselessly repeat the same words, or repeat the same sense in different words.

5. BOMBAST is when high sounding words are used without meaning, or upon a trifling occasion.

6. AMPHIBOLOGY is when, by the ambiguity of the construction, the meaning may be taken in two different senses; as in the answer of the oracle to Pyrrhus, *Aio te, Æacide, Romanos vincere posse.* But the English is not so liable to this as the Latin.

V. FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

Certain modes of speech are termed *Figurative*, because they convey our meaning under a borrowed form, or in a particular dress.

Figures *(figuræ* or *schemăta)* are of two kinds; figures of words, *(figuræ verborum,)* and figures of thought, *(figuræ sententiarum.)* The former are properly called *Tropes;* and if the word be changed, the figure is lost.

1. Tropes, or Figures of Words.

A *Trope (conversio)* is an elegant *turning* of a word from its proper signification.

Tropes take their rise partly from the barrenness of language, but more from the influence of the imagination and passions. They are founded on the relation which one object bears to another, chiefly that of resemblance or similitude.

The principal tropes are the *Metaphor*, *Metonymy*, *Synecdŏche*, and *Irony.*

1. METAPHOR *(translatio)* is when a word is transferred from that to which it properly belongs, to express something to which it is only applied from similitude or resemblance; as, a *hard* heart; a *soft* temper; he *bridles* his anger; a *joyful* crop; *ridet* ager, the field *smiles*, &c. A metaphor is nothing else but a short comparison.

We likewise call that a metaphor, when we substitute one object in the place of another, on account of the close resemblance between them; as when, instead of *youth*, we say, *the morning* or *spring time of life;* or when, in speaking of a family connected with a common parent, we use the expressions which properly belong to a tree, whose trunk and branches are connected with a common root. When this allusion is carried on through several sentences, or through a whole discourse, and the principal subject kept out of view, so that it can only be discovered by its resem

blance to the subject described, it is called an ALLEGORY. An example of this we have in Horace, book 1. ode 14. where the republic is described under the allusion of a ship.

AN ALLEGORY is only a continued metaphor. This figure is much the same with the *Parable*, which so often occurs in the sacred scriptures; and with the *Fable*, such as those of Æsop. The *Ænigma* or *Riddle* is also considered as a species of the Allegory; as likewise are many *Proverbs*, *Proverbia* vel *Adagia;* thus, *In sylvăm ligna ferre*, Horat.

Metaphors are improper when they are taken from low objects; when they are forced or far-fetched; when they are mixed or too far pursued; and when they have not a natural and sensible resemblance; or are not adapted to the subject of discourse, or to the kind of composition, whether poetry or prose.

When a word is very much turned from its proper signification, it is called *Catachrēsis, (abusio;)* as, *a* leaf *of paper, of gold*, &c. *the empire* flourished; *parricida*, for any murderer; Vir *gregi ipse caper*, Virg. *Altum* ædificant *caput*, Juv. *Hunc vobis deridendum* propino, for *trado*, Ter. *Eurus per Siculas* equitavit *undas*, Hor.

When a word is taken in two senses in the same phrase, the one proper and the other metaphorical, it is called *Syllepsis, (comprehensio;)* as, *Galatēa thymo mihi* dulcior *Hyblæ*, Virg. *Ego Sardois videar tibi* amarior *herbis*, Id.

2. METONYMY *(mutatio nominis)* is the putting of one name for another. In which sense it includes all other tropes; but it is commonly restricted to the following particulars:—1. When the cause is put for the effect; or the inventor, for the thing invented; or the author for his works; as, *Boum labores*, for *corn; Mars*, for *war;* thus, *Æquo marte pugnatum est*, with equal advantage, *Liv. Ceres*, for *grain*, or *bread; Bacchus*, for *wine; Venus*, for *love; Vulcanus*, for *fire;* thus, *Sine Cerere, et Baccho, friget Venus*, Ter. *Furit Vulcanus*, Virg. So a *general* is put for his *army*, Cicero, *Virgil*, and *Horace*, for their *works; Moses* and the *Prophets* for their *books;* a beautiful *Raphael, Titian, Guido, Rheni, Rembrant, Reubens, Vandyke*, &c. for their pictures.—2. When the effect is put for the cause; as, *Pallida mors, Pale* death, because it makes pale; *atra cura*, &c.—3. The container for what is contained, and sometimes the contrary; as, *Hausit pateram*, for *vinum*, Virg. *He loves his bottle*, for *drink: Secŭndam mensam servis dispertiit*, i. e. *fercula in mensa*, Nep. So *Roma*, for *Romani; Europe*, for *the Europeans; Heaven*, for *the Supreme Being; Secernit Europen ab Afro*, for *Africa; In arduos tollor Sabinos*, for *in agrum Sabinorum; Incolumi Jove*, for *Capitolio; Janus*, for *the temple of Janus*, Hor. *Proximus ardet Ucalĕgon*, for *domus Ucalĕgontis*, Virg. So *Sergestus*, for *his ship*, Id. Æn. v. 272.—4. The sign for the thing signified; as, The *crown*, for *royal authority; palma* or *laurus*, for *victory; cedant arma togæ*, that is, as Cicero himself explains it, *bellum concedat paci. Ferri togæque consilia*, consultations about war and peace, *Stat. Sylv.* v. 1. 82.—5. An abstract, for the concrete; as, *Scelus*, for *scelestus*, Ter. *Audacia*, for *audax*, Cic. *Custodia*, for *custodes*, Virg. *Servitus*, for *servi; nobilitas*, for *nobiles; juventus*, for *juvenes; vicinia*, for *vicini; vires*, for *strong men*, Hor. *Furta*, for *stolen oxen*, Ovid. Fast. i. 560.—6. The parts of the body, for certain passions or sentiments, which were supposed to reside in them; thus, *cor*, for *wisdom* or *address;* as, *habet cor, vir cordatus*, a man of sense, *Plaut.* But with us the *heart* is put for courage or affection, and the *head* for wisdom; thus, *a stout heart; a warm heart; a sound head*, &c. So, *to have a well hung tongue*, for *to speak with ease*, &c.

When we put what follows to express what goes before, or the contrary, it is called *Metalepsis, (transmutatio;)* thus, *desiderari*, to be desired or regretted, for *to be dead, lost*, or *absent:* So *Fuimus Troes, et ingens gloria Dardani*, i. e. are no more, *Virg. Æn.* ii. 325.

3. SYNECDOCHE *(comprehensio* or *conceptio)* is a trope by which a word is made to signify more or less than in its proper sense; as, 1. When a *genus* is put for a *species*, or a whole for a part, and the contrary; thus, *Mortales*, for *homines; summa arbor*, for *summa pars arboris; priusquam pabula gustâssent Trojæ, Xanthumque bibissent*, for *partem pabuli*, and *fluminis Xanthi*, Virg. *Nat uncta* carina, for *navis: centum puppes*, a hundred sail, or a hundred ships; *tectum*, the roof, for the

whole house; *capita* or *animæ*, for *homines; ungula*, for *equus* or *equi*, Horat. Sat. i. 1. 114; the door, or even the threshold, for the house or temple, *tum foribus divæ*, for *in templo divæ*, Virg. *Tempe*, for any beautiful vale, &c. 2. When a singular is put for a plural, and the contrary; thus, *Hostis, miles, pedes, eques*, for *hostes*, &c. *millies*, a thousand times, for many times. 3. When the materials are put for the things made of them; as, *Æs* or *argentum*, for money; *æra*, for vases of brass trumpets, arms, &c. *ferrum*, for a sword; *taurus*, for a bull's hide, *Virg.*

When a common name is put for a proper name, or the contrary, it is called *Antonomasia, (pronominatio;)* as, the *Philosopher*, for *Aristotle;* the *Orator*, for *Demosthenes* or *Cicero;* the *Poet*, for *Homer* or *Virgil;* the *Wise man*, for *Solomon; Astu*, for *Athens; Urbs*, the city or town, for the capital of any country; *Pœnus*, for *Hannibal; Nero*, for a cruel prince; *Mæcēnas*, for a patron of learning; as, *Sint Mæcenates, non deerunt, Flacce, Marones*, i. e. *sint munifici patroni, non deerunt boni poetæ.* Martial. viii. 56, 5.

An *Antonomasia* is often made by a *Periphrăsis;* as, *Pelŏpis parens*, for *Tantalus; Anўti reus*, for *Socrates; Trojani belli scriptor*, for *Homer; Chironis Alumnus*, for *Achilles; Potor Rhodăni*, for *Gallus; Jubæ tellus*, for *Mauritania*, Horat. &c. or by a patronymic noun; as, *Anchisiădes*, for *Æneas; Tyndăris, -ĭdis*, for *Helĕna*, &c.—or by an epithet; as, Impius *reliquit*, for *Æneas*, Virg.—sometimes with the noun added; as, *Fatalis et incestus judex, famosus hospes*, for *Paris*, Hor.

4. IRONY is when one means the contrary of what is said; as, when we say of a bad poet, *he is a Virgil;* or of a profligate person, *Tertius a Cœlo cecidit Cato.*

When any thing is said by way of bitter raillery, or in an insulting manner, it is called a SARCASM; as, *Satia te sanguine, Cyre*, Justin. Italiam *metire jacens*, Virg.

When an affirmation is expressed in a negative form, it is called LITŌTES; as, *He is no fool*, for *he is a man of sense; Non humilis mulier*, for *nobilis* or *superba; non indecoro pulvere*, for *decoro*, Horat. When a word has a meaning contrary to its original sense, it is called *Antiphrăsis;* as, *aurī* sacra *fames*, for *execrabilis*, Virg. *Pontus* Euxini *falso nomine dictus*, i. e. *hospitalis*, Ovid.

When any thing sad or offensive is expressed in more gentle terms, it is called EUPHEMISMUS; as, *Vitâ functus*, for *mortuus; conclamare suos*, to give up for lost, *Liv. Valeant*, for *abeant; mactare*, or *ferire*, for *occidere;* Fecerunt id *servi Milonis, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facere voluisset*, i. e. *Clodium interfecerunt*, Cic. This figure is often the same with the *Periphrasis.*

The PERIPHRĂSIS, or *Circumlocution*, is when several words are employed to express what might be expressed in fewer. This is done either from necessity, as in translating from one language into another; or to explain what is obscure, as in definitions; or for the sake of ornament, particularly in poetry, as in the descriptions of evening and morning, &c.

When after explaining an obscure word or sentence by a periphrasis, one enlarges on the thought of the author, it is called a *Paraphrase.*

When a word imitates the sound of the thing signified, it is called *Onomatopœïa, (nominis fictio;)* as, the *whistling* of winds, *purling* of streams, *buz* and *hum* of insects, *hiss* of serpents, &c. But this figure is not properly a trope.

It is sometimes difficult to ascertain to which of the above-mentioned tropes certain expressions ought to be referred. But in such cases minute exactness is needless. It is sufficient to know in general that the expression is figurative.

There are a great many tropes peculiar to every language, which cannot be literally expressed in any other. These, therefore, if possible, must be rendered by other figurative expressions equivalent; and if this cannot be done, their meaning should be conveyed in simple language; thus, *Interiore notâ Falerni*, with a glass of old *Falernian wine: Ad umbilicum ducere*, to bring to a conclusion, *Horat.* These, and other such figurative expressions, cannot be properly explained without understanding the particular customs to which they refer.

2. Repetition of Words.

Various repetitions of words are employed for the sake of elegance or force, and are therefore also called *Figures of words.* Rhetoricians have distinguished them by different names, according to the part of the sentence in which they take place.

When the same verb is repeated in the beginning of any member of a sentence, it is called ANAPHORA; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium palatii, nihil urbis vigiliæ,* &c. Cic. *Te dulcis conjux, te solo in littore secum, Te veniente die, te descendente canebat,* Virg.

When the repetition is made in the end of the member, it is called EPISTROPHE, or *conversio;* as, *Pœnos Populus Romanus justitiâ vicit, armis vicit, liberalitate vicit,* Cic. Sometimes both the former occur in the same sentence, and then it is called SYMPLOCE, or *Complexio;* as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus. Quis,* &c. *Rullus,* Cic.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of the first clause of a sentence, and in the end of the latter, it is called EPANALEPSIS; as, *Vidimus victoriam tuam præliorum exitu terminatam; gladium vaginâ vacuum in urbe non vidimus,* Cic. pro Marcello.

The reverse of the former is called ANADAPLOSIS, or *Reduplicatio;* as, *Hic tamen vivit: vivit! imò in senatum venit,* Cic.

When that which is placed first in the foregoing member, is repeated last in the following, and the contrary, it is called EPANODOS, or *Regressio;* as, *Crudelis tu quoque mater; Crudelis mater magis an puer imprŏbus ille? Imprŏbus ille puer, crudelis tu quoque mater,* Virg.

The passionate repetition of the same word in any part of a sentence, is called EPIZEUXIS; as, *Excitate, excitate eum ab inferis,* Cic. *Fuit, fuit ista virtus,* &c. Id. *Me, me, adsum qui feci, in me convertite ferrum,* Virg. *Bella, horrida bella,* Id. *Ibimus, ibimus,* Hor.

When we proceed from one thing to another, so as to connect by the same word the subsequent part of a sentence with the preceding, it is called CLIMAX, or *Gradatio;* as, *Africano virtutem industria, virtus gloriam, gloria æmulos comparavit,* Cic.

When the same word is repeated in various cases, moods, genders, numbers, &c. it is called POLYPTOTON; as, *Pleni sunt omnes libri, plenæ sapientium voces, plena exemplorum vetustas,* Cic. *Littora littoribus contraria, fluctibus undas imprecor, arma armis,* Virg. To this is usually referred what is called SYNONYMIA, or the using of words of the same import, to express a thing more strongly; as, *Non feram, non patiar, non sinam,* Cic. *Promitto, recipio, spondeo,* Id. And also EXPOLITIO, which repeats the same thought in different lights.

When a word is repeated the same in sound, but not in sense, it is called ANTANACLASIS; as, *Amari jucundum est, si curetur ne quid insit amari,* Cic. But this is reckoned a defect in style, rather than a beauty. Nearly allied to this figure is the PARONOMASIA, or *Agnominatio,* when the words only resemble one another in sound; as, *Civem bonarum artium, bonarum partium; Consul pravo animo et parvo; De oratore arator factus,* Cic. *Amantes sunt amentes,* Ter. This is also called a PUN.

When two or more words are joined in any part of a sentence in the same cases or tenses, it is called HOMOIOPTOTON, i. e. *similiter cadens;* as, *Pollet auctoritate, circumfluit opibus, abundat amicis,* Cic. If the words have only a similar termination, it is called HOMOIOTELEUTON, i. e. *similiter desinens;* as, *Non ejusdem est facere fortiter, et vivere turpiter,* Cic.

3. Figures of Thought.

It is not easy to reduce figures of thought to distinct classes, because the same figure is employed for several different purposes. The principal are the *Hyperbŏle, Prosopopëia, Apostrŏphe, Simĭle, Antithĕsis,* &c.

1. HYPERBOLE is when a thing is magnified above the truth; as, when Virgil, speaking of *Polyphēmus,* says, *Ipse arduus, altaque pulsat sidera.* So *Contracta pisces æquora sentiunt,* Hor. When an object is diminished below the truth, it is called *Tapeinōsus.* The use of extravagant Hyperboles forms what is called *Bombast.*

2. PROSOPOPŒIA, or *Personification,* is when we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to abstract qualities; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum, Catilina, sic agit,* &c. Cic. *Virtus sumit aut ponit secures,* Hor. *Arbore nunc aquas culpante,* Id.

3. APOSTROPHE, or *Address,* is when the speaker breaks off from the series of his discourse, and addresses himself to some person present or absent, living or dead, or to inanimate nature, as if endowed with sense and reason. This figure is nearly allied to the former, and therefore often joined with it; as, *Trojaque nunc stares, Priamique arx alta maneres,* Virg.

4. SIMILE, or *Comparison,* is when one thing is illustrated or heightened by comparing it to another; as, *Alexander was as bold as a lion.*

5. ANTITHESIS, or *Opposition,* is when things contrary or different are contrasted, to make them appear in the most striking light; as, *Hannibal was cunning, but Fabius was cautious. Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentiâ magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ, Cato,* &c. Sall. Cat. 54. *Ex hac parte pudor pugnat, illinc petulantia,*

&c. Cic. Similar to this figure is the *Oxumōron*, i. e. *acutè dictum*; as, *Amici absentes adsunt*, &c. Cic. *Impietate pia est*, Ovid. *Num capti potuere capi*, Virg

6. INTERROGATION, (Græc. *Erotēsis*,) is a figure whereby we do not simply ask a question, but express some strong feeling or affection of the mind in that form; as, *Quousque tandem*, &c. Cic. *Creditis avectos hostes?* Virg. *Heu! quæ me æquora possunt accipere*, Id. Sometimes an answer is returned, in which case it is called *Subjectio*; as, *Quid ergo? audacissimus ego ex omnibus? minimè*, Cic. Nearly allied to this is *Expostulation*, when a person pleads with offenders to return to their duty.

7. EXCLAMATION, (*Ecphonēsis*,) as, *O nomen dulce libertatis!* &c. Cic. *O tempora, O mores!* Id. *O patria! O Divûm domus Ilium!* &c. Virg.

8. DESCRIPTION, or *Imagery*, (*Hypotypōsis*,) when any thing is painted in a lively manner, as if done before our eyes. Hence it is also called *Vision*; as, *Videor mihi hanc urbem videre*, &c. Cic. in Cat. iv. 6. *Videre magnos jam videor duces, Non indecoro pulvere sordidos*, Hor. Here a change of tense is often used, as the present for the past, and conjunctions omitted, &c. *Virg*. xi. 637. &c.

9. EMPHASIS is when a particular stress is laid on some word in a sentence; as, Hannibal, *peto pacem*, Liv. *Proh! Jupiter ibit* HIC! Virg.

10. EPANARTHOSIS, or *Correction*, is when the speaker either recalls or corrects what he had last said; as, *Filium habui, ah! quid dixi habere me? imò habui*, Ter.

11. PARALEPSIS, or *Omission*, is when one pretends to omit or pass by, what he at the same time declares.

12. APARITHMĒSIS, or *Enumeration*, is when what might be expressed in a few words, is branched out into several parts.

13. SYNATHROISMUS, or *Coacervatio*, is the crowding of many particulars together; as,

> ——————*Faces in castra tulissem,*
> *Implessemque foros flammis, natumque, patremque*
> *Cum genere extinxem, memet super ipsa dedissem.* Virg.

14. *Incrementum*, or CLIMAX in sense, is when one number rises above another to the highest; as, *Facinus est vincire civem Romanum, scelus verberare, parricidium necare*, Cic. When all the circumstances of an object or action are artfully exaggerated, it is called AUXĒSIS, or *Amplification*. But this is properly not one figure, but the skilful employment of several, chiefly of the Simile and the Climax.

15. TRANSITION (*metabăsis*) is when a speech is abruptly introduced; or when a writer suddenly passes from one subject to another; as, Horat. Od. ii. 13. 13. In strong passion, *a change of person* is sometimes used; as, Virg. Æn. iv. 365, &c. xi. 406, &c.

16. SUSPENSIO, or *Sustentatio*, is when the mind of the hearer is long kept in suspense; to which the Latin inversion of words is often made subservient.

17. CONCESSIO is the yielding of one thing to obtain another; as, *Sit fur, sit sacrilegus*, &c. *at est bonus imperator*, Cic. in Verrem, v. 1. PROLEPSIS, *Prevention* or *Anticipation*, is when an objection is started and answered. ANACOINŌSIS, or *Communication*, is when the speaker deliberates with the judges or hearers; which is also called *Diaporēsis* or *Addubitatio*. LICENTIA, or the pretending to assume more *freedom* than is proper, is used for the sake of admonishing, rebuking, and also flattering; as, *Vide quàm non reformidem*, &c. Cic. pro Ligario. APOSIOPĒSIS, or *Concealment*, leaves the sense incomplete; as, *Quos ego* —— *sed præstat motos componere fluctus*, Virg.

18. SENTENTIA, (*gnome*,) a sentiment, is a general maxim concerning life or manners, which is expressed in various forms; as, *Otium sine literis mors est*, Seneca. *Adeo in teneris assuescere multum est*, Virg. *Probitas laudatur & alget; Misera est magni custodia censûs; Nobilitas sola est atque unica virtus*, Juv.

As most of these figures are used by orators, and some of them only in certain parts of their speeches, it will be proper that the learner know the parts into which a regular formal oration is commonly divided. These are, 1. The *Introduction*, the *Exordium* or *Proœmium*, to gain the good will and attention of the hearers: 2. The *Narration* or *Explication*: 3. The argumentative part, which includes *Confirmation* or proof

and *Confutation* or refuting the objections and arguments of an adversary. The sources from which arguments are drawn, are called *Loci*, topics; and are either intrinsic or extrinsic; common or peculiar. 4. The *Peroration*, *Epilogue* or *Conclusion*.

THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

The quantity of a syllable is the space of time taken up in pronouncing it.

That part of grammar which treats of the quantity and accent of Syllables, and of the measures of verse, is called *PROSODY*.

Syllables, with respect to their quantity, are either *long* or *short*.

A long syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a short; as, *tēndĕrĕ*.

Some syllables are *common;* that is, sometimes long, and sometimes short; as the second syllable in *volucris*.

A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom, or by the use of the poets.

In polysyllables or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult;* and the last syllable except two, the *Antepenultima*.

When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority;* that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lĕgo* is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lĕgo* and *lēgi* seem to be sounded equally long; but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious; thus, *perlĕgo, perlēgi; relĕgo, -ĕre; relēgo, -āre,* &c.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

I. A vowel before another vowel is short; as,

Mĕus alĭus: so *nihil; h* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, *crĕate, bĕhave.*

Exc. 1. *I* is long in *fīo, fīebam,* &c. unless when followed by *r;* as, *fĭĕri, fĭĕrem;* thus,

Omnia jam fient, fĭĕri quæ posse negabam. *Ovid.*

Exc. 2. *E* having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long; as, *speciēi.* So is the first syllable in *āer, dīus, ēheu,* and the penultima in *aulāi, terrāi,* &c. in *Pompēi, Cāi,* and such like words; but we sometimes find *Pompei* in two syllables, *Horat. Od.* II. 7.

Exc. 3. The first syllable in *ohe* and *Diana* is common; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius;* as, *illius, unius,* &c. to be read long in prose. *Alius,* in the genitive is always long, as being contracted for *aliius; alterĭus,* short.

In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

Sometimes it is short: as, Danăe, Idĕa, Sophĭa, Symphonĭa, Simŏis, Hўades, Phăon, Deucalĭon, Pygmalĭon, Thebăis, &c.

Often it is long: as, Lycāon, Machāon, Didymāon; Amphīon, Arīon, Ixīon, Pandīon; Nāis, Lāis, Achāia; Brisēis, Cadmēis; Latōus; & Latōis, Myrtōus, Nerēius, Priamēius; Achelōius, Minōius; Archelāus, Menelāus, Amphiarāus, Ænēas, Penēus, Epēus, Acrisionēus, Adamantēus, Phœbēus, Gigantēus; Darīus, Basirīus, Eugenīus, Bacchīus; Cassiopēa, Cæsarēa, Chæronēa, Cytherēa, Galētea, Laodicēa, Medēa, Panthēa, Penelopēa; Clīo, Enyo, Elegīa, Iphigenīa, Alexandrīa, Thalīa, Antiochīa, idololatrīa, litanīa, politīa, &c. Lāertes, Dēiphŏbus, Dēianira, Trōes, herōes, &c.

Sometimes it is common: as, Chorea, platea, Malea, Nereides, canopeum, Orion, Geryon, Eos, Eōus, &c. So in foreign words, Michael, Israel, Raphael, Abraham, &c.

The accusative of nouns in *eus* is usually short; as, *Orphĕa, Salmonĕa, Capharĕa,* &c. but sometimes long; as, *Idomenēa, Ilionēa,* Virg. Instead of *Elegīa, Cytherēa,* we find *Elegēia, Cythĕrēia,* Ovid. But the quantity of Greek words cannot be properly understood without the knowledge of Greek.

In English, a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened; as, *science, idēa.*

II. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant, is long; *(by position, as it is called;)* as,

ārma, fāllo, āxis, gāza, mājor: the compounds of *jugum* excepted; as, *bĭjŭgus, quadrĭjŭgus,* &c.

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by the position; as,

Ferte citi flammas, date velā, scandite muros. Virg.

But this rarely occurs.

¶ A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common; as in the middle syllable in *volucris*, *tenebræ*, thus,

Et primò similis volŭcri, mox vera volūcris. *Ovid.*
Nox tenĕbras, profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenēbras. *Id.*

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So *peragro, pharetra, podagra, chiragra, celebris, latebræ*, &c.

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. The vowel must be naturally short, the mute must go before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. Thus *a* in *patris* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom; but *a* in *matris acris* is always long, because long by nature or custom in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *salūbris, ambŭlācrum*, is always long, because they are derived from *salus, salūtis*, and *ambulātum*. So *a* in *arte, abluo*, &c. is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

L and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

III. A contracted syllable is long; as, *Nil*, for *nihil; mī*, for *mihi; cōgo*, for *coăgo; alīus*, for *aliius; tibīcen*, for *tibiicen; īt*, for *iit; sōdes*, for *si audes; nōlo*, for *non volo; bīgæ*, for *bijŭgæ; scilicet*, for *scire licet*, &c.

IV. A diphthong is always long; as, *Aurum, Cæsar, Eubœ*, &c. Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is commonly short; as, *præire, præustus;* thus,

Nec totâ tamen ille prior præcunte carinâ. *Virg.*
Stipitibus durus agitur sudibusque præustis. *Id.*

But it is sometimes lengthened; as,

————cum vacuus domino præiret Arion. *Statius.*

In English we pronounce several of the diphthongs short, by sinking the sound of one vowel; but then there is properly no diphthong.

SPECIAL RULES.

I. Concerning the First and Middle Syllables.

Preterites and Supines of Two Syllables.

V. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vēni, vīdi, vīci.*

Except *bĭbi, scĭdi* from *scindo, fĭdi* from *findo, tŭli, dĕdi*, and *stĕti*, which are shortened.

VI. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vīsum, cāsum, mōtum.*

Except *sătum*, from *sĕro; cĭtum*, from *cieo; lĭtum*, from *lĭno; sĭtum*, from *sĭno; stătum*, from *sisto; ĭtum*, from *eo; dătum*, fsom *do; rŭtum*, from the compounds of *ruo; quĭtum*, from *queo; rătus*, from *reor.*

Preterites which double the first syllable.

VII. Preterites which double the first syllable have both the first syllables short; as,

Cĕcĭdi, tĕtĭgi, pĕpŭli, pĕpĕri, dĭdĭci, tŭtŭdi: except *cĕcīdi*, from *cædo; pĕpēdi*, from *pēdo;* and when two consonants intervene; as, *fĕfelli, tĕtendi*, &c.

Increase of Nouns.

A noun is said to increase when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative; as, *rex, rēgis.* Here *re* is called the *encrease* or *crement*, and so through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a crement.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one; as, *iter, itĭnĕris.*

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular; as, *gener, genĕri, genĕrōrum.*

Nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions, do not increase in the singular number, unless where one vowel comes before another; as, *fructus, fructŭi; res, rĕi;* which fall under Rule I.

Third Declension.

VIII. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long; *e, i,* and *u* short; as,

Pietātis, honōris; muliĕris, lapĭdis, murmŭris.

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive in the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

A.

A noun in A shortens *ătis* in the genitive; as, *dogma, -ătis; poema, -ătis.*

O.

O shortens *ĭnis,* but lengthens *ēnis* and *ōnis;* as, *Cardo, -ĭnis; Virgo, -ĭnis; Anio, ēnis; Cicero, -ōnis.* Gentile or patrial nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive; as, *Macĕdo, -ŏnis; Saxo, -ŏnis.* Some are long; as, *Suessiōnes, Vettōnes. Brittones* is common.

I, C, D.

I shortens *ĭtis;* as, *Hydromĕli, -ĭtis. Ec* lengthens *-ēcis;* as, *Halec, ēcis.*

A noun in D shortens the crement; as, *David, -ĭdis.*

L.

Masculines in AL shorten *ălis;* as, *Sal, sălis; Hannibal, -ălis; Hasdrubal, -ălis;* but neuters lengthen it; as, *animal, -ālis.*

Sōlis from *sol* is long; also Hebrew words in *el;* as, *Michael, -ēlis.* Other nouns in L shorten the crement; as, *Vigil, -ĭlis; consul, -ŭlis.*

N.

Nouns in ON vary their crement. Some lengthen it; as, *Helicon, -ōnis; Chiron, -ōnis.* Some shorten it; as, *Memnon, ŏnis; Actæon, -ŏnis.*

EN shortens *ĭnis;* as, *flumen, -ĭnis: tibīcen, -ĭnis.* Other nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN *ānis;* as, *Titan, -ānis:* En *ēnis;* as, *Siren, -ēnis:* In *īnis;* as, *delphin, -īnis.* YN *ȳnis;* as, *Phorcyn, -ȳnis.*

R.

1. Neuters in AR lengthen *āris;* as, *calcar, -āris.* Except the following, *bacchar, -ăris; jubar, -ăris; nectar, -ăris:* Also the adjective *par, păris,* and its compounds, *impar, -ăris; dispar, -ăris,* &c.
2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive: *Nar, Nāris,* the name of a river; *fur, fūris; ver, vēris:* Also *Recimer, -ēris; Byzer, -ēris; Ser, Sēris; Iber, -ēris;* proper names.
3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen *tēris;* as, *crater, -ēris; character, -ēris.* Except *æther, -ĕris.*
4. OR lengthens *ōris;* as, *amor, -ōris.* Except neuter nouns; as, *marmor, -ŏris; æquor, -ŏris:* Greek nouns in *tor;* as, *Hector, -ŏris; Actor, -ŏris; rhetor, -ŏris:* Also, *arbor, -ŏris,* and *memor, -ŏris.*
5. Other nouns in R shorten the genitive; AR *ăris,* masculine; as, *Cæsar, -ăris; Hamilcar, ăris; lar, lăris.* ER *ĕris* of any gender; as, *āer, aĕris; mulier, -ĕris; cadāver, -ĕris; iter,* anciently *itiner, itinĕris; verbĕris,* from the obsolete *verber.* UR *ŭris;* as, *vultur, -ŭris; murmur, -ŭris.* YR *ȳris;* as, *Martyr, ȳris.*

AS.

1. Nouns in AS, which have *ātis,* lengthen the crement; as, *pietas, -ātis; Mæcēnas, -ātis.* Except *anas, -ătis.*
2. Other nouns in AS shorten the crement; as Greek nouns having the genitive in *ădis, ătis,* and *ănis;* thus, *Pallas, -ădis; artocreas, -eătis; Melas, -ănis,* the name of a river. So *vas, vădis; mas, măris:* But *vas, vāsis,* is long.

ES.

ES shortens the crement; as, *miles, -ĭtis; Ceres, -ĕris; pes, pĕdis.*

Except *locŭples, -ētis; quies, -ētis; mansues, -ētis; hæres, -ēdis; merces, -ēdis.*

IS.

Nouns in IS shorten the crement; as, *lapis, -ĭdis; sanguis, -ĭnis; Phyllis, -ĭdis.*

Except *Glis, glīris;* and Latin nouns which have *ītis;* as, *lis, lītis; dis, dītis; Quiris, -ītis; Samnis, -ītis:* But *Charis,* a Greek noun, has *Charĭtis.*

The following also lengthen the crement: *Crenis, -īdis; Psophis, -īdis; Nesis, -īdis;* proper names: And Greek nouns in *is,* which have also *in;* as, *Salămis,* or *in, Salamīnis.*

OS.

Nouns in OS lengthen the crement; as, *nepos, -ōtis; flos, flōris.*

Except *Bos, bŏvis; compos, -ŏtis;* and *impos, -ŏtis.*

US.

US shortens the crement; as, *tempus, -ŏris; tripus, -ŏdis.*

M

Except nouns which have *ŭdis, ŭris,* and *ŭlis;* as, *incus, -ŭdis; jus, jūris; salus, -ūtis.* But *Ligus* has *Ligŭris;* the obsolete *pecus, pecŭdis;* and *intercus, -ŭtis.*

The neuter of the comparative has *ōris;* as, *melius, -ōris.*

YS.

YS shortens *ydis* or *ydos;* as, *chlamys, ȳdis* or *ȳdos;* and lengthens *ynis;* as, *Trachys, -ȳnis.*

BS, PS, MS.

Nouns in S, with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive; as, *cælebs, -ĭbis; inops, -ŏpis; hiems, hiĕmis.*

Except *Cyclops, -ōpis; seps, sēpis: gryps, grȳphis; Cecrops, -ōpis; plebs, plēbis; hydrops, -ōpis.*

T.

T shortens the crement; as, *caput, -ĭtis.*

X.

1. Nouns in X, which have the genitive in *gis,* shorten the crement; as, *conjux, -ŭgis; remex, -ĭgis; Allobrox, -ŏgis; Phryx, Phrȳgis.* But *lex, lēgis,* and *ex, rēgis,* are long; and likewise *frūgis.*

2. EX shortens *ĭcis;* as, *vertex, -ĭcis:* except *vibex, -īcis.*

3. Other nouns in X lengthen the crement; as, *pax, pācis; radix, -īcis; vox, vōcis; lux, lūcis; Pollux, -ūcis,* &c.

Except *făcis, nĕcis, vĭcis, prĕcis, calĭcis, cilĭcis, pĭcis, fornĭcis, nĭvis, Cappadŏcis, dŭcis, nŭcis, crŭcis, trŭcis, onȳchis, Erȳcis, mastyx, -ȳchis,* the rosin of the *lentiscus,* or mastich-tree, and many others whose quantity can only be ascertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the crement; as, *Syphax, -ācis,* or *-ăcis; Sandyx, -ĭcis,* or *-īcis; Bebryx, -ȳcis,* or *-ȳcis.*

Increase of the Plural Number.

IX. Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *A, E,* and *O* long; but shorten *I* and *U;* as,

musārum, rērum, dominōrum; rĕgĭbus, portŭbus: except *bōbus* or *būbus,* contracted for *bŏvĭbus.*

Increase of Verbs.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active; as, *amas, amāmus,* where the second syllable *ma* is the *increase* or *crement;* for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables; as, *amas, amābămĭni;* in which case it is said to have a *first, second,* or *third increase.*

X. In the increase of verbs, *a, e,* and *o,* are long; *i* and *u,* short; as,

Amāre, docēre, amātōte; legĭmus, sŭmus, volŭmus.

The poets sometimes shorten *dĕdĕrunt* and *stĕtĕrunt;* and lengthen *rimus* and *ritis,* in the future of the subjunctive; as, *transieritis aquas,* Ovid. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb.

The first or middle syllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority;* and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

Remarks on the Quantity of the Penult of Words.

1. Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamĭdes, Atlantiădes,* &c. Unless they come from nouns in *eus;* as, *Pelīdes, Tydīdes,* &c.

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS, EIS, ITIS, OIS, OTIS, INE,* and *ONE,* commonly lengthen the penult; as, *Achāis, Ptolemāis, Chrysēis, Ænēis, Memphītis, Latōis, Icariōtis, Nerīne, Arisiōne.* Except *Thebăis,* and *Phocăis;* and *Nereis,* which is common.

3. Adjectives in *ACUS, ICUS, IDUS,* and *IMUS,* for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiăcus, academĭcus, lepĭdus, legitĭmus;* also superlatives; as, *fortissĭmus,* &c. Except *opācus, amīcus, aprīcus, pudīcus, mendīcus, postīcus, fīdus, infīdus,* (but *perfĭdus* of *per* and *fides,* is short,) *bīmus, quadrīmus, patrīmus, matrīmus, opīmus;* and two superlatives, *īmus, prīmus.*

4. Adjectives in *ALIS, ANUS, ARUS, IVUS, ORUS, OSUS,* lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis, urbānus, avārus, æstīvus, decōrus, arenōsus.* Except *barbărus, opipărus.*

5. Verbal adjectives in *ILIS,* shorten the penult; as, *agĭlis, facĭlis,* &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, *anīlis, civīlis, herīlis,* &c. To these add *exīlis, subtīlis;* and names of months, *Aprīlis, Quinctīlis, Sextīlis:* Except *humĭlis, parĭlis;* and also *simĭlis.* But all adjectives in *atilis,* are short; as, *versātĭlis, volatĭlis, umbratĭlis,* &c.

6. Adjectives in *INUS* derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c. also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as, *amaracĭnus, crocĭnus, cedrĭnus, fagĭnus, oleagĭnus, ădamantĭnus, cristallĭnus, crastĭnus, pristĭnus, perendĭnus,* &c.

Other adjectives in *INUS* are long; as, *agnīnus, austrīnus, bīnus, clandestīnus, Latīnus, marīnus, supīnus, vespertīnus,* &c.

7. Diminutives in *OLUS, OLA, OLUM;* and *ULUS, ULA, ULUM,* always shorten the penult; as, *urceŏlus, filiŏla, musæŏlum; lectŭlus, ratiuncŭla, corcŭlum,* &c.

8. Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult; as, *oppidātim, virītim, tribūtim.* Except *affătim, perpĕtim,* and *stătim.*

9. Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenultima, which in the second or third person is the penult; as, *esŭrio, esŭris, esŭrit.* But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligūrio, ligūris; scatūrio, scatūris,* &c.

Penult of Proper Names.

The following proper names lengthen the penult: Abdēra, Abȳdus, Adōnis, Æsōpus, Ætōlus, Ahāla, Alarīcus, Alcīdes, Amȳclæ, Andronīcus, Anūbis, Archimēdes, Ariarāthes, Ariobarzānes, Aristīdes, Aristobūlus, Aristogīton, Arpīnum, Artabānus; Brachmānes, Busīris, Buthrōtus; Cethēgus, Chalcēdon, Cleobūlus, Cyrēne, Cythēra, Curētes; Darīci, Demonīcus, Diomēdes, Diōres, Dioscūri; Ebūdes, Eriphȳle, Eubūlus, Euclīdes, Euphrātes, Eumēdes, Eurīpus, Euxīnus,; Gargānus, Gætūlus, Granīcus; Heliogabālus, Henrīcus, Heraclīdes, Heraclītus, Hippōnax, Hispānus; Irēne; Lacȳdas, Latōna, Leucāta, Lugdūnum, Lycōras; Mandāne, Mausōlus, Maximīnus, Meleāger, Messāla, Messāna, Milētus; Nasīca, Nicānor, Nicētas; Pachȳnus, Pandōra, Pelōris & -us, Pharsālus, Phœnīce, Polītes, Polyclētus, Polynīces, Priāpus; Sarpēdon, Serāpis, Sinōpe, Stratonīce, Suffētes; Tigrānes, Thessalonīca; Verōna, Veronīca.

The following are short: Amăthus, Amphipŏlis, Anabŏsis, Antic̆yra, Antigŏnus, & -ne, Antilŏchus, Antiŏchus, Antiŏpa, Antĭpas, Antipăter, Antiphănes, Antiphătes, Antiphĭla, Antĭphon, Anȳtus, Apŭlus, Areopăgus, Arimĭnum, Armĕnus, Athĕsis, Attălus, Attĭca; Bitŭrix, Bructĕri; Calăber, Calicrătes, Callistrătus, Candăce, Cantăber, Carneădes, Cherĭlus, Chrysostŏmus, Cleombrŏtus Cleomĕnes, Corȳcos, Constantinopŏlis, Cratĕrus, Cratȳlus, Cremĕra, Crustumĕri, Cybĕle, Cyclădes, Cyzĭcus; Dalmătæ, Damŏcles, Dardănus, Dejŏces, Dejotărus, Democrĭtus, Demĭpho, Didȳmus, Diogĕnes, Drepănum, Dumnŏrix; Empedŏcles, Ephĕsus, Evergĕtes, Eumĕnes, Eurymĕdon, Eurīpȳlus; Fucĭnus; Geryŏnes, Gyărus; Hecȳra, Heliopŏlis, Hermiŏne, Herodŏtus, Hesiŏdus, Hesiŏne, Hippocrătes, Hippotămos, Hypăta, Hypănis; Icărus, Icĕtas, Illȳris, Iphĭtus, Ismărus, Ithăca; Laodĭce, Laomĕdon, Lampsăcus, Lamȳrus, Lapĭthæ, Leucretĭlis, Libănus, Lipăre, *v.* -a, Lysimăchus, Longimănus; Marăthon, Mænălus, Marmarĭca, Massagĕtæ, Matrŏna, Megăra, Melĭtus, & -ta, Metropŏlis, Mutĭna, Mycŏnus; Neŏcles, Nerĭtos, Norĭcum; Omphăle; Patăra, Pegăsus, Pharnăces, Pisistrătus, Polydămas, Polyxĕna, Porsĕna, *or* Porsenna, Praxitĕles, Puteŏli, Pylădes, Pythagŏras; Sarmătæ, Sarsĭna, Semĕle, Semirămis, Sequăni, & -a, Serĭphos, Sicŏris, Socrătes, Sodŏma, Sotădes, Spartăcus, Sporădes, Strongȳle, Stymphălus, Sybăris; Taygetus, Telegŏnus, Telemăchus, Tenĕdos, Tarrăco, Theophănes, Theophĭlus, Tomȳrus; Urbĭcus; Venĕti, Vologĕsus, Volusus; Xenocrătes, Zoĭlus, Zopȳrus.

The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batāvi,* Lucan, *Batăvi,* Juv. & Mart. *Fortuītus,* Horat. *Fortuĭtus,* Mart. Some make *fortuitus* of three syllables; but it may be shortened like *gratuitus,* Stat. *Patrimus, matrimus, præstolor,* &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity there is no certain authority.

Final Syllables.

XI. *A,* in the end of a word declined by cases, is short; as, *Musă, templă, Tydeă, lampădă.*

Exc. The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Musâ, Æneâ;* and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as;* as, *O Æneâ, O Pallâ.*

A in the end of a word not declined by cases is long; as, *Amā, frustrā, præchreā, ergā, intrā.*

Exc. *Ită, quiă, ejă, posteă, pută,* (adv.) are short; and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contră, ultră,* and the compounds of *ginta;* as, *trigintă,* &c *Contra,* and *ultra,* when adverbs, are always long.

E.

XII. *E,* in the end of a word, is short; as,

Natĕ, sedilĕ, patrĕ, currĕ, nempĕ, antĕ.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables are long; as, *mē, tē, sē;* except these enclitic conjunctions, *quĕ, vĕ, nĕ;* and these syllabical adjections, *ptĕ, cĕ, tĕ;* as, *suaptĕ, hujuscĕ, tutĕ,* but these may be comprehended under the general rule, as they never stand by themselves.

Exc. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declension are long; as, *Calliŏpē, Anchisē, fidē.* So *rē-,* and *diē,* with their compounds, *quarē, hodiē, pridiē, postridiē, quotidiē:* Also Greek nouns which want the singular, *Cetē, melē, Tempē;* and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation; as, *Docē, manē;* but *cave, vale,* and *vide,* are sometimes short.

Exc. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long; as, *placidē, pulchrē, valdē,* contracted for *validē;* to these add *fermē, ferē,* and *ohē;* also all adverbs of the superlative degree; as, *doctissimē, fortissimē:* but *benĕ* and *malĕ* are short.

I.

XIII. *I* final is long; as, *Dominī, patrī, docerī.*

Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are short; as, *Alexĭ, Amaryllĭ.*

Exc. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension which increase, is common; as, *Palladi, Minoïdi.*

Mihi, tibi, sibi, are also common: so likewise are *ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi;* and *cui,* when a dissyllable, which in poetry is seldom the case. *Sicubĭ* and *necubĭ* are always short.

O.

XIV. *O* final is common; as, *Virgo, Amo, quando.*

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *o* are long; as, *ō, dō, stō, prō.* The dative and ablative sing. of the second declension, are long; as, *librō, dominō:* also Greek nouns, as, *Didō,* and *Athō* the genitive of *Athos,* and adverbs derived from nouns; as, *certō, falsō, paulō.* To these add *quō, eō,* and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō;* likewise, *illō, idcircō, citrō, intrō, retrō, ultrō.*

Exc. 2. The following words are short; *Egŏ, sciŏ, cedŏ* a defective verb, *homŏ, citŏ, illĭcŏ, imŏ, duŏ, ambŏ, modŏ,* with its compounds, *quomodŏ, dummodŏ, postmodŏ:* but some of these are also found long.

Exc. 3. The gerund in DO in Virgil is long; in other poets it is short. *Ergō,* on account of, is long; *ergo,* therefore is doubtful.

U and Y.

XV. *U* final is long; *Y* final is short; as, *Vultū, Molў.*

B, D, L, M, R, T.

XVI. *B, D, L, R,* and *T,* in the end of a word, are short; as,

Ab, apŭd, semĕl, precŏr, capŭt.

The following words are long, *sāl, sōl, nil; pār,* and its compounds, *impar, dispar,* &c. *fār, lār, Nār cūr fūr;* also nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *Cratēr, vēr, Iber* likewise *aēr, æthēr;* to which add Hebrew names; as, *Jōb, Daniēl, Davīd.*

M final anciently made the foregoing vowel short; as, *Militŭm octo,* Ennius. But by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel; thus, *Milit, octo;* except in compound words; as, *circŭmăgo, circŭmeo.*

C, N.

XVII. *C* and *N,* in the end of a word, are long; as,

Ac, sīc, nōn. So Greek nouns in *n;* as, *Titān, Sirēn, Salamīn, Æneān, Anchisēn, Circēn, Lacedæmōn,* &c.

The following words are short, *nĕc* and *donĕc; forsităn, ĭn, forsăn, tamĕn, ăn, vidĕn';* likewise nouns in *en* which have *ĭnis* in the genitive; as, *carmĕn, crimĕn;* together with several Greek nouns; as, *Iliŏn, Pylŏn, Alexĭn.*

The pronoun *hic,* and the verb *fac,* are common.

AS, ES, OS.

XVIII. *AS, ES,* and *OS,* in the end of a word, are long; as, *Mās, quiēs, bonōs.*

The following words are short, *anăs, ĕs* from *sum,* and *penĕs; ŏs,* having *ossis* in the genitive, *compŏs,* and *impŏs;* also a great many Greek nouns of all these three terminations; as, *Arcăs* and *Arcădăs, heroăs; Phrygĕs; Arcadŏs, Tenĕdŏs, Mĕlŏs,* &c. and Latin nouns in *es,* having the penult of the genitive increasing short; as, *Alĕs, hebĕs, obsĕs.* But *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs,* and *pēs* with its compounds, are long.

IS, US, YS.

XIX. *IS, US,* and *YS,* in the end of a word, are short; as,

Turrĭs, legĭs, legĭmŭs, annŭs, Capўs.

Exc. 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long; as, *Pennīs, librīs, nobīs, omnīs* for

omnes, fructûs, manûs: also the genitive singular of the fourth declension; as, *portûs.* But *bus* in the dative and ablative plural is short; as, *floribŭs, fructibŭs, rebŭs.*

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *ītis, īnis,* or *entis;* as, *līs, Samnīs, Salamīs, Simoīs.* To these add the adverbs *gratīs* and *forīs;* the noun *glīs,* and *vīs,* whether it be a noun or a verb; also *is* in the second person singular, when the plural has *ītis;* as, *audīs, abīs, possīs. Ris* in the future of the subjunctive is common.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long; as, *grūs, sūs:* also nouns which in the genitive have *ūris, ūdis, ūtis, untis,* or *ŏdis;* as, *tellūs, incūs, virtūs, amăthūs, tripūs.* To these add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declension; as, *Cliûs, Sapphûs, Mantûs;* also nouns which have *u* in the vocative; as, *Panthūs.*

Exc. 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys,* which have likewise *yn* in the nominative; as, *Phorcȳs, Trachȳs.*

¶ The last syllable of every verse is common

Or, as some think, necessarily long on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

THE QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND WORDS.

1. Derivatives.

XX. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives; as,

Āmicus,	*from*	ămo.	Decōro,	*from*	decus, -ŏris.
Auctiōnor,		auctio, -ōnis.	Exŭlo,		exul, -ŭlis.
Auctōro,		auctor, -ōris.	Păvidus,		păveo.
Audītor,		audītum.	Quirīto,		Quiris, -ītis.
Auspĭcor,		auspex, -ĭcis.	Radīcĭtus,		radix, -īcis.
Caupōnor,		caupo, -ōnis.	Sospĭto,		sospes, -ĭtis.
Compĕtītor,		compĕtītum.	Nātura,		nātus.
Cornīcor,		cornix, -īcis.	Māternus,		māter.
Custōdio,		custos, -ōdis.	Lĕgebam, &c.		lĕgo.
Decōrus,		decor, -ōris.	Lēgeram, &c.		lēgi.

Exceptions.

1. Long from Short.

Dēni,	*from*	dĕcem.	Suspīcio,	*from*	suspĭcor.	Mōbĭlis,	*from*	mŏveo
Fōmes,		fŏveo.	Sēdes,		sĕdeo.	Hūmor,		hŭmus.
Hūmanus,		hŏmo	Sēcius,		sĕcus.	Jūmentum.		jŭvo.
Rēgula,		rĕgo.	Pēnuria.		pĕnus.	Vox, vōcis.		vŏco, &c.

2. Short from Long.

Ărena *and* ărista,	*from*	āreo.	Lŭcerna,	*from*	lūceo.
Nŏta *and* nŏto,		nōtus.	Dux, ŭcis,		dūco.
Vădum,		vādo.	Stăbilis,		stābam.
Fĭdes,		fīdo.	Dĭtio,		dis, ditis.
Sŏpor,		sōpio	Quăsillus,		quālus, &c.

2. Compounds.

XXI. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them; as,

Dēdūco, of *dē, and dūco.* So *prōfĕro, antĕfĕro, consōlor, dēnŏto, dēpecūlor, deprāvo, despēro, despūmo, desquāmo, enōdo, ērŭdio, exūdo, exăro, expăveo, incēro, inhŭmo, investīgo, prægrăvo, prænăto, rĕgĕlo, appăro, appāreo, concăvus, prægrăvis, dēsōlo, suffŏco & suffōco, diffĭdit* from *diffindo,* and *diffīdit* from *diffīdo, indĭco,* and *indīco, permănet* from *permăneo,* and *permānet* from *permāno, effŏdit,* in the present, and *effōdit* in the perfect; so, *exĕdit* and *exēdit; devĕnit* and *devēnit; devĕnĭmus* and *devēnĭmus; reperĭmus* and *reperīmus; effŭgit* and *effūgit,* &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; as, *incĭdo* from *in* and *cădo; incīdo* from *in* and *cædo; suffōco* from *sub* and *faux, faucis:* unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule; as, *ādmitto, pērcello, dĕosculor, prŏhibeo.*

Exc. 1. *Agnĭtum, cognĭtum, dējĕro, pejĕro, innŭba, pronŭba, maledĭcus, veridĭcus, nihĭlum, semisŏpitus;* from *nōtus, jūro, nūbo, dīco, hīlum,* and *sōpio: ambĭtus,* a

participle from *ambio*, is long; but the substantives *ambĭtus* and *ambĭtio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

Exc. 2. The preposition *PRO* is short in the following words: *prŏfundus, prŏfugio, prŏfugus, prŏnĕpos, prŏneptis, prŏfestus, prŏfari, prŏfiteor, prŏfānus, prŏfecto, prŏcella, prŏtervus*, and *prŏpāgo*, a lineage; *pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine stock *or* shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful: *propago*, to propagate; *propino, profundo, propello, propulso, procūro*, and *Proserpīna*.

Exc. 3. The inseparable prepositions *SE* and *DI* are long; as, *sēpăro, dīvello*: except *dĭrĭmo, dĭsertus*. *Re* is short; as, *rĕmitto, rĕfĕro*: except in the impersonal verb *rēfert*, compounded of *res* and *fero*.

Exc. 4. *E, I, O*, in the end of the former compounding word are usually shortened; as, *trĕcenti, nĕfas, nĕque, patĕfacio*, &c. *Caprĭcornus, omnĭpotens, agrĭcŏla, signĭfĭco, bĭformis, alĭger, Trĭvia, tubĭcen*, &c. *Duŏdĕcim, hŏdie, sacrŏsanctus*, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases; as, *quīdam, quīvis, tantīdem, eīdem*, &c. And when the compounding words may be taken separately; as, *ludīmagister, lucrīfacio, sīquis*, &c. *Idem* in the masculine, is long; in the neuter, short: also, *ubīque, ibīdem*. But in *ubivis* and *ubicunque*, the *i* is doubtful.

ACCENT.

Accent is the tone of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced.

In every word of two or more syllables, one syllable is sounded higher than the rest, to prevent monotony, or an uniformity of sound, which is disagreeable to the ear.

When accent is considered with respect to the sense, or when a particular stress is laid upon any word, on account of the meaning, it is called *Emphăsis*.

There are three accents, distinguished by their different sounds; *acute, grave*, and *circumflex*.

1. The *acute* or *sharp* accent raises the voice in pronunciation, and is thus marked [´]; as, *prófero*, proffer.

2. The *grave* or *base* accent depresses the voice, or keeps it in its natural tone; and is thus marked [`]; as, *doctè*. This accent properly belongs to all syllables which have no other.

The *circumflex* accent first raises and then sinks the voice in some degree on the same syllable; and is therefore placed only upon *long* syllables. When written, it has this mark, made up of the two former [ˆ]; as, *amâre*.

The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent only is used.

The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless for the sake of distinction; as, in these adverbs, *aliquò, continuò, doctè, unà*, &c. to distinguish them from certain cases of adjectives, which are spelt in the same way. So *poetâ, gloriâ*, in the ablative: *fructûs, tumultûs*, in the genitive: *nostrûm, vestrûm*, the genitive of *nos* and *vos*: *ergô*, on account of; *occîdit*, he slew; *Pompîlî*, for *Pompilii*; *amâris*, for *amaveris*, &c.

VERSE.

A verse is a certain number of long and short syllables, disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always *turn* back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, rather to ascertain its measure or number of syllables, than to regulate its pronunciation.

Feet.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsūra*, which is commonly a long syllable.

1. *Feet of two syllables.*

Spondēus, consists of	two long; as, *ōmnēs*.
Pyrrhichius,	two short; as, *dĕŭs*.
Iambus,	a short and a long; as, *ămāns*.
Trochæus,	a long and a short; as, *sērvŭs*.

2. *Feet of three syllables.*

Dactylus,	a long and two short; as, *scrībĕrĕ*.
Anapæstus,	two short and a long; as, *pĭĕtās*.
Amphimăcer,	a long, a short, and a long, as, *chārĭtās*
Tribrăchys,	three short; as, *dŏmĭnŭs*.

The following are not so much used:

Molossus, dēlēctānt.
Amphibrachys, hŏnōrĕ.
Bacchius, dŏlōrēs.
Antibacchius, pēllūntŭr.

3. *Feet of four syllables.*

Proceleusmaticus, hŏmĭnĭbŭs.
Dispondeus, ōrātōrēs.
Dijambus, ămœnĭtās.
Choriambus, pōntĭfĭcēs.
Ditrochæus, cāntĭlēnă.
Antispastus, ălēxāndĕr.
Ionicus major, cālcārĭbŭs.
Ionicus minor, prŏpĕrābānt.
Pæon primus, tēmpŏrĭbŭs.
Pæon secundus, pŏtēntĭă.
Pæon tertius, ănĭmālŭs.
Pæon quartus, cĕlĕrĭtās.
Epitritus primus, vŏlūptātēs.
Epitritus secundus, pœnĭtēntēs.
Epitritus tertius, discōrdĭās.
Epitritus quartus, fōrtūnātŭs.

SCANNING.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*.

When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Versus Acatalectus*, or *Acatalectĭcus*, an Acatalectic verse: if a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalecticus:* if there be a syllable too much, *Hypercatalecticus*, or *Hypermĕter*.

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Depositio*, or *Clausula*.

Different Kinds of Verse.

1. HEXAMETER.

The Hexameter or Heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees; as,

Lūdĕrĕ | quæ vēl- | lēm călă- | mō pēr- | mīsĭt ă- | grēstī. *Virg.*
Īnfān- | dūm Rē- | gīnă, jŭ- | bēs rĕnŏ- | vārĕ dŏ- | lōrēm. *Id.*

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondaic:* as,

Cāră Dĕ- | ūm sŏbŏ- | lēs mā- | gnūm Jŏvĭs | īncrē- | mēntūm. *Virg.*

This verse is used when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like, is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before it: so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel; as,

Omnĭă | Mērcŭrĭ- | ō sĭmĭ- | līs vō- | cēmquĕ cŏ- | lōrēmque
Et flavos crines —— *Virg.*

Those Hexameter verses sound best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately; as,

Ludere quæ vellem calamo permisit agresti. *Virg.*
Pinguis et ingratæ premeretur caseus urbi. *Id.*

Or which have more dactyles than spondees; as,

Tityre tu patulæ recubans sub tegmine fagi. *Id.*

It is esteemed a great beauty in a Hexameter verse, when by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense; as,

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. *Virg.*
Illi inter sese magna vi brachia tollunt. *Id.*
Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum. *Id.*
Accipiunt inimicum imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt. *Id.*

But what deserves particular attention in scanning Hexameter verse, is the CÆSURA.

Cæsura is when, after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot; as,

At rē-gīnă gră-vī jām-dudum, &c.

The *Cæsura* is variously named, according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimĕris:* when on the fifth half-foot or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimĕris:* when it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hepthemimĕris:* and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot it is called *Ennĕemimĕris*.

All these different species of the *Cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse; as,

Illĕ lă-tŭs nĭvĕ-ūm mōl-lī fūl-tūs hyă-cīnthō. *Virg.*

But the most common and beautiful *Cæsura* is the penthemim; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice in reading a hexameter verse thus composed, whence they call it the *Cæsural pause:* as,

Tityre dum rede- O, brevis est via, pasce capellas. *Virg.*

When the *Cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long; as, the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of a hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition

of the *Cæsura*. Without this, a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose; as,

Rōmæ mœnĭă tĕrrŭĭt ĭmpĭgĕr Hānnĭbăl ārmīs. *Ennius.*

The ancient Romans, in pronouncing verse, paid a particular attention to its melody. They not only observed the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense. All the words should be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentamĕter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees; the third always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth an anapæstus; as,

Nātū- | ræ sĕquĭ- | tūr sē- | mĭnă quis- | quĕ sŭæ. *Propert.*
Cārmĭnĭ- | būs vī- | vēs tēm- | pŭs ĭn ōm- | nĕ mĕĭs. *Ovid.*

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemisticks or halves; the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a cæsura; the latter, always of two dactyles and another cæsura; thus,

Nātū- | ræ sĕquĭ- | tūr | sēmĭnă | quīsquĕ sŭ- | æ.
Cārmĭnĭ- | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpŭs ĭn | ōmnĕ mĕ- | īs.

The Pentameter usually ends with a dissyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Asclepiadĕan verse consists of four feet; namely, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Mæcē- | nās ătăvīs | ēdĭtĕ rē- | gĭbŭs. *Hor.*

But this verse may be more properly measured thus: in the first place, a spondee; in the second, a dactyle; then a cæsura; and after that two dactyles; thus,

Mæce- | nas ata- | vis | edite | regibus.

4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verse has three feet, a spondee, choriambus, and pyrrhichius; as,

Nāvīs | quæ tĭbĭ crē- | dĭtŭm. *Horat.*

Or, it may be divided into a spondee and two dactyles; thus,

Navis | quæ tibi | creditum.

5. SAPPHIC *and* ADONIAN.

The Sapphic verse has five feet; viz. a trochee, spondee, dactyle, and two trochees; thus,

Intĕ- | gĕr vī- | tæ, scĕlĕ- | rīsquĕ | pūrŭs. *Horat.*

An Adonian verse consists only of a dactyle and spondee; as,

Iūpĭtĕr | ūrgĕt. *Horat.*

6. PHERECRATIAN.

The Pherecratian verse consists of three feet, a spondee, dactyle, and spondee; thus,

Nīgrīs | æquŏră | vēntīs. *Horat.*

7. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucian verse consists of five feet; namely, a spondee, a dactyle, and three trochees; as,

Sūmmām | nĕc mĕtŭ- | ās dĭ- | ĕm, nĕc | ōptĕs. *Martial.*

8. *The* GREATER ALCAIC.

The Greater Alcaic, called likewise *Dactylic,* consists of four feet, a spondee or iambus, iambus and cæsura, then two dactyles; as,

Vīrtūs | rĕpŭl- | sæ | nēscĭă | sōrdĭdæ. *Horat.*

9. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian Iambic verse consists of four feet. In the first and third place, it has either a spondee or iambus; in the second and fourth, always an iambus; and in the end, a cæsura; as,

Nĕc sū- | mĭt, aūt | pŏnĭt | sĕcū- | rēs. *Horat.*

10. *The* LESSER ALCAIC.

The Lesser Dactylic Alcaic consists of four feet; namely, two dactyles and two trochees; as,

Arbĭtrĭ- | ō pŏpŭ- | lārĭs | aūræ. *Horat.*

Of the above kinds of verse, the first two take their names from the number of feet of which they consist. All the rest derive their names from those by whom they were either first invented, or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named from the feet by which they are most

commonly measured, such as the dactylic, trochaic, anapæstic, and iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

11. IAMBIC.

Of Iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimĕter;* the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimĕter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in iambic verse; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the dimeter *quaternarius*, and the trimeter *senarius*. Originally this kind of verse was purely iambic, *i. e.* admitted of no other feet but the iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Inār- | sĭt æ- | stŭō- | sŭīs. *Horat.*
Trimeter, Sŭīs | ĕt ī- | psā Rō- | mā vī- | rĭbūs | rŭīt. *Id.*

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places; that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapæstus, and sometimes a tribrachys. We also find a tribrachys in the even places, *i. e.* in the second place, and in the fourth; for the last foot must always be an iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Cănĭdĭ | ă trā- | ctāvĭt | dăpēs. *Horat.*
Vĭdē- | rĕ prŏpĕ- | rāntēs | dŏmūm. *Id.*
Trimeter, Quŏquŏ | scĕlĕ- | stī rŭī- | tĭs aūt | cūr dĕx- | tĕrīs. *Id.*
Păvĭdūm- | quĕ lĕpŏ- | r' aūt ăd- | vĕnām | lăquĕō | grŭēm. *Id.*
Alĭtĭ- | būs āt- | quĕ cănĭ | būs hŏmĭ- | cĭd' Hĕ- | ctorem.

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tĕtrameter* or *Octonarius.*

Figures in Scanning.

The several changes made upon words to adapt them to the verse are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalœpha, Ecthlipsis, Synærĕsis, Diærĕsis; Systŏle*, and *Diastŏle*.

1. Synalœpha is the cutting off a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. *Virg.*

to be scanned thus,

Cōntĭcŭ- | ĕr' ōm- | nēs īn- | tēntī | qu' ōră tĕ- | nēbānt.

The *Synalœpha* is sometimes neglected; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ô, heu, ah proh, væ, vah, hei;* as,

O pater, ô hominum, Divûmque æterna potestas. *Virg.*

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insulæ Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno *Virg*
Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt? *Id.*
Victor apud rapidum Simoënta sub Ilio alto.
Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam.
Glauco et Panopeæ, et Inoo Melicertæ.

2. Ecthlipsis is when *m* is cut off, with the vowel before it in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

O curas hominum? O quantum, est in rebus inane! *Pers.*

thus,

O cū- | rās hŏmĭ- | n', ō quān- | t' ēst īn | rēbŭs ĭn- | ānē.

Sometimes the Synalœpha and Ecthlipsis, are found at the end of a verse; as,

Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cœlumque
Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. *Virg.*
Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum
Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. *Id.*

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning o the next line; thus, *qu' Adspicit; r' Ardua*.

3. Synæresis is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis;* as, *Phæthon*, for *Phaethon*. So, *ĕi* in *Thesei, Orphei, deinde, Pompei; ŭi*, in *huic, cui; ŏi*, in *proinde; ĕâ*, in *aureâ;* thus,

Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesei. *Ovid*
Proinde tona cloquio, solitum tibi. *Virg.*
Filius huic contrà, torquet qui sidera mundi. *Id.*
Aureâ percussum virgâ, versumque venenis. *Id.*

So in *antehac, eadem, alvearia, deest, deerit, vehemens, anteit, eodem, alveo, graveolentis, omnia, semianimis, semihomo, fluviorum, totius, promontorium*, &c. as,

Unâ eâdemque viâ sanguisque animusque ferentur. *Virg.*
Seu lento fuerunt alvearia vimine texta. *Id.*
Vilis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. *Hor.*
Divitis uber agri, Troiæque opulentia deerit. *Virg.*
Vehemens et liquidus puroque simillimus amni. *Hor.*
Te semper anteit dira necessitas. *Alcaic. Hor.*
Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro Daphnis amore. *Virg.*
Cum refluit campis, & jam se condidit alveo. *Id.*
Inde ubi venêre ad fauces graveolentis Averni. *Id.*

Bis patriæ cecidere manus: quin protinus omnia. *Id*
Cædit semianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. *Id.*
Semihominis Caci facies quam dira tenebat. *Id.*
Fluviorum rex Eridanus, camposque per omnes. *Id.*
Magnanimosque duces, totiusque ex ordine gentis. *Id.*
Inde legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minervæ. *Ovid.*

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel; as in *genva, tenvis, arjetat, tenvia, abjete, pitvita, parjetibus, Nasidjenus;* for *genua, tenuis,* &c. as,

Propterea qui corpus aquæ naturaque tenvis. *Lucr.*
Genva labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis. *Virg.*
Arjetat in portas & duros objice postes. *Id.*
Velleraque ut foliis depectant tenvia Seres. *Id.*
Ædificant, sectâque intexunt abjete costas. *Id.*
Præcipuè sanus, nisi cum pitvita molesta est. *Hor.*
Parjetibusque premunt arctis, & quatuor addunt. *Virg.*
Ut Nasidjeni juvit te cœna beati. *Hor.*

4. Diæresis divides one syllable into two; as, *aulāi,* for *aulæ; Trōiæ,* for *Trojæ; Persĕus,* for *Perseus; milŭus,* for *milvus; solŭit,* for *solvit; volŭit,* for *volvit; aqŭæ, sŭetus, sŭasit, sŭevos, relangŭit, reliqŭas,* for *aquæ, suetus,* &c. as,

Aulāi in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. *Virg.*
Stamina non ulli dissolŭenda Deo. *Pentam. Tibullus.*
Debuerant fusos evolŭisse suos. *Id. Ovid.*
Quæ calidum faciunt aqŭæ tactum atque vaporem. *Lucr.*
Cum mihi non tantum furesque feræque sŭetæ. *Horat.*
Atque alios alii inridant, Veneremque sŭadent. *Lucr.*
Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone Sŭevos. *Lucan.*
Imposito fratri moribunda relangŭit ore. *Ovid.*
Reliqŭas tamen esse vias in mente patenteis. *Lucr.*

5. Systŏle is when a long syllable is made short; as the penult in *tulerunt;* thus,

Matri longa decem tulĕrunt fastidia menses. *Virg.*

6. Diastŏle is when a syllable usually short is made long; as the last syllable in *amor,* in the following verse;

Considant, si tantus amōr, et mœnia condant. *Virg.*

To these may be subjoined the *Figures of Diction,* as they are called, which are chiefly used by the poets, though some of them likewise frequently occur in prose.

1. When a letter or syllable is added to the beginning of a word, it is called Prosthĕsis; as *gnavus* for *navus; tetŭli* for *tuli.* When a letter or syllable is interposed in the middle of a word, it is called Epenthĕsis; as, *relligio,* for *religio; induperator,* for *imperator.* When a letter or syllable is added to the end, it is called Paragōge; as, *dicier* for *dici.*

2. If a letter or syllable be taken from the beginning of a word, it is called Aphærĕsis; as, *natus* for *gnatus; tenderant* for *tetenderant.* If from the middle of a word, it is called Syncŏpe; as, *dîxti* for *dixisti; deûm,* for *deorum.* If from the end, Apocŏpe; as, *viden'* for *videsne; Antonî* for *Antonii.*

3. When a letter or syllable is transposed, it is called Metathĕsis; as, *pistris* for *pristis: Lybia* for *Libya.* When one letter is put for another, it is called Antithĕsis; as, *faciundum* for *faciendum, olli* for *illi; voltis* for *vultis.*

Different Kinds of Poems.

Any work composed in verse is called a *Poem, (Poema,* or *Carmen.)*

Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an EPITHALAMIUM; on a mournful subject, an ELEGY or LAMENTATION; in praise of the Supreme Being, a HYMN; in praise of any person or thing, a PANEGYRIC or ENCOMIUM; on the vices of any one, a SATIRE or INVECTIVE; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an EPITAPH, &c.

2. A short poem adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an ODE, whence such compositions are called *Lyric Poems;* a poem in the form of a letter is called an EPISTLE; a short witty poem, playing on the fancies or conceits which arise from any subject, is called an EPIGRAM; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp, unexpected lively turn of wit in the end of an epigram, is called its *Point.* A poem expressing the moral of any device or picture, is called an EMBLEM. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an ÆNIGMA or RIDDLE.

When a character is described so that the first letters of each verse, and sometimes the middle and final letters express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an ACROSTIC as the following on our Saviour:

I *nter cuncta micans* I *gniti sidera cæl* I,
E *xpellit tenebras* E *toto Phœbus ut orb* E;
S *ic cæcas removet JESVS caliginis umbra* S,
V *ivificansque simul* V *ero præcordia mot* V
S *olem justitiæ,* S *ese probat esse beati* S.

3. From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exegetic, Dramatic,* or *Mixt.*

The *Exegetic*, where the poet always speaks himself, is of three kinds, Historical, Didactic or Instructive, (as the Satire or Epistle,) and Descriptive.

Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are COMEDY, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and TRAGEDY, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue. To which may be added *Pastoral Poems* or BUCOLICS, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the eclogues of Virgil.

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the EPIC or HEROIC poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as the wrath of Achilles, in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Æneas in Italy, in the *Æneid* of Virgil; the fall of man, in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

4. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds; the simple, ornate, and sublime

Combination of Verses in Poems.

In long poems there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his Satires and Epistles, Ovid in his Metamorphōses, Lucan, Silius Italicus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always use Hexameter verse; Plautus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally use the Iambic, and sometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in shorter poems, particularly those which are called Lyric poems, as the Odes of Horace and the Psalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

A poem which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name Monocōlon, sc. *poema*, v. *carmen*; or Monocōlos, sc. *ode*: that which has two kinds, Dicōlon; and that which has three kinds of verse, Tricōlon.

If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is called Dicōlon Distrŏphon; as when a single Pentameter is alternately placed after a Hexameter, which is named *Elegiac verse*, (carmen Elegĭăcum,) because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus,

Flebilis indignos Elegĕia solve capillos;
Ah! nimis ex vero, nunc tibi nomen erit. *Ovid.*

This kind of verse is used by Ovid in all his other works except the Metamorphoses; and also, for the most part, by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicōlon Tristrŏphon*: when after four lines, *Dicōlon Tetrastrŏphon*: as,

Auream quisquis mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti
Sordibus tecti; caret invidendâ
Sobrius aulâ. *Horat.*

When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *Tricolon Tristrophon*: but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricolon Tetrastrophon*: as when after two greater dactylic alcaic verses are subjoined an archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic alcaic which is named *Carmen Horatianum*, or Horatian verse, because it is frequently used by Horace; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori
Cœlum, negatâ tentat iter viâ;
Cœtusque vulgares, et udam
Spernit humum fugiente pennâ.

Any one of these parts of a poem, in which the different kinds of verse are comprehended when taken by itself, is called a *Strophe*, *Stanza*, or *Staff*.

Different Kinds of Verse in Horace and Buchanan.

I. Odes and Psalms of one kind of verse.

1. *Asclepiadēan*, See N° 3. p. 208. Hor. L. 1. III. 30. IV. 8.——Buch. Ps. 28. 40. 80.

2. *Choriambic Alcaic Pentameter*, consisting of a spondee, three choriambuses, and a pyrrhichius or iambus: Hor L. 11. 18. IV. 10.

3. *Iambic trimĕter*, N° 11.——Hor. Epod. 17.——Buch. Ps. 25. 94. 106.

4. *Hexameter*, N° 1. Hor. Satires and Epistles.——Buch. Ps. 1. 18. 45. 78. 85. 89. 104. 107 132. 135.

5. *Iambic Dimĕter*, N° 11.——Buch. Ps. 13. 31. 37. 47. 52. 54. 59. 86. 96. 98. 117. 148. 149. 150.

6. The *Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N° 8.——Buch. Ps. 26. 29. 32. 49. 61. 71. 73. 143.

7. *Trochaic*, consisting of seven trochees and a syllable; admitting also a tribrachys in the uneven places, i. e. in the first, third, fifth, and seventh foot; and in the even places, a tribrachys, spondee, dactyle, and anapestus.——Buch. Ps. 105. 119. 124. 129.

8. Anapestic, consisting of four anapestuses, admitting also a spondee or dactyle; and in the last place, sometimes a tribrachys, amphimăcer, or trochee.——Ps. 113.

9. *Anacreontic Iambic*, consisting of three iambuses and a syllable; in the first foot it has sometimes a spondee or anapestus, and also a tribrachys.——Ps. 131.

II. Odes and Psalms of two kinds of verse following one another alternately.

1. *Glyconian* and *Asclepiadēan*, N° 4. and 3.——Hor. I. 3. 13. 19. 36. III. 9. 15. 19. 24. 25. 28. IV. 1. 3.——Buch. Ps. 14. 35. 43.

2. Every first line, *(Dactylico-Trochaic,)* consisting of the first four feet of a hexameter verse

then three trochees or a spondee for the last; every second verse, *(Iambic Archilochian,)* consisting of an iambic or spondæus, an iambus, a cæsura, and then three trochees.——Hor. I. 4.

3. The first line, *Hexameter:* and the second, *Alcmanian Dactylic*, consisting of the four last feet of a hexameter. Hor. I. 7. 28. Epod. 12.——Buch. Ps. 4. 111.

4. Every first line, *Aristophanic*, consisting of a choriambus, and bacchius or amphimacer: every second line, *Choriambic Alcaic*, consisting of epitritus secundus, two choriambuses, and a bacchius Hor. I. 8.

5. The first line, *Trochaic*, consisting of three trochees, and a cæsura; or of an amphimacer, and two iambuses. The second line, *Archilochian Iambic*, N° 9. Hor. II. 18.

6. The first line, *Hexameter;* the second, *Dactylic Archilochian*, two dactyles and a cæsura, Hor IV. 7.——Buch. Ps. 12.

7. The first line, *Iambic Trimeter;* and the second, *Iambic Dimeter;* N° 11.——Hor. Epod. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.——Buch. Ps. 3. 6. 10. 21. 22. 27. 34. 38. 39. 41. 44. 48. 53. 62. 74. 76. 79. 87. 92. 110. 112. 115. 120. 127. 133. 134. 139. 141.

8. The first line, *Iambic Dimeter;* the second *Sapphic*, consists of two dactyles, a cæsura, and four iambuses, admitting also a spondee, &c. But this verse is commonly divided into two parts; the first, the latter part of a pentameter, N° 2. and the second, iambic dimeter, N° 11. Hor. Epod. 11.

9. The first line, *Hexameter;* the second, *Iambic Dimeter*. Hor. Epod. 14, 15.——Buch. Ps. 81.

10. *Hexameter* and *Iambic Trimeter*. Hor. Epod. 16.—Buch. Ps. 2. 20. 24. 57. 60. 69. 83. 93. 95. 97. 108. 109. 118. 126. 136. 147.

11. The first line, *Sapphic*, N° 5. and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11. Buch. Ps. 8.

12. *Sapphic* and *Glyconian*. Buch. Ps. 33. 70. 121. 142.

13. *Iambic Trimeter* and *Pentameter*. Buch. Ps. 36. 63.

14. The first line, *Hexameter;* and the second line, the three last feet of a hexameter, with a long syllable or two short syllables before. Buch. Ps. 68.

15. *Hexameter* and *Pentameter*, or *Elegiac* verse. Buch. Ps. 88. 114. 137.

16. The first line, *Trochaic*, three trochees and a syllable, admitting sometimes a spondee, tribrachys, &c. The second line, *Iambic Dimeter*. N° 11. Buch. Ps. 100.

III. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The three first lines, *Sapphic;* and the fourth, *Adonian*, N° 5. Horat. Carm. I. 2. 10. 12. 20. 22. 25. 30. 32. 38. II. 2. 4. 6. 8. 10. 16. III. 8. 11. 14. 18. 20. 22. 27. IV. 2. 6. 11. *Carmen Secul.* Buch. Ps. 5. 17. 51. 55. 65. 67. 72. 90. 101. 103.

2. The three first lines, *Asclepiadēan*, and the fourth, *Glyconian*. Hor. Carm. I. 6. 15. 24. 33. II. 12. III. 10. 16. IV. 5, 12.——Buch. Ps. 23. 42. 75. 99. 102. 144.

3. The two first lines, *Ionic Trimeter*, consisting of three *Ionici minores;* the third line, *Ionic Tetrameter*, having one *Ionicus minor* more. Hor. III. 12.

4. The two first lines have four trochees, admitting, in the second foot, a spondee, dactyle, &c. The third line, the same; only wanting a syllable at the end. Buch. Ps. 66.

5. The three first lines, *Glyconian*, N° 4, admitting also a spondee, or iambus, in the first foot; the fourth line, *Pherecratian*, N° 6. Buch. Ps. 116. 122. 128.

IV. ODES and PSALMS of three kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The two first lines, *Asclepiadēan*, N° 3, the third line, *Pherecratian*, N° 6, and the fourth, *Glyconian*, N° 4. Hor. Carm. I. 5. 14. 21. 23. III. 7. 13. IV. 13.——Buch. Ps. 9. 64. 84. 130.

2. The two lines, *the Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N° 8. The third, *Archilochian Iambic*, N° 9. The fourth, *the Lesser Alcaic*, N° 10. Hor. Carm. I. 9. 16. 17. 26. 27. 29. 31. 34. 35. 37. II. 1. 3. 5. 7. 9. 11. 13. 14. 15. 17. 19. 20. III. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5 6. 17. 21. 23. 26. 29. IV. 4. 9. 14. 15.——Buch. Ps. 7. 11 15. 19. 30 46. 50. 56. 58. 77. 82. 91. 123. 125. 140. 146.

3. The first line, *Glyconian;* the second, *Asclepiadēan*, the third a spondee, three choriambuses and an iambus or pyrrhichius. Buch. Ps. 16.

4. The first line, *Hexameter;* the second, *Iambic Dimeter;* and the third, two dactyles and a syllable; Hor. Epod. 13.——Buch. Ps. 138. Sometimes the two last verses are joined in one or inverted; as, Buch. Ps. 145

APPENDIX.

Of Punctuation, Capitals, Abbreviations, Numerical Characters, and the Division of the Roman Months.

The different divisions of discourse are marked by certain characters called *Points.*

The points employed for this purpose are the *Comma* (,), *Semicolon* (;), *Colon* (:), *Period,* Punctum, or full stop (.).

Their names are taken from the different parts of the sentence which they are employed to distinguish.

The *Period* is a whole sentence complete by itself. The *Colon,* or member, is a chief constructive part,* or greater division of a sentence. The *Semicolon,* or half member, is a less constructive part or subdivision of a sentence or member. The *Comma,* or segment, is the least constructive part of a sentence in this way of considering it; for the next subdivision of a sentence would be the resolution of it into *Phrases* and *Words.*

To these points may be added the *Semiperiod,* or less point, followed by a small letter. But this is of much the same use with the Colon, and occurs only in Latin books.

A simple sentence admits only of a full point at the end; because its general meaning cannot be distinguished into parts. It is only in compound sentences that all the different points are to be found.

Points likewise express the different pauses which should be observed in a just pronunciation of discourse. The precise duration of each pause, or note, cannot be defined. It varies according to the different subjects of discourse, and the different turns of human passion and thought. The period requires a pause in duration double of the colon; the colon double of the semicolon; and the semicolon double of the comma.

There are other points which, together with a certain pause, also denote a different modulation of the voice, in correspondence with the sense. These are the *Interrogation* point (?), the *Exclamation* or *Admiration* point (!), and the *Parenthesis* ( ). The first two generally mark an elevation of the voice, and a pause equal to that of a semicolon, colon, or a period, as the sense requires. The *Parenthesis* usually requires a moderate depression of the voice, with a pause somewhat greater than a comma. But these rules are liable to many exceptions. The modulation of the voice in reading, and the various pauses, must always be regulated by the sense.

Besides the points, there are several other *marks* made use of in books, to denote references and different distinctions, or to point out something remarkable or defective, &c. These are, the *Apostrophe* ('); *Asterisk* (*); *Hyphen* (-); *Obelisk* (†); *Double Obelisk* (‡); *Parallel Lines* (‖); *Paragraph* (¶); *Section* (§); *Quotation* (" "); *Crotchets* [ ]; *Brace* (}); *Ellipsis* (... or —); *Caret* (‸); which last is only used in writing.

References are often marked by letters and figures.

Capitals or large letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Some use them at the beginning of every substantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a small letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus, A. marks *Aulus,* C. *Caius,* D. *Decimus,* L. *Lucius,* M. *Marcus,* P. *Publius,* Q. *Quinctius,* T. *Titus.* So F. stands for *Filius,* and N. for *Nepos;* as, M. F. *Marci Filius,* M. N. *Marci Nepos.* In like manner, P. C. marks *Patres Conscripti;* S. C. *Senatûs Consultum;* P. R. *Populus Romanus;* S. P. Q. R. *Senatus Populusque Romanus;* U. C. *Urbs Condita;* S. P. D. *Salutem Plurimam dicit;* D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat;* D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, consecratque;* H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Sestertius,* equal in value to two pounds of brass and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra, Libra,* and the half by S. *Semis.* So in modern books A. D. marks *Anno Domini;* A. M. *Artium Magister,* Master of Arts; M. D. *Medicinæ Doctor;* L. L. D. *Legum Doctor;* N. B. *Nota Bene,* &c.

Sometimes a small letter or two is added to the capital; as, Etc. *Et cætera;* Ap. *Appius;* Cn. *Cneius;* Op. *Opiter;* Sp. *Spurius;* Ti. *Tiberius.;* Sex. *Sextus;* Cos. *Consul;* Coss. *Consules;* Imp. *Imperator;* Impp. *Imperatores.*

In like manner, in English, Esq. *Esquire;* Dr. *Debtor* or *Doctor;* Acct. *Account;* MS. *Manuscript;* MSS. *Manuscripts;* Do. *Ditto;* Rt. Hon. *Right Honourable,* &c.

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word; as, i. e. *id est;* h. e. *hoc est;* e. g. *exempli gratiâ;* v. g. *verbi gratiâ.*

Capitals were used by the ancient Romans, to mark numbers. The Letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X. which are therefore called *Numerical Letters.* I. denotes *one,* V. *five,* X. *ten,* L. *fifty,* and C. *a hundred.* By the various combinations of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

The repetition of a numerical letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two;* III. *three;* XX. *twenty;* XXX. *thirty;* CC. *two hundred,* &c. But V. and L. are never repeated.

When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater, the less takes away what it stands for from the greater; but being placed after, adds what it stands for to the greater; thus,

IV. Four.	V. Five.	VI. Six.
IX. Nine.	X. Ten.	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty.	L. Fifty.	LX. Sixty.
XC. Ninety.	C. A hundred.	CX. A hundred and ten.

A *thousand* is marked thus, CIↃ, which in later times was contracted into M. *Five hundred* is marked thus, IↃ. or by contraction, D.

The annexing of C to IↃ makes its value ten times greater; thus, IↃↃ marks *five thousand;* and IↃↃↃ, *fifty thousand.*

The prefixing of C, together with the annexing of Ↄ, to the number of CIↃ. makes its value ten times greater; thus, CCIↃↃ denotes *ten thousand;* and CCCIↃↃↃ *a hundred thousand.* The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number they did it by repetition; thus, CCCIↃↃↃ, CCCIↃↃↃ. signified *two hundred thousand,* &c.

We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numerical letters. Thus, $\overline{\text{III}}$ denotes *three thousand;* $\overline{\text{X}}$. *ten thousand.*

But the modern manner of marking numbers is much more simple, by these ten characters or *figures,* which from the ten fingers of the hands were called *Digits;* 1 *one,* 2 *two,* 3 *three,* 4 *four,* 5 *five,* 6 *six,* 7 *seven,* 8 *eight,* 9 *nine,* 0 *nought, nothing.* The first nine are called *Significant figures.* The last is called a *Cypher.*

Significant figures placed one after another increase their value ten times at every remove from the right hand to the left; thus,

8 Eight. 85 Eighty-five. 856 Eight hundred and fifty-six. 8566 Eight thousand five hundred and sixty-six.

When cyphers are placed at the right hand of a significant figure, each cypher increases the value of the figure ten times; thus,

1 One. 10 Ten. 100 A hundred. 1000 A thousand. 2 Two. 20 Twenty. 200 Two hundred. 2000 Two thousand.

Cyphers are often intermixed with significant figures, thus, 20202, *Twenty thousand two hundred and two.*

The superiority of the present method of marking numbers over that of the Romans, will appear by expressing the present year both in letters and figures, and comparing them together; CIↃ,IↃCCCXXII, or M,DCCCXXII, 1822.

As the Roman manner of marking the days of their months was quite different from ours, it may perhaps be of use here to give a short account of it.

Division of the Roman Months.

The Romans divided their months in three parts, by *Kalends, Nones,* and *Ides.* The first day of every month was called the *Kalends;* the fifth day was called the *Nones;* and the thirteenth day was called the *Ides;* except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the nones fell upon the seventh day, and the ides on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked *Kalendis Januariis,* or *Januarii,* or by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias* or *Januarii,* scil. *ante.* The day before that, or the 30th day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante;* or *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And so on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the ides, which were marked *Idibus Decembribus,* or *Decembris:* the day before the ides, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante:* the day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and so back to the nones, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked *Nonis Decembribus* or *Decembris:* the day before the nones, *Pridie Non. Dec.* &c. and thus through all the months of the year.

In *Leap-year,* that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii* or *Martias.* and hence this year is called *Bissextilis.*

JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMque, NOVEMque tricenos;
Unum plus reliqui: FEBRUUS tenet octo viginti;
At si bissextus fuerit, superadditur unus,
Tu primam mensis lucem dic esse kalendas,
Sex MAIUS, nonas OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,
Quatuor at reliqui: dabit idus quilibet octo.
Omnes post idus luces dic esse kalendas,
Nomen sortiri debent a mense sequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of *April, June, September,* and *October,* was marked XVIII. Kal. of the following month; the 15th, XVII. Kal. &c. The 14th day of *January, August,* and *December,* XIX. Kal. &c. So the 16th day of *March, May, July,* and *October,* was marked XVII. Kal. &c. And the 14th day of February, XVI. Kal. Martii or Martias. The names of all the months are used as Substantives or Adjectives, except *Aprilis,* which is used only as a Substantive.

FINIS.